环球卓越
www.geedu.com

英语周计划
系列丛书

2018

4周攻克 考博英语

听力、词汇、完形、改错 周计划

博士研究生入学考试命题研究组 编著

取材真题
真实权威
专项虽小
面面俱到

扫码关注后回复56345
免费下载配套音频

Cracking
English Entrance Exam for
Doctors:
Listening Comprehension,
Vocabulary,Cloze Test & Proofreading

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

第4版

环球卓越
www.geedu.com

英语周计划
系列丛书

2018

4周攻克 考博英语

听力、词汇、完形、改错 周计划

博士研究生入学考试命题研究组 编著

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

第4版

“英语周计划系列丛书”是针对我国读者的英语学习特点开发的、以“周”为谋篇布局单位、以“日”为具体实施单元的极具特色的英语辅导用书，具有思维创新、规划科学、目标明确、讲练结合、直击实战等特点。《4周攻克考博英语听力、词汇、完形、改错周计划》是本系列针对考博英语的一个分册。

本书内容分为4周，依次对听力、词汇、完形、改错四种题型进行解读和复习。每周都细致介绍该题型的考核要求、试题分析、命题特点和考查点。每天都对题型、出题规律备考策略、考点等做详细讲解。书中引用大量各院校的真题，以达到最贴近实战的目的。恰当利用本书，有助于顺利通过考试。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

4周攻克考博英语听力、词汇、完形、改错周计划 /
博士研究生入学考试命题研究组编著. —4版. —北京：
机械工业出版社，2017.3 （2017.9重印）
（英语周计划系列丛书）
ISBN 978-7-111-56345-7

Ⅰ.①4… Ⅱ.①博… Ⅲ.①英语-博士生入学考试-自学参考资料
Ⅳ.①H310.421

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2017）第050188号

机械工业出版社（北京市百万庄大街22号 邮政编码100037）
策划编辑：孙铁军 责任编辑：孙铁军
责任印制：孙 炜
保定市中画美凯印刷有限公司印刷
2017年9月第4版·第2次印刷
184mm×260mm·25.75印章·650千字
标准书号：ISBN 978-7-111-56345-7
定价：45.00元

凡购本书，如有缺页、倒页、脱页，由本社发行部调换
电话服务 网络服务
服务咨询热线：（010）88361066 机 工 官 网：www.cmpbook.com
读者购书热线：（010）68326294 机 工 官 博：weibo.com/cmp1952
（010）88379203 教育服务网：www.cmpedu.com
封面无防伪标均为盗版 金 书 网：www.golden-book.com

丛书序

我们的一生有太多的考试，考博，只是部分人部分考试中的某一场而已。横跨这道门槛的人，无论顺利与否，都免不了一场备考的忧心和煎熬。作为一个在考博一线奋斗多年的人，因为理解考生，所以能感同身受；因为懂得考生，所以更期望大家顺利。

很希望能为大家做套书，做套好书，为了这个简单的目标，我们一直在努力。

2013 年的 11 月，“英语周计划系列丛书”之“卓越考博英语应试教材”系列应运而生。这是一套由国内知名考前培训机构环球卓越策划、由众多资深辅导专家联手打造的辅导丛书。针对中国成人学习英语的特点，同时深度考虑相当一部分在职人员继续深造的局限性，我们特意将全套书与“周计划”结合，将备考规划详细落实到了每周每天，用科学、合理的布局来加强和督导考生的备考计划和行动，力争务实和高效。参与本丛书策划与编写的老师均为北京、上海及广州等地著名的考博英语辅导专家，丛书内容是他们多年辅导经验的提炼和结晶，实用性非常强，已得到众多考博英语辅导机构的实践检验。

本丛书第 1 版包括《4 周攻克考博英语词汇周计划》《4 周攻克考博英语阅读周计划》《4 周攻克考博英语写译周计划》和《考博英语名校真题精解及全真预测试卷周计划》4 个分册，从基础到综合再到实战演练，是一套在当时我们看来已经比较全面的图书，并在上市后迅速取得了良好的市场反响，在短短的不足两个月的时间里，首印便销售一空。

与此同时，我们也接到了来自四面八方考生的呼吁：能否做得更细致、更全面、更周到，不只是满足大众院校的共同题型，同时还能有不同院校不同要求的小题型？

众所周知，考博并非全国统考，而是各高校自主命题，且各个高校的题型并不一致。就英语考试而言，北大、南开、北师大等高校有听力题型，中科院、南大、复旦等高校有词汇题型，人大、川大、华中科大等高校有完形题型，北大、清华、南开等高校有改错题型，等等。市面上现有的考博图书更多的只是从各个高校都考的共同题型出发，而能够收录各类小题型的图书几乎没有。

本着尊重考生，满足读者实际需求的宗旨，2015 版丛书里，我们新增了一本专项考博英语图书：《4 周攻克考博英语听力、词汇、完形、改错周计划》，用我们切实的行动，去满足大家真正的需要。2018 版，也即本套书的第 5 版，我们根据读者的反馈对本套书做了比较多的改进。力求新颖、精准、全面、实用。

一、新颖。所有的分册在内容修订上都力求新颖、有代表性。由于各高校的考纲处于不断的变化中，只有不断更新才能与时俱进。其中仅《考博英语名校真题及全真预测周计划》一书就将众多名校的真题更新至 2016 年，是目前市面上集全国名校最多、内容最广、真题最新的一本书。其他分册也根据各校考博最新动态，在内容讲解、题型设置、例题和练习上做了大幅度调整。

二、精准。备考是个痛并煎熬的历程，泛泛的内容只会加剧考生的痛苦，且事倍功半。

本次修订，力求内容更加精准、贴切，同时通过精讲精练的方式，让考生切实把握住知识和要点。

三、全面。本丛书不仅仅包含了考博英语的大众题型，譬如阅读、写译、真题及模拟，同时还有不同院校的小题型，譬如听力、词汇、完形、改错等。无论是哪个院校的考生，本丛书都足以满足其全面需要。

四、实用。通过与“周计划”的紧密结合，将考博英语的点和面充分贯彻到每周每天，让考生在科学规划备考的同时，能 80/20 原则分明，有的放矢，真正达到实用和高效的目的。

当下的中国正在上演着空前的挑战：在校学生严峻的就业形势，在职人士的加薪、升职甚至是保住饭碗的日益残酷。现实促使越来越多的人士不得不选择考学和继续深造，仅考博人数就达到了每年数十万之众，而且这一规模还在迅速扩张中！

但正所谓“世上无难事，只怕有心人”，定下一个目标，付之以坚定的前行，收获的一定是更加灿烂的明天！衷心希望这套精心打造的考博图书能带给大家希望和收获。

祝大家考试成功！

编　者

2017 年 2 月于北京

目　录

丛书序

第一周　听　力

周一　听力题型之短对话 / 6
周二　听力题型之长对话（上）/ 19
周三　听力题型之长对话（下）/ 31
周四　听力题型之短文（上）/ 43
周五　听力题型之短文（下）/ 53
周六　听力题型之复合式听写 / 64
周日　一周总测 / 76

第二周　词汇结构

周一　动词 / 90
周二　名词 / 103
周三　形容词及副词 / 114
周四　虚词 / 125
周五　语法（一）/ 135
周六　语法（二）/ 146
周日　一周总测 / 155

第三周　完形填空

周一　八大解题要诀——词义与词形辨析法 / 170
周二　八大解题要诀——固定搭配法 / 181
周三　八大解题要诀——语法分析法 / 191
周四　八大解题要诀——词汇重复法 / 203
周五　八大解题要诀——语义逻辑法 / 212
周六　八大解题要诀——关联对应法和褒贬一致法 / 222
周日　一周总测 / 229

第四周 改 错

周一 常考要点（一）代词、冠词 / 244
周二 常考要点（二）介词、比较级和最高级 / 256
周三 常考要点（三）名词、句子结构 / 266
周四 常考要点（四）谓语动词、非谓语动词 / 278
周五 常考要点（五）词性混用、易混词误用 / 289
周六 常考要点（六）平行结构、逻辑关系 / 298
周日 一周总测 / 309

附 录

模拟测试题（一）/ 318
模拟测试题（一）解析 / 325
模拟测试题（二）/ 330
模拟测试题（二）解析 / 337
模拟测试题（三）/ 342
模拟测试题（三）解析 / 348
模拟测试题（四）/ 353
模拟测试题（四）解析 / 359
模拟测试题（五）/ 364
模拟测试题（五）解析 / 371
模拟测试题答案 / 377

第一周　听　力

周一　听力题型之短对话

周二　听力题型之长对话（上）

周三　听力题型之长对话（下）

周四　听力题型之短文（上）

周五　听力题型之短文（下）

周六　听力题型之复合式听写

周日　一周总测

考核要求

博士研究生英语入学考试采取的是各院校自行命题，自行组织考试的办法，但国内大部分院校博士生考试理论上都以国家教育部 1992 年颁布的《非英语专业研究生英语教学大纲》为指导标准，因此，相对来说，该大纲中对听力的要求仍能反映目前听力部分考试的大体要求：

- ❖ 对题材熟悉，难度不大，基本上没有生词；
- ❖ 语速为每分钟 120 ~140 词的听力材料；
- ❖ 一遍可以听懂，理解中心思想和主要内容；
- ❖ 能基本听懂本专业的学术报告，并做简要笔记；
- ❖ 能进行一般性对话，基本上能表达自己的学术见解。

博士研究生英语入学考试要求考生能具有大致相当于全国大学英语六级的水平。因此，六级大纲对考生也具有较高的参考价值。在四级的基础上，考生应能一遍就听懂 140 词每分钟的听力材料，准确率不应低于 70%。此外，听力部分的成功与否依赖于考生的词汇量多少。一般要求考生的词汇量在 8000 词左右。听力题型的完成时间一般在 30 分钟左右。

- ❖ 辨别语素中的音素；
- ❖ 辨别重音类型；
- ❖ 理解婉转祈使句的语调，理解表达不确定含义的句子，理解疑问句、陈述句的语调以及反意疑问句的语调；
- ❖ 理解句子和话语的交际价值；
- ❖ 通过声音的高低快慢，辨认语句中的要点和重要信息；
- ❖ 做准确的判断；
- ❖ 做笔记。

试题分析

博士研究生英语入学考试，听力部分的具体试题形式为：短对话、长对话、短文、听写等。

(1) 短对话

短对话采用一问一答的形式测试考生的英语听力能力，要求考生在听完每个对话后，根据所听内容于短时间内对每个问题后的选项做出正确选择。

【听力样题】

A. Registration.　　B. When the line breaks.

C. How long the line is.　　D. People who don't wait their turn.

【听力原文】

M: Registration always takes so long.

W: What bothers me is all the people who cut in line.

Q: What bothers the woman?

（2）长对话

长对话通常由多组对话构成，听完每组对话后考生回答3～4个问题不等，大多数高校采用三组对话分别对应3、3、4个问题的形式。

【听力样题】

1. A. To go sightseeing.　　B. To have meetings.
   C. To promote a new champagne.　　D. To join in a training program.
2. A. It can reduce the number of passenger complaints.
   B. It can make air travel more entertaining.
   C. It can cut down the expenses for air travel.
   D. It can lessen the discomfort caused by air travel.
3. A. Many of them found it difficult to exercise on a plane.
   B. Many of them were concerned with their well-being.
   C. Not many of them chose to do what she did.
   D. Not many of them understood the program.

【听力原文】

M: Hi, Anna! Welcome back! How's your trip to the States?
W: Very busy. I had a lot of meetings, so, of course, I didn't have much time to see New York.
M: What a pity! Actually, I will have a trip there myself next week.
W: Do you? Then take my advice, do the well-being in the air program. It really works.
M: Oh, I read about that in a magazine. You say it works?
W: Yes, I did the program on the flight to the States, and when I arrived at New York, I didn't have any problem, no jet lag at all. On the way back, I didn't do it, and I felt terrible.
M: You're joking!
W: Not at all, it really meant a lot of difference.
M: En. So what did you do?
W: Well, I didn't drink alcohol or coffee, and I didn't eat any meat or rich food. I drank a lot of water, and fresh juice, and I ate the noodles on the well-being menu. They're lighter. They have fish, vegetables, and noodles, for example, and I did some of the exercises of the program.
M: Exercises? On a plane?
W: Yes. I didn't do many. Of course, there isn't much space on a plane.
M: How many passengers did the exercises?
W: Not many.
M: Then how much champagne did they drink?
W: A lot! It was more popular than mineral water.
M: So, basically, it's a choice. Mineral water and exercises, or champagne and jet lag.
W: That's right! It's a difficult choice.

Questions 1 to 3 are based on the conversation you have just heard.

1. Why did the woman go to New York?

2. What does the woman say about the well-being in the air program?

3. What did the woman say about other passengers?

(3) 短文

一般说来，每篇短文由200词至250词组成，一般不超过300词。短文旨在测试考生对英语篇章的听力理解能力。每篇材料后有若干个针对材料内容提出的问题。每个问题给出四个选项，要求考生在短时间内选出答案。

【听力样题】

1. A. The name of a German town. B. A resident of Frankfurt.
   C. A kind of German sausage. D. A kind of German bread.
2. A. He sold fast food. B. He raised dogs.
   C. He was a cook. D. He was a cartoonist.
3. A. Because the Americans found they were from Germany.
   B. Because people thought they contained dog meat.
   C. Because people had to get used to their taste.
   D. Because it was too hot to eat right away.

【听力原文】

Most people know what a hot dog is. It's a sausage in a roll. But do you know why it's called a hot dog? Well, the long red sausage which goes into a hot dog is called frankfurter. It got its name from the German town Frankfurt. The sausages were very popular, but hot frankfurters were difficult to sell in crowds. One man, Harry Stevens, had the job of feeding the crowds in baseball games. He had an idea, "Why not put the Frankfurters in long hot bread rolls?" This made them easy to sell. The "red hot" had a hot and attractive taste, and became very popular. But in 1903, an American cartoonist drew a long German sausage dog in place of the frankfurter. So a frankfurter in a roll soon became known as a hot dog. It was a joke, but some people really thought the sausages contained dog meat. For a while, sales of hot dogs failed, but not for long.

Questions 1 to 3 are based on the passage you have just heard.

1. What is a Frankfurter?
2. What was Harry Stevens' job?
3. Why did the sales of hot dogs decrease for some time?

(4) 听写

听写题型比较复杂多变，各高校不尽相同，主要有如下考查形式：

❖ 单词或短语填空。一篇150～200词的短文。一般朗读两遍或三遍。有时短文字数有限制。此题型重点考查考生的理解能力和拼写。

❖ 完成句子。一篇200～300词的短文。一般朗读一遍或两遍。有时要求简要回答，限制答案的词数，如不多于3或5个词。

❖ 回答问题。一篇200～300词的短文。这是听写难度最大的一种题型。有时要求简要回答问题，限制答案的词数。

❖ 笔记与填表。一篇200～300词的短文。这种考查形式对考生要求较高，它不仅要求考生真正听懂，还要求考生能抓住听力材料的要点，并用笔记或表格形式表达出来。正常语速朗读一遍或两遍。现在考查这种题型的院校比较少。

命题特点和考查点

1. 命题特点

听力测试的目的在于测试考生是否能听懂英语国家人们在日常生活、非专业学习、非技术工作中使用的英语。听力的即时性是其最主要的特点。人大约每秒能编码 25 到 30 个语音段。而我们能理解的口语速度不能超过每分钟 50 ~ 60 个语音段。说是即时的，声音转瞬即逝，因此博士研究生英语考试的命题具有以下特点：

（1）语音

听力测试是考查考生理解口头语言能力的测试，材料内容多以口语形式出现。口语的结构不像书面语那么严谨，句子短，重复率高，信息冗余。听力材料比阅读材料容易，基本没有超纲词汇，但会出现陌生人名或地名，且注重提供真实的语言环境。尽管根据所选题材、内容、说话者身份以及谈话对象不同，语体有正式、非正式和一般之分，但取材尽量趋于口语化。

（2）语体

要听懂英美人讲话，仅仅掌握一些语音知识是不够的，因为在英语连贯发音的过程中，单词的发音常常发生变化，如同化、连读、弱读、略读、失去爆破、轻重、语调等，了解这些知识对听力理解是非常必要的。考生要注意区别易混音素，提高辨音能力，搞清楚单词的正确读音，还要做到通过声音变化能分析出所传达的信息。

（3）内容

听力材料来源于生活、体现生活，与日常生活密切联系。内容主要涉及校园生活、日常生活、职场工作、人物、时事和科技等方面。

❖ 对话涉及的话题：计划打算、工作学习、购物、旅游、看病、生日、体育、求助等。

❖ 独白涉及的文体和题材：

文体：说明文、记叙文、新闻报道、故事等。

题材：社会文化（污染、能源、就业、交通、卫生、妇女、教育、假日、宗教、艺术等）；
科普知识（计算机、太空探测、航天、天气预测、农业工业、天文地理等）；
历史知识（重要人物、重大事件等）。

2. 考查点

博士研究生英语考试的考查点包括以下几个方面：

❖ 判断场景：会话者身份、所处地点、情绪、天气状况等。

❖ 数字推算：电话号码、日期、金钱数字、路程距离、时间长短等。

❖ 行为预测：会话者谈话的主题，以及将要去做什么。

❖ 主旨大意：根据所听到的内容进行逻辑推理，分析概括和归纳总结听力材料的主旨。

❖ 事实细节：事情发生的时间、地点、人物、事件、经过、结果等，所占比例较大。

❖ 推理判断：根据对话或短文所提供的特定情境，对听力内容进行推理判断。

❖ 观点态度：通过听力材料的重要细节、具体事实，揣摩、推断说话者的观点和态度。

❖ 目的原因：根据听力材料的中心思想和主要内容判断说话者的意图。



周一 听力题型之短对话

题型概述

短对话（short conversation），也叫单回合对话。据统计，简短对话中大约30%的问题是针对第一说话者的谈话内容提出的，大约70%是针对第二说话者的谈话内容提出的。多数第一说话者主要是引出话题，提供铺垫和背景；第二说话者就第一说话者的谈话表明观点、意见或进行补充说明。一般第二说话者对第一说话者的谈话所做的反应有：回答、同意、反对、建议、提问、补充等。通常对话结束后听力语音中或试卷上有一个问题，每段语音后大约有十几秒的时间间隙，要求考生在听完对话后根据问题从所给的选项中选出一个最佳答案。

【听力样题】

A. At a newsstand.　　B. At a car dealer's.

C. At a publishing house.　　D. At a newspaper office.

【听力原文】

M: I'd like to place an advertisement for a used car in this Sunday edition of your paper.

W: OK, but you have to run your advertisement all week. We can't quote rates for just Sunday.

Q: Where is the conversation most probably taking place?

短对话主要考查考生的英语应用水平，其题材与现实生活联系紧密，涉及的范围也都是考生比较熟悉的。总之，短对话主要是发生在校园、办公室、家庭及公共场所的，有关衣食住行等日常生活以及学习和工作的话题。

出题规律

根据短对话提问的角度和方式分类不同，其命题有如下规律：

(1) 事实状况题

关于谈话的一方或双方说了什么、所处状态、做某事的原因、结果如何等。提问方式通常为：

What do we learn from this conversation?

What can be inferred from the conversation?

(2) 行为活动题

关于谈话的一方或双方做过、正在做、准备去做什么，或一方建议另一方去做什么。提问方式通常为：

What will the man/woman most probably do?

What are the speakers probably going/trying to do?

(3) 观点态度题

关于谈话一方对另一方或第三方的行为、品德、观点等的态度或评价。提问方式通常为：

What does the woman/man mean/imply?

What does the woman/man think of…?

(4) 数字信息题

涉及时间、年龄、数量、速度、价格等信息。提问方式通常为：

What time …?

How much …?

(5) 谈论话题题

关于对话中所谈论的话题或对象。提问方式通常为：

What are they talking about?

What are the speakers talking about?

(6) 身份关系题

关于对话中某个人物的职业、身份或对话双方的关系等。提问方式通常为：

What's the woman's job?

What is the probable relationship between the (two) speakers?

(7) 地点场景题

关于对话发生的场合、地点或者涉及的人或事物所处的位置。提问方式通常为：

Where is … taking place?

Where …?

备考策略

在短对话部分，对话是在特定的语言环境中进行的，具有一定的情节，而短文后或试卷中提出的问题及所给选项又向考生明确了选择范围。因此，考生在听音时只要善于捕捉关键词和关键信息，便能做出正确选择。

(1) 提前阅读选项并进行推理判断。基于选项和主要信息应把握以下四点：

- 选项通常都与话题有关，由此判断话题；
- 根据选项的形式判断所提问题的类型和内容；
- 根据选项的相似程度推测正确答案；
- 抓住选项信息的差别，例如：数字、动词词组、名词等。

(2) 根据关键词判断场景以及说话人的身份、职业、关系等。短对话所提供的上下文极其有限，给考生对谈话内容的理解和判断带来一定的困难。但考生若能抓住关键词，则能明确谈话的内容，提高对谈话内容的理解，并做出正确的推理和判断。比如对话中出现了 menu，order，table for two，bill 等词或短语，则谈话的地点一定是在餐馆，谈话的内容一定与用餐有关。这样对可能提出的问题，如 Where does the conversation most probably take place?就不难做出回答。

（3）注意记笔记，将人物、地点、时间等对号入座。短对话中往往涉及多个数字、地点、时间等，但不能确定实际会考到哪一个，甚至有时需要快速地计算，因此，做笔记有利于找出正确的答案。

（4）预测提问方式。在简短对话部分，每段对话后都有十几秒钟的停顿。在此期间要利用这段时间迅速浏览下一个问题的选项。通过选项的内容，预测听力内容和第三者的提问方式，从而在听音时将注意力集中在与所提问题有关的关键词和关键信息上。

（5）要善于推测言外之意。考生在做听力测试时不仅要能听懂谈话内容，还要能够对谈话内容做出正确的推理、判断，推断出谈话的内在含义，或言外之意，这对选择正确答案是必不可少的。

5 大场景（一）校园生活

博士研究生听力考试中的短对话和长对话一般都会设定一个场景，考查点因场景不同而不同。常考的听力场景包括校园生活、家庭生活、工作、社会生活以及出行等。下面就来看看各种听力场景及其解题方法。

熟悉场景

校园生活是博士研究生英语听力短对话中常考的话题，是重点场景之一。

（1）学习场景

场景人物：学生

场景涉及内容：课堂发言、小组讨论、课后作业、准备考试、图书馆资源利用等。

场景词汇：proofread，final exam，results，theory，essay，subject，title，be through with 等。

（2）教务场景

场景人物：教师（导师、辅导员）、学监等教务人员、学生等。

场景涉及内容：学期计划、调课信息、考试安排、课程介绍等。

场景词汇：midterm，finals，score，class discussion，elementary，intermediate，advanced 等。

（3）听课场景

场景人物：教师、学生等。

场景涉及内容：学生上课迟到、缺课，一些学生不适应教授的课程，教授给学生留作业等。

场景词汇：professor，briefing，complicated，extra copies，presentation，mission 等。

（4）选课场景

场景人物：教师、学生等。

场景涉及内容：学生是否有资格选某门课，对老师的评价，课程的难易程度及优缺点等。

场景词汇：elective，prerequisite course，register，sign up for the course，pick up，full 等。

（5）论文场景

场景人物：教授与学生之间或者学生之间。

场景涉及内容：讨论论文写作的相关事宜：论文题目、查找资料、就论文提问等。

场景词汇：plagiarism（剽窃），optional course，biology，course，class permit 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉校园生活场景词汇。英语交际通常使用一种模式化的语言，在固定的场景中，其词汇和表达也相对比较固定，平时考生应注意积累场景高频词汇和习惯表达，这样在听力短对话部分才能达到未听半知的状态。

（2）分析选项，判断场景。客观题目的选项设计一般都有其内在的逻辑关系，有些相互印证，有些截然对立，还有些毫不相关，但这些选项可以提示考生短对话中的关键词和表达。考生通过阅读选项，捕捉题目中出现的关键词，就可以判断此类场景是否为校园生活场景。

（3）对话中涉及的被细致描述的各项事务的细节问题、时间、地点、计划推迟或变更是考查重点。

（4）注意同义替换。直接听到的往往不是答案，必须听完完整的对话和问题后再做判断。

典型真题

1. A. She misplaced her class card for biology.
   B. She arrived for registration too early.
   C. She missed registration.
   D. The man cannot spell her last name.（北京大学 2001 年）

【名师点评】B。分析选项可知，对话可能与 registration 有关。听力原文中的 Registration 在选项 B 和 C 中重现，但原文中的 until tomorrow 与选项 B 中的 too early 对应。故答案为 B。

【听力原文】

W: My name is Helen Wyatt. W-Y-A-T-T. Can I get a class card for biology today?

M: Oh, no. Registration for students whose last names begin with "W" doesn't start until tomorrow.

Q: What has happened to the woman?

2. A. The woman should have complained to her neighbor.
   B. The woman should stay out until the neighbors are quiet.
   C. The woman should have stayed at the library.
   D. The lab will be a better place for reading.（南开大学 2007 年）

【名师点评】C。听力原文中的 stay at the library 在选项 C 中重现，Why don't 与选项 C 中的 should have 对应。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

W: The people next door are making so much noise. I just can't concentrate on paintings.

M: Why don't you stay at the library? It's much quiet there.

Q: What does the man mean?

实战演练

3. A. English teachers usually like reading a lot.
   B. The English like to read a lot and listen to music.
   C. Not everyone from England likes to read all the time.

D. People who teach English like things other than books.

4. A. It wasn't very well designed.

B. Its results were just as expected.

C. It fully reflected the students' ability.

D. Its results fell short of her expectations.

【名师点评】

3. D。根据对话中男士的话可知，教授所做的并不都是阅读，原文中的 doesn't 和 an English teacher 分别与选项 D 中的 other than 和 teach English 对应。故答案为 D。

4. D。分析选项可知，对话与 It 有关。原文中的 Quite disappointing 与选项 D 中的 fell short of her expectations 对应。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

3. W: Professor Johnson helps me so much that I'm thinking of buying him a book of poetry.

M: I think you should get him a record, just because being an English teacher doesn't mean all he does is reading.

Q: What does the man mean?

4. M: How many students passed the final physics exam in your class?

W: Forty, but still as many as 20 percent of the class failed. Quite disappointing, isn't it?

Q: What does the woman think of the exam?

5 大场景（二）家庭生活

熟悉场景

家庭生活场景的对话主要是围绕着与家庭成员相关的活动展开的对话，在博士研究生入学考试中涉及购车场景、居室布置场景、搬家场景、送礼物场景等。

（1）购车场景

场景人物：家庭成员、朋友、导购员等。

场景涉及内容：打算购买新车的型号或品牌、如何办理购车手续、买回的新车怎么样等。

场景词汇：new car，nice compacts，mid-size cars，mini-vans，SUVs，fit family 等。

（2）居室布置场景

场景人物：妻子、丈夫、孩子等。

场景涉及内容：装修房子、重新布置家里的家具、更换窗帘、到家具店购买新家具等。

场景词汇：furniture store，coffee table，rocking chair，air-conditioning 等。

（3）搬家场景

场景人物：家庭成员、朋友等。

场景涉及内容：新住所的地点、基本情况，搬家的原因等。

场景词汇：decoration，mortgage，chimney，front door bell，real estate，step 等。

（4）送礼物场景

场景人物：朋友、家人等。

场景涉及内容：生日聚会、新年、感恩节、情人节等。

场景词汇：gift，present，souvenir，give，send，Christmas，Thanksgiving 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉家庭生活场景词汇。家庭生活场景涉及多个方面，场景词汇多，考生平时应注意积累家庭生活场景高频词汇。

（2）分析选项，判断场景。对话是一个相互联系的整体，听对话前，考生要浏览选项，了解一定的信息，并预测话题及内容。根据选项的关键词判断对话场景是否为家庭生活场景。

（3）注意对话中的信息。在听对话的过程中，注意对话的人物、时间、地点（尤其是多个易混的地点及相应的信息）、语音语调、上下文之间的联系等，同时还要排除干扰，适当地做一些记录，以增强记忆。弄清对话大意，看清问题，即可选出正确答案。

（4）注意谈话环境。考生重点听主要信息，不要试图听清每一个词。短对话听力题目测试考生对于对话主要内容的全面把握，而不是像听写一样，去听清每一个词。

典型真题

5. A. It's really nice to have a change.
   B. They ought to have been changed long ago.
   C. The curtains are of wrong color.
   D. The curtains are still quite good.（北京大学 2000 年）

【名师点评】D。注意 man 所说的内容。Why，what's wrong with them？说明 man 认为 curtains 没有什么问题。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

W: I'm going to take down those curtains and put up new ones.
M: Why，what's wrong with them?
Q: What does the man mean?

6. A. Find room for the paintings.
   B. Put more coats of paint on the wall.
   C. Paint the walls to match the furniture.
   D. Hang some pictures for decoration.（南开大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】D。原文中的 paintings 在选项 A 中重现，the walls could do with a few paintings 意味着女士建议男士以在墙上挂几幅画。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

M: How do you like the way I've arranged the furniture in my living room?
W: Fine，but I think the walls could do with a few paintings.
Q: What does the woman suggest the man do?

实战演练

7. A. At Anne's Clothing Store.　　B. Inside a shopping center.
   C. At a downtown street.　　D. In a suburban residential district.
8. A. It is really nice to change it.　　B. It has been used for a long time.
   C. It is still in good condition.　　D. It ought to be replaced.

【名师点评】

7. C。男士问：Anne's Clothing Store 在哪个地方?这是个服装店的名字。女士回答：在你的右面，邮局和法院之间。从这些机构可以推断，这个对话发生在市中心。故答案为 C。

8. D。注意对话中 woman 所说的内容。原文中的 going to replace 与选项 D 中的 ought to be replaced 对应，选项 D 中的 it 指代的是原文中的 tablecloth（桌布）。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

7. M: May I ask where Anne's Clothing Store is located?
   W: Of course. Just keep walking down for another 3 blocks and it'll be on your right between the post office and the courthouse.
   Q: Where is this dialogue occurring?

8. W: I am going to replace the tablecloth with the new one.
   M: Why, what's wrong with it?
   Q: What does the woman mean?

5 大场景（三）工作场景

熟悉场景

工作场景是博士研究生英语听力短对话中常考的话题，是重点场景之一。这类场景主要涉及办公室场景、面试场景、收发邮件场景、开会场景等。

（1）办公室场景

场景人物：老板、秘书、前台、雇主等。

场景涉及内容：升职、加薪、培训、处理投诉、离职、退休等。

场景词汇：qualification，cost living rise，retire，take over，layoff，salary，get a rise 等。

（2）面试场景

场景人物：求职者、面试官等。

场景涉及内容：求职者的资质，求职公司的待遇福利，求职者以前从事的工作等。

场景词汇：applicant，apply for，interview，vacancy，accept，turn down，resume 等。

（3）收发邮件场景

场景人物：秘书、上司、助理、顾客等。

场景涉及内容：通知、邀请、投诉等。

场景词汇：attachment（附件），log in（登录），log off（注销），forward the mail to 等。

（4）开会场景

场景人物：秘书、上司、助理、职员等。

场景涉及内容：开会的时间地点、开会的内容等。

场景词汇：appointment（约会），move on to，cancel，presentation，replace，on behalf of 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉工作场景词汇。考生可以把真题中出现的自己没掌握的词汇挑出来单独记在笔记本上，归类记忆，把真题中出现的一些场景故事记熟。真正考试的时候，考生可以靠这些归类的词汇、背景知识和场景故事，来有目的地解决问题。

（2）听前预测话题场景和问题。根据选项进行预测主要有两方面，一方面是预测话题场景，另一方面是预测问题的类型。如果考生在听对话和问题前，能够根据选项判断出该对话的话题和问题类型，就可以对将要听到的对话有一个预热的过程，为下一步做好准备。

（3）听清问题，避免答非所问。短对话的内容属于日常交际范畴，话语不会太过复杂或难以理解，但由于录音只读一遍，考生稍不留神就可能错过了答题的信息点。所以，在听每段短对话时，考生一定要高度集中注意力，抓住对话双方表述的意思。听清问题，避免答非所问。

典型真题

9. A. The woman is a kind-hearted boss.
   B. The woman is strict with her employees.
   C. The man always has excuses for being late.
   D. The man's alarm clock didn't work that morning.（南开大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】B。根据听力中 woman 所说的 Late again! What's the excuse this time? 判断，woman 的措辞犀利，选项 B 为正确答案。

【听力原文】

W: Good morning, Jack. Late again! What's the excuse this time?
M: I'm awfully sorry I must have turned the alarm off and gone back to sleep again.
Q: What do we learn from the conversation?

10. A. He doesn't think it's promising to be a salesman.
    B. He is not good at selling books.
    C. He disagrees with his boss on the matter of energy.
    D. His boss wants to fire him.（北京大学 2001 年）

【名师点评】B。根据选项中的主语均为 He 和问题，考生需要注意原文中 man 的说话内容。原文中的 no salesman 与选项 B 中的 is not good at selling 对应。故答案为 B。

【听力原文】

W: How's your new job with the book company?
M: It seemed promising at first, but I guess I'm no salesman. And to add fuel to the fire, the boss and I have our differences.
Q: What do we know about the man's job?

实战演练

11. A. He was fired from his job.
    B. He was warned about being more punctual from now on.
    C. The management cut his working hours.
    D. He was promoted.
12. A. He's waiting to hear from potential employers.
    B. He plans to write the letters soon.
    C. He missed the job application deadlines.

D. His job interviews went very well.

【名师点评】

11. B。原文中的 begin 和 getting to the office on time 分别与选项 B 中的 from now on 和 being more punctual 对应，原文中的 must 语气与 was warned about 对应。故答案为 B。
12. A。由原文中的 still too soon …haven't even passed yet 可推断，男士目前没有收到面试通知，正在等待可能的回复，与选项 A 表达的意思一致。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

11. M: I came as soon as you called. Is there a problem?
    W: Yes, Mr. Chu. You must begin getting to the office on time, or we will no longer need your service here.
    Q: What happened to Mr. Chu?
12. W: Well, I have my first job interview on Monday. Have you had any luck with those letters of application you sent out?
    M: It's still too soon to tell. Most of the application deadlines haven't even passed yet.
    Q: What can be inferred about the man?

5 大场景（四）社会生活

熟悉场景

短对话中涉及社会生活的场景有餐馆吃饭、房屋出租、银行、医疗等。

（1）餐馆吃饭场景

场景人物：餐馆老板、朋友、上司等。

场景涉及内容：评点餐馆、菜品如何、服务质量、环境等。

场景词汇：Italian restaurant，crowded，on diet，dessert，contain，steak 等。

（2）房屋出租场景

场景人物：房东、房客等。

场景涉及内容：房屋样式、付款方式、内部设施、房客的住房要求及房东的租房规则等。

场景词汇：the style of house，ways of payment，requirements，facilities，environment 等。

（3）银行场景

场景人物：顾客、银行职员等。

场景涉及内容：申请账户、转账提款、使用银行账户等。

场景词汇：open an account，student account，permission from bank，banking，interest 等。

（4）医疗场景

场景人物：医生、病人、家属等。

场景涉及内容：病人病情、生病症状、服用的药物等。

场景词汇：waiting room，catch a cold，physical examination，dosage 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉社会生活场景词汇。在相同的场景中会使用到相同或相近的词汇，如果考生熟悉并掌握了这些场景中的常用词汇，这对于把握原文信息、提高听力理解能力起着非常重要的作用。

（2）预览选项，预测谈话内容，抓住重点。考生要把握播音之前的时间，根据选项预测对话内容和提问内容。通过选项的对比和对关键词的研究，预测出对话的内容和将要提问到的问题。

（3）找出对话关键词。因为短对话时间较短，所以容不得迟疑，需要考生把握对话中出现的关键词，一旦关键词与答案中的关键词相同，就要毫不犹豫地选择。

（4）重视说话较多的一方。短对话一般出现两个对话者，需要考生分清主次，对说话内容较多的一方应该更加重视，因为问题极有可能是针对此部分的。

典型真题

13. A. The bank near the railway station closes late.
    B. The bank around the corner is not open today.
    C. The woman should try her luck in the bank nearby.
    D. The woman should use dollars instead of pounds.（南开大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】 C。注意 man 所说的内容。原文中的 Why don't you try 与选项 C 中的 should try 对应；the one near the railway station 与选项 C 中的 in the bank nearby 对应。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

W: Excuse me, but could you tell me where I can change American Dollars into British Pounds?

M: There is a bank around the corner, but I'm afraid it's already past its closing time. Why don't you try the one near the railway station?

Q: What does the man mean?

14. A. Lose weight.　　B. Quit smoking.
    C. Weigh himself frequently.　　D. Have a talk with the doctor.

（南开大学 2007 年）

【名师点评】 A。问题问的是 woman 认为 man 还应该做什么？注意 woman 所说的内容，原文中的 reducing weight 与选项 A 对应。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

M: The doctor said if I kept smoking, I would increase my chances of having a heart attack.

W: Did he suggest reducing weight, too?

Q: What does the woman think the man should also do?

实战演练

15. A. At the information desk.　　B. In a department store.
    C. In a restaurant.　　D. At a railway station.

16. A. He'll give the woman a few prescriptions right away.
B. He'll be away from the office for one or two days.
C. The woman doesn't need anything for her cough.
D. The woman should continue taking the medicine.

【名师点评】

15. C。根据选项，可判断问题是关于地点的。原文中女士提及 the waiter，got served，what I ordered，男士提到 your meal will be free，从中可以判断对话发生在饭店。故答案为 C。

16. D。由选项中的 prescriptions，cough 和 medicine 可知，对话可能与看病有关。原文中的 give it another day or two 与选项 D 中的 should continue taking the medicine 对应。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

15. W: I have a complaint to make, sir. I'd waited 10 minutes at the table before the waiter showed up. When I finally got served, I found it was not what I ordered.
M: I'm terribly sorry, madam. It is a bit unusually busy tonight. As compensation, your meal will be free.
Q: Where does the conversation probably take place?

16. W: Doctor, this cough medicine doesn't seem to help. Can you give me a different prescription?
M: Let's give it another day or two and see how you're doing then.
Q: What does the doctor imply?

5 大场景（五）旅游交通

熟悉场景

旅游交通场景中也会涉及一些旅游景点的描绘以及旅游活动、交通工具的介绍。

（1）旅游目的地场景

场景人物：朋友、乘客、空姐等。

场景涉及内容：到达目的地的时间、同行者、携带物品、天气情况等。

场景词汇：landmark, waterfall, terminal, weather observing, emergency exit, embassy 等。

（2）交通工具场景

场景人物：乘客、机场服务人员等。

场景涉及内容：乘坐交通工具、乘坐时间、目的地、飞机晚点等。

场景词汇：public transport, private transport, airplane, ferry, river cruise, boat trips 等。

（3）食宿相关场景

场景人物：酒店服务人员、顾客等。

场景涉及内容：酒店预订、酒店的布置、是否客满等。

场景词汇：landlady, young adults, cop, vacant room, lobby, reservation, hotel 等。

（4）旅游景点场景

场景人物：家人、朋友、亲戚等。

场景涉及内容：到什么景点、景点的位置、景点的特点等。

场景词汇：botanical garden，amusement park，surfing，bush-walking，souvenir 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉旅游交通场景词汇。场景词汇的积累主要靠平时阅读中记笔记和做习题特别是真题时的归类记忆，因此养成良好的记笔记的习惯对备考十分有利。

（2）根据选项判断问题类型。这类题目的选项一般都是某种事实情况的陈述。

（3）注意捕捉选项中的关键词。听音前，考生应提取选项要点，确定听音时应该捕捉的重点内容。一般某事的原因或结果常为考查重点。

（4）对选项中及录音中涉及的关键信息进行标记，根据问题对号入座。将关键信息点加以记录，然后根据问题确定答案。

典型真题

17. A. Fred likes the beautiful scenery along the way to Canada.
B. Fred usually flies to Canada with Jane.
C. Fred persuaded Jane to change her mind.
D. Fred is planning a trip to Canada.（南开大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】C。根据选项中的内容，注意与 Fred 相关的信息。原文中的 invited…to join him 与选项 C 中的 Fred persuaded…to change her mind 对应；原文中的 me 指代选项 C 中的 Jane。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

M: How did you go to Canada, Jane? Did you fly?
W: I was planning to, because it's such a long trip by bus or by train, but Fred decided to drive and invited me to join him. It took us two days and one night.
Q: What can we infer from the conversation?

18. A. By bus.　　B. By taxi.
C. By air.　　D. By train.（北京大学 2001 年）

【名师点评】C。考生应注意问题的主语为 the guests，原文与此对应的交通方式为 flight，与选项 C 对应。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

M: The guests are leaving for Los Angeles today on the ten o'clock flight — we need someone to take them to the airport on time.
W: Ordinarily, I'd be happy to, but my car is in the garage.
Q: How are the guests going to Los Angeles?

实战演练

19. A. The man must be a very slow driver.
B. She did a lot of walking in Florida.
C. The man should have spent less time in Florida.
D. She got to Florida long before the man did.

20. A. The man will take a flight.　　B. The man will leave at once.
C. The flight will leave at 2:30.　　D. The flight will be late.

【名师点评】

19. **A**。由选项中的 driver 以及 walking 可知，对话可能与旅行方式有关。woman 所说的 have walked there in less time 是夸张的说法，与选项 A 表达的意思一致。故答案为 A。

20. **A**。对话中谈论的是上飞机的时间，可见该男士要乘飞机。由 you'd better leave for the airport 可以推断出答案为 A。

【听力原文】

19. M: The vacation in Florida was splendid. But it took me five days to drive down to Florida.
W: Five days? I could have walked there in less time.
Q: What does the woman mean?

20. M: My flight leaves at 4:30.
W: Then you'd better leave for the airport at about half past two.
Q: What can we learn from this conversation?



周二　听力题型之长对话（上）

题型概述

长对话听力以对话形式出现，词数大约在 200 ~300 之间，针对每段长对话的问题一般是 3 或 4 个，提问的方式与短对话相同。长对话的谈话双方就某一个话题进行多个回合的交流，信息量更多，人物态度、语气、情感变化更复杂。

长对话涉及的对话场景内容非常广泛，从校园生活到生活中的各种场景。考生可以通过抓住“信号词”来判断具体场景。经常涉及的场景有：

- ❖ 校园生活：入学、借书、师生交流、论文、课程的评价、考试、补课及业余活动等。
- ❖ 社会生活：约会、结婚、买车、购物等。
- ❖ 职场工作：求职、在职培训、项目计划、例行工作等。
- ❖ 医疗健康：看医生、生病等。
- ❖ 人物故事：访谈嘉宾经历、介绍著名公司、影视明星等。
- ❖ 科学技术：电脑、生物发展等。
- ❖ 文化教育：书籍、文化现象等。

出题规律

长对话听力题难度上接近于短文理解，考查的方式也与短文理解相似，其主要考查要点：

（1）数字、时间类题型。有直接型和计算型。在长对话里，数字、时间点、年代等即使不是考点，也是重要的信息词或定位词。

（2）地点、场景题。把握特定地点的信息词、提示词。

（3）细节题：长对话的主导题型。细节题是最常见的题型，主要是针对对话中提到的某一点提问：

What is the woman looking for?

What problem do the speakers have at this time?

（4）主旨题：就对话涉及的主题提问，常用的问句有：

What is the main topic of the conversation?

What is the conversation mainly about?

What are the people discussing?

（5）推断题：考查的是根据对话所提供的信息考生能得出什么样的结论，常用的问句有：

What can we conclude from the conversation?

What can be inferred from the conversation?

What is … thinking of doing?

What can be inferred about the man/woman?

What do we learn about the man/woman?

What do we learn from the conversation?

What does the man/woman imply?

备考策略

（1）快速浏览各题选项。在没有听原文之前考生只能通过题目的选项来“串”对话，猜测对话场景以及内容。根据各题选项中出现的相同或相关词语，推测出短文的大致主题，从而更容易、更准确地理解短文内容，并且有助于主旨题的解答。

（2）推测问题类型及内容。很多选项都有比较明显的特点，或者使用某种专门的表达形式，如均为动词原形或均为人物角色等；或者含有一些标志性的词语，如均含有描述某人性格或某事特点的词语。通过这些选项特点及选项内容，考生便可以推测问题可能考查的核心内容，从而在听音时更有针对性。注意考生在推测问题时，应与主题联系起来，因为每一道问题都不会偏离主题；反过来结合几道题的考查核心，可以进一步确认主题内容。

（3）抓取关键点，适当做笔记。听音时考生应重点留意开头、结尾以及与选项相关的信息，并针对选项要点适当做笔记。

（4）根据提问内容，结合所做笔记，迅速得出答案。

（5）连贯记忆，准确推理。做听力时，要连贯记忆听力内容，利用后面听到的信息补充前面漏听或听不清的内容，并对听前、听中的预测和判断进行推理、分析、修正，提高理解的准确性。

（6）正确选项特点：

❖ 原文重现。某个选项中的大部分词语如果在原文中被提到，那么这个选项往往就是答案。适用于细节题、细节归纳题。

❖ 同义替换原则。正确选项往往与对话里的关键表达产生了同义替换，即用不同的词汇、短语、搭配等表达相近的意思。

❖ 近义复现：选项与原文意思相近，但换了一种表达方式。

7 大场景（一）校园生活

熟悉场景

校园生活场景是博士研究生英语听力长对话中必考的话题之一。

（1）学习场景

场景人物：家长、学生、老师

场景涉及内容：

❖ 学习方法很重要，什么方法最合适？效果最好？

❖ 学习遇到困难会灰心，对方总会给出鼓励和解决建议。

❖ 学习成绩不理想，建议不要过分看重成绩，应该找出原因和解决方法。

场景词汇：distraction；relax；lack confidence in；discouraged；prepare lessons before class 等。

(2) 上课场景

场景人物：学生、教授

场景涉及内容：

❖ 学生会谈论课程安排，有时可能会因为某种原因取消或推迟某门课程。

❖ 因病或其他原因落课时经常跟同学打听课程内容，有时跟同学借笔记。

❖ 学生对教师的表现进行评价，学生会说老师比较严格，会布置很多作业。

场景词汇：active involvement；postpone；attendance；stay awake；pushover 等。

(3) 作业和论文场景

场景人物：学生、老师

场景涉及内容：

❖ 老师布置的作业一般较难、较多，有的学生完不成，赶不上最后期限。

❖ 论文题目和内容经常需要征询教授的意见，教授往往会指出问题并提出建议。

❖ 作业或论文上交以后，老师会给出评语或建议，经常是需要改进。

场景词汇：rough draft；project；deadline；book report；extension；data；feedback 等。

(4) 图书馆场景

场景人物：学生

场景涉及内容：

❖ 到图书馆借书需要用学生证或借阅证。

❖ 书要按时归还，但有时会忘记还书或把书弄丢了，因而不得不交罚款。

❖ 以什么方式读书，泛读还是精读？读后的感想？对书的评价？一般来说好的评价居多。

场景词汇：science fiction；library card；stacks（书架）；subscribe to；out of print 等。

(5) 考试场景

场景人物：学生

场景涉及内容：

❖ 大部分学生不喜欢考试，考前总是表现得很紧张。

❖ 考试之前或之后学生会讨论考试的难易程度，经常是比较难。

❖ 考试成绩公布后，大部分学生会表现出对自己的成绩不满。

场景词汇：quiz；exam week；open-book exam；make up the exam；retake；reschedule 等。

(6) 课余活动场景

场景人物：老师、学生

场景涉及内容：

❖ 活动或选举后，获胜者会得到祝贺，一般他们会表现得很谦虚；失败者会得到安慰和鼓励。

❖ 选举前的准备活动，要成立选举委员会，经常还会涉及对选举结果的预测。

❖ 比赛、电影、音乐会的票往往很难买，一定要提前订票或买票，经常会碰到票卖光。

场景词汇：participate in；abstract painting；shutter；photo album；flashlight 等。

(7) 学费及奖学金场景

场景人物：同学、朋友、老师

场景涉及内容：

❖ 学生上学要缴纳学费和杂费。

❖ 有些家庭困难的同学需要申请助学贷款或助学金。

❖ 自己拿到奖学金肯定会非常兴奋；别人拿到奖学金时，会表示祝贺。

场景词汇：student loan；expenses；tuition；finance；fellowship；financial aids；apply for 等。

(8) 毕业打算场景

场景人物：学生、老师

场景涉及内容：

❖ 学生经常会感叹大学时光过得太快，毕业转瞬即至。

❖ 毕业时有晚会，同学们很期待并会积极参加。

❖ 很多毕业生找工作会通过校园招聘会，有的也会通过报纸上的广告。

场景词汇：graduation party；advanced study；graduate；post graduate；farewell 等。

答题技巧

(1) 熟悉校园生活场景词汇。每个场景的词汇并不是很多，而且它们是很固定的。在听英文材料之前，背诵了解相关领域的词汇对答题很有帮助。

(2) 提前浏览，有备而听。听力题目本身是线索，考试时在听力考试录音开始之前要尽可能抽时间浏览所有选项，以便预测对话的主题和相关细节内容。

(3) 分析选项，预测内容。选项的预读是对考生阅读能力的考核，能不能在短时间内看完长对话后的所有选项将是制胜的关键因素之一。在分析选项这部分，希望考生能针对如下三个关键部分进行快速判断：

A) 人物关系（邻居、同学、师生、同事等，能够为后面做题判断人物身份起到良好的铺垫）。

B) 动作行为（动词和动词结构往往是最重要的考查对象之一）。

C) 态度词（长对话结尾往往涉及态度判断和结论）。

(4) 边听边选。尽量在听的时候确定哪个选项能够最大程度地吻合。平时训练做到“边听边记”、强调语言输出的强化训练，上了考场强调“边听边选”。一旦做出判断，就不要过多纠缠于这一题。

典型真题

No. 1

1. At the university, Mr. Robinson specialized in _____.

A. maths　　B. physics

C. water management　　D. geography

2. Mr. Robinson worked for the Indian Government because of _____.

A. university links　　B. government agreement

C. company projects　　D. degree requirement（北京大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】

1. C。题干中的 specialized in 意为“专业研究……”，Robinson 是男士名字。注意对话中 Robinson 提到的内容。原文中的 specialization 与题干中的 specialized 为同根词。故答案为 C。
2. A。根据题干中的关键词 Indian Government 定位答案出现的位置，原文中的 university，links 在选项 A 中重现。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

W: Ah, good morning. It's Robinson, isn't it?
M: Yes.
W: Have a seat.
M: Thank you.
W: OK, I've got your letter of application. Now, as you know, when you apply for a post with our company, we need to find out a few things about both your academic background and recent work experience.
M: Sure.
W: First of all, A-levels?
M: Yes I've got 3, geography, math and physics.
W: Geography, math, and physics. OK, and what about your degree?
M: I went to Manchester University, and got an engineering degree, with water management as my specialization.
W: Hh-huh, I see.
M: And for work experience, I started out after graduating in 1996 in India, working for the Indian Government.
W: Did you work as a volunteer?
M: No, it was a three-year water irrigation project.
W: That sounds fascinating. How did you organize that? You say it was a British company then?
M: No, no, my university had links with the Indian Engineering University, so it was organized at that level.

实战演练

No. 2

3. Which of the following is NOT true about the book?
   A. It's on the syllabus.　　B. It's in the reading room.
   C. It's in the library.　　D. It's on reserve.
4. Books on reserve _____.
   A. are not available to all students
   B. can be taken away from the library
   C. can be read only in the reserve room

D. cannot be found in the library

【名师点评】

3. **B**。注意题干中的 NOT。原文提到 the book 在 reserve room，选项 B 与此信息不符。故答案为 B。

4. **C**。原文中的 must 与选项 C 中的 only 对应，原文中的 in the library during that time 与选项 C 中的 in the reserve room 对应，原文中的 read 在选项 C 中重现。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

W: Can I help you?

M: Yes. My sociology class is supposed to read a chapter in a book called "Sociology and the Modern Age". According to the syllabus, the book is in the library, but I can't find it.

W: Do you have your syllabus with you?

M: Yes, here it is.

W: Let me see. Oh yes. Your professor has placed this book on reserve. That means you cannot find it on the shelves in its usual place. You need to go to a special room called the reserve room. It's down the hall and to the right.

M: I beg your pardon?

W: You see, your professor wants everyone in the class to read the chapter. If one student removes the book from the library, it is likely that none of the other students will have the opportunity to read it. So, your professor has insured that all students have the opportunity to read it by placing it on reserve.

M: So, will I be able to find this book?

W: You can go to the reserve room and ask the reserve librarian for the book. The student can have the book for a few hours, and he or she must read it in the library during that time. That way all students have a chance to read it.

M: Okay. Thank you. I understand now.

W: Will there be anything else?

M: No! I am on my way to the reserve room. Thanks again!

7 大场景（二）社会交往

熟悉场景

社会交往场景是考博英语听力长对话中必考的话题之一。这类场景主要涉及购物消费、租房、装饰维修、休闲娱乐、外出就餐等。

(1) 购物消费场景

场景人物：顾客、家人、朋友、同事

场景涉及内容：

- 购物前，对商品的了解，如价格、材质、颜色、功能作用等。
- 购物后主要是对产品的反馈，一般都是出现问题，需要索赔、退货等。

❖ 物品的优缺点和总体评价。

场景词汇：in season；change；bargain；famous brands；stationary；sports goods 等。

(2) 租房场景

场景人物：房东、住户

场景涉及内容：

❖ 住户和房东的相处以及讨价还价，一般住户倾向于找价格低的房子。

❖ 对房子的评价，包括价格、地理位置。

❖ 租房子的过程往往很不容易。

场景词汇：reserve；full up；book up；double room；bedroom；dining room；balcony 等。

(3) 装饰维修场景

场景人物：家人、朋友

场景涉及内容：

❖ 房屋重新布局，换桌椅、窗帘，更新家具等。

❖ 电器设备安装，购买新的家电设备，安装在哪里合适等。

❖ 检测维修家用电器，家电使用寿命到期，需要维修等。

场景词汇：furnished；furniture；decoration；painting；cupboard；shower；air conditioner 等。

(4) 休闲娱乐场景

场景人物：同学、朋友、家庭成员

场景涉及内容：

❖ 郊游，与朋友、家人到野外游玩。

❖ 参加运动，往往是一些热门运动。如，cycling，rock climbing，skiing，bungee（蹦极）等。

❖ 听音乐会，听后的感受、听音乐会可以陶冶情操等。

场景词汇：keep pets；tame dog；gardening；play chess；live broadcast；program 等。

(5) 外出就餐场景

场景人物：同学、朋友、家人、师生

场景涉及内容：

❖ 询问饭店的特色菜，对饭菜的评价，可口、有特色等。

❖ 饭菜不如意、服务态度差等对此提出投诉，最终会得到赔偿。

❖ 吃完饭结账，计算需要给多少钱。

场景词汇：napkin（餐巾纸）；order；tip；menu；snack；medium；go Dutch（AA制）；treat 等。

答题技巧

(1) 熟悉社会交往场景词汇。由于涉及社会交往的对话较多，长对话的场景就显得格外重要，准确判断对话场景的前提是熟悉相关场景的词汇。

(2) 预测对话内容。读选项信息，能迅速把握它们的内在联系，从而预测所听对话材料的基本内容，并且从各个问题间的内在联系提炼出对话的中心思想，更好地理解各检测点的细节。这对于接下来的听力理解很有帮助。

（3）分清主次，捕捉信息。与生活中的情形相似，双方对话的时候常有主次之分，如一方询问，另一方作答时，关键信息多出现在作答一方，考点自然也就多出于此。分清对话双方的主次对于预测考点出现的位置、提高正确率大有帮助。

（4）听时迅速抓住考点。考点的位置多是对话一方某段发言的开头和结尾部分，这也完全符合西方人的思维习惯，即在发言伊始多采用开门见山的方法，而在发言结尾又总括强调。

典型真题

No. 3

Customer's name:		5
Customer's current driver's license No.:		6

（清华大学 2002 年）

【名师点评】

5. Frank Moorcroft。针对原文中的问题“Can I just get your name?”，男士的回答是 Frank Moorcroft，注意原文中对名字的拼写。故答案为 Frank Moorcroft。
6. UT9128。原文中的 current driver's license 与题干重复，据此定位答案。注意要填入的是 number，字母要大写。

【听力原文】

A: Good morning. Golden Wheels Car Rentals. How can I help you?
B: Yes, good morning. I'd like to hire a car, please.
A: Can I just get your name, sir?
B: Yes, Frank Moorcroft.
A: Could you spell that please?
B: Yes. Frank: F-R-A-N-K; Moorcroft: M-double O-R-C-R-O-F-T.
A: And the address?
B: My home address?
A: Yes, sir. We need your home address.
B: Oh, right. OK, Flat 26, 19 Lake Road, Richmond.
A: And your telephone number there?
B: Uh, 3697-45.
A: Are you the holder of a current driver's license?
B: Yes, I am.
A: Could I have the number please, sir?
B: Uh, just let me find it. Ah, here we are: UT9128.
A: Right, now what kind of vehicle were you looking for?
B: I was thinking of doing some off-road driving.

实战演练

No. 4

7. What is the relationship between the two speakers?
A. Friends. B. Neighbors.

C. Colleagues.　　D. Client and agent.

8. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the conversation you have heard?

A. There is a separate garden for this apartment upstairs.

B. In auction a person can buy articles at the lowest prices.

C. The man decides to rent another apartment downtown at last.

D. Some furniture and appliances are provided in the apartment.

【名师点评】

7. D。对话的开始是两个人打招呼的情景，根据后来两个人的对话内容可以听出来 woman 带着 man 看一套正在出租的房子。因此，可以判断两个人的关系应该是房产中介和租客。故答案为 D。

8. D。对话中 woman 提到花园要两家共用，因此可以排除选项 A；woman 对 auction 的解释是 It's where the person who offers the highest price buys the article. 排除选项 B；当 man 提出房子的租金太贵的时候，woman 说道 But a few blocks downtown would be much more expensive. 对话中没有明确告诉我们是否 man 要租下这套房子，排除 C 选项。

【听力原文】

Agent: I'm sorry I'm late. Have you been waiting long?

Customer: No, I've only just arrived.

Agent: Now, here are the keys. Let's go in. There are two apartments. The one for rent is upstairs.

Customer: Is there a garden?

Agent: Yes, you'll share the garden at the back.

Customer: That's fine.

Agent: Do come in.

Customer: Thank you. I like the carpet.

Agent: The colors are nice, aren't they? This apartment is in good condition. Here is your lounge.

Customer: Where would we eat?

Agent: There is this corner here or you can use your kitchen. Come and see.

Customer: The kitchen is quite small.

Agent: Yes, but it has everything, cooker, fridge, washing-machine, even a dishwasher.

Customer: And there are lots of cupboards.

Agent: Let me show you the bedrooms. This is the smaller one.

Customer: It's a good size though. Is all the furniture included?

Agent: Only what is fixed. You will have to provide tables, chairs and beds.

Customer: That's a lot.

Agent: You can buy things cheaply from second-hand shops or at auction.

Customer: What's an auction?

Agent: It's where the person who offers the highest price buys the article.

Customer: Is that a crack in the ceiling there?

Agent: Yes, I'm afraid it is, but it can easily be repaired. I will see to that. Come into

the other bedroom. You can see the bathroom too.

Customer: Yes, it is very nice but I will have to ask my friend first and we will come together. I understand it is eight hundred dollars a month.

Agent: Yes. But a few blocks downtown would be much more expensive.

7 大场景（三）职场工作

熟悉场景

职场工作场景涉及的考点主要有面试、新员工上班、办公室等。

（1）面试场景

场景人物：聘方和应聘者

场景涉及内容：

❖ 对某种工作的态度和评价，应聘某工作的条件，教育背景、特长等。

❖ 要写申请信，如何办理入职相关手续。

❖ 聘方一般会介绍工作的性质、工资待遇、工作环境以及上下班时间，早班还是晚班。

❖ 面试前了解所应聘的职位，应聘者要充满自信，着装要整洁，提前到，不紧张等。

场景词汇：waiter；salary；wage；physical endurance；pre-career training；stipend；bonus 等。

（2）新员工上班场景

场景人物：聘方和应聘者

场景涉及内容：

❖ 准备好齐全的办公用品，整齐的办公桌、干净的电脑、必备的文具等。

❖ 带领新员工熟悉工作环境，老板办公室在哪儿？部门经理办公室在哪儿？工作中有交集的其他部门办公区域在哪儿？甚至卫生间在哪儿？休息区在哪儿？

❖ 第一次上班后与上司谈话，问新员工的看法。

场景词汇：lunch time；coffee break；serve customers；keep an eye on stock；challenging 等。

（3）办公室场景

场景人物：聘方和应聘者

场景涉及内容：

❖ 工作又累又枯燥，上司不好对付。老板讨厌迟到，员工总是迟到。

❖ 关于文件，收发邮件，上交报告等。

❖ 小组讨论，年度计划，培训课程等。

❖ 使用办公室设备，电脑、打印机等。

场景词汇：copier；share the office space；work with the computer；make a phone call 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉职场工作场景词汇。英语是模式化的语言，固定场景只会用固定词汇，分场景总结记忆场景词汇能够有效提高听力效率。

（2）判断话题与场景。职场工作场景性很强，一般在长对话中，第一轮对话往往引

出工作场景的话题，很可能是对话的主题所在，也是回答主旨、话题以及场景题的依据所在。

（3）把握做题的节奏。做题的节奏在听力中比在其他部分要重要得多，每一项提问的时间间隔都是相同的。做到答题的节奏与提问的节奏相一致，一旦答题的节奏落后了，就会手忙脚乱，出错的概率会大大增加。

（4）注意选项中的同义表达。正确选项往往与原文相似，或是原文的同义表达，因此考生应注意提取选项中的关键点，在听时留意其是否与原文意思相同并加以记录。

典型真题

No. 5

9. A. They are having a friendly chat.
   B. One is interviewing the other.
   C. They are talking about each other's family.
   D. One is asking about the other's family background.
10. A. He was the bread earner in the family.
   B. He was the oldest son in the family.
   C. He was the youngest son in the family.
   D. He was his father's favorite son.

【名师点评】

9. **B**。对话中可以听到女士的大部分话语都是在提问，而男士始终在回答相关问题。由此可先排除选项 A 和 C。女士的提问涉及男士的工作、教育、家庭、生活等方面。D 只提到家庭背景，表述不够全面。由此判定他们在进行 interview。故答案为 B。
10. **B**。原文中的 Have you any brothers or sisters 与题干对应，据此定位答案。man 的回答很明确：Two brothers, both at school 而从对话开头可得知男士已经 left school，而且已经工作了，所以他肯定是家里的老大。故答案为 B。

【听力原文】

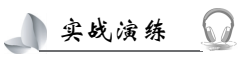
W: First of all, I'd like you to tell a bit about what you've been doing.
M: Well, I left school after I'd done my A-levels.
W: What subjects did you take?
M: French, German and Art.
W: Art?
M: Well, I really wanted to study Art. But a friend of my father's offered me a job—he's an accountant in the city.
W: I see. In your application, you say you only spent nine months with this firm of accountants. Why was that?
M: Well, to be quite honest, I didn't like it—so I got a place at the Art College a year ago.
W: Did your father mind?
M: Well, he was rather disappointed at first. He's an accountant too, you see.
W: Have you any brothers or sisters?
M: Two brothers, both at school. One's eleven; the other's fifteen—taking his O-levels this year.
W: Right, What do you do in your spare time?

M: I like jazz and folk music; I go to the theater occasionally and act a bit myself. I read quite a lot, and I've done a bit of photography. Also, I've traveled a lot—hitch-hiked all over Europe.

W: Very interesting, Mr. Plant. I think that's all wanted to ask about your background.

Q 9. What are the two speakers doing?

Q 10. What was Mr. Plant's place in the family?



No. 6

11. A. Interviewing an assistant.
B. Applying for the post of assistant.
C. Recruiting an assistant.
D. Training to be an assistant.

12. A. They will only advertise internally.
B. They will only advertise externally.
C. They will advertise externally first, then internally.
D. They will advertise internally first, then externally.

【名师点评】

11. **C**。原文中的 taking on 与选项 C 中的 recruiting 为同义表达；原文中的 an assistant 在选项 C 中重现。故答案为 C。

12. **D**。原文中的 advertise it internally 与选项 D 中的 advertise internally 对应，原文中的 put an advert in the paper 与选项 D 中的 externally 对应。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

M: So Patricia, have you given any more thought to taking on an assistant in marketing?

W: Yes, and I'm still not sure about it.

M: Well, I guess we'd advertise the position internally as we always do.

W: But if we advertised the job internally, we'd have the same old problems — not enough applicants and lots of internal political problems. Couldn't we advertise the job outside the company for once?

M: Well, I suppose we could. But if we did, a lot of people wouldn't be very happy about it.

W: But even if we promoted one of our own people, the other internal applicants wouldn't be happy anyway. So what's the difference? Why couldn't we just advertise it in the national papers?

M: But it's company policy. You know that. We always advertise internally first.

W: Yes, I know. But why can't we try something different for a change? If we took someone on from outside the company we'd bring some new ideas into the department. It's what we need.

M: Why don't we just advertise it internally as we always do, right? That'll keep everyone happy and then after a couple of weeks, we can put an advert in the paper as well. What do you say?

W: Oh, all right. But I'm not going to do the interviews.

Q 11. What is the opening concerned in the conversation?

Q 12. According to the conversation, how do they finally decide to place the advertisement?



周二　听力题型之长对话（上）

7 大场景（四）旅游出行

熟悉场景

旅游出行场景作为博士研究生入学英语考试听力长对话场景中的传统场景之一，主要包括：

（1）旅游前的准备场景

场景人物：朋友、家人

场景涉及内容：

❖ 去什么景点；参加什么旅游活动；

❖ 决定穿什么衣服，一般外出旅游，都会穿些比较舒服的衣服鞋子等；

❖ 携带什么样的设备；

❖ 乘坐什么样的交通工具，轮船、火车、飞机等；

❖ 各种费用及支付方式等。

场景词汇：public transport；airplane；telescopes；walking boots；socks；sunscreen；long trousers；first-aid kit；travel agency；flight number；credit card；souvenir 等。

（2）旅游活动场景

场景人物：朋友、家人、旅游团等

场景涉及内容：

❖ 有的较偏好户外运动，如 surfing，climbing，hiking，water skiing，diving，excursion 等；

❖ 旅游活动的注意事项。

场景词汇：hiking；mountain climbing；cycling；hot air ballooning；rafting；snakes；stingers；sharks；box jellyfish；plants 等。

（3）旅游景点场景

场景人物：朋友、家人、旅游团等

场景涉及内容：

❖ 打电话到旅行社，旅行社提供旅游景点的介绍；

❖ 旅游景点参观过程，旅游景点中较为现代化的服务和设施；

❖ 历史文化以及相关的旅游地，景点游玩后的感受等。

场景词汇：mountains；desert；hilly areas；wetlands；bush land；tropical rain forests；art gallery；swimming；diving；Scuba Diving；surfing；water skiing 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉旅游出行场景的词汇。对于旅游场景相关词汇的熟练把握是此部分取胜的关键。

（2）快速浏览各题选项，注意相同或相关词语的重复出现，推测对话主题。在没有听对话之前考生只能通过几个题目的选项来“串”对话，猜测对话内容。根据各题选项中出现的相同或相关词语，可以推测出对话的大致主题，从而更容易、更准确地理解对话内容，并且有助于主旨题的解答。

（3）按照题目顺序，推测问题类型及内容，确定听音时需要关注的主要信息点。很多选项都有比较明显的特点，或者使用某种专门的表达形式，如均为动词原形或均为人物角色等；或者含有一些标志性的词语，如均含有描述某人性格或某事特点的词语。通过这些选项特点及选项内容，考生便可以推测问题可能考查的核心内容，从而在听音时更有针对性。注意在推测问题时，应与主题联系起来，因为每一道问题都不会偏离主题；反过来结合几道题的考查核心，可以进一步确认主题内容。

（4）集中精力听对话，抓取关键点，必要时做笔记。听音时考生应重点留意开头、结尾以及与选项相关的信息，并针对选项要点适当做笔记。根据提问内容，结合所做笔记，迅速得出答案。

典型真题

No. 1

1. Which is NOT the purpose of Mr. Lewis' visit?
   A. To see friends.　　B. To give concerts.
   C. To vacation.　　D. To give private lessons.
2. What kind of cello did Mr. Lewis use when he was eight?
   A. A full-sized cello.　　B. A half-sized cello.
   C. A two-thirds-sized cello.　　D. It is not mentioned.（北京大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】

1. B。原文中的 what will you be doing on this visit 与题干对应，据此定位答案。原文中的 a holiday，to see some friends，be giving some private cello lessons 分别与选项 C，A 和 D 对应。没有提及选项 B。故答案为 B。
2. D。原文提到了 full-sized cello，a half-sized cello，a two-thirds-sized cello 三个信息，分别对应 grew big，Many children，I was big for my age，但没有提到 8 岁的情况。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

W: Welcome to visit our city, Mr. Lewis—but, of course, you have been here before, haven't you?
M: Yes, I have, what a good memory I have! I was here for the Arts Festival last year.
W: And what will you be doing on this visit?
M: Oh, I came here primarily for a holiday and to see some friends. But I will also be giving some private cello lessons as well.
W: I believe that your cello is rather special. Is that true?

M: Oh, yes. It was made for my uncle by a very expert German cello maker called Schuster. When I began cello lessons at the age of 8, he said that when I grew big enough to handle a full-sized cello, he would give it to me.
W: So when a child begins to play the cello, he or she starts on a smaller instrument?
M: Of course, or he would be very uncomfortable. Many children begin with a half-sized cello, but as I was big for my age, I began with a two-thirds-sized cello.
W: Are you going to other places on this trip and will you take your cello with you?
M: Yes, very definitely.
W: But, isn't it difficult taking a cello around with you?
M: Not really. I just reserve two seats when I'm traveling anywhere, one for me and one for my cello. It's such a precious instrument to me that it hardly ever leaves my side.

实战演练

No. 2

3. A. In a botanical garden. B. In a lecture room.
   C. In a resort town. D. On a cattle farm.
4. A. It is an ideal place for people to retire to.
   B. It is at the center of the fashion industry.
   C. It remains very attractive with its mineral waters.
   D. It has kept many traditions from Victorian times.

【名师点评】

3. **C**。对话内容主要是关于 Harrogate 这个旅游小镇的介绍，谈到其如何得名，如何变迁，以及如何受到政府的保护，由此可以推断出这段对话最有可能发生在一个旅游城镇。故答案为 C。
4. **A**。根据原文 Harrogate has become a popular town for people to retire to 可以得知，这个小镇适合 retire（退休生活）。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

W: This week's program Up Your Street takes you to Harrogate, a small town in Yorkshire. Harrogate became a fashionable resort during Victorian times, when people came to take a bath in the mineral waters. Today, few people come to visit the town for its mineral waters. Instead, Harrogate has become a popular town for people to retire to. Its clean air, attractive parks, and the absence of any industry, make this an ideal spot for people looking for a quiet life. Now, to tell us more about Harrogate, I have with me Tom Percival, President of the Chamber of Commerce. Tom, one of the things visitors notice about Harrogate is the large area of open park land right down into the middle of the town. Can you tell us more about it?
M: Yes, certainly. The area is called the Stray.
W: Why the Stray?
M: It's called that because in the old days, people let their cattle stray on the area, which was common land.

W: Oh, I see.
M: Then, we've changes in farming and in land ownership. The Stray became part of the land owned by Harrogate.
W: And is it protected?
M: Oh, yes, indeed. As a special law, no one can build anything on the stray. It's protected forever.
W: So it will always be park land?
M: That's right. As you can see, some of the Stray is used for sports fields.
W: I believe it looks lovely in the spring.
M: Yes, it does. There're spring flowers on the old trees, and people visit the town just to see the flowers.
Q3: Where does this conversation most probably take place?
Q4: What do we learn about modern Harrogate?

7 大场景（五）人物故事

熟悉场景

人物故事场景多以采访的形式出现，偶尔在考博英语听力中出现。人物故事类一般以一问一答的采访形式出现，主要涉及人的职业、趣闻轶事、生活背景、个性特征、成长和奋斗历程、对某件事的看法、态度以及解决方法等，其特点是以时间的先后或事件的发展为主线，脉络清楚。

场景人物：人物、采访者

场景涉及内容：

- ❖ 人物的身份，人物或事件之间的关系；
- ❖ 人物的态度及意图，事情的前因和后果；
- ❖ 问题的解决方法，对某件事的态度。

场景词汇：work for；start by；pretty important role；interviewee；staff correspondent 等。

答题技巧

（1）判断话题与场景。人物故事场景的开场比较固定，一般为 The person who brings us…，welcome；…our interview spot is…据此判断对话是否为人物故事场景。

（2）注意第一个回合的对话。在长对话中，寒暄过后的第一句话一般起到引出话题的作用，很可能是对话的主题所在，也是回答主旨、话题以及场景题的依据，正确的答案往往是核心词汇的重现、同义词，或者是由该单词所得出的自然的推论。

（3）细节题原则——听到什么选什么。人物故事场景一般针对对话中的细节提问较多，多在特殊疑问句处设置问题。与短对话的区别在于，短对话中一般采用的原则是听到什么就不选什么，而长对话恰恰相反，它考查的重点是那些含有实际意义的问答内容，尤其是特殊疑问句。

No. 3

5. Which of the following statements is INCORRECT about Kathy's work?
   A. She presents the current affairs program.
   B. She telephones the viewers the day before the show.
   C. She hosts stories in the news.
   D. She interviews some people on TV.
6. The following statements are all true about a good host EXCEPT that _____.
   A. he/she has to be able to answer questions
   B. he/she has to look straight into the camera
   C. he/she has to know how to respond to unexpected situations
   D. he/she should have a nice-sounding voice（北京大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】

5. D。考生注意题干中的 INCORRECT。原文中的 brings us the current affairs program 与选项 A 对应；原文中的 the host of the show-presenting stories in the news 与选项 C 对应；原文中的 the day before the interview I call the person 与选项 B 对应。选项 D 中的 on TV 与原文中的 doing live interviews 矛盾。故答案为 D。
6. A。原文中的 a good host 在题干中重现，据此定位答案。原文中的 have to be able to look straight into the camera 与选项 B 对应；原文中的 have to have a nice-sounding voice 与选项 D 对应；原文中的 have to be able to respond to the unexpected things 与选项 C 对应；原文提到 have to be a good listener 而不是 answer questions，选项 A 与此信息不符。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

M: Good afternoon — thanks for joining us today. I'm talking to one of the best known faces on television. The person who brings us the current affairs program *Asia Today* — Kathy Koh. Kathy, welcome. Thanks for being here.
W: Oh, it's my pleasure.
M: Can you tell us exactly what you do?
W: Well, of course. As you know I'm the host of the show-presenting stories in the news and doing live interviews.
M: So, you probably have to do a lot of research, right?
W: Oh, my, yes. Sometimes, the day before the interview I call the person who's going to be appearing so that I can find out more about the topic.
M: Uh-huh.
W: Sometimes the topic's very ordinary, but there are times the guest might be talking about politics, crime, or a big scandal.
M: What kinds of topics do your viewers like the most?
W: Oh, definitely conflict. If there are two guests with two very differing points of view, and they lead to an argument… According to our studies, viewers love that.
M: So, what does it take for someone to be a good host?

W: Well, I think it's two things. First, you have to be able to look straight into the camera, and of course, you have to have a nice-sounding voice. That's one part. As for the other part, you have to be a good listener, and you have to think quickly. I mean, even though you might have a set of questions at the back of your mind, you also have to be able to respond to the unexpected things that the guest may say. So, being a good listener is just as important as asking questions.

实战演练

No. 4

7. A. Organizing protests. B. Acting as its spokesman.
   C. Recruiting members D. Saving endangered animals.
8. A. Anti-animal-abuse demonstrations. B. Anti-nuclear campaigns.
   C. Surveying the Atlantic Ocean floor. D. Removing industrial waste.

【名师点评】

7. A。根据题干中的关键词在原文中重现可以确定答案位置，原文中的 conservation and protection，protection and support 与选项 A 中的 protests 对应。故答案为 A。
8. B。根据原文中的 recently，been involved in 在题干中重现可以定位答案。原文中的 anti-nuclear campaigns 在选项 B 中重现。故答案为 B。

【听力原文】

W: Right, well, in the studio this morning, for our interview spot is Peter Wilson. Peter works for Green Peace. So, Peter, welcome.

M: Thanks a lot. It's good to be here.

W: Great! Now, Peter, perhaps you can tell us something about Green Peace and your job there.

M: Sure. Well, I'll start by telling you roughly what Green Peace is all about. I actually work in London for the Green Peace organization. We've been going for a few decades and we're a non-violent, non-political organization. We're involved in anti-nuclear activity, conservation and protection of animals and protection and support of our eco-system. I'm the action organizer and arrange any protests.

W: Right! A pretty important role, Peter. What sort of protest would you organize?

M: Well, recently we've been involved in anti-nuclear campaigns. I, personally arranged for the demonstration against radioactive waste dumping in the Atlantic Ocean. We've got a few small Green Peace boats that we harass the dumping ship with.

W: Say? Hold on, Peter. I thought you said your organization was non-violent. What do you mean by "harass"?

M: Well, we circle round and round the ships and get in the way when they try to dump the drums of nuclear waste in the sea. We talk to the men and try to change, you know, yell at them to stop. We generally make ourselves as much of a nuisance as possible.

Q7: What is the man's chief responsibility in the Green Peace organization?

Q8: What has Green Peace been involved in recently?

7 大场景（六）环保科学

熟悉场景

在博士研究生入学的英语听力考试中，涉及环保与科学这个场景的内容还是比较多的，这个场景中常用的词汇也比较多。

（1）环境保护场景

场景人物：学生、教授、环保人士

场景涉及内容：

❖ 引起环境污染的原因，如汽车尾气、砍伐森林等；

❖ 如何解决环境问题，如开发使用新能源、低碳生活、提高燃料等使用率等；

❖ 对某个环境问题的态度或观点。

场景词汇：conservation；acid；carbon；meteorology；volcano；eruption 等。

（2）科技场景

场景人物：教授、学生、专家

场景涉及内容：

❖ 就某个科技话题进行陈述，如工业的发展等；

❖ 就某个科技话题表明态度，如心理治疗的优缺点、某个电子设备对人群的影响等；

❖ 人与科技的关系，如高科技给人类带来的学习、教育、工作、生活方面的变化。

场景词汇：advanced technology；sophisticated technology；high-tech；progression；distance education；be indifferent to（漠视……）；be isolated/alienated 等。

答题技巧

（1）熟悉环保科学场景的词汇。这个场景涉及的词汇量比较大，有时涉及的话题可能是考生不熟悉的，因此掌握相关词汇是必要的。

（2）把握线索，分清主次。环保科学场景多为对某个环保问题或科技问题的讨论，关键信息多集中在回答问题的一方。把握这样的线索，就可以做到分清主次、有的放矢。

（3）小心陷阱。环保科学场景经常涉及对某个问题的看法和态度，注重转折、因果处的信息。做题时在全面听懂并且理解材料的基础上进行冷静地思考后再做出选择。

（4）根据结尾处的核心词汇锁定答案。长对话中一个出题规律就是在结尾处出题，针对将要做什么，或者提出什么建议进行提问，因此答题的关键就在于锁定结尾处的核心词。

典型真题

No. 5

9. A. Their average life span was less than 50 years.
   B. It was very common for them to have 12 children.
   C. They retired from work much earlier than today.
   D. They were quite optimistic about their future.
10. A. Get ready for ecological changes. B. Adapt to the new environment.
    C. Learn to use new technology. D. Explore ways to stay young.

【名师点评】

9. A。原文中的 the year of 1900 在题干中重现，据此定位。原文中的 didn't live beyond 与选项 A 中的 was less than 对应；原文中的 50 在选项 A 中重现。故答案为 A。life span 意为“寿命”。

10. C。原文中的 educate people 与选项 C 中的 Learn 对应，原文中的 to use new technology 在选项 C 中重现。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

W: Hi, Professor Smith. I heard you've written a book titled *Visions*.

M: Yes. It explains how science will revolutionize the 21st century.

W: Could I ask you some questions concerning the book?

M: Sure.

W: Are you optimistic about the future?

M: Generally, yeah. If we go back to the year of 1900, most Americans didn't live beyond the age of 50. Since then, we've had improvements in health care and technology. There is no reason why these won't continue far into the 21st century.

W: Are we ready for the changes that will come?

M: Changes are already happening. The future is here now. We have DNA, microchips, the Internet. Some people's reaction is to say, we are too old; we don't understand new technology. My reaction is to say, we must educate people to use new technology now.

W: Is world population going to be a big problem?

M: Yes, and no. I think that world population will stop increasing as we all get richer. If you are a part of the middle class, you don't want or need 12 children.

Q9: What does Professor Smith say about most Americans around the year of 1900?

Q10: What does Professor Smith advise we do?

实战演练

No. 6

11. Who do NOT use the facsimile machine according to the conversation?

A. Engineers. B. Shopkeeper.

C. Professional people. D. Surveyors.

12. According to Charles, people send messages via facsimile because _____.

A. it is cheaper and faster than ordinary mail

B. it is faster and not much more expensive than mail

C. it can send things that could not be expressed by telex

D. the Royal Mail could not reach places abroad

【名师点评】

11. B。对话中谈到许多 professional people 需要传真服务，professional people, surveyors, engineers 都会使用传真机，只有 shopkeeper 除外。同时仔细看选项会发现只有 shopkeeper 和其他三个选项不属于同一个范畴，答案应该不难得出。故答案为 B。

12. C。原文中的 could send messages via telex, but a telex can't express a plan 提到人们使用传真机是因为电报不能传送设计图，而传真机可以。故答案为 C。选项 A，B，

D 的内容对话中没有涉及，不符合题意。

【听力原文】

W: Well, Charles, I must say that your shop is pretty remarkable. Um, it's basically a sweet shop, but you also do stationery, greeting cards, tobacco and fireworks…

M: And newspapers.

W: And newspapers. Ah. And apart from all that, you've got photocopiers…

M: That's right.

W: And a fax machine.

M: Indeed.

W: Yes. How did… I mean, why the photocopiers?

M: Everything that's happened in my shop has almost happened by accident. But when I got into Clifton, I needed a photocopy one day and no one could tell me where to go. So it struck me that if I didn't know where to go, other people were in the same situation, so that's why I started it. And then I added on a facsimile machine because it seemed like a natural progression at the time. And all sorts of people use it.

W: Yes, who, what sort of people do use it?

M: Um, a lot of professional people—surveyors, engineers—particularly people who need to send plans. Because in the past you could send messages via telex, but a telex can't express a plan, whereas facsimile has that dimension, the added dimension.

W: Right. And do people send these fax messages abroad, or is it just to this country?

M: Well, it's surprising because when I started, I thought I'd be sending things to London and maybe Birmingham, but in fact, a high percentage of it is sent abroad, because it's immediate, it's very speedy.

7 大场景（七）文化教育

熟悉场景

书籍、电影、戏剧这些艺术作品作为文化教育的载体，往往是扎根在生活，再通过一定的艺术手段来升华，以达到教化民众、提升素质的目的。考生在英语听力考试过程中会遇见自己所熟悉的一些社会现象、事迹或者自己不熟悉的某些文化教育现象。文化教育场景在博士研究生入学英语考试的听力中是基础话题之一，考生要给予一定的重视。

(1) 文化场景

场景人物：学生、家长、老师

场景涉及内容：

- 对某种文化现象的介绍和讨论；
- 书籍、电影等艺术形式对文化传承的影响；
- 文化交流的意义以及对人类产生的影响；
- 各国不同文化对比，如何适应国外的生活和工作；
- 文化现象产生的背景以及原因分析；
- 文化现象造成的后果及人们的应对措施；

❖ 文化现象的未来展望等。

场景词汇：cultural diversity；cultural treasures；preserve the cultural relics；cradle of culture；local customs and practices；entertainment；pastimes；cultural differences 等。

(2) 教育场景

场景人物：学生、家长、老师

场景涉及内容：

❖ 就某种教育制度的讨论，如成人教育对社会发展的贡献等；

❖ 入学问题的讨论，如孩子几岁入学更合理等；

❖ 讨论不同的教育途径，老师、家长在孩子教育过程中的作用等；

❖ 教育方法很重要，什么方法最合适？效果最好？

❖ 教育过程遇到困难怎么办，对方总会给出鼓励和解决建议等。

场景词汇：president；university；kindergarten；elementary education；nursery school；voluntary labor；graduation appraisal；lecture portfolio；expert；due 等。

答题技巧

(1) 熟悉文化教育场景词汇。建议考生们可以多看看国家地理、人文地理、社会科学一类的书籍，以补充文化教育类的常识和扩充词汇。

(2) 扫视材料，预测内容。在听力开始前，扫描题干或选项，做到心中有数，确定是否为文化教育场景的长对话，根据场景知识预测对话发生的时间、地点、场景、人物关系等，推测谈话的大致内容。

(3) 抓住开头，把握主旨。文化教育类一般是就某个问题进行讨论，一般会在开始提出主题，中间部分则是细节和事实，结尾是给出结论或观点态度。考生可以有针对性地听长对话的各个部分。

(4) 重点逻辑关系词定位出题点。在录音原文中，比较重要的逻辑关系词出现的地方多是出题点所在处。考生听录音时对这些地方要多留意，最好能记下该词所在句子的大致意思。其中重点逻辑关系词主要包括因果关系词、转折关系词、让步关系词等。

典型真题

No. 7

13. Why didn't Bill want one of them?

A. He wanted to buy one from Japan.

B. He wasn't sure about its quality.

C. He thought it was for business use.

D. He thought it was expensive.

14. Which of the following statements is INCORRECT about the woman?

A. She had never read the magazine herself.

B. She knew who usually read the magazine.

C. She was quite interested in the new device.

D. She agreed with Bill at the end of the conversation. (北京大学 2007 年)

【名师点评】

13. D。原文 woman 提到 costs a lot of money 与选项 D 中的 was expensive 对应，而 Bill 对此给予了 Yes 的回答。故答案为 D。

14. C。原文中的 I've never actually read it myself 与选项 A 对应；原文中的 It's for real scientists. 说明 woman 知道读杂志的人；原文最后的 I suppose so 与选项 D 对应。原文没有提及 woman 对 new device 是否感兴趣。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

W: What are you reading, Bill?

M: It's this week's *New Scientist*. Why?

W: I was just wondering. It looks interesting, but I've never actually read it myself. It's for real scientists. Or, can ordinary people like me understand it?

M: Oh, it's for anyone really. It usually has articles and stories about current affairs, about science as well as papers about new developments in research. I'm reading about a new telephone that allows you to see the person you're speaking to as well as hear him.

W: Oh, I've heard about it. Is it on the market yet? Can I buy one?

M: Not this yet. But the company has made other models to try out on business. This one is special because of its color and the image is moving.

W: Oh, that's interesting.

M: You see the first video phones, that's what they are called, were made in Japan, but they can only show a still black and white image. So this video phone is much better than that. Mind you, I'm not sure I want one, would you?

W: Well, no, I don't think I would. I bet it costs a lot of money. Does it say how much it costs?

M: Yes. The early white and black ones cost several hundred pounds. But the one the story is about costs several thousand pounds.

W: Hum. Why does anybody want one?

M: Business organizations that need to frequently contact overseas organizations would want it. It's like a face-to-face conversation, so maybe a lot of overseas travel can be avoided.

W: I suppose so.

实战演练

No. 8

15. What do the two people mainly talk about?

A. Whether small children should go to a nursery school.

B. How a nursery school should be managed.

C. When reading should be introduced to nursery education.

D. How children like going to a nursery school.

16. What kind of ability can be developed by reading according to Gray?

A. Understanding.　　B. Response.

C. Creativity.　　D. Sense of humor.

【名师点评】

15. A。对话开头女士的提问便点出了对话的主题“把 3 岁的孩子送到 a nursery school 怎

样?”接着他们围绕这一问题展开讨论。故答案为 A。

16. C。在原文中 Gray 提出是否可以早一点让孩子们接触一些创造性的事物，woman 想到 art，而 Gray 说：reading is creative，这就表明了他对阅读的态度。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

W: What do you think of sending three-year-olds to a nursery school, Gray?
M: That's a good idea.
W: Why do you think it's a good idea?
M: Because the baby enjoys being around other people of its age.
W: But I was thinking of a fairly formal thing, you know, like the kind of programs where you are training a person to go into kindergarten or the first grade.
M: Well, teaching them what? Reading?
W: Yeah, not just a play situation.
M: I think it depends very much on that family's situation and that particular child. And I think even if it's not a play situation, it's not a bad thing.
W: You don't think that maybe you start structuring a person, you know, too much, too soon? I mean, I think our educational system is very structured and very repressive.
M: Well, if it's more of the same thing, I agree. But, Bettie, wouldn't it be possible, uh, to start some sort of creative thing earlier?
W: You mean like art?
M: Mm, even like reading is creative…
W: Mm… Well, I'm also thinking, too, about what age a child starts to socialize and I don't think they're ready for socializing outside of the family before the age of about five or six.
M: Oh, really?
W: There are other ways of socializing, uh… uh, with other children than sending your child off to a nursery school.



周四 听力题型之短文（上）

题型概述

听力短文理解的长度大约在 200 ~250 词之间，后设 3 ~4 题。短文由一人朗读，语速约为每分钟 160 词。问题多是特殊疑问句，要求考生从所给的选项中选出最佳答案。与对话部分相比，这一部分所含的信息量较大，对考生的短时记忆要求较高，在信息的辨别、组织和推断等方面都有一定的难度。

听力短文部分信息量大，题材范围广，涉及科技类、社会问题类、人物生平事迹类、调查研究类等诸多类型，这种题型一直是考查的难点，但如果仔细分析，短文听力题型特点主要包括：

（1）形似阅读理解，难度相差悬殊。听力短文在形式上与阅读理解基本相同，都是根据材料所包含的信息回答后面提出的问题，但听力短文材料的难度比阅读理解小得多，只相当于一般的口语材料。

（2）短文播放时间相对固定，但有弹性时间可利用。虽然短文播放的时间及回答问题的时间是相对固定的，但播放听力录音之前有试音时间，且在播放短文之前要播放本题的指令部分，这些时间都可以利用。

（3）短文体裁较为固定，为做出正确判断提供了语境依据。听力短文多为说明文或叙述性小故事，材料较为通俗易懂，这使提前根据所给选项推断材料内容成为可能。

（4）选项已知，可作为推断短文内容的依据。虽然材料的内容只播放一遍，但每小题的选项是提前给定的，考生可以根据选项所提供的信息，利用前面提到的弹性时间进行推断，为充分获取短文信息创造更加有利的条件。

（5）各类型问题相对固定。听力短文的试题类型是基本固定的，主要包括细节题、推断题、态度题、数字题、主旨题等。这给考生正确解题提供了启发和思路。

出题规律

（1）短文首尾处。短文的开头是重要的设题处，经常考查考生对短文主旨或重要细节的把握。短文的主题句一般都出现在开头，而且常常是第一道题的答案出处。短文的结尾往往对整篇文章的内容起概括和提示的作用，经常会给出结论或者提出某种建议或希望，同样不可忽视。

（2）短文中原因、目的处。短文理解中的问题所使用的疑问词中，除了 what 以外，出

现最多的就是 why，因果关系处是短文理解的设题重点之一。当短文中出现 because，since，so，lead to，result from/in，contribute to 等表示因果关系的词或短语时，考生需重点关注。另外，短文中涉及目的、目标的地方也经常会受到出题人的青睐，这类题目的选项多为动词原形或不定式短语。

（3）短文中列举或举例处。短文中为说明一个问题，常常会使用列举或进行举例，这些地方是设题的重点，因此当听到 such as，for example，for instance，the first，the second 等一类的词语时，应加以留意。

（4）短文中并列、转折、条件处。表示并列、转折、条件等其他逻辑关系的地方也往往是短文理解的出题重点。因此，当短文中出现 as well as，not only…but also，but，however，if，even if，even though 等表示逻辑关系的连接词或短语时，需重点关注。

（5）短文中数字信息处。短文中经常会涉及时间、价格、数量等与数字相关的信息，这些数字以及与这些数字相关的重点信息，也是短文理解的重要设题点。

（6）短文中比较或对比处。短文中的形容词、副词的比较级和最高级，以及 as…as，compared with，while，whereas 等引出的比较或对比结构经常是短文理解的设题点。

（7）短文中时间状语处。短文中（尤其是人物故事类）经常会叙述什么时间发生了什么事或描述某人、某事在某个时候的状态，这些地方经常成为设题点。因此，当短文中出现 while，when，as 等引导的时间状语从句或其他时间状语从句时，一定要注意与其相关的细节信息。

（8）短文中定语从句处。短文中的定语从句，尤其是非限制性定语从句，经常是短文理解的设题点。定语从句的内容往往就是答案所在或能为解题提供重要的信息提示。

（9）短文中强调处。强调的地方肯定是短文的重点所在，因此短文中的强调句型、助动词强调以及 actually，particularly 等表示强调的副词也是出题的重点之一。

（10）短文中建议处。You'd better…，Why not do…，may as well 等表示建议的句式或短语也常常是短文理解的出题重点。

（11）短文中引言处。短文中有时也会涉及对他人话语或别处文字的引用，这些地方也常会受到出题人的青睐。

备考策略

短文理解答题步骤：

（1）分析判断选项。在播放短文之前，考生可以利用弹性时间扫描各小题选项，推断短文的体裁和大致内容，为听短文时充分获取信息做准备。另外，也可据此推断问题的类型甚至内容以便听录音时更有针对性。

（2）手眼脑并用，记录关键信息。集中精力听短文，抓关键点（开头、结尾及与选项相关的信息），迅速记笔记。要听记兼顾，以听为主。一篇短文就是一个信息群，完全靠大脑记忆所有的信息往往是很困难的。因此，考生应该把获取的主要信息有选择地记录下来，特别是有关细节，为做出正确选择做准备。需要特别注意的是，这时“听”应该是第一位的，千万不要因为记录前面的信息而漏听后面的信息。短文中出现的时间、地点、人名和数字等都有一定的逻辑顺序，根据其逻辑顺序，考生大致推测考点可能出现的位置。

（3）判断答案。根据提问内容以及不同题型，结合所做笔记，迅速做出正确的判断。

（4）检查。认真检验核对，不允许出现任何由于疏忽造成的失误。

6 大命题点（一）主旨大意题

命题方向

短文的主旨是指短文的大概意思，即文章主要涉及的是什么内容，因为独白总是围绕主旨或者中心思想展开的。主旨大意题要求根据所给信息归纳原文的主题或者最合适的标题。有时，短文的主旨比较明确；有时则贯穿整个独白，需考生自己去归纳、概括。主旨题主要是测试考生对文章的中心思想或主旨大意的理解，考查考生对短文的主旨大意或短文写作目的的理解和把握。主旨类问题虽然在考试中出现的频率不高，但理解大意是理解细节和准确推断的前提，所以对文章有一个宏观的理解，进而掌握文章的脉络，对于考生来说非常重要。

1 主旨题在原文和题目中的位置

博士研究生英语听力考试的一大特色就是一般情况下，题目顺序与文章的行文顺序相一致。考生要明确的是主旨题出现在文章的开头部分，绝对不会出现在文章的中间部分。其中需要注意的一点是，在结尾部分同样可能会出现帮助解答主旨题的内容。因为短文很可能对文章内容进行概括和总结。因此，主旨题一般为短文的第一题或最后一题。

2 主旨题的典型问法

主旨题的题目形式相对固定，一般为主观性问题，多为 Wh-question 形式。常见的提问形式如下：

What does the passage talk about?
What is the main idea of the passage?
What is the speaker talking about?

3 主旨题的信号标志词

…today we will talk about…
…today we will discuss…
…today we will look at…
figure/work/sort out…

about 是一个经常引导主要内容的介词。这个词很关键，要求听准其后面的宾语的内容，这是解题的关键。

4 主旨题的选项特征

(1) 在选择选项的时候，考生一定要避免选择如下选项：

❖ 范围小：细节进入主旨题，这种情况最常见；
❖ 范围大：没锁定主旨；
❖ 不正确选项：即文章中根本没有涉及的内容。

(2) 正确选项特征如下：

❖ 长的名词结构：先定位比较 of 和 that 前面的词，在原文中找同义替换后，确定 of 和 that 后面的宾语是否符合原文；
❖ 以 how，what，why 开头的特殊疑问词；

❖ To do。To do 结构在主旨题中出现的频率很高，考生可以比较动词 do 的形式和用词。如果原文中用到的动词与选项一致，考生可以首先定位此选项，再比较后面的宾语即可。

答题技巧

从解题的角度讲，针对主旨类问题的特点，考生在考试过程中，应掌握以下方法：

（1）提炼和分析选项，推测短文主题。听力理解的每道题都是围绕听力材料的主要内容而设，故根据各选项中反复出现的相同或相关的词语，考生往往可大致推测出其所要陈述的主题。如果同一问题中的选项是从不同的细节来对同一事物进行描述的，这时，它们描述的内容一般和主题有一定的关系。在听短文的过程中应该注意把握与这些事物相关的句子。

（2）把握短文的开头和结尾。英语文章的表达一般是开门见山的，文章的首句多为概括性句子。如果首段出现疑问句时，对该问题的解答就是文章主旨。所以，考生做这一类题时一定要集中精力听好短文的开头，特别是开头句型。对于某些题材的文章，比如说：议论文，这类体裁的短文的尾句大多为总结性语句，考生通过尾句也可了解文章的主旨。因此，把握好开头和结尾，对文章主旨的理解非常重要。

（3）把握短文中的高频词和高频句。如果短文反复出现同一词或同一类词汇，同样也值得考生特别注意，因为包含有这类词汇的选项能较好地体现中心思想。重点推测短文中反复出现的句子，其必与文章中心有密切的关系。此外，要听准关键词并对实义词（名词、动词、形容词）足够敏感。考生要注意：提出文章主旨时，常伴有的提示词或短语为：therefore，thus，but，however，in short 等。所以，听到或看到这些词汇时，考生要尤其注意。

（4）优先选择概括性较强的选项。主旨题的答案必然具有较强的概括性，而出题人经常会用一些文中涉及的、与主题相关的某一方面内容来作为干扰项，即以偏概全，引诱考生犯错。因此，当你在某两个选项之间犹豫不决时，记住，要优先选择概括性强的那个选项。

典型真题

1. A. It is farming that gives human beings enough leisure time for sporting activities.
   B. Farming is very important in human civilization because it saves human beings from risks and uncertainties of hunting for survival.
   C. It is hunting that provides human beings with much simpler ways of obtaining meaty meals.
   D. Sporting activities satisfy the desire of modern man to exercise hunting skills which his forefathers developed for survival.（浙江大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 D。主旨大意题。听力原文的开始就点明了本文的大意。Sporting activities 是本文的主旨关键词，接着用 To understand how this transformation…，to do 的形式进一步点明主旨。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

Sporting activities are essentially modified forms of hunting behavior. Viewed biologically, the modern footballer is in reality a member of a hunting group. His killing weapon has turned into a harmless football and his prey into a goalmouth. If his aim is

accurate and he scores a goal, he enjoys the hunter's triumph of killing his prey.

To understand how this transformation has taken place we must briefly look back at our forefathers. They spent over a million years evolving as cooperative hunters. Their very survival depended on success in the hunting-field. Under this pressure their whole way of life, even their bodies, became greatly changed…

Q1. Which of the following can best summarize the main idea of the passage?

2. The talk is mainly about _____.

A. what dogs can do　　B. how to keep dogs

C. dogs and their masters　　D. reasons for keeping dogs（北京大学 2007 年）

【名师点评】D。主旨大意题。听力原文 but 后的内容为全文的主旨：But the reason why one keeps a dog has changed. 文章介绍过去人们养狗和现在养狗的不同原因，现在人们养狗是因为把狗当成朋友，其中 the reason why one keeps a dog 与选项 D 对应。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

If you are in a town in a western country, you'll often see people walking with their dogs. It is still true that a dog is the most useful animal in the world. But the reason why one keeps a dog has changed. Once upon a time, a man met a dog and wanted it to help him in the fight against other animals, and he found that the dog listened to him and did what he told him to…

实战演练

3. A. Sense of responsibility.　　B. Self-confidence.

C. Patience.　　D. Stability.

4. A. Its protection is often neglected by children.

B. It cannot be fully restored once damaged.

C. There are many false notions about it.

D. There are various ways to protect it.

【名师点评】

3. A。主旨大意题。说话者从一开始就提到父亲让他学会负责任，正是责任感使他遇到挫折时还是完成了演唱任务并取得了成功，最后说话者又再次强调了 sense of responsibility 的作用。故答案为 A。

4. C。主旨大意题。短文开头提到 There are many commonly held beliefs … that are not proven facts（有很多与眼镜和视力有关的普遍看法都没有事实证明），即人们对眼镜和视力有许多错误的认识。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

I grew up in a small town. I was hardly 10 years old when my dad gave me the responsibility of feeding the chickens and cleaning up the stable. He believed it was important for me to have those jobs to learn responsibility. Then, when I was 22, I found a job in Nashville at a country music club called "The Nashville Palace". I washed dishes and cooked from 4:00 pm to 9:00 pm and then went on stage and sang until 2:00 in the morning. It wasn't long before I became known as a singer cook. I had been rejected so

many times by record companies that it was hard not to be discouraged. One night, a woman from a company named Warner Brothers Records came to hear me sing. When the show was over, we talked and then she left. I said to myself it was one more failure. But a few weeks later, I was told that they wanted to sign me to a record deal. Soon after, my first record came out. It sold over one million copies. My best efforts had gone into every job I ever held. It was the sense of responsibility that made me feel like a man, knowing I had done my best filled me with pride.

Q3: What's the main topic of the speech?

There are many commonly held beliefs about eye glasses and eyesight that are not proven facts. For instance some people believe that wearing glasses too soon weakens the eyes. But there is no evidence to show that the structure of eyes is changed by wearing glasses at a young age.

Q4: What does the speaker want to tell us about eyesight?

6 大命题点（二）事实细节题

命题方向

为了说明和解释主旨，短文或独白中需要一些具体信息，如时间、地点、人物、事件（who, what, which, when, where, how, why）等，这些信息对理解短文，把握短文主旨是不可缺少的内容，且在试题中占有相当大的比例。这类题要求考生在听清、听懂信息的同时，还要对所听到的信息做简单的处理。有的也需要考生进行简单的计算。

事实细节题是考博英语听力考试中最常出现的题目，这类题型侧重考查考生对短文中某个特定细节内容的理解。特征是题干中的某些词语和表达方式与原文中的内容相吻合，这就指出了原文与问题相关的地方，考生直接去查找即可。

1 事实细节题分类

（1）词语细节类。答案几乎可直接从短文中获取，考生只需按照题干中的中心词返回原文，找到与其相对应的词语，就能在对应词的周围找到答案。

（2）隐含细节类。从题干部分很难直接找到与原文对应的词语，其答案间接地隐含在文中，有时答案还可能是原文中某一事实的原因、结果、前提等。需要考生仔细推敲选项作答。

2 事实细节题常见的提问形式

（1）询问时间、距离、数量等，需要认真计算。这类试题一般涉及一些数字或简单的运算。一方面，考生可根据表示时间的关联词来判断事件发生的时间，如：before, after, then, until, later, immediately 等。另一方面，此类题涉及的不止一个数字，考生除了要听清楚数字外，还要注意一些常见的词或短语，如：double, half, dozen, one-third, thirty percent, three times, penny, cent, etc. 这类题要求考生听到文中出现时间、数字等信息时一定要特别敏感，及时做好笔记。常见的提问方式有：

How long…? /What time…? /How much…? /How many…?/How old…/When …?

What is the flight number for…?

（2）询问事实、原因、结果、方式等。

Which is the real reason for…?；According to the passage, when（where, why, how, who, etc.）…?；The first paragraph describes in detail…?；What happened to…?

（3）正误判断题。听到这类题时，一定要听清提问，对于有没有 not 一词要弄清楚。一般情况下，not 一词会重读。要先看选项，根据选项提供的线索找到文中相应部分，最后选出肯定答案。这类题常用以下提问方式：

Which of the following is true/not true, according to the passage?

Which of the following is not mentioned?

Which of the following is true according to the interview?

The author mentions all of the following EXCEPT _____.

3 事实细节题选项特征

细节题一定是原文出现过的内容，可能是同义改写，也可能是用原文中的词汇概括答案。下面是事实细节题错误选项的特征：

（1）原文提到过的内容，但是不在对应的位置。它可能是上一个话题的内容，也可能是下一个话题的内容。这样的选项比较具有迷惑性，考生容易错选。如果在做笔记的过程中考生能够分段落进行记录，那么就可以避免这种现象。

（2）部分原文中的内容 + 部分原文中没有提到的内容。这样的选项考生需要忽略没有出现过的内容，所以在读题的时候一定要仔细。不断地问自己这个信息点是否在听力中出现过。

（3）完全没有出现过的内容。这种选项一般考生可以直接省略。所以对于原文中没有出现过的内容，通常是错的，这就是细节题跟推断题之间的区别。

（4）与原文不符的内容。有些选项会跟原文不符，但由于与原文的内容太像，太接近，考生有可能忽略了选项否定的内容，所以在做题过程中也需要注意。

4 事实细节题命题点

（1）列举处。列举处指的是 first, second, third，等并列关系词出现的部分。要求考生从列举出的内容中，选出符合题干要求的答案。列举方式有时不用数字排序，而是采取排比句式。

（2）举例处。为了使自己的观点更具有说服力，短文常以具体的例子来佐证。这些例子常会成为考点。考查文章中举例处的考法有很多，比如问举例的具体内容，例子的作用等。在听例子的时候要关注举例部分的上下文，说话的人为什么要举这个例子，要证明什么，表明什么观点、态度，还有例子本身说了那些内容。因此，考生应对引出这些例子的标志词加以注意。这类词或短语很多，常见的有 for example, like, for instance, in this case, a case in point, in another case, take the case of, on this occasion, as, such as 等。

（3）相似或者对比。当听到几类事务时，它们有相似的地方或者对比的关系时，考生就要注意这个细节。很可能会在后来的细节题中考查它们的关系。表示相似的表达有：like, similar, resemblance, to resemble, similarity 等；表示对比的表达有：in contrast with…, whereas, on the contrary, different from…, on the other hand 等。

（4）引用人物论断处。短文为使论点更有依据，常会引用某些权威人士的论断及其重要发现，命题者常在此处做文章。

（5）代词处。这类考题常用来考查考生是否真正理解上下文之间的句际关系和意义。

（6）原因处。当在听力中听到两个关键点有因果联系时，考生要尤其注意，在后边很可能会问到这一细节。在听原因细节时，要注意什么是因，什么是果，其实它们是有不同的表达方法的。表示前因后果：consequently，so，therefore，as a consequence，for this purpose，result in，lead to。表示前果后因：stem from，originate from，result from，spring from，arise out of。

（7）定义处。在讲座型的短文中会经常出现某些学科的专有名词，这也是多数考生头疼的，其实有些重要的专有名词会在听力的原文中解释出来，当听到某个词的解释时，就要关注这个解释，也许后边就有关于这句话的考题。考生在听的时候要注意关键词，例如：it refers to，that is，that means，which means，this is to say，in other words，in another words 等。

（8）数字、地点、人物处。考生不要把具体的数字、地点、人物逐个写下来，这是很费时间的，可能还会影响到后面内容的听取。记录这些细节时，考生只要做能看懂的标记即可，比如记录单词的开头、缩写等，若同时出现两个以上的数字、地点、人物时，注意记录的内容自己可以识别。

（9）结尾处。很多考生到听力即将结尾时会觉得累了或者处于麻木状态，认为听力快结束了，不会再有新的东西出现，就不认真听。其实结尾往往会出考题，所以一定要注意听。判断结尾的部分只要看考试界面的时间条就好了，或者会出现表示结尾的表达，例如：to sum up，to conclude，in conclusion，in summary，to summarize 等。

答题技巧

由于细节类问题要求考生掌握文章中的大量信息，因此，考点比较难把握。针对这类问题的特点，考生在考试过程中，应掌握以下方法：

（1）分析选项。考生应该首先抓紧时间，利用朗读 Directions 的时间，对问题选项进行浏览，提炼选项中的信息，判断该题是否为细节类问题。当选项是同类短语或句式时，考点就在这一细节里。这时，考生应集中精力，听懂时间、数字等与选项对应的细节考点。

（2）听清重点，适当记录。细节类问题要求考生听到文中出现时间、数字时一定要特别敏感，及时做好笔记。在听题时，要注意逻辑关系，在相关的选项上做好简明的记号可以避免边听边忘。一般来说，短文听力过程中要重点记录以下细节：首句和尾句。这些句子大多为总结性语句，通过它们可以了解文章的主旨，进而增进对细节的猜测。选项中如果出现时间或数字，在听的过程中，这些数字都在文中出现过，请在数字边标记出其代表的意义。

（3）重点推测文中反复出现的词或句子。其必与文章中心有密切关系。段落越长可利用的信息越多，为防遗忘可简单做记号。切不可拖泥带水。

（4）牢牢把握连接词和重要信号词。常见的和信号词相关的考点有逻辑时间顺序、举例、列举、相似或者对比、转折、强调、因果、总结、定义、建议、数字等。文中一旦出现以因果连词（如 because，so，due to 等）和转折连词（如 but，however，though 等）引导的句子要格外留心，要集中精力听懂连接词后面的句子，这些地方往往就是细节考点。

（5）不要被原词迷惑。有些考生如果只是听到了细节中的某个词，至于整句话说的是什么没有听到，很容易就选错答案。命题者往往利用文中出现的原词制造错误选项，迷惑考生。当遇到这种情况的时候一定要注意，仔细读题，分析各个选项然后再选。

（6）注意同义替换。正确选项的关键词很可能不是原词，用替换的词都是比较常见的，需要考生在相对短的时间内识别出来。考生在平时背单词的时候应注意对于其同义词的补充归纳以及掌握。

典型真题

5. A. They are delighted because they can enjoy the scenery while driving.
   B. They are frightened because traffic accidents are frequent.
   C. They are irritated because the bridge is jammed with cars.
   D. They are pleased because it saves them much time. (南开大学 2006 年)

【名师点评】C。事实细节题。原文中的 is so heavy 和 not pleasant 分别与选项 C 中的 is jammed with cars 和 irritated 为同义表达。同时，文中的 however 表示转折，也可以帮助推测出答案为 C。

【听力原文】

The Golden Gate Bridge joins the beautiful city of San Francisco with the suburbs to the north. Each day about one hundred thousand automobiles cross the bridge taking people to and from the city. More than half of them cross the bridge during the morning and evening rush hours. When traffic is so heavy the trip is not pleasant. Now, however, there is at least one group of happy commuters. These are the people who travel under the bridge instead of on it. They go to work by boat and enjoy it so much that most of them say they will never go by car again…

Q5: According to the speaker, how do commuters feel about crossing the Golden Gate Bridge by car?

6. A. It was popular at the time of publication.
   B. It earned Grisham great fame.
   C. It brought Grisham wealth.
   D. It was carried by *The New York Times* as a series. (浙江大学 2010 年)

【名师点评】D。事实细节题。根据题目问题中的关键词 *The Firm* 定位答案。原文中的 *The New York Times* 在选项 D 中重现，但原文提到的是 bestseller list，选项 D 中的 as a series 与此信息不符。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

…One day at the Dessoto County courthouse, Grisham heard the horrifying testimony of a 12-year-old rape victim. He decided to write a novel exploring what would have happened if the girl's father had murdered her attackers. He proceeded to get up every morning at 5 a. m. to work on the novel, called *A Time to Kill*, which was published in 1988. Grisham's next novel, *The Firm*, was one of the biggest hits of 1991, spending 47 weeks on *The New York Times* bestseller list. Grisham lives with his wife and two children, dividing their time between their Victorian home on a 67 acre farm in Mississippi and a 204 acre plantation near Charlottesville, Virginia. …

Q6: Which of the following is NOT true of the novel *The Firm*?

实战演练

7. A. They could drive the insects away.
   B. They could keep the plants well-watered.
   C. They could make the plants grow faster.
   D. They could build devices to trap insects.

8. A. In 1981.　　B. In 1989.
C. In 1990.　　D. In 2000.

【名师点评】

7. **D**。事实细节题。从听力信息 Robert is using a device that can imitate plant cries. 得知 Robert 希望能利用模仿植物干渴而发出的微弱声音来引诱昆虫。又从听力最后部分 They could build traps that imitate crying plants. So when the insects buzz in to eat, they won't buzz out. 来分析，科学家试图利用 Robert 的理论设计出捕捉昆虫的方法，只有选项 D 符合问题的要求。选项 A、B 是从科学家捕虫目的的角度进行分析的，而这一分析脱离了题目要求。听清题目要求很重要，否则就会答非所问。

8. **A**。事实细节题。选项都是时间短语，因此本题肯定考查事情发生的时间，听录音时考生注意将短文中提到每个事件及其发生的时间迅速记录下来，再根据问题进行判断。短文中明确提到法国于 1981 年首次在巴黎和里昂之间修建了时速达 260 公里的高速铁路。故正确答案为 A。

【听力原文】

…Robert knows that healthy, well-watered plants are quiet. He also knows that many insects prefer attacking dry plants rather than healthy plants. How do the insects know which are healthy plants and which are not? Robert thinks that the insects may listen for the plants that cry. And then they may buzz in to kill.

To test his theory, Robert is using a device that can imitate plant cries. He attaches it to a quiet, healthy plant so the plant sounds thirsty. Then he watches insects to see if they attack more often than usual.

If he is right, scientists could use the insects' ability against them. They could build traps that imitate crying plants. So when the insects buzz in to eat, they won't buzz out.

Q7: What could scientists do if Robert's theory proves to be true?

…Since France introduced the first 260-kilometer-per-hour high speed train service between Paris and Lyons in 1981, the trains have achieved higher and higher speeds. On many routes, airlines have lost up to 90% of their passengers to high speed trains. If people accept the Community of European Railways' plan, the 21st century will be the new age of the train.

Q8: When did France introduce the first high speed train service?

周五 听力题型之短文（下）

6 大命题点（三）推断题

命题方向

听力推断题，是考查考生对短文大意或者某个细节的引申含义的理解，某些时候是就某一个词进行推理判断。这类题不能从短文中的原句找到答案，而是需要结合上下文进行逻辑推理才能找到最接近的选项。推断题需要考生综合分析的能力，是听力中的难点。分析和判断是建立于考生对整篇短文的理解基础之上的，尤其是对多条相关的信息进行综合分析和判断，因为引起事件的原因说明往往会贯穿于整篇短文中。

1 推断题的出题形式

做这类题时，考生一定要注意与短文内容一样的不是推断，而且一定要根据短文的观点而不是根据自己的观点来推断。解决推断题的关键是在理解文章大意的基础上抓住相关线索找到上下文之间的联系，运用逻辑推理锁定答案。通常情况下，推断题是以 what 开头的特殊疑问句，常见的推断题的提问形式如下：

What probably happened to…?

What can be inferred about…?

What is probably true about…?

What can be inferred from the passage?

What does the speaker think about the problem…?

What is the speaker most concerned about?

How does the writer feel about…?

2 推断题信号词

进行推断时，考生可以利用短文中一些结构信号词。这些词能使考生正确理解句子之间的关系，如：

因果关系：because，due to，the cause of，that's why，as the result，consequently 等；

转折关系：but，however，although，on the contrary，instead of 等；

比较关系：in a similar way，alike，the same…as…等。

3 推断题选项的特点

干扰项的特点：

（1）只是原文的简单复述，而非推断出来的结论，把直接表达当作间接推理。

（2）看似从原文得出来的结论，然而实际上与原文不符，如因果倒置、手段变目的等。

（3）根据考生已有的常识是正确的，但不是基于文章，一切应以文章思路为推理依据。

（4）推理过头，引申过度。

正确选项的特点：

（1）不是文中明确说明的内容，正确选项是经过引申推理的选项。

（2）正确选项大多含义深刻，且不是常识选项。

答题技巧

推断题难度相对较大，考生要特别注意，在考试过程中，应掌握以下方法：

（1）把握短文思路，基于原文推断。推断题目是针对短文没有表达的信息进行提问的，所以在推断的时候，考生必须基于原文的写作思路和正常的逻辑来推理判断作者没有明确表达而又暗示的内容。考生不能运用课外知识做出推断。尊重作者的态度和意见，站在短文中涉及的特定历史角色和观点上，做出符合逻辑的推论。

（2）提炼分析选项。充分利用各题仅有的时间快速阅读选项，在听录音时就更容易抓住重点。推断问题的答案一般是间接的，也就是说，答案是文中没有明确说明的。如果问题的选项中，有和文章中表达意思保持一致、甚至表达相同的选项，那么，这个选项肯定是错误答案。

（3）注意尾句。多数推断题与每段的大意或短文的中心思想有关系，因此在听短文录音时，考生一定要注意文章中间和结尾总结性的话，特别是每部分的尾句。

（4）不要过度推断。在做题的时候，考生注意不要过度推断，步骤最少的推断最接近答案。比如：某人生病了，不能说他去世了，只能说他身体不适或健康不佳。

（5）把握连接词。文中一旦出现以因果连词（如 because，so，due to 等）和转折连词（如 but，however，though 等）引导的句子，这些间接表达句采用说半句、打比喻、反着说的方式，让考生推理，考生需集中精力听懂连接词后面的句子，通过对这些细节的了解能够充分把握文章的写作思路和观点，为正确推理奠定基础。

典型真题

1. From the talk we can learn that the speaker is _____.

A. unprepared for the new post

B. unclear about the conditions there

C. ready for all the difficulties there

D. eager to know more about the post（北京大学 2007 年）

【名师点评】C。听力结尾 but 处给出了相应的信息，I'll have to get used to 与选项 C 中的 ready for 对应。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

…I'll also have to get used to getting water from a well, not having electricity,

which means gas lamps in the evening; which means the difficulty of preparing for the next day's lessons in poor light; which means different ways of getting your clothes washed. There will be all sorts of big differences like that, but I'll have to get used to when I arrive there.

实战演练

2. A. He prefers coffee than tea because drinking coffee is a patriotic act.
   B. Drinking coffee was considered patriotic at the time when British colonists ruled America.
   C. Coffee was heavily taxed at the time.
   D. Coffee was less popular because it offered little independence to people who loved it.

【名师点评】 B。推断题。原文中的 Antipathy 指“强烈的憎恨”。原文中的 made coffee a patriotic drink 与选项 B 中的 Drinking coffee was considered patriotic 对应。英国殖民地对茶叶征税的做法，使那些寻求从母国（即英国）独立出来的人们把咖啡当作一种爱国饮料来喝。故答案为 B。

【听力原文】

Antipathy toward taxes on tea in Britain's American colonies made coffee a patriotic drink for those seeking independence from the mother country; and the Green Dragon cuffed house in Boston, where the Boston Tea Party was planned, was the first headquarter of the American Revolution…

Q2: What can be inferred about professor's attitude toward the book he's describing?

6 大命题点（四）观点态度题

命题方向

听力短文中，观点态度题的主要目的是考查考生能否听出作者的态度或观点。观点态度类题目是对短文综合性理解能力的测试，这类问题的答案无法从短文中直接听到，需要一定的逻辑分析能力。考生需要在听的过程中重点把握语气、语调，富有感情色彩的形容词或副词等，据此判定作者的态度或观点。考生要特别注意作者真正的意图可能不是表面上所说的那个词，而是侧重其隐含意义，要注意规避陷阱，把握好讲话人的语调和其真正的用意。

1 观点态度题的典型提问方式

What is the … opinion of …?
What's the tone of the passage?
What is the speaker's opinion about…?
How does the … feel about…?
What does the…mean…?

2 观点态度题出题思路

(1) 直接表明观点态度

❖ 通过语音、语调判断：语调上扬表示情绪惊讶，语调下降通常表示怀疑态度。

❖ 通过形容词判断，如：

肯定态度: favorable, approval, enthusiastic, supportive

否定态度: disapproval, dissatisfied, objection, opposition, disinterested, critical

怀疑态度: suspicious, incredulous, skeptical, questionable

客观态度: neutral, impartial, unprejudiced, unbiased, detached

(2) 间接表明观点态度

作者会通过委婉的方式表达自己的观点，目的是为了体现出自己的观点更加公允，不偏激。考生可以根据对话内容的关键词、上下文甚至语气、语调的内涵意义并利用逻辑思维能力来进行判断，才能对传递的信息进行比较深层次的理解。

答题技巧

观点态度题虽然在考试中占的比例最小，但考查的是考生的综合能力。因此，掌握这类问题的答题技巧非常重要。这类题难度相对较大，所以需要引起考生的特别注意。对于这类问题，考生在考试过程中，应掌握以下方法：

(1) 洞悉作者写作思路。只有了解文章的写作思路，才能准确把握作者的观点态度。要了解作者的写作思路，就要抓住文章的主题。因此，观点态度类问题的解题方法和主旨类问题的解题方法类似，一定要注意文章开始和结尾部分的句子以及措辞，尤其是文章的结尾，一般来说，结尾容易出现表明作者态度的句子。

(2) 根据选项特点判断问题类型。观点态度类试题的选项中一般都含有一些引出观点态度的动词或短语，常见的有：think, believe, find, guess, imagine, consider, as far as I know 等。根据这类线索词判断出试题类型以后，可以更有针对性地留意说话人对自己观点态度的陈述。

(3) 熟练掌握选项特点。观点态度类问题的选项一般包含以下表明作者态度的词汇：

❖ 积极词。如：positive, supportive, approval, enthusiastic, desirable 等；

❖ 中性词。如：indifferent, uninterested, unconcerned, neutral, impartial 等；

❖ 消极词。如：critical, negative, disgusting, unbearable, disappointed, useless 等。

如果选项中出现这些词汇，那么问题一定是针对观点态度的。所以在听文章的时候，考生应该对文章的相关内容重视起来。

(4) 抓住标识性的词语。听音时，考生应注意抓住一些表示因果、转折、比较或举例等逻辑关系的标识性的词语，如：but, instead, if, when, since 等，尤其注意文中出现的转折词后的内容，如：but, however, though, although, not as...as。考生需集中精力听懂转折词后面的句子，这些地方往往就是表明作者态度的线索。

(5) 把握说话人的语气。听音时，考生要通过说话人的语气来判断说话人的态度，尤其是反问、疑问、感叹等语气，往往会明显地体现出说话人的态度或观点。具体表达观点、态度时，可能出现的模式有：间接表达式，不明说赞成或反对；反问否定式，常委婉地表示质疑和反对；委婉谢绝式，先表示肯定、赞成、谢意等，随后说出真实看法；看似否定实为肯定式，如 why not, I can't agree any more 等。

典型真题

No. 3

3. A. Health and safety are more important than personal freedom.
   B. Personal freedom is more important than health and safety.
   C. Old people should keep their rooms clean.
   D. One should not take the risk of dealing with old people. (浙江大学 2014 年)

【名师点评】 A。观点态度题。根据题目的关键词 some social workers 定位答案。原文中的 health and safety 和 personal freedom 在选项 A 中重现，原文中的 in danger of carrying this concept 与 are more important than 对应。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

…But is it interfering with personal freedom to insist that they go to live with some of their relatives so that they might be taken better care of? Some social workers, the ones who clear up the worms, think we are in danger of carrying this concept of personal freedom to the point where serious risks are being taken with the health and safety of the old. Indeed, the old can be easily hurt or harmed. The body is like a car, it needs more mechanical maintenance as it gets older…

Q3: What do some social workers think about the idea of the people?

4. A. Sporting activities are forms of biological development.
   B. Sporting activities are essentially forms of taming the prey.
   C. Sporting activities have actually developed from hunting.
   D. Sporting activities have changed the ways of hunting. (浙江大学 2012 年)

【名师点评】 C。观点态度题。原文中的 Sporting activities 和 hunting 在选项 C 中重现，原文中的 are essentially modified forms of 与选项 C 中的 have actually developed from 对应。故答案为 C。

【听力原文】

NO. 4

Sporting activities are essentially modified forms of hunting behavior. Viewed biologically, the modern footballer is in reality a member of a hunting group. His killing weapon has turned into a harmless football and his prey into a goalmouth. If his aim is accurate and he scores a goal, he enjoys the hunter's triumph of killing his prey…

Q4: What does the author think about sporting activities?

实战演练

5. A. It will become popular gradually.
   B. It will change the concept of food.
   C. It has attracted worldwide attention.
   D. It can help solve global food crises.

6. A. Skeptical.　　B. Optimistic.
   C. Indifferent.　　D. Realistic.

【名师点评】

5. D。观点态度题。题目中的 Dr. Mironov think of 与原文中的 he believes 对应，原文中的 help solve …global food crises 在选项 D 中重现。故答案为 D。

6. B。注意题目问的是 Andrea's attitude。根据原文中的 blessed，happy 和 optimistic 可以判定答案为 B。

【听力原文】

No. 5

In a small laboratory at the Medical University of South Carolina, Dr. Vladimir Mironov has been working for a decade to grow meat. A developmental biologist and tissue engineer, Dr. Mironov, is one of only a few scientists worldwide involved in bioengineering "cultured" meat. It's a product he believes could help solve future global food crises resulting from shrinking amounts of land available for growing meat the old-fashioned way. "Growth of cultured meat is also under way in the Netherlands," Mironov told Reuters in an interview, "but in the United States, it is science in search of funding and demand." …

Q5: What does Dr. Mironov think of bioengineering cultured meat?

No. 6

Despite unemployment and the loss of her home, Andrea Clark considers herself a blessed and happy woman. Why the cheerful attitude? Her troubles have brought her closer to her family. Last year, Andrea's husband, Rick, a miner in Nevada was laid off. Though Andrea kept her job as a school bus driver, she knew that they couldn't pay their bill and support their youngest of five children, Zack, aged nine, on one income. "At first the church helped out, but you can't keep that up forever," Andrea says. Then Michael, the eldest of her four adult children suggested they move in with his family. For almost three months, seven Clarks lived under one roof. Andrea, Rick and Zack stayed in the basement department, sharing laundry and single bathroom with Michael, his wife and their two children. The change cut their expenditures in half, but the new living arrangement proved too challenging. When Andrea found a job with a school district closer to her mother's home in west Jorden, Utah, the family decided to move on. Packing up again with no picnic, Zack had to switch schools for the second time and space is even tighter. Andrea says that the moves themselves are exhausting and Rick is still looking for a job. The recession has certainly come with more problems than Andrea anticipated, but she remains unfailingly optimistic. She is excited to spend more time with her mother. Another plus, rents are lower in Utah than in Nevada. So Andrea thinks they'll be able to save up and move out in less than 6 months.

Q6: What is Andrea's attitude toward the hardships brought by the economic recession?

6 大命题点（五）行动建议题

命题方向

行动建议题是关于短文提及的对象做过、正在做、准备去做什么，或建议去做什么。此类题目信息量多，无须推理，只需听清并记准短文相关的内容。

1 行动建议题常见的提问方式

What will … most probably do…?

What are the speakers probably going/trying to do?
What does … suggest doing?
What will…probably do next?

2 行动建议题的分类

（1）某人或组织计划或打算做什么。选择项常以动词原形或动词不定式形式出现；也有以句子形式出现的选择项，这类选择项的谓语部分常出现 will，be going to 或 be to。考生应根据选择项确定提问的对象，听音时集中注意力去听相关部分，尤其是谓语动词。

（2）某人或组织正在做什么。选择项通常是动词的-ing 形式，有时也会出现句子，但其谓语动词都是进行时的形式。这种类型的测试题往往比较简单，只要集中注意力听清短文中的主语和谓语动词基本都能做出正确的判断。

（3）某人或组织提出去做什么。这类测试题中，作者针对话题或问题提出要求或建议。试题的选择项通常为动词原形或动词不定式。考生要集中注意力听清楚短文结尾处的谓语动词。

答题技巧

行动建议题型解题技巧如下：

（1）根据选项特点判断题型。一般来说，这类题目的选项都是动词短语形式，且动词一般为原形或动名词形式。

（2）留意听力原文中与选项中动词相关的信息。在留意短文动词的同时，要记录一些与该动词相关的重要信息，尤其是不止一个选项中的动词在对话中出现的时候，只有留意与其相关的信息，才能根据问题对号入座。

（3）注意表示请求或建议的句式或短语。行动建议题的对话中经常会包含提出请求或建议的句式或短语，如：…will be…，is going to…，…make a suggestion…，等句式以及 advise，suggest，advice，recommendation，suggestion 等词，此类句式或词后面的内容有可能就是建议去做或准备去做的行为活动，很可能与答案直接相关，因此听音时需重点留意。

典型真题

7. A. Many welcome the idea of having more bars on board.
   B. Many prefer the ferry to maintain its present speed.
   C. Some suggest improving the design of the deck.
   D. Some object to using larger luxury boats. （南开大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】B。行动建议题。题目问坐船的通勤者对渡口未来的计划如何反应。根据原文最后 A lot of people 与选项 B 中的 Many 对应，原文中的 feel that half an hour is just enough time to relax 与选项 B 中的 maintain its present speed 对应。故答案为 B。

【听力原文】

No. **7**

…The trip takes only 30 minutes and is not very costly. Best of all, being on a boat seems to make people more friendly toward each other. There has already been a marriage of two commuters who met on the ferry. Because the ferry has been so successful, there are plans to use other still larger boats. There is also a proposal for a

high speed boat that will make the trip in only 15 minutes. But not everyone is happy about that. A lot of people feel that half an hour is just enough time to relax.

Q7: How do commuters respond to plans for the future of the ferry?

实战演练

8. A. Lower their prices to attract more customers.
   B. Introduce travel packages for young travelers.
   C. Design programs targeted at retired couples.
   D. Launch a new program of adventure trips.
9. A. By controlling the carriers of the disease.
   B. By growing a stronger kind of the elm.
   C. By watering infected elm trees.
   D. By cutting down all infected elms.

【名师点评】

8. **D**。行动建议题。听到 Tselana Travel 直接锁定目标，且听力原文中也给出了 planning to introduce…中的 introduce 与选项 D 中的 Launch 对应，a new program 和 adventure trips 分别在选项 D 中重现。故答案为 D。
9. **A**。行动建议题。听到 experts 锁定答案位置。题目中的 the spread of the disease 与原文中的 spreads the disease 对应，control the beetle 与选项 A 中的 controlling the carriers of the disease 对应。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

No. **8**

Some travel agents are thriving in spite of the economy. "We've had more people booking in the first quarter of this year than last," says Hubert Moineau, founder of Tselana Travel, which is planning to introduce a new program of longer adventure trips, including polar expeditions and cruises in the Galápagos. "We're hearing things like, 'We don't know what the situation will be in six months, so let's travel now,'" Ashley Toft, managing director of the U. K. tour operator Explore, has been surprised to see an increase in last-minute bookings of high-priced trips to such places as India, Bhutan and Nepal. "It seems people would rather give up something else than the big trip," he says. Travel has become a necessity. It's just how we travel that is changing.

Q8: What is Tselana Travel planning to do, according to its founder?

No. **9**

The beetle uses the tree to reproduce itself. The female builds channels in the wood for the eggs; at the same time, it infects the tree with fungus. The worst thing is that the process seems unstoppable, because once the beetle leaves the infected tree it carries the fungus on its body and poisons a healthy tree. Of course, we are trying to fight the disease. In the past, infected trees were simply cut down. That method reduces the number of the infected trees but it never stops the disease. Now experts are trying to get to the root of the problem; they are working on ways to control the beetle that spreads the disease.

Q9: According to the speaker, how do experts hope to limit the spread of the disease in

the future?

6 大命题点（六）目的原因题

命题方向

短文的目的或原因是这个短文形成的主要理由。短文中，说话人的目的是与短文的话题、短文的背景相关的。目的原因题作为考博英语听力的常考题型之一，具备了自身的特殊性，它需要考生在听完全部的听力内容之后才能回答问题，这种题型也是一种变相的主旨题，不论听到的句子有多难或是多长，考生一定要把握住听力材料中的主旨，这样才能继续了解细节并做出相应的推断。

1 考博英语考试中，关于目的原因题的提问形式如下：

What is the purpose of the talk?
What is the main purpose of the lecture?
Why does the professor say this…?
What points does he/she want to make?
Why does the man/woman talk about…?
The professor talks about…

2 考博英语考试中，常见的提示短文目的原因的开头有：

To ask for advice…
To answer a question…
To compare two or more things…
To introduce a new concept…
To recommend a course of action…
有时说话人会直接说出其目的：
I need advice about…
I'm concerned about…

3 常见的提示信号有：

- well，now，you know 等语气词；
- 明显、刻意的停顿；
- 说话者的自问自答；
- 其他表示引起听众注意的声音信号。

答题技巧

（1）快速浏览分析选项。考生迅速阅读选择项，根据关键信息判断题型是否为目的原因题，明确听音目的，为追寻题目所需的关键信息做准备。

（2）注意短文开头部分。目的原因题一般是对说话者提到某个事物或者举某个例子的目的的提问。当考生去寻找题目对应的句子时，往往会发现这样的题目对应的出题句一般在说话者提到某个事物或者举例的前后。所以从进入正文起，考生就要注意随时可能出现

purpose 或者 problem 对应的答案。

（3）适当做笔记。当考生看到或听到题目想不起来答案时，一般的做法是仔细看各个选项，借助选项的帮助，在模糊的记忆中寻找似乎听到的只言片语。但出题人会利用考生的这种习惯，在错误选项中设置考生明显听到了的词或词组，以引诱考生选择错误答案。解决办法是，当考生在短文中听到说话者举例或者罗列细节时，立即建立对其接下来讲话内容的预期，而不是在讲话者罗列细节的过程中集中精力记录琐碎细节。当短文内容出现总结性的语句时，考生集中精力听懂总结性语句，并且适当地做笔记。

（4）目的原因行文特征。讲话人会在提出观点或看法后进行举例，举例结束后会以某种方式引起听众的注意，相当于给出一个出题信号，接下来进行总结。

典型真题

10. A. It will harm the long-term interest of Chinese economic development.
    B. It will transform the economic growth mode in China.
    C. It will make the most from the process of economic development.
    D. It will speed up the fluctuation of RMB. （浙江大学 2009 年）

【名师点评】 A。听到原文中的 downsides to RMB's appreciation shouldn't be over-emphasized 锁定答案位置。原文中的 harm the long term interests 与选项 A 中的 harm the long-term interest 对应。故答案为 A。

【听力原文】

No. **10**

…It is also an important turning point in China's social and economic situation. The downsides to RMB's appreciation shouldn't be over-emphasized. The fluctuation of the RMB is the result of changes to the current economic structure and will have an important impact on the economic structure of the future. Maintaining the status quo is short-sighted and will harm the long term interests of China. The best choice is to speed up the transformation of the economic growth mode and adapt to the appreciation of RMB to make the most from the process.

Q10: Why shouldn't the downsides of RMB appreciation be over-emphasized?

11. A. To honor Swiss heroes who died in the war.
    B. To show Switzerland was neutral.
    C. To pay tribute to Switzerland.
    D. To show gratitude to the Swiss government for its financial support.

（南开大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】 C。题目中的 a red cross on a white ground 与原文对应，据此定位答案。原文中的 tribute to Switzerland 在选项 C 中重现。故答案为 C。本题需要考生有短时记忆的能力。

【听力原文】

No. **11**

…From that battle Dunant determined to form a body of people who would rally together in times of war and attend to the needs of the wounded and the dying. Dunant held that a suffering human being should be helped for his own sake only and without regard to race, religion, or political beliefs. Many European states supported him and on

22nd August 1864, the first Geneva Convention was signed. This lays down that once a soldier is wounded he and everyone else who comes to his help ceases to be an enemy. A symbol by which the relief workers could be recognized was devised. As a tribute to Switzerland, the symbol was the Swiss flag reversed. That is a red cross on a white ground. So the Red Cross was born.

Q11: Why was the symbol of the Red Cross designed with a red cross on a white ground?

实战演练

12. A. To point out that chromosomes are arranged in pairs.
    B. To describe the coiled shape of a chromosome.
    C. To illustrate how chromosomes are protected from damage.
    D. To explain how chromosomes are joined before dividing.
13. A. It has no evolutionary connection to other trees growing in Australia today.
    B. It has an inefficient reproductive system.
    C. Its flowers are located at the bases of the leaves.
    D. It is similar to some ancient fossils.

【名师点评】

12. **C**。选项 C 是对原文 protect the genes, the genetically functional part of the chromosome from being damaged 的同义改写。故答案为 C。
13. **D**。根据 fossils that old trees bear remarkable resemblance to the tree. So, it's a primitive tree, 可知本题题干已给出结果，并对原因提问。故答案为 D。

【听力原文】

No. **12**

Now a telomere is a highly repetitious and genetically meaningless sequence of DNA, which we were calling junk DNA. But it does have an important purpose. It's sort of like the plastic tip on each end of a shoelace. It may not help you tie your shoe but that little plastic tip keeps the rest of the shoelace, the shoe string from unraveling into weak and useless threads. Well, the telomeres at the ends of chromosomes seem to do about the same thing—protect the genes, the genetically functional part of the chromosome from being damaged.

Q12: Why does the professor mention shoelaces?

No. **13**

Now another interesting thing about the Nightcap Oak is that it represents a very old type kind of tree that grew a hundred million years ago. Um, we found fossils that old trees bear remarkable resemblance to the tree. So, it's a primitive tree. A living fossil you might say.

Q13: According to the professor, what led scientists to characterize the Nightcap Oak as primitive?

周六 听力题型之复合式听写

题型概述

复合式听写是一种综合性的测试手段，是对考生听的能力、拼写能力、记笔记能力和书面表达能力的综合测试。考生不仅要听懂内容，熟练而准确地拼写单词，更重要的是要将其归纳、总结，把主要意思通过笔头表达出来。复合式听写题材以英美国家的社会、文化、教育、历史、风俗习惯、人物传记为主，词数约为250。

（1）复合式听写不仅考听的能力，还考单词拼写、信息记录和内容概括的能力。作为听力题，复合式听写当然以考查听的能力为主。但在听懂的基础上，考生还必须把听到的单词正确地拼写出来，把听到的内容要点记录下来，并结合记忆将较长的话语概括地表达出来。

（2）复合式听写不仅考查单词和句子，而且考查语法。从形式上看，复合式听写主要考单词和句子。但由于录音中的连读、弱读等现象的存在，有时只靠听难以辨别名词是单数还是复数，动词是现在分词还是过去分词，等等，因此考生要根据已具备的语法知识来加以推断，得出正确的结论。

（3）复合式听写不仅考词义，而且考词性。一般情况下，只要听出单词的正确发音，结合其所在的上下文语境中应有的语义即可做出正确判断。但有时在没有完全听清楚或记录时发生笔误的情况下考生可以根据其所处位置判断其应有的词性，从而做出正确判断或修正。

（4）复合式听写不仅考单句，而且考句与句之间的逻辑关系。逻辑是指上下文的因果、转折、递进、解释等关系。考生根据这些关系，在听录音之前即可大致预测所缺单词，从而做到心中有数。

出题规律

从考查形式上看，博士研究生英语考试中复合式听写部分有如下命题规律：

（1）在选材上，复合式听写多为说明文或议论文，涉及科普、经济、社会、历史、文化等多方面，且其观点鲜明、条理清楚。这为考生准确捕捉所需信息提供了语境条件。

（2）在设题上，所需填写信息虽然都是未知信息，但这些信息彼此并不是孤立的，而是从文章里挑选出来的，未知信息是和已知信息联系在一起的，这为考生通过已知信息推断未知信息提供了可能。

（3）在考查的时间上，尽管本题每部分的每一个小题留出的填写时间是固定的、有限的，但在播放考试内容前要播放本题的考试指令部分。此外，用正常语速播放两遍，这些

时间都是可以利用的。

（4）在考查的难度上，听写句子的部分不要求考生把听到的内容一字不差地写下来，考生只需把听到的内容的大意用自己的话表达出来即可，这在一定程度上降低了听写的难度。

备考策略

听写是一种有效的综合性测试，可以考查学生词汇量、拼写、句法、听力、理解、记笔记和书面表达等多个方面的能力，因此听写成绩的提高与其他技能的提高是密不可分的。笔者深信全面打好语言基本功是提高听写能力的重要途径，但听写训练具有自身的科学性和技巧性，多练加巧练则定可取得事半功倍的成效。要想做好复合式听写，需要做到以下几点：

（1）通过卷面文字捕捉信息，找出线索，了解大意。听写材料多为说明文，这一体裁的文章具有主题突出、条理清楚、层次分明、语言简洁、逻辑性强的特点。文章的开头或段首多半有 Topic sentence（主题句），之后的段落、句子都是针对主题句的进一步扩展、说明或论证。考生应利用一切机会，如考前空隙或播放考试 Directions 的时间，浏览短文，尤其要抓住主题句，根据主题句预测文章的发展线索和大意。听写的文章都具有一致性和连贯性的特点，考生通过浏览文章总会搜索到一些有参考价值的信息。

（2）听、写结合，双管齐下。复合式听写一般读 2 ~3 遍。第一遍全文朗读，要求考生注意听懂文章大意。由于听录音前考生已预览了卷面文字，对听力材料有了大致的了解，因此在听第一遍录音时，考生可以填写一些较简单的单词或词组。

（3）提高记笔记的效率。一般考生听完两遍基本可听懂句意，但只凭记忆写要点，往往容易有疏漏和错误。足够信息量的笔记是写好要点的重要条件。

（4）抓住关键词，参考主题句。在听的时候，要注意文章内的关键词和每段开头与结尾的句子，抓住几个关键词，再参考每段的主题句，猜测文章的主要内容和句子的主要意思，再用简单语言把它写出来。

（5）检查、核对内容要点。核对是最后必不可少的环节，考生应抓住时机弥补前两遍听录音时所忽略或遗漏的内容，进一步修改和完善自己的答案。在核对时，对于一些空缺，考生仅凭辨音难以准确地判断出其为何词，此时考生可以从语法结构、词语搭配、上下文语义等多个角度去推测、分析和判断，最终正确地拼写出这些单词或短语。

五大对策（一）熟悉音变现象

技巧点拨

音变在许多语言中普遍存在，说话的过程是连续发出声音的过程，在连续的发音过程中，口型、舌位以及气流要由一个音的口型模式转换成另一个音的口型模式。要使这种转换自然流畅，有些词就不能完全按照单独发音时的口型模式去发音，由此形成了音变现象。英语的音变规律有以下几个方面：

1. 连读现象。连读时的音节一般不重读，只需顺其自然地一带而过，不可以加音，也不可以读得太重。连读有助于完整意义的表达，并使整句话具有强烈的黏着感，体现句子的整体性，充分体现美语语言的自然流畅。

❖ 在同一个意群中，相邻的两个词，前者以辅音音素结尾，后者以元音音素开头，往往要拼在一起连读。如：He is a student.（is 与 a 要连读）

❖ 在同一个意群中的两个单词，如果前面的单词以 r 或 re 结尾，后面的单词以元音音素开头，则 r 或 re 要发［r］音，并与其后的元音音素拼读。如：They're my father ~ and mother.

❖ 元音与元音的连读。当两个元音相邻时，若要发得自然、连贯，便需要在两元音之间加上滑音［j］、［w］或［r］。如：Stay up late.

❖ 辅音与辅音的连读。这种连音的表现形式多种多样，而对考生听力理解造成较大障碍的是：不完全爆破发音、舌侧爆破音和鼻腔爆破音等。

2. 同化现象。相邻两个单词的读音常常相互影响而被第三个与其单独发音时不同的音所取代，这种现象就称为同化现象。它是为了追求发音的顺口。

3. 弱读。弱读也是听力中最基本、最普遍的现象之一。通常句子中除了有重要意义的词带有句重音之外，其他词往往弱读，如助动词、连接词、前置词、人称代词等。

4. 重音。句子重音往往是讲话者表达意思的一种语音手段，因此也是听话者理解话语的重要依据。如：Son: Mum，I've got a B in my math exam. Mum: So you have passed.

have 作为助动词本不应重读，但这里却带有句重音，言外之意是: 我原来以为你不会及格。

5. 语调。同一个句子，语调不同含义就会出现差异，必须引起考生的重视。

例如：

A burglar broke into his house last night.（↘降调表示肯定）

A burglar broke into his house last night.（↗升调表示怀疑）

要提高听力理解水平，克服英语音变障碍，考生应做到以下几点：

（1）学会科学的发音方法。掌握正确的发音，了解每一个音素的异同。如掌握了发音的部位和方式，声带的活动就能很好地发出辅音:/m/是双唇紧闭，气流通过鼻腔，引起声带震荡的双唇浊鼻音。最小对是语音辨析时最有效也最常用的方法。最小对即只有一个音素不同的两个单词，如 read-red，fan-fine。

（2）掌握发音规律。考生掌握一些英语语音方面的规律。如：句子中的词与词怎样连读，哪些词需要弱读，怎样掌握好弱读，同化与省音发生在句子中的什么地方等。

（3）练习大声朗读，提高听力水平。口语练习就是多朗读、多说。在朗读、说的时候，注意连读、同化、省音、掌握好句子的节奏、轻重读。要不断地、随时地纠正在语音方面的错误。把音变与听力结合起来，提高听力水平。

典型真题

No. 1

There are no _____on Australian or British stamps.（清华大学 2002 年）

【名师点评】living people。根据句中的成分判定 no 后面应该是名词或名词短语，原文中的 on Australian or British stamps 在题干中重现，故原文 no 后面的 living people 即为答案。

【听力原文】

…With the notable exception of members of the British Royal Family, no living people ever appear on Australian or British stamps. This policy is under review, but many stamp enthusiasts see a good reason for keeping it that way to avoid the possibility of people in

power using their influence to get onto the stamps.

No. 2

Some advantages of _____ make us realize that freedom has long been absent from our lives with a phone.（浙江大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】a phone-free lifestyle。注意 advantage 的发音为［ədˈvæntɪdʒ］，make us realize that freedom has long been absent from our lives with a phone 与原文重复，因此，of 后的 a phone-free lifestyle 即为答案。

【听力原文】

The idea of not having a phone at all could be beneficial sounds crazy to people who are addicted to the global Internet or even just Facebook. Indeed, it sounds like a pain. But some advantages of a phone-free lifestyle make us realize that freedom has long been absent from our lives with a phone. According to *The Wall Street Journal's* Anton Troianovski, people expect less of you when you don't have a cell phone.

实战演练

No. 3

The judgment that cigarette smoking is hazardous to health is the result of more than 30 years of research carded on by hundreds of scientists in this country and abroad. The conclusion that cigarette smoking is a __1__ health hazard is supported by every medical and health __2__ in the world which is known to have expressed an opinion on the matter.

【名师点评】

1. significant。空格前的不定冠词 a 和空格后的名词短语 health hazard 提示所填词应为形容词。significant 为形容词，意为“重大的”。
2. agency。空格前的 medical 和 health 提示所填词应为名词，再根据前面的 every 可知所填词应为单数可数名词。agency 为名词，意为“机构”。

【听力原文】

The judgment that cigarette smoking is hazardous to health is the result of more than 30 years of research carded on by hundreds of scientists in this country and abroad. The conclusion that cigarette smoking is a significant health hazard is supported by every medical and health agency in the world which is known to have expressed an opinion on the matter.

五大对策（二）注意正确的语法格式

技巧点拨

听力中的复合式听写经常涉及语法，考生应注意以下问题：

（1）缩写问题。普遍承认的缩写均可使用，比如 pound 和 dollar 就建议使用缩写符号，am，pm，AD，prof，BC 等都可以写成缩写的形式，professor 可以写成 prof.，但是如果后接人名，需要大写成 Prof. 要注意表示缩写的小点是否标上。日期的表达方式，一般只接受两种，如 8th August 或 August 8th，建议考生不要用其他缩写。

（2）名词的单复数。名词的复数是常见考点。由于录音中的连读、弱读等现象，只靠听音难以辨别名词是单数还是复数，考生需根据已具备的语法知识来加以推断，得出正确的结论。

例：You would also use formal English in compositions and _____ that you write in school.

分析：答案是 essays，为复数形式，但因为同后面的 that 连读，很难听清是单数还是复数；根据其前面的 compositions and …这一并列结构，考生很容易推断出这里需要的可数名词 essay 一定为复数形式。

（3）动词的形式。听写部分所要求填写的动词中有很多不是原形。在录音中，很多单词都随着上下文出现连读、重读、弱读等现象，很难判定，但涉及语法的填空不必完全依赖听音，应充分利用语法知识，从语段层面上理解句子的内容，注意空格前后的词汇和语句信息，这样许多听不清的词会从上下文中得到提示。

例：Around 120 years ago, Ebbinghaus began his study of memory. He _____ on studying how quickly the human mind can remember …

分析：空格的答案应为 concentrated，完全可以根据上文的时间状语 Around 120 years ago 来确定时态。

关于动词的形式除了要注意时态外，也要注意语态不同带来的改变。如：…no one is permitted to take books…The Library of Congress was established in 1800…They were all destroyed that year when the Capitol was burned down…都是被动语态，听和写时要有意识地根据上下文填写。

（4）固定搭配。固定搭配的考查在复合式听写中随处可见。熟悉各种固定搭配，在单词填空时可以助考生一臂之力，在句子听写时可以帮考生迅速勾勒出句子的大体框架结构。

例：… the amount you learn _____ on the time you spend trying to learn it.

分析：空格考查固定搭配 depend on。

典型真题

No. 4

1. The world's different sorts of natural resources are struggling to support a _____ and it may result in a long term crisis. 2. To feed 2 billion more mouths predicted by 2050, food production will have to _____.	1. _____ 2. _____

（浙江大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】

1. rapidly growing population。根据句子成分分析，a 后面应接名词。注意 growing 为动名词，做形容词用，应用副词 rapidly 修饰。
2. increase by 70%。题干中的 have to 后接动词原形，increase 后面常接 by。

【听力原文】

The world's different sorts of natural resources are struggling to support a rapidly growing population and it may result in a long term crisis. With no increase in arable land,

and already taxed supply of freshwater and fears of ongoing drought, figuring out how to feed 7 billion is a top priority for governments. To feed 2 billion more mouths predicted by 2050, food production will have to increase by 70%, the UN Food and Agriculture Organization says.

实战演练

No. 5

With no difference between his products and the products of his competitors, he will sell nothing if he charges above the market price and he will sell all if he charges at or below the market price. However, in thinking over the price, he must take the cost of production into consideration and no business person can afford to lose money for a prolonged period. He must be constantly aware of his costs in relation to the market price if he is to compete __1__ and earn a profit. Many people have the __2__ that as production increases, costs per unit decrease.

【名师点评】

1. successfully。分析句子结构可知，从句中不缺少主干成分，所填词应为副词，修饰动词compete。successfully，副词，意为“顺利地、成功地”。
2. impression。根据空格前的定冠词 the 提示，可知所填词应为名词。impression，名词单数，意为“印象”。

【听力原文】

With no difference between his products and the products of his competitors, he will sell nothing if he charges above the market price and he will sell all if he charges at or below the market price. However, in thinking over the price, he must take the cost of production into consideration and no business person can afford to lose money for a prolonged period. He must be constantly aware of his costs in relation to the market price if he is to compete successfully and earn a profit. Many people have the impression that as production increases, costs per unit decrease.

五大对策（三）单词拼写的误区

技巧点拨

单词拼写是基本功，而复合式听写常考一些长词、难词，对考生的英语基本功提出了较高的要求。考生经常犯的单词拼写的错误有：

（1）长词拼写错误：proportion，accustomed，equipment，exceed，guarantee。

（2）生僻词拼写错误：ingredients。

（3）元音拼写错误：把 efficiently 写成 efficently，把 individuals 写成 individuls，把 proportion 写成 propotion，把 accustomed 写成 accostumed。考生应注意形近词的拼写。

（4）各音节间的辅音字母双写拼写错误：success，process，necessary，recommend。

（5）不发音的字母拼写错误：island，exhausted，isle，comb。

（6）很多考生听到某个单词感觉很熟悉，但是往往要反应很长时间才能对上号，这就说明对单词不够熟悉，或者说敏感程度不够，需要平时有意识地训练单词发音，把音形义

紧密地结合起来。

（7）有的考生听力基础不错，一听到单词马上就能反应出是什么意思，但是由于记忆偏差或者粗心常常出现拼写错误。

（8）大小写问题。考生需要注意几条首字母大写规则：特殊名词一般要求大写，比如时间（Sunday）、地点（Church Road）、人名（Peter）、职位（Professor）；句首要大写。考生做题时对这一点要稍加留意，以免造成不必要的失分。

（9）词尾的变形错误：

- 名词：单复数，所有格。
- 形容词注意比较级以及以 al 结尾的形容词：natural，personal，additional。
- 副词结尾的 ly：wholly，completely，emotionally。

典型真题

No. 6

Inadequate rest means a weaker ___1___ system, laying the body open to a whole ___2___ of illnesses.（北京大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】1. immune。注意单词中的辅音字母 m 为双写。

2. range。注意单词的拼写。

【听力原文】

Inadequate rest means a weaker immune system, laying the body open to a whole range of illnesses. On the average a man needs seven hours of sleep a day and a woman seven and a quarter hours. Six hours of uninterrupted sleep is better than ten hours of tossing and turning, however. People who sleep less than six hours a night are destined for an early death.

No. 7

People who get ___1___ sleep or poor quality sleep have a higher risk of ___2___ on the road. They are more likely to fall asleep at the ___3___ and kill people or get killed.（北京大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】1. insufficient。注意元音拼写，不要把 insufficient 写成 insufficent。

2. accidents。注意音节间的辅音字母 c 为双写。

3. wheel。注意单词中的辅音字母 e 为双写。

【听力原文】

Between sleep deprivation and fatal accidents there is an obvious correlation. People who get insufficient sleep or poor quality sleep have a higher risk of accidents on the road. They are more likely to fall asleep at the wheel and kill people or get killed. Professional drivers and shift workers are most likely to take the risk. The performance at work also deteriorates because of sleep deprivation.

实战演练

No. 8

Abel Xavier, Middlesbrough's Portuguese defender, has failed a drugs test and been suspended from all football by FIFA, football's world governing body. Xavier's urine

sample after Boro's UEFA Cup tie in Xanthi, Greece, was found to be positive. Xavier is protesting his _____ to the club. Xavier is believed to have been taking a supplement to treat a virus.

【名师点评】innocence。此题考查听特定信息的能力。解题的关键点在于分析已知信息得知，所填词为名词，且 innocence“无辜的，清白的”，要注意长词拼写问题。

【听力原文】

Abel Xavier, Middlesbrough's Portuguese defender, has failed a drugs test and been suspended from all football by FIFA, football's world governing body. Xavier's urine sample after Boro's UEFA Cup tie in Xanthi, Greece, was found to be positive. Xavier is protesting his innocence to the club. Xavier is believed to have been taking a supplement to treat a virus.

No. 9

For the time being Middlesbrough are standing by Xavier, though they are making no public statements, but a further test will now follow on Xavier's sample and, if that is found to be positive, then the defender, who turns 33 next month, may be banned for a _____ period that his career is effectively over.

【名师点评】sufficient。此题考查听特定形容词的能力，此题关键在于单词的拼写，不要把 sufficient 拼写为 sufficent。be banned for a sufficient period 意为“被禁止参赛很长时间”。

【听力原文】

For the time being Middlesbrough are standing by Xavier, though they are making no public statements, but a further test will now follow on Xavier's sample and, if that is found to be positive, then the defender, who turns 33 next month, may be banned for a sufficient period that his career is effectively over.

五大对策（四）记录大意

技巧点拨

短文听写要求学生在了解所听文章概貌的基础上，在空中填入确切的单词或用所听到的内容总结的观点填空。这比听力选择题更强调了语言的综合运用能力，是一种综合性的语言技能，包括听、写、单词量、语法结构、篇章理解、记忆力等各方面的能力。因此，掌握复合式听写中单词或长句的记录技巧就显得尤为重要，具体说来就是要学会边听边记，边总结边记。

1）利用缩略语、简单符号、有代表性的字母以及重要的词相结合来记录句子。边听边记并不是听到什么就写什么，而是利用缩略语、简单符号、有代表性的字母以及重要的词相结合，来记录和存储信息，再利用这些简易的信息来帮助回忆和整理句子。这些缩略语、简单符号、有代表性的字母以及重要的词，只要考生本人明白即可。例如用 vs. 代表 versus，eg. 代表 for example，for instance，sth. 代表 something；用第一个大写字母代表国家（French 写成 F，China 写成 C）；用阿拉伯数字代表星期、年、月、日等。这些符号、缩写不一定规范，所表达的内容不一定完整，只要能起到

提示的作用，考生自己能够看懂就行。边听边记的过程中要注意两点：速度要快；表义要清楚明确。

2）有选择地记下关键词，提高记录效率。

（1）用代词替换拼写复杂的名词，尤其是人称、地点、专有名词等。记录过程中一些拼写复杂的人称名词、地点、专有名词等，可以用代词来取代。例如 Christopher 可以写成 he，Elizabeth 写成 she，而 Alexandra and Marian 则可以用 they 表示。

（2）用拼写相对简单的同义词代替拼写复杂的单词及词组。复杂的单词及词组拼写起来不仅耗费时间，而且容易拼错，例如把 environment 写成 enviroment，把 opportunity 写成 oportunity。在考试中考生可以用拼写相对简单的同义词代替拼写复杂的单词及词组，比如 immediately 可以转化为 at once，opportunity 可以用 chance 取代；用 admit 代替 acknowledge。同样，用 focus on 代替 concentrate on，用 make use of 代替 take advantage of 等。

（3）根据上下文语义判断答案。英语中的段落会分为几个不同的意群，每个意群可独立表达特定的意思。因此在听音前快速浏览短文时，就可以结合该题目所在的语境进行合理的判断。例如，All languages have two general levels of usage：A formal level and an informal level. English is no exception. 根据对上一句的理解可以判断，该句讲的是所有语言都有两个大体的功用：正式和非正式的，英语也是。很显然，这里可以轻易得出答案为“没有例外”，再结合对短语 with no exception 的理解，答案就更可以确定无疑。

典型真题

No. 10

1. The total market has _____ from 280 million liters to 440 million liters.
2. The actual sector share of the four main milk products has _____. （北京大学 2007 年）

【名师点评】

1. grown substantially。has 后应填入动词的过去分词，动词应用副词修饰。听写时 substantially 可以简写为 subs。
2. changed radically。has 后应填入动词的过去分词，动词应用副词修饰。听写时 radically 可以简写为 radi。

【听力原文】

I'm not going to talk for long—just long enough to give you an overview of developments so that we can discuss the implications. So, let's start by looking at trends over the last ten years. On this first transparency you'll see two outstanding features: firstly, the total market has grown substantially from 280 million liters to 440 million liters; secondly, the actual sector share of the four main milk products has changed radically; the full milk sector has fallen dramatically from 74% to just 42%, —here on the chart — the skimmed milk sector has rocketed from only 12% to 35%, reflecting the weight of publicity toward low fat diets.

实战演练

No. 11

Some of them include feelings of apprehension or dread, trouble concentrating,

irritability, restlessness, and feeling like your mind's gone blank. Anyway, both common sense and a look at the internal process of the person should reveal the truth that ___1___ ; rather, as some experts address, it expresses itself as a poverty in the quality of life. It can be observed in many social situations. ___2___

【名师点评】

1. shyness does not influence your realization significantly。记录时原文中的 compromise 用 influence 替换；in a significant way 可以用副词 significantly 替换。
2. When you find it difficult to report to authority or have fun in public, the shyness is around you. 记录时原文中的 in an authority position 记录为 authority，in entertaining in public 替换为简单的拼写 have fun in public。

【听力原文】

Some of them include feelings of apprehension or dread, trouble concentrating, irritability, restlessness, and feeling like your mind's gone blank. Anyway, both common sense and a look at the internal process of the person should reveal the truth that shyness does not compromise, in a significant way, the personal realization; rather, as some experts address, it expresses itself as a poverty in the quality of life. It can be observed in many social situations. When you find the difficulty in reporting to someone in an authority position, or in entertaining in public, you know it is with you.

五大对策（五）同义替换

技巧点拨

在部分高校的博士研究生英语入学考试中，短文听写部分的要求是用所听到的确切内容或用自己总结的观点来填空。考生完全记录下来所听内容的可能性很小，因此可以用同义替换法总结的观点来填空。用关键词把每个意群的大意记下来，然后整合成完整的句子。意群之间的关联成分，可以留到最后整合时补充。为了表明意群之间的关系，可以使用自己设计的符号，如星号、箭头来表示先后顺序或并列的要点。

1. 词汇的同义替换。在听写过程中，听力原文通常用复杂的实词或短语来表达意思，因此此类实词或短语是同义转换的重点。在记录过程中巧妙地运用所学的简单短语或单词替换听力原文的意思。

（1）名词 vs 名词

We must exploit every opportunity to learn new things.（chance）

（2）动词短语 vs 单个动词

We'll have to set off very early.（leave）

（3）动词短语 vs 单个动词

I've got to go over my notes for tomorrow's midterm.（study）

（4）动词短语 vs 动词短语

It looks like he bought out the bookshelf.（bought a lot of books）

（5）动词短语 vs 形容词短语

He is counting the days to go home for the summer.（is eager to）

(6) 形容词短语 vs 形容词短语

Physical activity is beneficial to the brain in the same way that mental activity is to it. (is good to)

(7) 副词短语 vs 副词

But after two or three minutes he comes out, and buys the second ticket and goes in again. (soon)

2. 句子的同义替换。在短文听写过程中，考生可以在保持句子含义不变的情况下，适当改变句子结构，将长句子变短，复杂句变简单，难句子变容易。

(1) 将被动句转化为主动句

英文中被动句的使用十分频繁，而考生更习惯用主动句，这时考生可将被动句式转化为主动句式，使对句子的理解更容易。

例如： Most of the questions have been settled satisfactorily, and only a few questions of secondary importance remain to be discussed.

可以将此句替换成：We have settled most of the questions satisfactorily, only leaving a few minor questions.

(2) 将直接引语转化为间接引语

为了节省时间，提高听写效率，在听写过程中可以将直接引语转化为间接引语。

例如： He said, "Well, yes, if we can't save enough money for our trip to Switzerland, we'll have to relinquish our plan."

可以将此句替换成：He agreed that without enough money, they would give up their trip.

(3) 将倒装句还原

因为句子结构的特殊性，倒装句无疑更增加了句子听写的难度。考生可以将不熟悉的倒装句还原成正常语序。

例如： So well did the students do their work that they fulfilled the plan ahead of schedule.

可以替换成：The students did their work so well that they fulfilled the plan in advance.

(4) 省略不必要的修饰成分

在尽量保持句子主要含义的情况下，删减句子中的一些不影响句意的修饰成分，替换为句子的主干，删去其枝叶。

例如： The task was a little too difficult for the 10-year-old boy to finish on his own.

直接替换成：The task was difficult for a boy to finish on his own.

典型真题

No. 12

1. For right-handed horsemen, what would they like to do with their right hands when holding the reins with their left hands? 2. What did the wagon driver keep clear of if other wagons overtook him on the left?	1. ____ 2. ____

(浙江大学 2009 年)

【名师点评】

1. keep their right hands free。arm 可以考虑用题干中的同义词 hands 替换，根据题干中的 they 应该用 their 指代。
2. the wheels of coming wagons。记录时，oncoming 可以用简单同义词 coming 替换，不常见的单词 wagon 在题干中重现。

【听力原文】

These wagons had no driver's seat; instead the driver sat on the left rear horse, so he could keep his right arm free to lash the team. Since he was sitting on the left, he naturally wanted everybody to pass on the left so he could look down and make sure he kept clear of the oncoming wagon's wheels. Therefore he kept to the right side of the road. In addition, the French Revolution of 1789 gave a huge impetus to right-hand travel in Europe.

实战演练

No. 13

Well, you can just imagine how angry I was. Then I opened the boxes with the lamps. They were exactly what I'd ordered. But one of the lamp shapes was damaged. __1__ They promised to come and get them back at once and to replace them with the correct items. It has been two weeks since my complaint. __2__

【名师点评】

1. The next thing I did was to phone them to complain。不定式做表语，此处不可省略 to。注意时态以及 complain 的拼写，telephone 可以替换为同义的简单单词 phone/call。
2. They haven't picked up the wrong items or sent me the rest of my order。注意 neither… nor…结构中的两个动词的过去分词，可以统一替换为简单的 not… or…。改写时要注意两个动词的否定。

【听力原文】

Well, you can just imagine how angry I was. Then I opened the boxes with the lamps. They were exactly what I'd ordered. But one of the lamp shapes was damaged. The next thing I did was to telephone them to complain. They promised to come and pick them up immediately and also to replace them with the correct order. It has been two weeks since my complaint. They have neither picked up the wrong items nor sent me the rest of my order.



一周总测

Section 1

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 5 short conversations. At the end of each conversation, a question will be asked about what was said. Both the conversations and the questions will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer.*

1. A. She went to the party without knowing it.
   B. She was invited to the party.
   C. She was present at the party.
   D. She was absent from the party.
2. A. Joan will give out the assignment.
   B. Joan will speak in the seminar.
   C. Joan won't be present at the seminar.
   D. Joan won't sign the petitions.
3. A. Present a new theory to the class.
   B. Read more than one article.
   C. Read the book more thoroughly.
   D. Write a better article for the class.
4. A. Her back hurt during the meeting.
   B. His support does not mean anything now.
   C. She agreed that it was a very good meeting.
   D. The proposal should be sent back to the meeting.
5. A. The library is within walking distance.
   B. The streets are not in good condition.
   C. The man should get a car instead.
   D. The man should exercise more.

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 1 to 4 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

1. A. New food to try when traveling.
   B. Making reservations for the best travel.
   C. Avoiding gaining weight while traveling.
   D. Adjusting to time changes when traveling.
2. A. It changes the body's metabolism through rapid weight gain.
   B. It tricks the body into responding as if it were in a different time zone.
   C. It promotes increased alertness by adding snacks to the diet.
   D. It builds resistance to illness by increasing intake of vitamins.
3. A. He feels rushed.
   B. He hates to pack.
   C. He doesn't like to restrict his diet.
   D. He's worried about his lecture.
4. A. He has a big appetite.
   B. He eats only at regular mealtimes.
   C. He avoids new food.
   D. He eats only health food.

Conversation 2

Questions 5 to 7 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

5. A. To provide language learning opportunities.
   B. To teach students how to be an expert in computers.
   C. To provide work opportunities for graduating students in the community.
   D. To help students pass math exams.
6. A. English grammar.
   B. English literature.
   C. Intercultural communication.
   D. Mathematics class.
7. A. By May 29th.
   B. By June 29th.
   C. By July 29th.
   D. By April 29th.

Conversation 3

Questions 8 to 10 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

8. A. An overseas company retailing adults' clothes.
   B. An overseas company selling children's clothes.
   C. A small company producing children's clothes.
   D. A small company retailing children's shoes.
9. A. The bank offers full foreign exchange services.
   B. The man has some foreign currencies himself.
   C. Customers abroad can offer foreign currencies.
   D. Exchange of foreign currencies is simple now.
10. A. The bank's international department.

B. The foreign check processing center of the bank.
C. The foreign correspondent network.
D. The center for check and credit cards of the bank.

Section 3

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 3 short passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passages and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choices marked A, B, C and D.*

Passage 1

Questions 1 to 3 are based on the passage you have just heard.

1. A. The urgent need for a diverse workforce.
   B. The growing necessity of staff training.
   C. The fierce competition in the market.
   D. The accelerated pace of globalization.
2. A. Take courses of foreign languages and cultures.
   B. Gain a deep understanding of their own culture.
   C. Participate in international exchange programs.
   D. Share the experience of people from other cultures.
3. A. Globalization will eliminate many jobs.
   B. Reflective thinking is becoming critical.
   C. The labor market is getting globalized.
   D. Knowing a foreign language is essential.

Passage 2

Questions 4 to 7 are based on the passage you have just heard.

4. A. On April 26, 1611.　　B. On April 23, 1611.
   C. On April 26, 1616.　　D. On April 23, 1616.
5. A. In 1585.　　B. In 1584.
   C. In 1583.　　D. In 1586.
6. A. People know almost nothing about Shakespeare's early life.
   B. Shakespeare was already well-known before he went to London.
   C. People know a lot about Shakespeare's life in London.
   D. People know only a little about Shakespeare's life in London.
7. A. Shakespeare was not interested in making a profit.
   B. Shakespeare could get one-tenth of the profits of the Globe Theater.
   C. Shakespeare, like his fellow writers, had no business sense.
   D. Shakespeare's fellow writers shared the same profits.

Passage 3

Questions 8 to 10 are based on the passage you have just heard.

8. A. To exchange ideas.　　B. To prove their value.
   C. To achieve success in life.　　D. To overcome their fear of silence.

9. A. About whatever they have prepared.
   B. About whatever they want to do.
   C. About learning something new.
   D. About getting on well.
10. A. To explain why people keep talking.
   B. To persuade people to stop making noises.
   C. To encourage people to join in conversations.
   D. To discuss why people like talking about weather.

Section 4

Directions: *In this section, you will hear one passage three times. When the passage is read for the first time, you should listen carefully for its general idea. When the passage is read for the second time, you are required to fill in the blanks numbered from 1 to 10 with the exact words you have just heard or the main points in your own words. Finally, when the passage is read for the third time, you should check what you have written.*

Self-image is the picture you have of yourself, the sort of person you believe you are. ___(1)___ in your self-image are the ___(2)___ in which you place yourself, the roles you play and other ___(3)___ descriptors you use to identify yourself. If you tell an ___(4)___ you are a grandfather who ___(5)___ lost his wife and who does ___(6)___ work on weekends, several elements of your self-image are brought to light — the roles of a grandparent, widower and conscientious ___(7)___.

But self-image is more than how you picture yourself; it also involves how others see you. Three types of feedback from others are ___(8)___ of how they see you: conformation, rejection, and disconfirmation. Conformation occurs when others treat you in a manner consistent with whom you believe you are. (9) _____ _____. On the other hand, rejection occurs when others treat you in a manner that is inconsistent with yourself definition. Pierre Salinger was appointed senator from California but subsequently lost his first election. (10) _____ _____ — their vote was inconsistent with his self-concept. The third type of feedback is disconfirmation, which occurs when others fail to respond to your notion of self by responding neutrally. A student writes what he thinks is an excellent composition, but his teacher writes no encouraging remarks. Rather than relying on how others classify you, consider how you identify yourself. The way in which you identify yourself is the best reflection of your self-image.

答案

Section 1

1. D　2. B　3. B　4. B　5. B

Section 2

1. D　2. B　3. C　4. A　5. A
6. C　7. B　8. C　9. A　10. B

Section 3

1. D　　2. B　　3. C　　4. D　　5. C
6. C　　7. B　　8. D　　9. B　　10. A

Section 4

1. Included　　2. categories　　3. similar
4. acquaintance　　5. recently　　6. volunteer
7. citizen　　8. indicative
9. You believe you have leadership abilities and your boss put you in charge of a new work team
10. He thought he was a good public official, but the voters obviously thought otherwise

听力原文

Section 1

1. M: There was a party on our school campus Sunday evening. Did you go?
   W: Had I known about the party, I would have been present at it.
   Q: What do we learn about the woman?
2. M: Was I supposed to give the seminar presentation this week?
   W: No. I assigned it to Joan.
   Q: What will happen this week?
3. W: I'd better read one of the articles for our economics class.
   M: You can't read just one. Each presents a different theory, you know.
   Q: What does the man tell the woman she must do?
4. M: I agree with your proposal at the meeting yesterday. It was a good one.
   W: You should have backed me up then when I needed it.
   Q: What does the woman mean?
5. W: I'm just looking for a bike that will get me to the library and back.
   M: With the roads the way they are, you will need a sturdy one.
   Q: What does the man imply?

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 1 to 4 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: Hi, Jack. Tomorrow's the big day! You must be excited about going to France for your first international conference.
M: The trip, yes, but not the preparation.
W: What do you need to do except pack?
M: You know how you always feel so awful whenever you make a big change in time zones? This time I'm trying an anti-jet-lag program so I'll be alert even for the first day's lectures.

W: But how can you avoid jet lag? With that late flight and a six-hour difference in time, it's bound to take you a couple of days to adjust.
M: Well this program's supposed to get your body to feel like it's in the new time zone before you leave. The theory is that the food you eat actually tells your body when to be active and when to be restful, so changing your diet can help you be ready for the time change. You have to alternate feasting and fasting … you know sometimes eat a lot, sometimes just a little.
W: OK. Now I see why you're not enjoying the preparation. I can't quite picture you fasting!
M: Actually the worst is already over. Two days before the flight, you're supposed to have only light meals and limit yourself to eight hundred calories.
W: That must have been tough.
M: Yeah, but I'm making up for it today. Feast day is much better … though I still don't get to eat any snacks after dinner.
Q1: What is the conversation mainly about?
Q2: How is the program that Jack is using supposed to work?
Q3: Why isn't Jack enjoying the preparation for his trip?
Q4: What can be inferred about Jack's usual eating habits?

Conversation 2

Questions 5 to 7 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: This is English Language Center. How can I help you?
M: Yes. I'm calling to find out more information about your program. For example, what kind of courses do you offer?
W: Well, first of all, the purpose of our program is to provide language learning opportunities to this area's community, whether a student's goal is to master basic functional language skills, let's say, for his or her job, or to study intensively to enter a US college or university.
M: Okay. I'm calling for a friend who is interested in attending a US university. My friend is considering about further education.
W: And that's the kind of, uh, instruction that we provide, from basic communication course to content-based classes such as computer literacy, intercultural communication, and business English.
M: That sounds great. What are your application deadlines for the next semester?
W: Well, we ask applicants to apply no later than two months before the semester begins.
M: Alright. What is the tuition for a full-time student?
W: Let me see. It's two thousand thirty dollars for a full-time student.
M: And how does one apply? Is it complicated?
W: Well, we can send you an application and you can mail it back to us, or you can fill out our application that's on our Website.

M: Great. Thank you for help. I appreciate that.

W: You are welcome. You can call at any time if you have any other questions. Goodbye.

Q5. Which is the purpose of the English Language Center?

Q6. Which course is taught at the English Language Center?

Q7. If a semester begins on August 29th, by what date should one apply for it?

Conversation 3

Questions 8 to 10 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: Ah, Rachel, good to see you again. What can I do to help you?

M: Well, as you know, I run a small company manufacturing children's clothes.

W: Yes, and it's doing rather well, if I remember correctly.

M: Yes, I've recently increased production, and I'm very happy with my sales figures. In fact, I've had some interest from overseas retailers wanting to sell my clothes. I'd also like to be able to buy materials from abroad. What I'd like to know is if I can make and accept payments in foreign currencies.

W: We offer full foreign exchange services, so there shouldn't be a problem. We have an extensive foreign correspondent bank network so funds can easily be transferred worldwide.

M: So this bank is part of a network of foreign banks?

W: That's right. The advantage is that payments can be made and received quickly and efficiently and at the lowest cost to you and your suppliers and purchasers. You can do this by wire transfer — it's the fastest and safest way to transmit money around the world. And you reduce risk because you lock in the exchange rate and know the full cost of the transaction before the wire is sent.

M: What happens if a foreign customer wants to pay by check?

W: We offer foreign currency check conversions for a wide range of countries. All you have to do is to complete a foreign cash letter agreement and send it, along with the check and a deposit slip, to our foreign check processing center.

M: So I shouldn't have any problems dealing with foreign currencies. Thank you.

Q8: What kind of company does the man run?

Q9: What makes it possible to make and accept payments in foreign currencies?

Q10: Where should the agreement be sent if one wants to pay by check?

Section 3

Passage 1

One of the biggest challenges facing employers and educators today is the rapid advance of globalization. The market place is no longer national or regional, but extends to all corners of the world. And this requires a global ready workforce. Universities have a large part to play in preparing students for the 21st century labor market by promoting international educational experiences.

The most obvious way universities can help develop global workforce is by

encouraging students to study abroad as part of their course. Students who have experienced another culture first hand are more likely to be global ready when they graduate. Global workforce development doesn't always have to involve travel abroad. However, if students learn another language and study other cultures, they will be more global ready when they graduate.

It is important to point out that students also need to have a deep understanding of their own culture before they can begin to observe, analyze and evaluate other cultures. In multi-cultural societies, people can study each other's cultures, to develop intercultural competencies, such as critical and reflective thinking, and intellectual flexibility. This can be done both through the curriculum and through activities on campus, outside of the classroom, such as art exhibitions, and lectures from international experts.

Many universities are already embracing this challenge, and providing opportunities for students to become global citizens. Students themselves, however, may not realize that when they graduate, they will be competing in a global labor market, and universities need to raise awareness of these issues amongst undergraduates.

Q1. What is one of the biggest challenges facing employers and educators today?

Q2. What should students do first before they can really understand other cultures?

Q3. What should college students realize according to the speaker?

Passage 2

William Shakespeare was christened in the market town of Stratford on Avon, Warwickshire, on April 26, 1564; traditionally, his actual birthday was three days earlier, on St. George's day, the same day as his death fifty-two years later. His father, John, was a respected middle-class trader, and his mother, Mary Arden, came from a family of local landowners. It seemed probable that young William received a fair education (for his day) at the local Grammar School; at the age of eighteen he married a girl eight years older than himself, Anne Hathaway, who gave him a child the following year and twins in 1585. Little else is known of his early life, and so we cannot tell what made him decide to leave Stratford in 1586 for London, where he stayed until 1611. In London he must soon have attracted attention, because by 1592 he was a popular enough writer and actor to be laughed at by an older dramatist as an uneducated Jack of all trades. He was mentioned as being among the principal actors of the city as early as 1598, and in 1599 we find that he was a member of the company running the Globe Theater, with one-tenth interest in the profits—showing a business sense rarely seen in his fellow writers. His popularity was indicated by the fact that not only were his own plays published under his name, which was a rare procedure in his day, but also plays by others were to be found attributed to him, as if to indicate that his name alone would promise a good sale.

Q4. When did William Shakespeare die?

Q5. When did Shakespeare and his wife have their first child?

Q6. Which one can we infer from the article?

Q7. Which of the following is true?

Passage 3

Silence is unnatural to man. He begins life with a cry and ends it in stillness. In between he does all he can to make a noise in the world, and he fears silence more than anything else. Even his conversation is an attempt to prevent a fearful silence. If he is introduced to another person, and a number of pauses occur in the conversation, he regards himself as a failure. He knows that ninety-nine percent of human conversations means no more than the buzzing of a fly, but he is anxious to join in the buzz and to prove that he is a man and not a waxwork figure. The aim of conversation is, for the most part, to communicate ideas: it is to keep up the buzzing sound. There are, it must be admitted, different qualities of buzz; there is even a buzz that is as annoying as the continuous noise made by a mosquito. But at a dinner party one would rather be a mosquito than a quiet person. Most buzzing, fortunately, is pleasant to the ear, and some of it is pleasant even to the mind. He would be a foolish man if he waited until he had a wise thought to take part in the buzzing with his neighbors. Those who hate to pick up the weather as a conversational opening seem to me not to know the reason why human beings wish to talk. Very few human beings join in a conversation in the hope of learning anything new. Some of them are content if they are merely allowed to go on making a noise into other people's ears. They have nothing to tell them except that they have seen two or three new plays or that they had food in a Swiss hotel. At the end of an evening, during which they have said nothing meaningful for a long time. They just prove themselves to be successful conversationalists.

Q8. What is people's purpose in making conversation according to the author?

Q9. What do people usually talk to their neighbors according to the passage?

Q10. What is the author's purpose in writing the passage?

Section 4

Self-image is the picture you have of yourself, the sort of person you believe you are. Included in your self-image are the categories in which you place yourself, the roles you play and other similar descriptors you use to identify yourself. If you tell an acquaintance you are a grandfather who recently lost his wife and who does volunteer work on weekends, several elements of your self-image are brought to light — the roles of a grandparent, widower and conscientious citizen.

But self-image is more than how you picture yourself; it also involves how others see you. Three types of feedback from others are indicative of how they see you: conformation, rejection, and disconfirmation. Conformation occurs when others treat you in a manner consistent with who you believe you are. You believe you have leadership abilities and your boss put you in charge of a new work team. On the other hand, rejection occurs when others treat you in a manner that is

inconsistent with yourself definition. Pierre Salinger was appointed senator from California but subsequently lost his first election. He thought he was a good public official, but the voters obviously thought otherwise — their vote was inconsistent with his self-concept. The third type of feedback is disconfirmation, which occurs when others fail to respond to your notion of self by responding neutrally. A student writes what he thinks is an excellent composition, but the teacher writes no encouraging remarks. Rather than relying on how others classify you, consider how you identify yourself. The way in which you identify yourself is the best reflection of your self-image.

Notes

第二周 词汇结构

周一　动词
周二　名词
周三　形容词及副词
周四　虚词
周五　语法（一）
周六　语法（二）
周日　一周总测

考核要求

在博士研究生入学考试中，90% ~95%的高校在试卷的第一部分或者第二部分以词汇题的形式考查词汇。

英语和其他语种一样，其名词、动词、形容词、副词、介词以及连词都有各自不同的特点。考生除应掌握词汇的基本含义外，还应掌握词汇之间的词义关系，如同义词、近义词、反义词等；掌握词汇之间的搭配关系，如动词与介词、形容词与介词、形容词与名词等；掌握词汇派生的基本知识，如词源、词根、词缀等。

1992 年 11 月原国家教委颁发的《非英语专业研究生英语（第一外语）教学大纲》（试行稿）明确指出：博士研究生入学时其英语水平原则上应达到或略高于硕士研究生的水平，即达到硕士生毕业时应达到的水平。《大纲》对硕士研究生学位通过时的基础英语水平中词汇的要求为：

❖ 测试考生运用词汇和短语的能力。

❖ 着重测试硕士研究生阶段所学的词和基础词的多种词性及词义搭配、易混词的区别及难词或词组、短语的认知。

试题分析

保守估计，在博士研究生入学英语考试中，考生需要掌握 7000 ~8000 个单词，900 个常用动词短语。

博士英语考试词汇题从词性角度看主要涉及动词、名词、形容词和少量副词、介词短语和连词。考查的形式主要有两种：

❖ 每题为一个英文句，句中一词或固定词组下面划有横线，要求考生从所给的四个选择项中选出该画线词或词组的最佳同义词或最佳释义。

例如：You may have seen this when you tried to open a new bank or credit card account and you were presented with some multiple choice questions asking you to verify where you got your car loan. （中国社会科学院 2012 年）

A. complication　　B. revenue　　C. mortgage　　D. chasm

❖ 每题为一英文句，句中有一个或几个空格，要求从所给的四个选择项中选出最恰当的词或词组填入空白处，使该句成为逻辑合理、表达正确的英文句子。

例 1：“Gangnam Style”, the _____ popular song from South Korean recording artist PSY has just become the most watched video on YouTube ever.（北京大学 2013 年）.

A. sanely　　B. insanely　　C. rationally　　D. insatiably

例 2：The scientific community was _____ when a living specimen of the coelacanth, long thought to be _____, was discovered by deep-sea fisherman.（厦门大学 2012 年）

A. perplexed… common　　B. overjoyed… dangerous

C. unconcerned… local　　D. astounded… extinct

命题特点和考查点

词汇是听、说、读、写等语言技能的基础和根本，在考试中，对词汇的测试实际上贯穿在听力、词汇、阅读、综合填空和写作等各个项目中。实践证明，没有足够的词汇做基础，听、说、读、写、译等技能就无从谈起。词汇量的大小与词汇运用能力的高低必然会直接影响到其他各个部分的得分，继而影响整个答题效果。从博士研究生入学考试的分析来看，词汇题主要测试词义和搭配两大内容。

词义测试可分为辨析词形和词义均相近的词，词形相近但词义不同的词，词义相近但词形不同的词，词义相近但有褒贬义之分的词，词义相近但有词义轻重之分的词及词义相近但有主客体之分的词。仅仅从单词考查方面来分析，就可以知道博士研究生入学英语的难度了。

纵观各大院校的考士研究生入学英语试题可以发现，词汇测试的考查点主要有：

- ❖ 动词（形近词辨析，近义词辨析，与名词、介词、副词的搭配）
- ❖ 名词（形近词辨析，近义词辨析，与名词、动词、形容词、介词的搭配）
- ❖ 形容词（形近词辨析，近义词辨析，与名词、介词、副词的搭配）
- ❖ 副词（形近词辨析，近义词辨析，与动词的搭配）
- ❖ 虚词（介词，连词的用法）
- ❖ 词组及短语

词汇题的应对应从词的词性及其搭配入手，在较长的题干中找到决定正确答案的线索和依据，即每道题的答题切入点，从而提高命中率，缩短答题时间。在本周的其余时间中，本书将从词性的角度分别具体讲述词汇题中有关动词、名词、形容词及副词、虚词以及短语的解题方法。

周一　动　词

考点分析

能够表示状态（例如：love，seem）或动作（例如：go，fetch）的一个词（例如：cry）或一组词（例如：run out of）叫作动词。动词用时态表示不同的时间（过去、现在、将来），而助动词与动词连用，表示动作或状态的其他情况。

例如：The player is running with the ball.

I'm glad that you have finished the task.

在整个句子中，表示动作或状态的词为动词。根据其在句中的功能，动词可分为行为动词（例如：give，take，contain，include）、系动词（例如：be，get，feel，sound，taste，smell）、助动词（例如：be，do，have，shall，will）和情态动词（例如：can—could，may—might，must，need，ought to，dare）四类，有些动词是兼类词。动词在英语中是一个重要词类，可以充当多种句子成分。

动词是博士研究生入学英语考试词汇部分的一个重要测试方面。考博英语考试需要考生掌握 7 000 ~8 000 个单词，其中近五分之一为动词及动词词组。因此，能否掌握好动词词汇直接关系到能否通过博士研究生入学英语词汇部分的考试，该部分对考生的测试点包括：

（1）动词的认知能力和辨别能力：在动词部分，考生首先应该具备较好的认知和熟记能力，即遇见一个动词时，能够较快地确定它的前两个或前三个词义。如：impact v. 第一个词义是“影响”；第二个词义是“撞击”；第三个词义是“冲突”。在考试中，检查考生这一能力的题是比较多的，考生应该能够根据上下文确定动词的有关词义。

例如：It has been proposed by many linguists that human language _____, our biologically programmed ability to use language, is still not well defined and understood.（复旦大学 2012 年）

A. potentiality　　B. perception　　C. faculty　　D. acquisition

选项 C 中的 faculty 第一个词义是“科，系”，第二个词义是“能力”。因此 C 是正确答案。

（2）动词用法的掌握程度：在具备认知能力的基础上，考生还需掌握这些词汇的基本用法。如：afford v. 后面不能用 paying，只能用动词 to do 的形式，即 to pay；occur v.（发生），只能用于主动语态，不能以被动的形式出现。

（3）动词搭配关系的熟练程度：如：search 后面的介词是 for；turn 后面的介词是 to；serve 后面的介词是 as；concentrate 后面的介词是 on……

例如：Living constantly in the atmosphere of slave，he became infected _____ the unconscious _____ their psychology. No one can shield _____ himself such an

influence.（北京大学 2011 年）

A. on … by … at　　B. by … for … in

C. from … in … on　　D. through … with … from

句中 infected through 为固定短语，意为“通过……感染”；the unconscious with their psychology“潜意识”；shield from 为固定搭配，意为“使某人摆脱……”。句意为：长期生活在奴隶圈中，他在不知不觉中也受到了感染。没有人可以使自己摆脱这样的影响。因此 D 是正确答案。

动词的考点主要有：

- ❖ 上下文动词词义辨析
- ❖ 近义动词辨析
- ❖ 近形异义动词辨析
- ❖ 近形近义动词辨析
- ❖ 动词固定搭配

技巧点拨

对于选择项为动词的词汇题，考生应主要用以下几个技巧确定答题的切入点：

❖ 上下文动词词义辨析

寻找句中该动词的主语或宾语，根据主谓的意义或动宾和状语的语义搭配关系确定答案。对于通过“主—谓”“动—宾”关系的判断尚无法确定答案的，可同时根据其主语及宾语的特点来进行判断；此外，有的动词语义辨析只能通过理解句意来判断答案。

❖ 近义动词辨析

近义动词“易混难辨”，需要考生根据同义词或近义词的区别、句意和语法来进行判断。近义词用法辨析是英语学习中的一个难点，也是考博英语测试的重点之一。

❖ 近形异义动词辨析

这类题的选项词形相近，但意义却大相径庭。做这类题时，考生应准确掌握每个词的确切含义，然后再根据句子的意思以及词与词的搭配，做出正确的选择。

❖ 近形近义动词辨析

近形近义动词是指拼写相似或具有相同的词根，同时意义又有相似之处。这类词汇题的难度最大，考生解题时要根据平时的积累，区别近形近义动词之间的微妙差别。

❖ 动词固定搭配

除了动词与主语、宾语及状语的搭配之外，考题中还有相当一部分动词词汇题可通过空格后与动词搭配的介词来确定；如考生对某些动词的句型搭配比较熟悉的话，则也可以非常容易地根据其常用句型搭配来选取答案。

考点一　上下文动词词义辨析

典型真题

例 1：

The development of staff cohesion and a sense of team effort in the workplace can be effectively _____ by the use of humor.（复旦大学 2012 年）

A. acquainted　　B. installed　　C. regulated　　D. facilitated

【名师点评】D。解答该题的关键是根据主语来确定答案。本题干句子的主语development与D项facilitated“促进，帮助”搭配符合上下文语义，使用幽默能够有效地促进……的发展，其他选项不符合逻辑。因此，D项为正确答案。

例2：

Science is based on experiment, on a willingness to _____ old dogma, on an openness to see the universe as it really is.（山东大学2014年）

A. encounter　　B. convert　　C. challenge　　D. formulate

【名师点评】C。解答该题需要根据主语及宾语的特点来确定答案。本题中，仅根据宾语old dogma或逻辑主语experiment和willingness无法确定应该选哪个动词，但三者结合起来考虑，显而易见，空格中应填入与see同类的动词。选项中，只有challenge（挑战）符合句意，故答案为C。

实战演练

1. We will encourage every school to _____ its character, ethos and areas of special interest within a more flexible National Curriculum framework.
   A. facilitate　　B. enhance　　C. acquaint　　D. install
2. Mike just discovered that his passport had _____ three months ago.
   A. abolished　　B. expired　　C. amended　　D. constrained
3. I didn't say anything like that at all. You are purposely _____ my ideas to prove your point.
   A. revising　　B. contradicting　　C. distorting　　D. distracting
4. Although there are occasional outbreaks of gunfire, we can report that the rebellion has in the main been _____.
   A. canceled　　B. destroyed　　C. suppressed　　D. restrained
5. When people are asked what kind of housing they need or want, the question _____ a variety of answers.
   A. defies　　B. magnifies　　C. mediates　　D. evokes
6. It was suggested that all government ministers should _____ information on their financial interests.
   A. discover　　B. uncover　　C. tell　　D. disclose
7. If businessmen are taxed too much, they will no longer be motivated to work hard, with the result that incomes from taxation might actually _____.
   A. shrink　　B. delay　　C. disperse　　D. sink
8. The eldest child is thoroughly _____ because they always give him whatever he wants.
   A. wasted　　B. spoiled　　C. destroyed　　D. uneducated
9. As there was no road, the travelers _____ up a rocky slope on their way back.
   A. ran　　B. hurried　　C. scrambled　　D. crawled
10. Thousands of people turned out into the streets to _____ against the local authorities' decision to build a highway across the field.
    A. contradict　　B. reform　　C. counter　　D. protest

【名师点评】

1. B。解答该题的关键是根据宾语的特点来确定答案。本句子中提到了character, ethos

and areas of special interest，选项中只有 enhance 与此搭配符合逻辑，故答案为 B。

2. B。解答该题的关键是根据主语的特点来确定答案。根据主语 passport（护照）可立即确定答案为 expired（过期），故答案为 B。
3. C。解答该题的关键是根据语境和宾语的特点来确定答案。选项中与 ideas 搭配的动词只有 revising（改编，修改）和 distorting（歪曲，曲解）。根据前一句中 didn't say anything 提供的语境，只有 distorting 符合句意，故 C 为正确答案。A、B 和 D 填入句中均说不通，或很别扭，故均应排除。
4. C。解答该题的关键是根据主语的特点来确定答案。空格处填入动词的直接主语是 the rebellion（起义、暴动），选项中与此名词搭配合理的只有 suppressed（被镇压），故答案为 C。
5. D。本题中，仅根据宾语 a variety of answers 或主语 the question 无法确定该选哪个动词，但结合起来考虑，答案 evokes 便显而易见。如是不及物动词，则可同时根据其主语及状语修饰语来进行判断。
6. D。解答该题的关键是根据宾语的特点来确定答案。discover“发现”；uncover“揭露，发现”；tell“告诉”；disclose“公开；揭露”。根据句意，所填词应表示“公开”的含义，故答案为 D。
7. A。解答该题的关键是根据从句主语的特点来确定答案。shrink“收缩，缩短”；delay“耽搁，延迟”；disperse“（使）分散，疏散”；sink“下沉”。形容经济、收入、规模缩小，一般用 shrink。
8. B。解答该题的关键是根据从句来确定答案。waste“使衰弱；使消瘦”；spoil“宠坏，溺爱”；destroy“破坏；毁灭”；uneducated 意为“未受（良好）教育的”。根据后半句 because 引导的从句，判断答案为 B。
9. C。解答该题的关键是根据宾语来确定答案。根据句意，应找一个和“陡峭的山坡”（rocky slope）搭配的动词，而且是往上（up）爬。run“跑”明显不合适；hurry“匆忙，赶紧”，和句意无关；crawl“爬，爬行”，虽然也是爬，但它表示手肘、膝盖落在地面上慢慢爬行。scramble“快速攀爬，攀登”，最符合题意，故答案为 C。
10. D。解答该题的关键是根据主语和宾语来确定答案。contradict“同……相抵触”，为及物动词，后直接跟宾语；reform“改革，革新”，一般不与 against 连用；counter“反击”，一般指语言；protest“抗议”，一般同 against 连用。故答案为 D。

考点二　近义动词辨析

典型真题

例 1：

Sales of mushrooms have hit an all time high as Britons increasingly turn to the cheap and _____ foodstuff for their cooking.（北京大学 2013 年）.

A. versatile　　B. multiple　　C. manifold　　D. diverse

【名师点评】 D。选项中，versatile，multiple，manifold 和 diverse 均有“多样的”的意思。versatile 指“多才多艺的”，强调才艺的多样性；multiple 多指“多重的；多个的”，强调事物的不同方面；manifold 指“有许多部分的”；diverse 指“各种各样的，多种的”。句意：随着英国人越来越致力于寻找廉价的、多种多样的食材来做饭，蘑菇的销量创下空前的新纪录，故答案选 D。

例 2：

Satellite communications are so up-to-date that even when _____ in the middle of the Pacific, businessmen can contact their offices as if they were next door.（四川大学 2011 年）

A. gliding　　B. cruising　　C. piloting　　D. patrolling

【名师点评】 B。cruise 航行，巡航。glide 滑行，滑移。pilot 驾驶（飞机）。patrol 巡逻。

例 3：

Motorcyclists should wear helmets to _____ them from injury.（山东大学 2014 年）

A. save　　B. shield　　C. shelter　　D. defend

【名师点评】 B。动词词义辨析。save 意为“使……免于受到……的损伤、损失或毁坏”；shield 指用某种手段作为防御工具以防危险或伤害，侧重防止迫在眉睫的攻击或伤害；shelter 通常指寻找安全地方躲避风雨或使人免遭危害；defend 指用武力或其他措施使人或物不受损害，消除危险。用作比喻时，指坚持某种行动、决定或意见。根据句中的 helmets（头盔）判断，shield 符合要求，故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. It is through learning that the individual _____ many habitual ways of reacting to situations.
   A. attains　　B. obtains　　C. acquires　　D. gains
2. Reading _____ the mind only with materials of knowledge; it is thinking that makes what we read ours.
   A. accommodates　　B. furnishes　　C. gives　　D. affords
3. Ultimately, they expect to find that many different genes play a role, which may in turn reveal more about the complex systems that _____ sleep in humans.
   A. adjust　　B. regulate　　C. rectify　　D. amend
4. Her boyfriend ____ her by teasing her about her new hairstyle in front of others.
   A. bewildered　　B. puzzled　　C. confused　　D. embarrassed
5. American leases typically _____ gas firms to keep flushing out gas regardless of market conditions.
   A. oblige　　B. constrain　　C. force　　D. compel
6. Those superior states of mind do not come from _____ an alien culture.
   A. imitating　　B. mimicking　　C. aping　　D. parodying
7. Some 500 million birds _____ each year from Africa, some weighing as little as nine grammes (three-tenths of an ounce).
   A. transfer　　B. migrate　　C. commute　　D. mobilize
8. Taking photographs is strictly _____ here, as it may damage the precious cave paintings.
   A. forbidden　　B. rejected　　C. excluded　　D. denied
9. Only ten to twenty percent of cold viruses are transmitted by carders, who, sneezing and coughing, _____ the viruses into the air.

A. spray　　B. sprinkle　　C. spread　　D. sprout

10. However, as the evidence began to _____ experts from the zoo felt obliged to investigate.

A. accumulate　　B. amass　　C. assemble　　D. congregate

答案解析

1. C。选项中的词都有“获得，取得”的意思。attain 指达到某一目标；obtain“获得，买到”，用于正式语体中；acquire 多指经过努力逐步获得才能、知识、习惯等，也可用于对财物等的获得，该词强调“一经获得就会长期持有”的含义；gain 指通过较大努力获得某种利益或好处。根据句中宾语 many habitual ways 判定，acquire 符合句意，故答案为 C。
2. B。选项中的词都有“提供”的意思。accommodate 是指“提供（住宿、房间）；适应，迎合，迁就”；furnish 指提供生活或某种用途所需要的东西，固定结构为 furnish sb. with sth. ；give 的结构为 give sb. sth. ；afford 当“提供”讲时，多用于指抽象事物的提供，固定结构为 afford sth. 。选项中，能与 materials of knowledge 合理搭配的是 furnishes，故答案为 B。
3. B。选项中的词都含有“调整，改变”的意思。adjust 一般指很小的改变或技术性的调整，修理；regulate 指根据规定或需要对某物（机器、钟表等）进行调整或调节，使之准确工作或运行；多含有“控制”之意；rectify 纠正，校正（错误、文章、合同等）；amend（正式用语）指修改文件、法律、规范等。此处句意为“调节人类睡眠”，故答案为 B。
4. D。这一组词都有“迷惑”的意思。bewilder 强调非常困惑，通常表现为心理和智力的紊乱，语气最重；puzzle 强调不理解或解决不了；confuse 强调因混淆而使人产生迷乱；embarrass 有令人不快、难为情和内心混乱的意思。根据句中 teasing（嘲笑）提供的语境，embarrass 符合句意。
5. A。选项中的词都有“强迫”的意思。oblige（因法律、习俗等）强迫，迫使，常常用于被动；compel 常表示运用权力、力量迫使对方做某事，有时也表示“别无办法，不得不做”；constrain 力劝，强迫，与 compel 意思相近，但更多强调内心情感（如道德、怜悯等）的强迫和限制作用，一般用于正式场合；force 强迫，迫使，暴力威胁的意味较浓，常用于被动语态。根据句中，leases（租契）提供的语境判断，只有 oblige 符合逻辑，故答案为 A。
6. C。选项中的词都有“模仿”的意思。imitate 是按照他人的方式或风格去做；mimic 是对他人的动作、话语或特殊习惯等做相近的模仿，常常是为了取笑；parody 滑稽地模仿，或严肃认真却不成功地模仿；ape 是奴隶似的仿照别人的指导，经常产生荒唐的结果。根据句中的主语 superior 判定，ape 符合句意。
7. B。选项中的词都有“转移、移动”的意思。transfer 指“转移、转让（房产），调动、调任”或“（银行）过户、转账”等意义；migrate 指鸟类随季节变化定期迁移；commute 主要指乘火车往来住所与工作单位之间；mobilize 主要指调动、鼓动。根据句中 birds 判定，migrate 符合句意。
8. A。选项中的词都有“禁止”的意思。forbid 指来自权威机构或人物的禁止命令，不准，不许；reject 以否定、敌对的态度当面拒绝；exclude“拒绝接纳或考虑，排除，排斥”；deny 坚定地否认某事。根据句意可知，forbidden 符合要求。

9. A。spray 表示喷雾，指液体被喷洒；sprinkle 洒，喷，淋；spread 传播，分散，张开；伸展；延长；加宽；sprout 抽条，发芽，萌芽。按本句的意思“打喷嚏、咳嗽，将病毒喷入空气中”，打喷嚏、咳嗽喷出的都是雾状物，因此 spray 比较确切。

10. A。accumulate 强调经过一段较长的时间而由少积多的积累，使用范围广；amass 指大量地聚集（财富、信息、所有物等），可以指短时或长期的；assemble 指召集人员；congregate 指人聚集。根据句意判定，accumulate 符合句意。

考点三　近形异义动词辨析

典型真题

例 1：

While his efforts were tremendous the results appeared to be very _____.（北京大学 2011 年）

A. trigger　　B. meager　　C. vigor　　D. linger

【名师点评】 B。选项中的词均以-ger 或-gor 结尾，但意思不同。由句首的转折连词 While 判断，空格应填入的是贬义的动词。meager 意为“贫乏的，不足的”，符合句意。trigger“引发；引起；触发”；vigor“精力，活力”；linger“逗留；闲荡”。

例 2：

A tyre _____ when you pump air into it；it shrinks when the air is gone.（厦门大学 2014 年）

A. explores　　B. expands　　C. exploits　　D. exposes

【名师点评】 B。选项中的词均以 ex-开头，但意义不同。explore“探索，探测，探险”；expand“膨胀”；exploit“开发，剥削，开采”；expose“揭露，揭发”。句意为：当你打气进去，轮胎会鼓起来；当气跑了，它就会瘪掉。根据句意，只有 B 项 expands“膨胀”符合句意，故选项 B 正确。

例 3：

If you see that the street is wet in the morning，you would _____ that it must have rained during the night.（中国科学院 2012 年）

A. reduce　　B. seduce　　C. deduce　　D. induce

【名师点评】 C。选项中的词均以-duce 结尾，但意思有差别。reduce“减少”；seduce“勾引”；deduce“推断”；induce“诱导”。根据句意可知是推断出夜里下雨，不可能是别的，故答案为 C。

实战演练

1. To _____ is to save and protect，to leave what we ourselves enjoy in such good condition that others may also share the enjoyment.

A. conserve　　B. conceive　　C. convert　　D. contrive

2. All the students have to _____ to the rules and the regulations of the school.

A. confirm　　B. confront　　C. confine　　D. conform

3. Jimmy earns his living by _____ works of art in the museum.

A. recovering　　B. restoring　　C. renewing　　D. reviving

4. The use of money is not limited to high civilizations；actually many primitive peoples

have _____ moneys of their own.

A. discovered　　B. devised　　C. diverted　　D. diversified

5. In ancient times people who were thought to have the ability to _____ dreams were likely to be highly respected.

A. impart　　B. inherit　　C. interpret　　D. intervene

6. Such a change would not _____ to the wishes of the great majority of the people.

A. conform　　B. confirm　　C. confine　　D. confront

7. To _____ for his unpleasant suffering and low spirits he drank a little more than that was good for him.

A. commence　　B. compromise　　C. compensate　　D. compliment

8. The link worker can help _____ language and cultural barriers between the doctor or nurse and the patient.

A. overshadow　　B. overcome　　C. overwhelm　　D. overturn

9. North Island, South Island, and Steward Island are the three large islands that _____ the country of New Zealand.

A. compact　　B. compose　　C. comply　　D. comprise

10. He hastened to _____ me that there was nothing traumatic to report.

A. assure　　B. ensure　　C. insure　　D. guarantee

答案解析

1. **A**。conserve“保存，保养，保藏”；conceive“构思出，想象，猜测；抱有……的想法”；convert“改变，转变，转化”，常用于 convert…into…结构中；contrive“设计出，发明，策划”。题意是：保存就是保留并保护好我们自己喜欢的东西……，故答案为 A。
2. **D**。confirm“确认，确定；批准，认可；使巩固，使坚定”；confront“面对，面临；遭受；对抗”，常用于短语 be confronted with；confine“限制；禁闭”，常用于短语 confine…to；conform“适合，相似；符合，遵守”，常接介词 to。根据题意：所有的学生必须遵守学校的规章制度，故答案为 D。
3. **B**。选项中的词均以 re-开头。recover“康复”；restore“使恢复原样，修复”；renew“翻新，更新”；revive“复活，再流行”。选项中能与 works of art 搭配的动词只有 restoring，故答案为 B。
4. **B**。选项中的动词均以 di-开头。discover“发现”；devise“设计，发明”；divert“转移，使转向”；diversify“使不同”，使多样化。选项中能与 moneys 搭配的动词只有 devise，故答案为 B。
5. **C**。选项中的动词以 in-，im-开头。impart“分给，给予”；inherit“继承”；interpret“解释，诠释”；intervene“干预，干涉”。根据句意，people 对 dreams 是进行解释，故答案为 C。
6. **A**。选项中的动词均以 con-开头。conform 常与介词 to/with 搭配，意为“符合；适合；使一致”，符合题意；confirm 常被用作及物动词，意为“证实；巩固；批准”；confine 常与介词 to 连用，意为“限制；禁闭”；confront 常与介词 with 连用，意为“使……面对，使与……遭遇”。
7. **C**。选项中的动词均以 com-开头。commence“开始”；compromise“妥协”；compensate“补偿，赔偿”；compliment“赞扬”。根据句中 unpleasant suffering 判定，填入 compensate 符合句意和上下文语义，故答案为 C。

8. B。选项中的动词均以 over-开头。overcome“克服”，其后宾语往往是困难或者障碍，中介工人能帮助克服医生或护士与病人之间在语言和文化上的障碍，故答案为 B。其他选项 overshadow“覆盖”；overwhelm“压倒”；overturn“推翻”，均不符合题意。
9. D。选项中的动词均以 com-开头。compact“使紧密结合，使坚实”；compose“（常用被动）组成，构成”；comply“遵从，依从”；comprise“包含，包括”。根据句意，comprise 符合要求。
10. A。assure 用来表示向某人保证某事将要发生，既可以用来确证某事，也可以表示使某人确信，其宾语通常是人或人称代词；ensure 是使某行为或某件事的结果得以保证，即确保某事发生；insure 是为防不测向保险公司付钱投保；guarantee 指对事物的品质或人的行为及履行义务、义务等承担责任的保证。故答案为 A。

考点四　近形近义动词辨析

典型真题

例 1：

I had to _____ my desire to laugh while being scolded by my supervisor.（中国科学院 2012 年）

A. repress　　B. depress　　C. compress　　D. distress

【名师点评】 A。选项中的词都含有词根-ress，且意思相近。repress“抑制；约束”，尤指 conceal or hide 某种情感；depress“压抑；使沮丧；使萧条”，仅指使人失望、对未来失去希望；compress“压缩，压紧；精简”；distress“使悲痛；使贫困”。根据 being scolded，had to 给出的信息判定句意为“不得不抑制我笑的欲望”，故答案为 A。

例 2：

We've seen a _____ trend of consumers saying they will spend more，from holiday shopping to 2012 travel plans，and spending plans for Feb 14 are no exception.（北京大学 2012 年）

A. consistent　　B. persistent　　C. insistent　　D. resistant

【名师点评】 A。选项的词都含有词根-sist（＝stand 站，站立），但含义有所不同。consistent 强调前后一致，始终如一；persistent 指坚持不懈的（effort，attempts）或毫不动摇的决心；insistent 一般用来修饰重要的提议、要求（request/demands）；resistant 意为“抵抗的”。根据句意，这种消费形成一种规律，A 项符合句意。

例 3：

The market for dust masks and air purifiers is _____ in Beijing because the capital has been shrouded for several days in thick fog and haze.（北京大学 2013 年）.

A. booming　　B. looming　　C. dooming　　D. zooming

【名师点评】 A。根据句意分析，要求考生在 A 和 D 之间辨析。boom 指“迅速发展，兴旺”，zoom 强调“突然扩大，急速上升”。句意是“北京的防尘面罩和空气净化器市场正在迅速发展，因为首都数天来一直被浓雾和雾霾笼罩”。故答案为 A。

实战演练

1. The project area owns all project artifacts and all relationships between these artifacts，that _____ the resources of the project.

A. compose　　B. comprise　　C. consist　　D. constitute

2. All along the benches men put down their cups and spoons to turn and _____ at the grisly spectacle.
   A. gaze　　B. gape　　C. glance　　D. glare
3. We strongly encourage discussion about the appropriateness of deceptive robots to determine what, if any, regulations or guidelines should _____ the development of these systems.
   A. refrain　　B. restrain　　C. constrain　　D. contain
4. Please forgive me if some of these are rather obvious, but my hope is that I can _____ some search sinners into saviors.
   A. convert　　B. invert　　C. revert　　D. transform
5. Unfortunately, as soon as you get beyond that "moderate" amount, your memory, reaction time is all likely to _____.
   A. decline　　B. decrease　　C. diminish　　D. reduce
6. We demand that US provide us proof that the Haqqani network is based in tribal areas, so that we can _____ our common enemy.
   A. eliminate　　B. eradicate　　C. exterminate　　D. extirpate
7. The sleepy truck driver _____ and narrowly missed crashing into the tree.
   A. switched　　B. swung　　C. switching　　D. swerved
8. Closer economic ties among Pacific Rim nations from Chile to China have been _____ greater diplomatic warmth.
   A. translated　　B. transferred　　C. transplanted　　D. transmitted
9. We must _____ that the experiment is controlled as rigidly as possible.
   A. secure　　B. ensure　　C. assure　　D. issue
10. Every year some basketball or soccer players are _____ from one club to another.
    A. transmitted　　B. transferred　　C. transported　　D. transformed

答案解析

1. **D**。这些动词均含"组成，构成"之意，以词根 com-和 con-开头。compose 是正式用词，多用被动态，指将两个或两个以上的人或物放到一起形成一个整体；comprise 是正式用词，指整体是由几个独立的部分所组成；consist 与 of 连用，指一个整体由几个部分组成，或由某些材料构成；constitute 为正式用词，指由某些部分组成一个整体或构成某物的基本成分，在句中，主语表示事物的组成部分，宾语表示事物的整体，本句中，project artifacts 是事物的组成部分，the resources of the project 表示事物的整体，故答案为 D。
2. **B**。gaze 指由于好奇、惊讶而长时间目不转睛地看；gape（张着嘴、瞪大眼睛）呆看，强调一种吃惊的状态；glance（粗略地、随便地）一瞥，看一眼；glare 强调怀有敌意或在气愤情绪下看。grisly spectacle（恐怖景象）说明 gape（目瞪口呆）符合句意。
3. **C**。refrain "抑制，禁止"，强调抑制一种冲动，是正式用语，为不及物动词，后接介词 from；restrain "抑制，约束"，指通过管束阻止某事发生，是及物动词，其习惯用法是 restrain sb.（sth.）from doing；constrain "强迫，力劝"，是及物动词，强调强制性；contain "包含；控制"，强调控制性。本句的意思是要束缚 the development of these systems（系统发展），故答案为 C。

4. A。选项中的动词都有“转变”的意思，前三项的动词均以-vert 结尾。convert“转变，变换”，含有“使某人改变观点”的意思，通常与 into 搭配；invert“使颠倒，使倒转，使反向”，常常表示位置、顺序、方向等的颠倒；revert“归还，恢复原状”，指回到原来的状态或情形；transform“改变，转变”，指形状、颜色、大小、性质等的改变。根据“search sinners（罪人）into saviors（救世主）”提供的信息，这是要转变一种观念，且有介词 into，因此答案为 A。
5. A。选项中的动词都有“减少”的意思。decline“（数量、数字、价格、比率）下降，下落”；decrease“减少，减小”，强调逐渐地下降或减少的过程；diminish“（力量、势力）减弱，减少”，强调由于某种原因而减少，这种减少可以造成能够为人们所察觉的后果或损失；reduce 是及物动词，指通过人为的方法在数量、规模、范围等方面减少，也可以指在地位、重要性方面降低等级。根据句中 amount 提供的信息，只有 decline 符合句意。
6. A。这些动词均含“消灭”之意，以词根 ex-，er-，el-开头。eliminate“消灭；消除；淘汰；击败”；eradicate“根除；清除，扑灭；根绝”，往往强调遇到抵抗或者阻碍；exterminate“毁坏；灭绝；根除”；extirpate“消灭，根除，毁灭”。选项中能与 enemy 搭配的动词只有 eliminate，故答案为 A。
7. D。这些动词均含“转”之意，均以词根 sw-开头。swerve“突然转向”；swing“摇摆，摆动，回转，旋转”；switch“转换，转变”。根据句中描述的紧急情况，swerve 符合句意和情境。
8. A。这些动词均含“转变”之意，均以词根 trans-开头。translate“变换，把……转化成”；transfer“移交，迁移”；transplant“移植（器官）”；transmit“传染（疾病），传达（知识）”。本题只有选项 A 符合题意，为正确答案。
9. B。ensure“确保；保证”，常相对于某一种结果而言，符合题意。与其意义相近的 assure“向……保证；使……放心”，其后需要接某人，用法为 assure sb. that/ of sth.；secure“确保安全（避免不测）”；issue 为无关联干扰词，意为“发行；分配”。
10. B。这些动词均含“转变”之意，均以词根 trans-开头。transmit“传输，传播/把……传送，传染等”；transfer“由一处移到另一处，转让（财产等），调动/调任”；transport“运输，运送”；transform“完全改变某物/某人的外观或特征”。根据句意，players 与 club 之间的关系为 transfer，故答案为 B。

考点五　动词固定搭配

典型真题

例 1：

Einstein was a man deeply _____ to the ideal of the morally responsible scientist.（南京大学 2012 年）

A. affected　　B. committed　　C. subjected　　D. maintained

【名师点评】 B。commit…to 为固定搭配，意为“交付，把……投入；使致力于，对……做出承诺”，故答案为 B。

例 2：

The sanctions are designed to force Libya to _____ the two Lockerbie suspects and

to cooperate in the investigation in a similar case.（中国科学院 2014 年）

A. hand in　　B. hand out　　C. hand down　　D. hand over

【名师点评】D。动词词组搭配。hand in“交上，提交，呈送”；hand out“分发，施舍，把……拿出来”；hand down“宣布，把……传下去”；hand over“交出，移交”。句意：制裁的目的是迫使利比亚交出两位嫌疑人，并且在相似案件的调查中进行合作。故答案为 D。

例 3：

The boy was very naughty. His mother _____ punishment to make him obey.（山东大学 2014 年）

A. took advantage　　B. made use　　C. resorted to　　D. turned for

【名师点评】C。动词词组辨析。take advantage“利用”，后需要接 of；make use“利用”，后需要接 of；resort to“诉诸……，采取措施”；turn for“逆转，转变”。本句此处是妈妈用惩罚的方式让淘气的孩子规矩一些的意思，故答案为 C。

实战演练

1. His argument does not suggest that mankind can _____ to be wasteful in the utilization of these resources.
   A. resort　　B. grant　　C. afford　　D. entitle
2. Ms. Breen has been living in town for only one year, yet she seems to be _____ with everyone who comes to the store.
   A. accepted　　B. admitted　　C. admired　　D. acquainted
3. Although John was the eldest in the family, he always let his sister _____ charge of the house.
   A. take　　B. hold　　C. make　　D. get
4. All localities and departments must _____ from their actual conditions and take effective measures to attain the objectives.
   A. promp　　B. promote　　C. program　　D. proceed
5. He really helps reduce the paper clutter from _____ up especially if shredder closes to where you process the mail.
   A. adding　　B. pushing　　C. piling　　D. forming
6. As my exams are coming next week, I'll take advantage of the weekend to _____ on some reading.
   A. catch up　　B. clear up　　C. make up　　D. pick up
7. The increase in student numbers _____ many problems for the universities.
   A. forces　　B. presses　　C. provides　　D. poses
8. The clerk says Massachusetts has no jurisdiction to _____ Garnett with interfering with a flight crew and assault and battery.
   A. complain　　B. accuse　　C. charge　　D. denounce
9. John longed to _____ gifts on everyone and hated the thought of being called a Scrooge.
   A. present　　B. shower　　C. bequeath　　D. distribute
10. The boys in the dorm _____ a coin to decide who would clean the floor.
    A. held　　B. tossed　　C. put　　D. collected

1. C。resort to doing sth.；grant（同意给予）sb. sth. 或 grant（承认）sb. that…；afford to do sth.；entitle sb. to do sth.。根据句中空格后的结构 to be wasteful in 判定答案为 C。
2. D。选项中能和 with 相搭配的只有 acquainted，acquainted with 意为“熟悉”。故应选 D。accept（接受），admit（承认，接受）和 admire（羡慕）均不能与 with 相搭配，故均应排除。
3. A。take charge of（=to be or become responsible for sb. or sth.）为固定搭配，意为“负责，掌管，看管”，故答案为 A。
4. D。proceed 与 from 为固定搭配，意为“来自；由……产生”，故答案为 D。
5. C。pile up 为固定词组，意为“把……放成一堆，堆积”，故答案为 C。
6. A。catch up on 表示“用额外的时间做某事（以弥补所耽误的时间）”，用在句中符合句意。故答案为 A。clear up“天气转晴”；make up“化妆，编造，构成”；pick up“好转，改善，捡起，获得”，均不符合句意。
7. D。pose 可与 problem 搭配，表示“提出（问题）”“造成（问题或困难）”等。
8. C。complain 通常与 against 连用；accuse 与介词 of 连用；charge 可以指因为小错而受到责备，也指因违法而受到控告，与介词 with 连用；denounce 与 for 连用，意为“因……而谴责，就……控告”。通过以上分析可以判断答案为 C。
9. B。本题中能和介词 on 搭配且表示“给某人送礼物”的动词只能是 shower，其他三个动词的句法结构通常是 present sb. with sth.；bequeath sb. sth.；distribute sth. to sb.。故答案为 B。
10. B。“抛硬币”用动词 toss“抛，投，掷”，也可说成 flip a coin。



周二　名　词

考点分析

名词是英语词汇的重要组成部分，名词在句子中可当主语、主语同位语、主语补语、宾语、宾语同位语和宾语补语等。

例如：

The novel is still serialized there. novel 当主语。

You can start running，walking，knitting，reading novels，or writing. novels 当宾语。

名词可当形容词，修饰后面的名词。

例如：

I met her at the bus stop. bus 当形容词，修饰名词 stop。

名词可当副词，修饰动词或句子。

例如：

I went to the zoo last Sunday. last Sunday 当副词，修饰句子。

名词是考博英语词汇题中词汇考查的重要内容之一。名词在英语基本词汇中所占比例很大，而且英语名词的同义词和近义词很多，所以对名词考查的主要项目是名词意义辨析，此外还有名词与介词的搭配，动词与名词的搭配等。

名词的考点主要有：

- ❖ 名词词义题辨析
- ❖ 近义名词辨析
- ❖ 近形异义名词辨析
- ❖ 含有名词的固定搭配

技巧点拨

对于选择项为名词的词汇题，考生主要应用以下几个技巧确定答题的切入点：

- ❖ 名词词义题辨析

寻找句中该名词的主语、宾语或前后修饰词，根据句子的语境或动宾、介宾的语义搭配关系、名词的后续修饰成分（名词特有的动词不定式短语或同位语从句）确定答案。对于通过“主—谓”“动—宾”“介—宾”关系的判断尚无法确定答案的，可同时根据其主语、宾语及状语的特点来进行判断；此外，有的名词语义辨析只能通过理解句意来判断答案。

❖ 近义名词辨析

要求考生对所给四个名词给出确切中文解释的同时，也要求考生对其细微差异做出准确判定。名词常在用途和数量上有所区分。例如，英语中的 license（执照，许可证）和 certificate（证书，证明），前者是许可某人从事某种职业的证书，而后者则是证明某人有能力或者曾经做过某事的证书。易混词还有 incident（有历史意义的事件，插曲），event（重大事件，体育比赛的赛事），affair（时事，要事），emergency（紧急事件）。

数量标准是区分英语名词的关键，因为名词最大的特点就在于其可数与不可数、单数与复数的划分。例如，work 不可数，意义是“工作”，变成复数 works 则指“作品”，也可用来指“工厂”。

在平时学习和练习中，考生应注意不能从中文释义出发，而应仔细研究英文原文定义及注释，搞清名词所表示的概念的内涵和外延，捕获名词近义词之间的微妙差异。

❖ 近形异义名词辨析

从拼写相似的几个名词中选出一个最恰当的选项。这是考查名词的一种常用方式。近形异义名词只是具有相同的词根或拼写相似，但词义不同，例如：supplement，implement，experiment。这种题型的答案比较容易判断。

❖ 含有名词的固定搭配

含有名词的固定搭配是词汇题经常出现的考点之一，包括动词 + 名词、介词 + 名词和名词 + 名词等。含有名词的固定搭配在词汇题的测试中对考生关于句子整体的把握要求较低，但对考生掌握英语固定搭配的质和量都提出了很高的要求。考生需具备深厚扎实的基础知识，注意在平时练习中对常见词组进行积累，例如：beyond one's means（不能用 measure，也不能用 method，更不能用 approach）；by mistake（这个短语就不能说成 by error 或者 by fault）；in the long run（不是 period，interval 或 time）等等。

考点一　名词词义辨析

典型真题

例 1：

The report mentioned that some important people had attended the closing _____. (浙江大学 2013 年)

A. surgeon　　B. suspicion　　C. ceremony　　D. target

【名师点评】 C。名词词义辨析。surgeon“外科”；suspicion“怀疑”；ceremony“仪式”；target“预算”。根据句意，重量级人物参加的是闭幕式，故答案为 C。

例 2：

It has been proposed by many linguists that human language _____, our biologically programmed ability to use language, is still not well defined and understood. (复旦大学 2012 年)

A. potentiality　　B. perception　　C. faculty　　D. acquisition

【名师点评】 C。选项中，能与 human language 搭配的是 C 项，意为“人类语言能力”，并且与下文的 ability 对应，符合上下文语义。因此，C 项符合题意。注意 faculty 通常使用的含义为“科，系，教员”。

例 3：

When the relationship of parents and children is at this low _____, mutual love and respect need careful maintenance and rebuilding.（中国科学院 2014 年）

A. rate　　B. rank　　C. scale　　D. ebb

【名师点评】 D。名词词义辨析。rate“比率，率，速度，价格，等级”；rank“排，等级，军衔，队列”；scale“规模，比例，鳞，刻度，天平，数值范围”；ebb“衰退，退潮，衰落”。句意：当父母和孩子的关系处在低谷时，相互的爱和尊重需要精心的维护和重建。结合句意，ebb 更合理。故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. Once the animal's usual sources of nourishment have been exhausted, acorns are its only means of _____.
   A. resuscitation　　B. distraction　　C subsistence　　D. camouflage
2. Metis, the innermost _____ of Jupiter, completes a full revolution around this giant planet every seven hours.
   A. atmosphere　　B. constellation　　C. core　　D. satellite
3. The new composite material exhibits an extraordinary degree of _____, which enables it to be molded into almost any shape.
   A. plasticity　　B. resonance　　C. inertness　　D. buoyancy
4. Many discussions are written by professionals who have been trained to put client interests first and whose arguments tend to reflect that _____.
   A. overview　　B. inspiration　　C. speculation　　D. perspective
5. The Seats Company recently made _____ because of financial troubles.
   A. cuts　　B. demands　　C. omissions　　D. orders
6. While in bed, the doctor was telephoned to go back to the hospital because of _____ case.
   A. a treatment　　B. an operation　　C. an incident　　D. an emergency
7. It is a legal _____ for parents to ensure that their children are provided with efficient education suitable to their age.
   A. sympathy　　B. obligation　　C. impulse　　D. influence
8. He left early on the _____that he had a bad toothache and had to see the dentist.
   A. instruction　　B. excuse　　C. knowledge　　D. precondition
9. The American professor came to realize that he had underestimated the _____of most of the Chinese students.
   A. magnitude　　B. gradient　　C. potential　　D. firmness
10. If a person talks about his weak points, his listener is expected to say something in the way of _____.
    A. persuasion　　B. remedy　　C. encouragement　　D. compromise

答案解析

1. C。resuscitation“复兴”；distraction“分散注意力，精神错乱”；subsistence“生存”；camouflage“掩饰，伪装”。空格的名词表示 acorns are its only means of …（橡

果是唯一……的方法）。空格应该体现 nourishment（营养物）的概念，故答案为 C。

2. D。空格中填入的名词表示 Metis 是 Jupiter 的……。中间部分是插入语，与后面的句子构成修饰关系，所以空格应体现围绕公转（revolution）的语义。答案为 satellite（卫星）。
3. A。plasticity “可塑性”；resonance “洪亮，共鸣”；inertness “惰性”；buoyancy “浮力”。空格中填入的名词，表示 composite material（复合材料）的性质。逗号后面的从句与空格构成修饰关系，所以空格填入的名词为可以体现 be molded into almost any shape（被塑造成任意的形状）性质的名词，故答案为 A。
4. D。overview “概述”；inspiration “灵感”；speculation “思索，推测”；perspective “观点，看法”。根据句中的主语 discussions，arguments 判定 “客户至上” 是一观点，故答案为 D。
5. A。根据提示词语 financial troubles 以及逻辑关系的分析和判断，cuts（消减支出）符合句意。其他选项不符合题意。故答案为 A。
6. D。treatment “待遇，处理，治疗”；operation “操作，手术”；incident “事件，事变”；emergency “紧急情况，突发事件”。根据句意，an emergency case 意为 “急症病例”，故答案为 D。
7. B。sympathy “同情，同情心”；obligation “义务，责任”；impulse “冲动，刺激”；influence “影响，感化”。根据句中 legal 提供的语境，parents to ensure…children…是一种义务，故答案为 B。
8. B。instruction “指示”；excuse “托词，借口”；knowledge “知识，学问”；precondition “前提”。根据句中 left early 提供的语境，a bad toothache 是借口，故答案为 B。
9. C。magnitude “大小，重要的程度”；gradient “坡度，倾斜度”；potential “潜力，潜能”；firmness “稳固，坚实”。根据本题句意，underestimated 只能与 potential 搭配，故答案为 C。
10. C。persuasion “劝说，劝告”；remedy “治疗法，补救”；encouragement “鼓励”；compromise “妥协，折中”。句中 If 引导条件句，空格中填入的名词应与 is expected to 对应。选项中，只有 encouragement 符合，故答案为 C。

考点二　近义名词辨析

典型真题

例 1：

Before you can start a business, you will have to raise the necessary _____.

A. investment　　B. savings　　C. income　　D. capital

【名师点评】 D。选项中的单词均与 “钱” 有关系，但具体的意思不同。investment 指 “投资，可获利的东西”；savings “储蓄，存款”，属于不可数名词；income 常指定期的收入；capital 指 the owners 或 stockholders 投资商业所用的资本。根据句中 business 提供的信息，只有 capital 符合句意，“开始做生意的时候需要筹集资金”，故答案为 D。

例 2：

To give you a general idea of our products, we enclose the catalogues showing various products handled by us with detailed _____ and means of packing. （山东大学

2013 年）

A. specimens　　B. inspections　　C. samples　　D. specifications

【名师点评】D。specification“详述，规格，说明书，规范”；specimen“范例，典范；样品，样本；标本”；inspection“检查，视察”；sample“样品，样本，例子”。本句此处是“说明书，规范”的意思，故 D 项符合句意。

例 3：

An increasing proportion of our population, unable to live without advanced medical _____, will become progressively more reliant on expensive technology. （吉林大学 2012 年）

A. interference　　B. interruption　　C. intervention　　D. interaction

【名师点评】C。interference“干涉；阻碍”；interruption“中断，障碍物”；intervention“介入”，强调“夹在中间”，有“从中调解”之意；interaction“合作，相互作用”。本句句意：激增的人口中有很大一部分人离开先进医学的支持后都无法生存，从而变得越来越依赖昂贵的技术，故答案为 C。

实战演练

1. If the world is to remain peaceful, the utmost effort must be made by nations to limit local _____.

   A. collisions　　B. combats　　C. contradictions　　D. conflicts

2. When traveling, you are advised to take travelers' checks, which provide a secure _____ to carrying your money in cash.

   A. substitute　　B. selection　　C. preference　　D. alternative

3. The island where these rare birds nest has been declared a _____.

   A. observation　　B. reservation　　C. preservation　　D. conservation

4. There are several landladies approved by the universities who take in _____.

   A. lodgers　　B. residents　　C. inhabitants　　D. settlers

5. The _____ of science and technology thesis is usually reportorial, which needs reflect purposes, methods, important results and conclusions.

   A. abstract　　B. digest　　C. outline　　D. summary

6. Some new _____ she has bought for her new flat should be seen as well-designed.

   A. furniture　　B. property　　C. possession　　D. belongings

7. Following are comments about the behavior that people in Korea usually expect in various social _____.

   A. occasions　　B. cases　　C. situations　　D. circumstances

8. The _____ of the word is unknown, but it is certainly not from Greek.

   A. origin　　B. generation　　C. descent　　D. cause

9. Often enough our _____ before hand in an uncertified result is the only thing that makes the result come true.

   A. faith　　B. confidence　　C. reliance　　D. dependence

10. My friend had no _____ of helping the man who was acting too rudely.

    A. ambition　　B. desire　　C. willingness　　D. intention

1. D。选项中的词都有“冲突，矛盾，争斗”之意，但 collision 指“碰撞”或“意见、利益的冲突”，combat 指“斗争、战斗”，contradiction 指“矛盾，不一致”。只有 conflict 有区域性“冲突，摩擦”之意，故答案为 D。
2. D。substitute“代替，代替物”；selection“选择”，指从相当的数量中进行选择，强调数量多和慎重的判断和鉴别；preference“喜欢，偏爱”，强调选择个人偏爱的。alternative“两者或两者以上挑一；取舍，抉择”。根据题意，外出旅行，带钱时只有少数几种选择：现款、旅行支票或信用卡。选项中，最接近题意的是 alternative“从两个或两个以上中挑选一种选择”，故答案为 D。
3. D。conservation 是动词 conserve 派生的名词，与原来动词的意义相同，表示“保持，保存”时，强调珍惜、节用，保存（自然资源等）；observation 观察；preservation 是动词 preserve 派生的名词，强调“收藏，保存”，使之完好无损或质量不变，常与食品、博物馆收藏的展品等词搭配；reservation 主要指意见、看法等的“保留”，旅馆房间、戏院座位等的预订，作“保留地”解时，尤指美国印第安人保留地或澳大利亚土著民族保留地。本题指自然生态环境的保护，用 conservation 最切题，故答案为 D。
4. A。lodgers 指房客；residents 指居民，对游客而言；inhabitants = persons living in a place 居民；settlers“殖民者，移居者”。根据句意：这些大学批准她们“接纳房客”，故答案为 A。
5. A。abstract“概要，摘要”，尤其指对学术论文或法律论据作的简述；digest“篇幅较长的摘要，文摘”，它是对原文的浓缩而不是对原文的简单解释，浓缩后仍保持原文的顺序、重点和风格；outline“要点，大纲，概要”；summary“总结，摘要”，指用寥寥数语概括文章或者讲话的要点，不考虑原文的风格。根据句中 science and technology thesis（科技论文的摘要），能与此搭配的名词只能是 abstract，故答案为 A。
6. A。选项中的词都有“财产”之意。furniture 具体指“家具”，这里指她买的几件新家具设计优美。而其他几个单词均属于比较抽象的名词，笼统的指财产等。
7. A。选项中的词都有地点之意。根据句意，此处明显应表示“场合”，选项中符合要求的为 occasion（场合，节庆活动），常指某个事件发生的时间或特殊事件、庆典等。case“事实；情况”；situation“情况；处理”；circumstance“环境；形势”，均不符合句意。
8. A。选项中的词都有“来源”之意。origin“起源，来源”，往往与过去的活动、风俗、事件等有关；generation“产生，发生”，通常经过生产、操作等过程。descent“遗传，派生，世系”等；cause“原因”，一般指某事件、后果等的起因。word 的起源应该用 origin，故答案为 A。
9. A。选项中的词都有“相信”之意。faith 表示毫无疑问、通常充满感情的信任；confidence 淡化了感情，常暗示确信的强大理由；reliance 表示对他人的信任或信赖；dependence 表示对帮助或支持的依赖。分析句子和句意，空格处应填入与 come true（实现）意思相近的名词，故答案为 A。
10. D。选项中的词都有“心”之意。ambition“野心；志向；抱负”；desire“欲望；要求”，一般 desire 后面跟动词不定式或者介词 for；willingness“乐意；自愿”；intention“意图；目的；含义”。根据句中的 no 和 too rudely 判定，没有 helping the man 的想法，故答案为 D。

考点三　近形异义名词辨析

典型真题

例 1：

Whenever a camera was pointed at her, Marilyn would instantly _____ herself into a radiant star.（复旦大学 2014 年）

A. transfer　　B. translate　　C. transform　　D. transport

【名师点评】 C。选项中的四个单词均带有 trans-的前缀，但意义不同。transfer“转让，转移”；translate“翻译”；transform“改变”，常与 into 搭配使用；transport“运输”。句中的语境为变成一个光芒四射的明星。故答案为 C。

例 2：

Changing from solid to liquid, water takes in heat from all substances near it, and this _____ produces artificial cold surrounding it.（山东大学 2013 年）

A. absorption　　B. transition　　C. consumption　　D. interaction

【名师点评】 A。选项都是以-tion 为结尾，但意思却相差甚远。absorption“吸收”；transition“传送，过渡，传递”；consumption“消费，消耗”；interaction“相互作用”。根据句意，应选择 A 项。

例 3：

The _____ of jet travel has made the world seem smaller.（浙江大学 2013 年）

A. remark　　B. relationship　　C. removal　　D. innovation

【名师点评】 D。近形词义辨析。选项中，前三个单词均以 re-开头，remark“评论”；relationship“关系”；removal“去掉”，均不能与 jet travel 搭配，只有 innovation（发明）符合句意，故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. If you want this pain killer, you'll have to ask the doctor for a _____.
   A. receipt　　B. recipe　　C. subscription　　D. prescription
2. Which of these warring _____ develops as we mature and which ones are transcended, has everything to do with the adults and teachers in our lives.
   A. instants　　B. instances　　C. instincts　　D. intelligences
3. According to the psychoanalyst Sigmund Freud, wisdom comes from the _____ of maturity.
   A. fulfillment　　B. achievement
   C. establishment　　D. accomplishment
4. The forest ranger cautioned the hikers that their proposed route might prove dangerous, but they ignored her _____.
   A. vacillation　　B. indiscretion　　C. admonition　　D. prohibition
5. International students are almost always invited, through organized _____ activities, into the homes of Americans living in or outside the academic community.

A. hospitality　　B. hostility　　C. disability　　D. possibility

6. Retirement is obviously a very complex _____ period; and the earlier you start planning for it, the better.

A. transition　　B. transaction　　C. transmission　　D. transformation

7. Money serves as a means of accumulating wealth and as a universal _____ of exchange in the highly diversified commercial world.

A. measure　　B. intermediate　　C. medium　　D. mechanism

8. Fashion designers are rarely concerned with vital things like warmth, comfort and _____.

A. stability　　B. capability　　C. durability　　D. availability

9. The new technological revolution on American newspapers has brought increased _____, a wider range of publications and an expansion of newspaper jobs.

A. manipulation　　B. reproduction　　C. circulation　　D. penetration

10. The government's _____ of sending its troops to Iraq last week triggered mass demonstrations in this Western country.

A. resumption　　B. presumption　　C. assumption　　D. consumption

答案解析

1. D。A、B 两词和 C、D 两词分别组成两组近形干扰，两组干扰词又通过“配方，单据，食谱”之意巧妙组合在一起。考生只要注意到题干中的 doctor 和 pain killer（止痛剂）就能明确答案为 D。
2. C。选项中的词以 inst-，int-开头。instinct“天生的本领”；instant“瞬间，时刻”；instance“相依物体，例子；实体”；intelligence“情报”。选项中，能与形容词 warring（战斗的，敌对的）搭配的名词只有 instincts，故答案为 C。
3. B。选项中的词均以-ment 结尾。fulfillment 的释义为 the act of fulfilling or condition of being fulfilled“履行，实行”；achievement 的释义为 something successfully finished or gained especially through skill and hard work“取得，达到，成就”；establishment“建立，建设”；accomplishment“（顺利）完成”。根据句意，只有 achievement 符合句意，故答案为 B。
4. C。选项中的词均以-tion 结尾。vacillation“踌躇，犹豫”；indiscretion“不谨慎，鲁莽”；admonition“告诫，警告”；prohibition“禁止”。空格中填入的名词表示 the forest ranger（森林管理员的）…，but 表示前后反义，但是在本句中没有影响，因为 ignore 表示否定的含义，所以空格处填入表示“警告”的语义的名词。故答案为 C。
5. A。选项中的词均以-lity 结尾。hospitality“热情招待，殷勤好客”；hostility 来自形容词 hostile（不友善的，敌对的），“敌意，对抗”；disability“残疾；无能；无资格”；possibility“可能性；可能发生的事物”。根据句中谓语 invited 判断，hospitality 符合句意，故答案为 A。
6. A。选项中的词以 trans-开头。transition“（从一种状态到另一种状态等的）转变，过渡”，符合句中 retirement 的状态。故答案为 A。transaction“交易”；transmission“传播”；transformation“改变，变化”。
7. C。选项中的词以 me-，interme-开头。measure“措施，办法”；intermediate 指时间、

空间、程度的“中间物”；medium“媒介”，复数形式是 media 或 mediums；mechanism“机制；机械装置；机件”。根据主语 Money，能与 exchange 搭配的名词为 medium，故答案为 C。

8. C。选项中的词以-bility 结尾。stability“稳定性”；capability“性能，能力”；durability“耐用性”；availability“有效性，可用性”。由词义可知，只有 C“耐用性”与“保暖性，舒适度”为同一语域，故答案为 C。

9. C。选项中的词以-tion 结尾。manipulation“处理，控制，操纵”；reproduction“繁殖，再现，复制品”；circulation“循环，流通，发行量”；penetration“穿过，渗透，突破”。分析句子可知，空格应填入与 publications and an expansion 意思相近的名词，只有 circulation 符合，故答案为 C。

10. A。选项中的词以-sumption 结尾。resumption“继续”；presumption“推测，假定”；assumption“假设，假定”；consumption“消费，消耗”。分析句子可知，空格应填入与 last week 意思对应的名词，resumption 符合本题的题意，故答案为 A。

考点四　含有名词的固定搭配

典型真题

例 1：

You must let me have the annual report without _____ by ten o'clock tomorrow morning.（南开大学 2013 年）

A. failure　　B. hesitation　　C. trouble　　D. faot

【名师点评】D。固定搭配。without fail 是固定搭配，表示“必定，务必”。句意为：你必须在明天早上 10 点之前把年度报告交上来。故答案为 D。

例 2：

These results should not be taken at face _____ — careful analysis is required to assess their full implications.（中科院 2012 年）

A. revenue　　B. expense　　C. price　　D. value

【名师点评】D。take at face value 意为“停留于表面价值”，为常用搭配，故答案为 D。

例 3：

Sometimes certain families adhered _____ the same religious beliefs for several generations.（中国科学院 2013 年 3 月）

A. to　　B. for　　C. after　　D. with

【名师点评】A。adhere to 固定搭配，意为“坚持……. ”。故答案为 A。

实战演练

1. She was afraid that unless the train speeded up she would lose her _____ to Scotland.

A. ticket　　B. place　　C. seat　　D. connection

2. The managing director took the _____ for the accident，although it was not really his fault.

A. guilt　　B. charge　　C. blame　　D. accusation

3. They always kept on good _____ with their next-door neighbors for the children's sake.
   A. friendship　　B. relations　　C. intentions　　D. terms
4. Lawyers often make higher _____ for their work than they should.
   A. bills　　B. charges　　C. prices　　D. costs
5. The generation _____ makes it difficult for parents to understand their children's opinions.
   A. division　　B. gap　　C. separation　　D. interval
6. You have to commit that nothing is more important than seeing and saying what you will become, to the _____ of everything else.
   A. eradication　　B. exclusion　　C. extension　　D. inclusion
7. His familiarity with otherworldly creatures such as demons was poor indeed, but he realized that the demon might very well take _____ at a priest bursting in, waving a crucifix in its face.
   A. resentment　　B. irritation　　C. annoyance　　D. offence
8. In the eyes of many ordinary people, scholars are by _____ very unpractical.
   A. accident　　B. nature　　C. anticipation　　D. heart
9. When invited to talk about his achievements, he refused to blow his own _____ and declined to speak at the meeting.
   A. trumpet　　B. whistle　　C. bugle　　D. flute
10. Doctors are often caught in a _____ because they have to decide whether they should tell their patients the truth or not.
   A. puzzle　　B. perplexity　　C. dilemma　　D. bewilderment

答案解析

1. D。lose one's connection to 意为“误了到……地方去的（汽车、火车、轮船的）联运”，为固定搭配。
2. C。take the blame for“对……承担责任”；take charge of“负责管理（照顾）”。注意 charge 前无冠词 the。
3. D。keep（be）on good terms with 意为“与……和睦相处”，为固定搭配。
4. B。make charges for 意为“对……收（费）、索（价）”，是固定搭配。
5. B。generation gap 意为“代沟”，是固定搭配。故答案为 B。division“分，划分”；separation“分开”；interval“间隔，间隙；（幕间或工间）休息”。
6. B。to the exclusion of 为固定搭配，意为“把……排斥在外”，故答案为 B。eradication“根除，破灭”；extension“延伸，扩展”；inclusion“包括”，均不符合句意。
7. D。这组词都有“气恼；生气”之意。offence 与动词 take 构成一个固定搭配，take offence at 意为“（对）……生气；（因）……见怪”，符合题意。其余名词都可与动词 feel 连用，“与某人气恼”用 with，“因某事气恼”用 at，只是意思稍有不同：feel resentment at 表示积压已久的气恼；feel irritation at 表示极度的、一触即发的恼怒；feel annoyance at 表示一种失去忍耐的气恼。

8. B。by accident “偶然”；by nature “生来，天性”；by anticipation “事先，预先”；by heart “熟记”。根据句意，nature 为答案。
9. A。blow one's own trumpet 为固定搭配，意为 “自吹自擂，自我标榜”，与它相似的表达为 blow one's own horn。
10. C。in a dilemma 为固定搭配，意为 “处于（进退两难的）困境”；in a puzzle 也是固定搭配，意为 “困惑，迷惑”，不符合句意；perplexity “困惑，茫然”；bewilderment “迷惑，昏乱”，无此搭配。故答案为 C。

周三 形容词及副词

一、形容词

考点分析

形容词即 modern，electric，great 等描述性的词汇，其最主要的功能就是修饰名词，做定语，如：modern art，electric current，great responsibility。同时还可做表语、宾语补足语等成分。

形容词是英语三大实词之一，是英语语言文字中意义较丰富、用法较积极的一部分，同时也是博士入学英语考试词汇部分的一个重要测试项目。在国家颁布的《硕士生和博士生英语教学大纲》附录的词汇表中，有相当比例的形容词及与其紧密相关的副词。掌握好形容词有助于考生考试时顺利答题，也为考生全面掌握英语这门语言打下基础。

该项目的测试点包括：

1）对形容词的认知能力和辨别能力；

2）词形及词义相近的形容词的区分；

3）形容词的固定搭配。

复习时要多积累相关的词汇，每学一个形容词都要知道它的主要词义及其与介词的搭配，清楚基本含义和用法。

❖ 积累大量的同义词和反义词。如 wonderful，marvelous，excellent，extraordinary，remarkable，miraculous，prodigious 为同义词。

❖ 把形容词的学习和动词的学习结合起来。如：indicate—indicative；receive—receptive；inquire—inquisitive 等。

❖ 把形容词的学习和名词结合起来。如：defect—defective；intention—intentional 等。

❖ 注意以-ly 结尾的单词的词性。名词加-ly 多构成形容词。如：heavenly，womanly，worldly，lively，lonely，lovely，deadly，friendly，ugly，silly，likely，brotherly，timely 等。

❖ 有的单词在拼写不变的情况下既是名词，又是形容词。如：choice goods 上等品；quality apple 优等苹果；minute particles 微小的颗粒。

考生在考前复习时要注意下面几个方面的问题，它们是出题的重点：

❖ 异形异义形容词辨析，如：prominent，prosperous，solemn，prevalent。

❖ 近形异义形容词辨析，如：conspicuous，miraculous，meticulous，incredulous。

❖ 异形近义形容词辨析，如：flexible，versatile，sophisticated，productive。

❖ 形容词的固定搭配，如：identical with。

技巧点拨

❖ 异形异义形容词辨析

此类形容词考题的特征虽然是每个形容词的形态相差较大，意义也截然不同，但与前后文的搭配似乎都说得过去，这就是将它们罗列在一起命题的主要原因。此类题的解题技巧是直接法，不需辨形和辨义，直接根据形容词所修饰的名词，从两者的语义搭配关系入手。如果空缺处形容词位于名词前做定语，则可根据该名词来确定需选的形容词。如果空缺处形容词充当句子表语，则它所修饰的名词即为句子的主语，根据做主语的名词来确定正确答案。

❖ 近形异义形容词辨析

此类形容词，其形态较相近，但意义相差较大，做题的步骤包括辨形和取义两个环节，解题技巧是以意排形法，即根据每个词的含义，排除容易混淆的外形，再根据上下文语言的内在含义及搭配，选取一个正确的答案。

❖ 异形近义形容词辨析

此类形容词试题的解题技巧是逻辑取义，这个策略主要在于辨义。辨义的方式是逻辑推理，即根据每个形容词意义上的微妙区别，通过意义上和搭配上的逻辑关系，确定恰当的选项。

❖ 形容词的固定搭配

形容词题也可根据其后面的介词搭配或特殊句型来确定正确答案。例如：accustomed 与 to 搭配，satisfied 与 with 搭配。

形容词起修饰作用，此类词汇题应遵守以下搭配原则：

❖ 形容词与被修饰成分褒贬一致

❖ 形容词与被修饰成分具有同质性

例如：Some children display an _____ curiosity about every new thing they encounter.

A. incredible　　B. infectious　　C. incompatible　　D. inaccessible

分析：题中的空格修饰名词 curiosity（好奇心），curiosity 不可能是 infectious（传染的），incompatible（不可兼容的），inaccessible（不可到达的），只与 incredible（不可思议的）具有同质性，所以 incredible 能够修饰名词 curiosity。

❖ 符合句子的语境

例如：I have to say this，but this coat you've just bought is made of _____fur；it's not real mink.

A. coarse　　B. genuine　　C. slippery　　D. simulated

分析：根据句子提供的语境：……你刚买的大衣是……皮的；不是真的貂皮。空格的形容词应与“真貂皮”相对，所以为 simulated（假的）。

典型真题

例 1：

The head of the Museum was _____ and let us actually examine the ancient

manuscripts.（四川大学 2012 年）

A. promising　　B. agreeing　　C. pleasing　　D. obliging

【名师点评】D。形容词词义辨析。空格填入的动词与 let us actually examine 表达的意思一致。选项中的 obliging 意为“亲切的，愿意帮忙的”，符合句意，故答案为 D。

例 2：

The burst of growth and prosperity in America after 1945 had social consequences that were _____ anywhere in the world.（中国科学院 2012 年 3 月）

A. unprecedented　B. unidentified　　C. unaccountable　　D. unremarkable

【名师点评】A。形容词词义辨析。unprecedented“前所未有的”；unidentified“不能辨认的，身份不明的”；unaccountable“不负责任的，不能理解的”；unremarkable“寻常的，不值得注意的”。根据句意，社会影响力是空前的。故答案为 A。

例 3：

As is known to all, _____commodities will definitely do harm to our life sooner or later.（复旦大学 2012 年）

A. counterfeit　　B. fake　　C. imitative　　D. fraudulent

【名师点评】B。异形近义形容词辨析。题意为“假冒的商品”。本题主要要求对 counterfeit 和 fake 进行辨析。两词都有“伪造的”含义，fake 通常指没有价值的冒牌货或代用品，但目的不一定全是为骗人；counterfeit 后面通常接假冒银行票据、产品、机票等，这些都是非法伪造的，是为了欺骗别人。本题 commodities（商品，日用品）与 fake 搭配符合语义。因此，B 项符合题意。题干中的 do harm to 意为“损害”，sooner or later 意为“早晚，迟早”。

例 4：

John was so _____ in his book that he did not hear the doorbell ring.（山东大学 2014 年）

A. engaged　　B. occupied　　C. absorbed　　D. concentrated

【名师点评】C。异形近义形容词辨析。absorbed“全神贯注的”，只用于表示精力的集中，多用作表语，有 be absorbed in（全神贯注于）这样的搭配；concentrated“决心要做的，全力以赴的，集中的，密集的，浓缩的”，多用作定语。它不仅可以像 absorbed 那样，表示精力的集中，也可用于形容其他事物。表示精力的集中这个意思时，侧重于表示决心。根据句中的 was so 的结构，absorbed 更符合句意，故答案为 C。

例 5：

There has been a _____ lack of communication between the union and the management.（四川大学 2012 年）

A. regretful　　B. regrettable　　C. regretting　　D. regretted

【名师点评】B。近形近义形容词辨析。regretful“后悔的，遗憾的”；regrettable“可惜的”；regretting 和 regretted 的原形为 regret“后悔；惋惜”。lack 为名词，一般用形容词修饰，只有 regrettable 与 lack 搭配合理，故答案为 B。

例 6：

Traditional fairytales are being ditched by parents because they are too _____ for their young children, a study found.（北京大学 2013 年）

A. scarce　　B. scary　　C. scared　　D. scarred

【名师点评】B。近形异义形容词辨析。选项中的词均以 scar-开头，但意义不同。

scarce“缺乏的，稀少的”；scary“恐怖的，吓人的”；scared“受惊吓的”；scarred“留下伤痕的”。根据句意，只有 scary 符合题意，意为“太恐怖了”。故答案为 B。

例 7：

It cannot be denied that the existing resources on earth will be depleted, but scientists are _____ to concede the inevitability of that day, realizing that new energies can be found in the near future.（北京航空航天大学 2012 年）

A. bound　　B. unprepared　　C. hesitant　　D. likely

【名师点评】C。形容词固定搭配。be bound to“一定，想要”；unprepared 后不接 to；be hesitant to“犹豫”；be likely to“可能”。结合句意：不能否认现有的地球上的资源将被耗尽，但科学家们并不认为那一天是不可避免的，他们意识到新能源可以在不久的将来被发现，可知 C 项符合题意。

例 8：

He was so absorbed in his work that he was _____ to the things going on around him.（四川大学 2015 年）

A. oblivious　　B. digestible　　C. dormant　　D. introvert

【名师点评】A。oblivious“遗忘的，不注意的”；digestible“易消化的”；dormant“休眠的，静止的”；introvert“内向的”。be oblivious to sth 为固定搭配，表示“不在意的”

例 9：

I never trusted him because I always thought of him as such a _____character.（山东大学 2013 年）

A. gracious　　B. suspicious　　C. unique　　D. particular

【名师点评】B。形容词语境。句子前半句是“我从不相信他”，根据逻辑关系，可以肯定后面描述他的词肯定不是什么好词，选项中，唯有 suspicious（多疑的，可疑的）是带贬义的词，常指所怀疑的对象或事情未必是真的，带有疑神疑鬼、神经过敏的含义。故答案为 B。gracious“有礼貌的，宽厚的，优美的”；unique“独一无二的，唯一的”；particular“特别的”，带有“引人注目”的意思。

例 10：

Medical students learn to distinguish“acute”, which means something of recent onset, from“chronic”, which means a condition that will probably continue for a _____ period of time.（中国科学院 2012 年）

A. gloomy　　B. temporary　　C. tough　　D. substantial

【名师点评】D。形容词语境。根据句中 acute, something of recent onset 给出的语境判断，chronic 的含义应该与 acute 相反，只有 substantial 符合要求。a substantial period of time 意为“较长的时间” gloomy“阴暗的，令人沮丧的”；temporary“暂时的，短暂的”；tough“坚强的，粗暴的”。故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. This is the _____ piano on which the composer created some of his greatest works.
   A. actual　　B. genuine　　C. real　　D. original
2. In general, matters which lie entirely within state borders are the _____ concern of state governments.

A. extinct　　B. excluding　　C. excessive　　D. exclusive

3. He is holding a _____ position in the company and expects to be promoted soon.
A. subordinate　　B. succeeding　　C. successive　　D. subsequent

4. Although cats cannot see in complete darkness, their eyes are much more _____to light than are human eyes.
A. glowing　　B. brilliant　　C. sensitive　　D. gloomy

5. The manager gave one of the salesgirls an accusing look for her _____ attitude toward customers.
A. impartial　　B. mild　　C. hostile　　D. opposing

6. All the girls seem to be _____ of her beauty and intelligence.
A. envious　　B. indifferent　　C. distinct　　D. enthusiastic

7. The _____ runner can run 2 miles in fifteen minutes.
A. common　　B. usual　　C. average　　D. general

8. Although the body is made up of many different tissues, these tissues are arranged in an _____ and orderly fashion.
A. incredible　　B. intricate　　C. internal　　D. initial

9. For many patients, institutional care is the most _____ and beneficial form of care.
A. persistent　　B. appropriate　　C. thoughtful　　D. sufficient

10. As a _____ actor, he can perform, sing, dance and play several kinds of musical instruments.
A. flexible　　B. versatile　　C. sophisticated　　D. productive

答案解析

1. **A**。异形近义形容词辨析。形容词 actual，real，genuine 是同义词，有时可以互换，其反义词是 false（假的）；original（原来的），其反义词是 duplicate（复制的）。从不同的角度看，似乎任何一个选项都说得过去，但按照题意 actual 最佳，因为题干中强调的不是钢琴的真假，而是指作曲家“实际使用过的”，只有 actual 有“实际……”的意思。

2. **D**。近形异义形容词辨析。选项中的形容词均以 ex-开头。extinct“灭绝的”；excluding“不包括”；excessive“多余的，额外的”；exclusive“唯一的”。根据这些形容词的含义及上下文搭配可知 exclusive 符合句意。

3. **A**。近形近义形容词辨析。选项中的形容词词形相似，其中 B，C，D 的意义也接近，要注意区分。subordinate“副职的，次要的”；succeeding“接连的，接着发生的”；successive“连续的，依次的”；subsequent“随后的，后来的”。根据句意和逻辑，他目前在公司担任一个副职，希望很快得到提升，答案为 A。

4. **C**。形容词固定搭配。本题要求选择的形容词不但要在意义上与句子相符，而且能与介词 to 搭配。选项中，只有 sensitive 可以与 to 搭配，sensitive to 意为“对……敏感的”。故 C 是正确答案。其他三个形容词的意义分别是：glowing“容光焕发的，热烈的”；brilliant“灿烂的，杰出的”；gloomy“阴暗的，沮丧的”。它们不但意义与题意不符，而且都不能与 to 搭配。

5. **C**。异形近义形容词辨析。impartial“公正的”；mild“温和的”；hostile“敌对的”；opposing“面对的，相对的，相反的”。根据句中 accusing 判断，此处是指“她对顾客

持敌对态度”，故答案为 C。

6. A。形容词固定搭配。选项中，只有 envious（嫉妒的，羡慕的）和介词 of 搭配。

7. C。异形近义形容词辨析。选项都含有“普通的”之意，十分难以确定谁是正确的。但从逻辑关系上来讲，common 强调的是事件或某种现象经常发生；usual 指“惯例或制度性”；average“平均的”，常有一个衡量的标准，再取其平均值；general 意为“一般的”，含有“大多数”之意。

8. B。近形异义形容词辨析。incredible“难以置信的”；intricate“复杂的”；internal“内部的”；initial“初始的”。选取 A 和 C 两项似乎也说得过去，实则不然。incredible 与 although 无转折关系；internal 与 orderly 之间不能用 and 表示并列关系，故答案为 B。

9. B。形容词固定搭配。persistent“不间断的”；appropriate“适当的”；thoughtful“周到的”；sufficient“足够的”。能与 form 搭配的只有 appropriate，故答案为 B。

10. B。异形近义形容词辨析。flexible“灵活的”；versatile“多才多艺的”；sophisticated“老练的，有经验的”；productive“勤奋的，多产的”。其中 A，C 和 D 均强调某一个方面的能力，不可能面面俱到。故只有 B 才符合逻辑。

二、副词

考点分析

副词和形容词有着千丝万缕的联系，相当比例的副词都是形容词加后缀-ly 构成的，但副词在句中的作用却与形容词有较大区别，需细心领会。副词最主要的功能是做状语，用于修饰动词、形容词、副词、介词短语，甚至整个句子，这些都是副词不可替代的作用。

副词按其词义和作用可分为下列几类：

❖ 时间副词，如：yesterday，tomorrow，today，last，ago，recently，immediately，nowadays，still，just 等。

❖ 频率副词，如：never，sometimes，often，usually，hardly，seldom，always，frequently 等。

❖ 地点、方向副词，如：here，there，outside，west，left，straight，over，on，in，out，off，somewhere，anywhere，up，down，over，away 等。

❖ 方式副词，如：awkwardly，largely，neatly，quickly，well，together，slowly，fast 等。

❖ 强调副词，如：very，quite，too，more，extremely，so，pretty，terribly，wholly，almost，entirely，even，only 等。

❖ 疑问、连接副词，如：when，where，why，how，whenever，however，wherever 等。

副词的构成：

❖ 大多数副词是由形容词加后缀-ly 构成的。如：politely，sadly；当形容词以-y 结尾时，在加-ly 之前，先变-y 为-i。如：heavily，busily；以-le 结尾时，去-e 加-y 即可。如：simply，ably；以-ll 结尾时，只需加-y。如：dully，shrilly；以-ic 结尾时，则在-ic 之后加-ally。如：economically，basically 等。

❖ 由名词、数词、不定代词、介词、短语分别加-ly 构成的副词。如：weekly，firstly，

mostly，overly，matter-of-factly 等。

❖ 由各种词类加前缀 a-或后缀-fashion，-ways，-style 构成的副词。如：alike，around，aloud，sideways，cowboy-style 等。

❖ 有些副词由介词或地点名词加后缀-ward（s）构成，意义是“向……”。如：backward(s)，downward(s)，forward(s)，northward(s)，onward(s)，upward(s)等。

❖ 有些副词是由名词加后缀-wise 构成，表示方向、位置、状态、样子等。如：clockwise，crabwise，lengthwise 等。

❖ 有些形容词与副词同形，但有着不同的句法功能。

如：We had an early breakfast. / We had breakfast early.

early 在第一句中是形容词，做定语；在第二句中是副词，做状语。

❖ 有些副词有两种形式：一是与形容词同形，二是由该形容词加-ly 构成。这两种不同的形式，有些含义相同，有些略有不同，有些完全不同。

如 1：fair/fairly

fair 意为“公平地”，用在某些词组中，放在动词后；fairly 意为“相当地”，一般修饰形容词和副词，它并不表示很高程度。

如 2：high/highly

high 指的是高矮的“高”；highly 表示很高的程度，往往表示抽象意义的“高”，有时相当于 very much。

在博士研究生英语入学考试中，副词题相对较少，对副词的测试主要集中在以下两个方面：

❖ 副词词义辨析；

❖ 副词与动词或形容词的搭配使用。

技巧点拨

副词主要修饰动词或形容词，考生应从被它修饰的动词或形容词入手，来确定答案。

（1）根据由空缺处副词修饰的动词，来确定正确答案。

例如：

Some people either _____ avoid questions of right and wrong or remain neutral about them.

A. violently　　B. enthusiastically　　C. sincerely　　D. deliberately

分析：根据句子结构，空格填入的副词修饰动词 avoid。选项中能与 avoid 搭配的副词最有可能的是 deliberately（故意地）。

（2）如果空缺处的副词用以修饰后面的形容词，则该形容词的语义在确定答案时往往起着关键性作用。

例如：

Although the national government has introduced some new laws on this subject，it is the state governments that are _____ responsible for pollution control.

A. precisely　　B. primarily　　C. progressively　　D. preliminarily

分析：本题中空格填入的副词修饰形容词 responsible。根据句意，应当是“由政府主要负责污染的控制”，即答案为 primarily。

（3）把这些副词的词义和用法与句子具体的语境结合。

典型真题

例 1：

"Gangnam Style", the _____ popular song from South Korean recording artist PSY has just become the most watched video on YouTube ever.（北京大学 2013 年）

A. sanely　　B. insanely　　C. rationally　　D. insatiably

【名师点评】B。形近副词词义辨析。sanely "心智健全地，稳健地"；insanely "疯狂地"；rationally "理性地"；insatiably "不知足地，贪得无厌地"。选项中，只有 insanely 和 popular 搭配符合逻辑。故答案为 B。

例 2：

The development of these gene technologies may be far in the future, but the moral and social issues raised by them should be discussed _____ for once a technology has been invented, it may be difficult to stop or control.（北京航空航天大学 2012 年）

A. presently　　B. summarily　　C. seriously　　D. hesitantly

【名师点评】A。副词词义辨析。presently "目前，不久"；summarily "概要地，立刻"；seriously "认真地，严重地"；hesitantly "迟疑地，踌躇地"。根据句意，空格填入的词应与 in the future 相对，故答案为 A。

例 3：

Students at these schools test far below the state average in reading, and their scores have improved only _____.（北京大学 2014 年）

A. marginally　　B. marvelously　　C. martially　　D. markedly

【名师点评】A。marginally "少量地，最低限度地"；marvelously "不可思议地，令人惊讶地"；martially "勇敢地，好战地"；markedly "明显地，显著地"。前句提及学生在测试中阅读的分数远远低于平均分，由此可知，空格处所在句子的语境应为：他们的分数提高得很少。选项中符合语境的只有 A。

例 4：

Although most dreams apparently happen _____, dream activity may be provoked by external influences.（浙江大学 2013 年）

A. instantaneously　B. simultaneously　　C. spontaneously　　D. unanimously

【名师点评】C。近义副词词义辨析。根据句中的 Although，表示句意有个转折，空格处所填单词和 external 形成对比。后半句强调 "梦" 受到 "外部影响"，暗示了空格处的单词应该是表示 "不是受外部所影响的，是自发产生的"。选项中，只有 spontaneously（自发地，自然地，本能地）符合，故答案为 C。instantaneously "即刻，突如其来地"；simultaneously "同时发生地，同时进行地，同步地"；unanimously "无异议地，全体一致地"。

例 5：

Language, culture, and personality may be considered _____ of each other in thought, but they are inseparable in fact.（吉林大学 2012 年）

A. indistinctly　　B. separately　　C. irrelevantly　　D. independently

【名师点评】D。形近副词词义辨析。根据句中 Language, culture, and personality 提供的信息，空格填入的词应与 each other 为意思相近的词。选项中，independently 意为 "独立地，单独地"，强调与别人关系不大，故答案为 D。indistinctly "不清楚地，分不清地"，强调因看不清而无法弄清；separately "分离地"，强调可以分开；irrelevantly "无关地，不相干地"，强调没有相互关系。

例 6：

I have no doubt that _____ all of these people were taught in school that the earth revolves around the sun.（四川大学 2012 年）

A. virtually　　B. remarkably　　C. ideally　　D. preferably

【名师点评】A。副词词义辨析。句中的 earth revolves around the sun 是事实，只有选项中的 virtually 符合句意，故答案为 A。remarkably“显著地；非常地”；ideally“理想地；观念上地”；preferably“较好地；宁可地”。

例 7：

The realization of all the potential profits _____ depends on sufficient spending by employers, by the government or by those purchasing exports.（中国科学院 2010 年 10 月）

A. intimately　　B. universally　　C. ultimately　　D. instinctively

【名师点评】C。副词词义辨析。intimately“紧密地，直接地”；univerally“通用地，万能地”；ultimately“最后地，极限地”；instinctively“本能地”。根据句意，“最终决定”应该是 ultimately。故答案为 C。

例 8：

Since his retirement, Peter Smith, who was _____ a teacher, has written four novels.（厦门大学 2013 年）

A. lately　　B. usually　　C. formerly　　D. already

【名师点评】C。副词词义辨析。lately“近来，最近”，usually“通常，大抵”，formerly“从前，以前”，already“早已，已经”。根据句意，以前是老师。故答案为 C。

例 9：

The Chinese language differs _____ from the English language because of their different writing system and pronunciation.（上海交通大学 2009 年）

A. considerably　　B. consistently　　C. confidently　　D. continually

【名师点评】A。形近副词词义辨析。根据句中 different writing system and pronunciation 判定，空格应该是说明 Chinese language 和 English language 之间的差别程度。选项中，只有 considerably（相当地，十分地）符合要求，故答案为 A。consistently“一贯地，始终如一地”；confidently“自信地，确信地”；continually“不断地，连续地”。

例 10：

In the past ten years skyscrapers have developed _____ in Chicago and New York City.（四川大学 2011 年）

A. homogeneously　B. simultaneously　　C. spontaneously　　D. harmoniously

【名师点评】B。副词词义辨析。homogeneously“同类地，同性质地”；simultaneously“同时地”；spontaneously“自然地，自发地”；harmoniously“协调地，和谐地”。根据句意，Chicago 和 New York City“同时”耸立起了摩天大楼，故答案为 B。

例 11：

The ideological make-up of the unions is now _____ different from what it had been.（四川大学 2010 年）

A. violently　　B. severely　　C. extremely　　D. radically

【名师点评】D。副词词义辨析。violently“猛烈地，剧烈地”；severely“严肃地；严厉地；剧烈地”；extremely“极其地”；radically“根本地，基本地”。根据句意：协会的意识形态和之前相比发生了根本的变化，故答案为D。

实战演练

1. Mary became _____ homesick and critical of the United States, so she fled from her home in west Bloomfield to her hometown in Austria.
   A. increasingly　B. completely　C. absolutely　D. sincerely
2. Losses caused intentionally or _____ by the lessee shall be borne by the lessee.
   A. fussily　B. slovenly　C. negligently　D. discreetly
3. She remains confident and _____ untroubled by our present problems.
   A. indefinitely　B. infinitely　C. optimistically　D. seemingly
4. While admitting that this forecast was _____ uncertain, the scientists warned against treating it as a cry of wolf.
   A. anyhow　B. somehow　C. somewhat　D. anyway
5. Some analysts remain skeptical and predict the market will only recover _____ by the middle of next year.
   A. marginally　B. martially　C. markedly　D. marvelously
6. If you are in a position at work or socially where you want to make the best possible impression upon others, begin your project _____ and complete it as soon as possible.
   A. promptly　B. presently　C. quickly　D. directly
7. In fact, we have been hearing it for several years, so it is _____ surprising that it still comes up so often and that there are still so many misconceptions about it.
   A. as　B. and　C. somehow　D. somewhat
8. The third source of monopoly is control of an essential, or a _____ valuable, input to the production process.
   A. enough　B. adequately　C. amply　D. sufficiently
9. In the past decade skyscrapers have developed _____ in this newly emerging city.
   A. homogeneously　B. simultaneously　C. spontaneously　D. anonymously
10. At first the company refused to purchase the equipment, but this decision was _____ revised.
    A. subsequently　B. successively　C. predominantly　D. preliminarily

【名师点评】

1. A。副词词义辨析。increasingly“越来越，日益”；completely“完全地”；absolutely“绝对地”；sincerely“真诚地”。根据句意“玛丽越来越思乡，越来越对美国挑剔……”，increasingly是正确答案，故答案为A。
2. C。副词词义辨析。fussily“大惊小怪地，小题大做地”；negligently“疏忽地，粗心大意”；slovenly“懒散地，不修边幅地”；discreetly“谨慎地，小心地”。根据or判断，空格处填入的副词应与intentionally意思相对，故答案为C。
3. C。副词词义辨析。indefinitely“不确定地，不明确地”；infinitely“无限地，无穷地”；optimistically“乐观地”；seemingly“表面上地”。根据句中连词and判定，只有

optimistically 能与 confident 并列。虽然 seemingly 也可与 untroubled 搭配，但与 confident 并列就不妥了，故答案为 C。

4. C。副词词义辨析。选项中的副词或有 some 或有 any，而且在意义上或多或少有相似之处。anyhow“无论如何”；somehow“不知如何”；somewhat“有些，一点”；anyway“无论如何，总之”。根据句意为：虽然科学家们承认这次预报有点不太确定，但他们警告说，不要认为这是无中生有，故答案为 C。
5. A。副词词义辨析。marginally“在边缘上；勉强地”；marvelously“奇迹般地，奇异地”；martially“好战地，勇敢地”；markedly“明显地，显著地”。根据空格前的 only 判定，只有 marginally 符合题意，故答案为 A。
6. A。副词词义辨析。presently“目前”；directly“直接地”；quickly“很快地”，指动作本身很快；promptly“立刻”。根据句中 as soon as possible 表明此处是说在很短的时间内，故只有 promptly 符合逻辑和句意。
7. D。副词词义辨析。从题干中可以看出此空应填入一个副词，因此可排除 as 和 and。somehow 意为“以某种方式；通过某种途径；不知怎的”，不符题意。somewhat 意为“有点；稍微”，符合题意，故答案为 D。
8. D。副词词义辨析。enough 常可与 sufficient 互换，它除表示“足以满足需要的”外，还含有“数量很多，使人感到心满意足”的意思；adequately“充分地”，指“足够符合特定（有时可指最低）的资格、分量、才能等”，着重符合一个客观要求或标准；amply“广泛地，充足地，详细地，丰富地，详尽地”；sufficiently“十分地，充分地”，常用于正式文体中。根据句中 monopoly 提供的语境，只有 sufficiently 与 valuable 搭配合理，故答案为 D。
9. B。副词词义辨析。homogeneously“同一地，一致地，清一色地”；simultaneously“同时发生，同时存在”；spontaneously“自然地，本能地”，指自然发生而非由于外部强制或刺激的结果；anonymously“不具名地，化名地”。根据句中的主语 skyscrapers 判定，能与 developed 搭配的副词只有 simultaneously 符合，故答案为 B。
10. A。副词词义辨析。subsequently“后来”；successively“不断地，连续地”；predominantly“大多数，主要地”，一般用在比较正式的文体中；preliminarily“开端，初步地”。根据句中的 but 判断，空格处应填入与 At first 在时间上对应的副词，只有 subsequently 放在这里合适，其他三项都不合题意，故答案为 A。



虚　词

与实词相对，虚词没有实在意义，不能独立承担句子成分。虚词包括冠词、介词、连词和感叹词。虚词还有一个重要的特点，那就是，虚词没有词形的变化。

冠词（*art.*）：用在名词前，帮助说明名词。如：a，an，the。

介词（*prep.*）：表示它后面的名词或代词与其他句子成分的关系。如：in，on，from，above，behind。

连词（*conj.*）：起连接词与词、短语与短语以及句与句的作用。如：and，but，before。

感叹词（*interj.*）：表示喜、怒、哀、乐等感情。如：oh，well，hi。

在博士研究生入学考试中，对冠词和感叹词的词汇题几乎是不考查的，所以在接下来的内容中，重点讲解介词和连词。

一、介词

考点分析

介词是一种虚词，用来表示名词或相当于名词的其他词与句中其他词的关系，不能单独使用。介词可与名词或相当于名词的其他词构成介词短语。介词短语可在句中做定语、状语、表语和宾语补足语。

例如：The boy over there is John's brother.（定语）

The girl will be back in two hours.（状语）

Our English teacher is from Australia.（表语）

Help yourself to some fish.（宾语补足语）

按结构划分，英语介词可分为两类：简单介词和短语介词

1）简单介词（约有 70 个）

（1）**表示方位的介词：**in，to，on

❖ in 表示在某地范围之内。如：Shanghai is/lies in the east of China.

❖ to 表示在某地范围之外。如：Japan is/lies to the east of China.

❖ on 表示与某地相邻或接壤。如：Mongolia is/lies on the north of China.

（2）**表示计量的介词：**at，for，by

❖ at 表示“以……速度”“以……价格”。如：It flies at about 900 kilometers an hour.

❖ for 表示“用……交换，以……为代价”。如：He sold his car for 500 dollars.

注意：at 表示单价（price），for 表示总钱数。

❖ by 表示“以……计”，后跟度量单位。如：They paid him by the month.

(3) **表示材料的介词**：of，from，in

❖ of：成品仍可看出原料。如：This box is made of paper.

❖ from：成品已看不出原料。如：Wine is made from grapes.

❖ in：表示用某种材料或语言。如：They talk in English.

注意：in 指用材料，名词前不用冠词；而 with 指用工具，句词前要用冠词。

(4) **表示工具或手段的介词**：by，with，on

❖ by 指用某种方式，多用于交通。如：by bus 乘公共汽车，by e-mail 通过电子邮件。

注意：表示搭乘交通工具时，用 by 时句词前不用冠词，用 in 时句词前要用冠词。

❖ with 表示“用某种工具”。如：He broke the window with a stone.

注意：with 表示用某种工具时，名词前必须有冠词或物主代词。

❖ on 表示“以……方式”，多用于固定词组中。如：They talked on the telephone.

(5) **表示“关于”的介词**：of，about，on

❖ of 仅是提到或谈到过某人或某事。

❖ about 指“关于”某人或某事物的较详细的情况。

❖ on 指“关于”学术性的或严肃的事。

(6) **表示原因或理由的介词或短语**：for，at，from，of，with，by，because of，owing to，thanks to，out of，through

❖ for 表示原因，常与 sorry，famous，punish，praise，thank，blame 等词连用。

❖ at 指情感变化的原因，意为“因听到或看到而……”。

❖ from 指“外在的原因”，如：受伤、车祸等。

❖ of 指“内在的原因”，如：病、饿等。

❖ with 指生理上或情感上的由外界到内心的原因。

❖ by 表示外部的，尤其是暴力的或无意中造成某种结果的原因。

❖ because of 表示引起结果的直接原因。

❖ owing to 多表示引起某不良后果的原因。如：Owing to the rain they could not come. 由于下雨他们没来。

❖ thanks to 表示引起某种幸运结果的原因，常译为“幸亏……，多亏……”。

❖ out of 表示动机的起因，常译为“出于……”。

❖ through 多表示因局部而影响全局的原因。

(7) **表示“好像”或“当作”的介词**：like，as

❖ like 表示“像……一样”，其实不是。

❖ as 表示“作为，以……身份”，其实也是。

注意：as 做连词时，可表示“好像……”。如：The work is not so difficult as you imagine. 这工作不像你想象的那么困难。

(8) **表示支持或反对的介词**：against，for

❖ against 反对，for 支持，互为反义词。

(9) **表示“除……外”的介词**：besides，except

❖ besides 是包括后面所提人或物在内的“除……外，还”。

❖ except 是指不包括后面所提人或物在内的“除去”。

注意：except 通常与表示全体的 all，every 连用；若与 other 连用，则只能用 besides；

except 是排除同类；而 except for 是排除非同类，常在说明基本情况后，从细节上加以修正。但 except for 有时也可代替 except，特别是在句首时，因为 except 是不能用于句首的。

2）短语介词，指多个单词构成的介词。如：in front of，out of，instead of，far from，apart from 等。

介词是英语中最活跃的词类之一。一些常用介词的搭配能力非常强，可用来表示各种不同的意思，大部分的习惯用语都是由介词和其他词构成的，所以介词出现在英语测试的各个项目中。对介词的测试点主要包括：

❖ 对一些主要介词的基本意思的掌握程度；

❖ 对介词与其他词特别是动词、形容词和名词的搭配的掌握程度。

技巧点拨

1. 根据介词的词义和用法，选出符合句意的介词。
2. 根据介词与动词、名词、形容词的搭配，选出正确的选项。

❖ 与名词搭配，如：attention to，desire for，independence of，sympathy with。

❖ 与动词搭配，如：account for，aim at，amount to，depart from，specialize in。

❖ 与形容词的搭配，如：independent of，indifferent to，devoted to。

注意：（1）词根或词源相同的名词、动词和形容词多共用一个介词，如：

sympathy/sympathize/sympathetic +with 同情

object/objection +to 反对

popular/popularity +with 受欢迎

但也有例外，如：equal to，equality with“与……相等”。

（2）同一个形容词与不同的介词搭配可表示不同的意义，如：

（be）angry with 对某人生气（be）angry at/about 因某事生气

（be）familiar with 对……熟悉（be）familiar to 为……所熟悉

但有时区别并不大，如 friendly with（或 to），popular with（或 among），originate in（或 from）等。现在就连 die of 与 die from 的区别也似乎不甚明显了。

典型真题

例 1：

_____ a delay，the train will arrive in Shanghai at 6:30 a. m.（山东大学 2014 年）

A. Except　　B. Barring　　C. Apart from　　D. On account of

【名师点评】B。介词词义辨析。根据句意，前半句表示一种假设，“倘若……”，选项中只有 Barring 符合句意，意为“倘若不误点的话……”，故答案为 B。英语中有一部分介词，如：including，during，according to，past 等，是从动词的分词（多为现在分词）形式转变而来，因此称为分词介词。

例 2：

Living constantly in the atmosphere of slave，he became infected _____ the unconscious _____ their psychology. No one can shield himself _____ such an influence.（北京大学 2011 年）

A. on… by… at　　B. by… for… in

C. from… in… on　　D. through… with… from

【名师点评】D。固定搭配。infected through 为固定短语，意为“通过……感染”；unconscious 后一般接 with；shield from 为固定搭配，意为“使……摆脱……”。故答案为 D。

例 3：

Being born in the summer could give you a sunny disposition for life. And a winter birthday might cast a permanent shadow _____ your happiness, scientists believe.（北京大学 2012 年）

A. through　　B. cross　　C. beneath　　D. over

【名师点评】D。固定搭配。cast a permanent shadow 与 over 为固定搭配，意为“给……罩上一层阴影”，其他无此搭配，故答案为 D。

例 4：

Experiments suggest that season of birth dramatically affects the speed _____ the body clock ticks.（北京大学 2012 年）

A. at which　　B. for which　　C. on which　　D. in which

【名师点评】A。定语从句。分析句子结构可知，which 引导定语从句，指代前面的名词 speed，与 speed 搭配的介词为 at，故答案为 A。

例 5：

Sometimes certain families adhered _____ the same religious beliefs for several generations.（中国科学院 2013 年）

A. to　　B. for　　C. after　　D. with

【名师点评】A。固定搭配。adhere 通常与介词 to 搭配，意为“坚持；黏附；拥护”。故答案为 A。

例 6：

He was shocked to discover that things dragged on well _____ the two weeks he had anticipated.（西北大学 2012 年）

A. from　　B. for　　C. away　　D. beyond

【名师点评】D。介词用法。from “从，来自”；for “为了”；away “远离”；beyond “超出……之外”。根据句意：他惊奇地发现这两周事情进行得很好，远超过他所预期的，故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. _____ your timely help, I couldn't have finished the work on time. I can't thank you too much.

   A. Rather than　　B. Except for　　C. In addition to　　D. But for

2. Because of her teaching experience, she had a big advantage _____ the other applicants for the job.

   A. over　　B. above　　C. against　　D. beyond

3. Located _____ the eastern coast of the sea, the village is fairly new _____ only a small population of less than 3, 000.

   A. on; with　　B. off; with　　C. in; of　　D. on; in

4. _____ that of iron construction, the technology for constructing building with reinforced concrete developed rather rapidly.

   A. Dissimilar　　B. Different　　C. Not likely　　D. Unlike

5. The city is undergoing such tremendous development that new buildings are going _____ everywhere every day.
   A. by　　B. beyond　　C. down　　D. up
6. For all the latest pop music, tune _____ your favorite radio station.
   A. on at　　B. in to　　C. up with　　D. along for
7. The sign said that unauthorized persons were prohibited _____ that restricted area.
   A. not enter　　B. from entering　　C. to enter　　D. entering
8. Some people say that if the holder of chopsticks pushes them _____ his stomach to even them up instead of tapping them on the table, the chances are he is a coolie.
   A. on　　B. against　　C. at　　D. to
9. _____ some flowers contain more nectar than others, how does a honeybee worker, faced with a patch of flowers containing variable amounts of nectar, decide when to stop collecting?
   A. Given that　　B. Though　　C. If　　D. While
10. These figures are not consistent _____ the results obtained in previous experiments.
   A. to　　B. with　　C. for　　D. in

答案解析

1. D。介词词组辨析。根据语义“要不是你及时的帮助，我就不能按时完成这项工作了。我对你感激不尽”，可知 but for（不是）正确，but for 经常用在含有虚拟语气的含蓄条件句中。rather than“而不是”；except for“除……之外”；in addition to“除……之外还”。
2. A。固定搭配。have an advantage over“比……有优势”，是固定短语，故答案为 A。
3. A。介词用法。表示“在河流或道路等的一边”用 on，而 off 则表示“距……不远处”。第二个空填入介词 with，表示“具有，带有”，故答案为 A。
4. D。介词用法。unlike 用作介词，意为“和……不同”。此句句意：与用纯铁建造楼房的技术不同，用钢筋混凝土造建筑物的技术发展相当迅速。
5. D。固定搭配。go up“上升，增长，被兴建起来”；go by“（从……旁）走过，依照，顺便走访”；go beyond“超出”；go down“下去，下沉”。根据句意，up 符合要求。
6. B。固定搭配。tune in“收听”，常与 to 一起连用，可与题干中的 radio station 搭配，因此为正确答案。tune 不与 on 和 along 构成搭配；tune up 意为“调弦，调准音调”，不合题意。
7. B。固定搭配。prohibit…from…意为“禁止做……”。故答案为 B。
8. B。介词用法。against 在此处的意思是：“挨，靠，依”，其他几个介词都不能用在本句中。
9. A。介词用法。given 是介词，意为“鉴于，考虑到……”。
10. B。固定搭配。consistent 常与 with 搭配，意为“与……一致，与……相符”。其他三个介词均不能与 consistent 搭配。故答案为 B。

二、连词

考点分析

连词是一种虚词，用于连接单词、短语、从句或句子，在句子中不单独用作句子成分。

连词按其性质可分为并列连词和从属连词。并列连词用于连接并列的单词、短语、从句或句子，如 and，but，or，for 等；从属连词主要引出名词性从句（主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句等）和状语从句（时间状语从句、条件状语从句、目的状语从句等），引出名词性从句的连词如 that，whether 等，引出状语从句的连词如 when，because，since，if 等。

1. 并列连词

（1）对等关系。使用该类并列连词时必须保持结构对等、词性统一，在句子中要使用对等成分，不可失之偏颇。常用的该类连词有：and，neither…nor…，as well as，both…and…，not only…but also…。

（2）选择关系。常用的该类连词有：or，or else，otherwise，rather than，either…or…。

（3）转折和对比关系。常用的该类连词有：but，while，whereas，yet，however，nevertheless，on the other hand，on the contrary。

（4）因果关系的并列连词。常用的该类连词有：so，for，therefore，hence，thus，consequently，accordingly。

2. 从属连词

（1）引导时间状语的从属连词。该类连词除一些常用的外，还包括：as soon as，the moment（一……就……），the minute，the instant，once，immediately（一……就……），no sooner…than（一……就……），hardly…when（刚……就……）。

（2）引导地点状语的从属连词。该类连词有两个：where 和 wherever。

（3）引导条件状语的从属连词。该类连词除 if，unless 和 if only（要是……就好了）外，还有：provided（that），providing（that），supposing（that），suppose，in case（that），as long as（只要），on condition that。

（4）引导目的状语的从属连词。该类连词主要有：so that，that，in order that，lest，for fear that，in case（that）。

（5）引导原因状语的从属连词。该类连词主要有：as，because，since，in that，now that（既然），seeing that（鉴于）。

（6）引导比较状语的从属连词。该类连词主要有：as，as…as，less（more）…than，the more…the more。

（7）引导方式状语的从属连词。该类连词主要有：as，as if（好像），as though（好像）。

（8）引导结果状语的从属连词。该类连词主要有：so…that，such…that，so（that）。

（9）引导让步状语的从属连词。该类连词主要有：though，although，even if，even though，while，as，whatever，however，whoever，no matter…（不管）。

3. 连接代词和连接副词，这类词用来引导名词性从句。

连接代词：that，which，what，who，whose 等。

连接副词：when，where，how，why 等。

4. 关系代词和关系副词，这类词用来引导定语从句。

关系代词：who，that，which，as，whose，whom 等。

关系副词：when，where，why，how 等。

关系代词和关系副词起着三重作用：它们连接着主句和从句，代表着主句的一个先行词（which 和 as 还可以代表主句中的一个词组或整个句子），又在从句中充当成分。

5. 特殊的连词

（1）由动词转化成的连词

❖ suppose（如果，假使）引导条件状语从句。

❖ save（除了，只是）引导状语从句，表示伴随状况。

（2）由分词转化成的连词

❖ 由现在分词转化成的连词有 seeing（考虑到……），supposing（假定），providing（如果……的话），considering（考虑到）等，可用来引导条件状语从句。

❖ 由过去分词转化成的连词有 provided（如果……的话；以……为条件），granted（假定；即使）等，可用来引导条件状语从句。

（3）由副词转化成的连词

directly 和 immediately 表示“一……就……，马上，立刻”的意思，可用来引导时间状语从句。

（4）由名词转化成的连词，前面一般都有定冠词。

❖ the moment，the instant，the minute 这几个词组都表示“一……就……，马上，立刻”的意思，可用来引导时间状语从句。

❖ the first（或 second，next，last）time（或 moment）表示“在某一次……的时候”，可用来引导时间状语从句。

（5）由介词短语转化成的关联连词

常见的有 for fear that（唯恐），in case that（假使），in order that（为了），on condition that（如果），with the result that（结果）等，可用来引导条件、目的或结果状语从句。

6. 近义连词的区别：

（1）whether / if：表示“是否”时，当从句中有 or（not）时，引导词用 whether，不用 if。

（2）when / while /as：表示“当……时”时，while /as 接延续性动词，when 接非延续性动词；结构不同：动作 a 即将发生/正在发生 + when + 动作 b 发生；动作 b 发生 + while / as + 动作 a 正在发生。

（3）because/since/as：表示“因为，由于”时，because 强调不为人知的原因，语气最强；since /as 的原因已经众所周知或是很明显。

（4）so…that/such…that/so that：前两个接结果状语从句时，so + 形容词/副词 + that + 从句，such + a / an + 形容词 + 名词 + that + 从句，so that + 目的状语从句。

（5）so that / in order that 都表示目的状语，但是 in order that 可以放在句首或句中；so that 只放在句中。

技巧点拨

1 并列连词的做题方法

❖ 判断是否需要填入并列连接词：

完整的句子中，并列的两个单词或短语之间，需要填入并列连词；

如果两个句子（即两个主谓结构）之间直接连接或用逗号连接，就可能需要填入并列连词。

❖ 判断前后句子间的关系：

and 表对等关系；or 表选择关系；but，while 表转折和对比关系；so，for，therefore 表因果关系。根据具体的句子关系，从选项中选出合适的连词。

2 从属连词的做题方法

❖ 看是否为强调句：

其特征是用 it is /was 开头，选项中有 that 可选。做法是：去掉 it is /was 和选项中的 that，句意完整的，是强调句，用 that。

❖ 看引导词前后是否缺成分：

当前句缺主/宾/表语，从句也同时缺主/宾/表语时，引导词只能用 what。当从句不缺成分时，用第三步。

❖ 看从句是否缺意思：

若从句缺意思的话，则 that 做引导词时，无词义，不用。剩下其他的任何词都有它们自己的意思：what（什么），who（谁，宾格形式为 whom），which（哪一个），whose（谁的），why（为什么，……的原因），where（在哪里，……的地方），when（什么时候，……的时间，当……时，这时），how（如何，怎样，……的方法），whether（是否），if（如果，是否）。

3 状语从句的引导词的判定

能够引导状语从句的连词有很多，例如：if（如果），unless（除非，如果不），when（当……时，这时），before（在……之前，还没来得及），since（自从……以来，既然，由于），as（当……时，像……一样，由于），after（在……之后），as soon as（一……就……），while（然而，当……时），so…that（如此……以至于），so that（目的为了，以便于），in order that（目的为了），such…that（如此……以至于），because（因为，由于），therefore（因此），even though / even if/ though /although（虽然，尽管）。根据句意，判断前后句子的逻辑关系，从而确定连词。

典型真题

例 1：

_____ 2. 6 million people starting diets on New Year's Day，research suggests that by the end of the week 92 percent of dieters gave up，shunning exercise and gorging on comfort food.（北京大学 2012 年）

A. In spite　　B. Although　　C. While　　D. Despite

【名师点评】D。连词辨析。题干中"2. 6 million people starting diets on New Year's Day"为动名词短语，需要引导的连词应为介词，选项中只有选项 D（虽然，尽管）符合要求。In spite 应与 of 搭配，Although 和 While 做连词，引导从句。

例 2：

Talking about that is useless，_____ is familiar to me.

A. which fact　　B. the fact of which　　C. its fact　　D. that fact

【名师点评】B。非限制性定语从句。选项 C 和 D 要构成完整句子，前面需加连词。A 不符合语法，只有 B 正确。

例 3：

Retirees looking to stretch their pensions might consider spending their golden years in Ecuador，Panama or Mexico，_____ cost of living is low and the weather is warm，

according to a new index.（北京大学 2012 年）

A. which　　B. when　　C. where　　D. whose

【名师点评】C。定语从句。分析从句结构后发现，主句中的 Ecuador，Panama or Mexico 做定语从句中的状语，应用关系副词 where 或 in which，故答案为 C。

例 4：

Barry had an advantage over his mother _____ he could speak French.（四川大学 2012 年）

A. since that　　B. in that　　C. at that　　D. so that

【名师点评】B。连词用法。in that 意为“因为，既然”，是一个表示弱原因关系的连词，一般用于书面语，故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. Information technology is taught in most schools, _____ we have entered the information society.

   A. so　　B. while　　C. still　　D. for

2. _____ happens in the world makes us happy and sad by turns.

   A. That　　B. What　　C. Which　　D. Whether

3. English is understood all over the world _____ Turkey is spoken by only a few people outside Turkey itself.

   A. while　　B. when　　C. if　　D. as

4. The government has promised to do _____ lies in its power to ease the hardships of the victims in the flood-stricken area.

   A. however　　B. whichever　　C. whatever　　D. wherever

5. Living in the central Australian desert has its problems, _____ obtaining water is not the least.

   A. for which　　B. to which　　C. of which　　D. in which

6. Pop music is such an important part of society _____ it has even influenced our language.

   A. as　　B. that　　C. which　　D. where

7. He is quite worn out from years of hard work. He is not the man _____ he was twenty years ago.

   A. which　　B. that　　C. who　　D. whom

8. _____ vastness of the Grand Canyon, it is difficult to capture it in a single photograph.

   A. While the　　B. The　　C. For the　　D. Because of the

9. He stole into his room _____ he should awaken his parents.

   A. in order that　　B. so that　　C. with the result that　　D. in case

10. _____ there is little we can do to change the reality, we cannot be totally at the mercy of the harsh environment.

    A. Since　　B. When　　C. Unless　　D. While

1. D。根据句意判定前后构成因果关系。选项中并列连词 for 表示原因，是对前面分句所述内容的解释或补充说明，故答案为 D。
2. B。引导主语从句的连接词。that 引导主语从句，在句中只起连接作用，在从句中不作任何成分，无意义，但不能省略。what 除引导主语从句外，还在从句中做成分。which 指一定范围内的“哪一个”；whether 意为“是否”。根据句意“世上的事喜忧交替”，答案为 B。
3. A。根据句意判定前后构成转折关系。选项中的并列连词 while 表示“对比或相反”，故答案为 A。
4. C。根据句意可知，所填词在句中应充当 do 的宾语，但是在从句中又要充当 lies 的主语，所以选项中符合条件的只有 whatever。however 相当于 no matter how；whichever 相当于 no matter which；wherever 相当于 no matter where，均不符合句子要求。
5. C。定语从句。分析句子结构可知，空格所在的句子为非限制性定语从句，修饰 problems；分析句意可知，此处是说获取水源是“其中的一个问题”，表示“……当中”应该用介词 of，故答案为 C。
6. B。结果状语从句。空格后的句子表结果，与前面的 such 连用来引导结果状语从句，故答案为 B。such…as 表示“像……一样”，as 用作关系代词时，引导定语从句。
7. B。定语从句。这里 the man 并不表示某个人，而是强调某个状态、属性或身份，所以不用 C 或 D。that 在从句中做表语，which 做表语时一般引导非限制性从句，这时不能用 that 代替，故答案为 B。
8. D。连词用法。本题逗号后面是个完整的句子，那么前面很可能是介词结构、分词结构或者主语的同位语，because of the…是介词短语作状语，为答案。while 后应为从句，缺少谓语；B 项的 the 使句子出现两个主语，而后面的主语是代词 it，前面不能用同位语，只有当主语是名词或者名词短语的时候才可用同位语；for 在句首，不表示“因为”，一般做介词使用，故不对。
9. D。连词用法。连接词 in case 表示“恐怕，以免，万一”等，类似的连接词还有两个：for fear that 和 lest。这些连接词后面的从句中一般都用助动词 should。
10. D。连词用法。while 除表示时间外，还可表示转折、让步，意为“尽管，虽然”。其他选项中，since 做“因为，既然”意思时，前后两个分句间表因果，而非转折让步关系，不合题意；when“就在那个时候，在……的时候”，引导时间状语从句；unless“如果不，除非”，引导条件状语从句。

周五 语法（一）

一、固定搭配

考点分析

除了上面介绍的动词、名词、形容词、虚词外，词汇考试中另一种常见的题型是关于词与词组的搭配。英语的短语是英语的难点之一，它具有自己独特的意义，其意义、语法、用法等常使考生感到困难。

首先，短语的词义不是动词、副词、名词、介词等词的简单组合，往往难以从字面上理解。它是固定搭配，不能随意拆开、取舍或更换，考生要完整地记忆和使用。

其次，短语的使用场合及范围不易弄清楚。

最后，同义、近义和反义的短语容易混淆。

要学好英语，必须学会使用短语。英语中的固定搭配题根据实际情形可分为动词短语类、名词短语类、形容词短语类、介词短语和短语介词类以及惯用语类五种形式。

动词短语类

这一类考题主要目的是要求考生熟记并学会使用一定数量的动词与介词、副词或名词的搭配。测试短语动词的题目在词汇中占有很大的比例。例如：run up，get over，give ear to（侧耳倾听）等。

名词短语类

一定的名词与一定的介词搭配，构成特定的名词短语。常跟名词搭配的介词有 on，to，in，from，with 等。例如：absence from，access to 等。

形容词短语类

与名词一样，一定的形容词常跟一定的介词搭配，构成具有特定意思的形容词短语。常与形容词搭配的介词有 to，with，for，at，from，in，of，about 等。例如：blind to，capable of，characteristic of，compatible with 等。

介词短语和短语介词类

特定的介词与特定的名词或再加上介词可以搭配成介词短语或短语介词，每年的考题都有这方面的内容。

惯用语类

英语习语（English idiom）具有特有的、约定俗成的结构形式，如“步行”，可说 on

foot，不说 by foot，而“乘车”要说 by bus，不说 on bus。再如 anything but 与 nothing but 两个词组意义完全不同：anything but 的基本意思是 not at all，而 nothing but 的基本意思是 only。惯用语通常由两个或两个以上的词组成，不能任意拆开；其意义常常不是单词意义的简单组合，而是另外具有新的意义。因此，考生应把词组作为一个整体来记忆。

技巧点拨

英语中有大量的基础知识点需要考生记忆，而在学习过程中固定搭配或用法是英语学习过程中的一大难题。有些英语单词的搭配相似，且量也多。下面总结出固定搭配的解题技巧：

第一招：提前阅兵，集合点将

固定搭配以动词、形容词与副词、介词构成的词组居多。这种题需要考生平时多下功夫积累常用词组，并注意归纳，比较其中的介词、副词搭配，增强题感。找一本含有“固定搭配”的词典或含有固定搭配的单词手册，把能够用到的固定搭配都事先浏览几遍，把长相相似的“固定搭配”（比如 take up，take off，take on 等等）集中熟悉一下，对它们有个详细的了解，做到心中有数。掌握重点词组，注意一个词组多义的情况。

第二招：归纳总结规律

考生一方面要广读多看，博闻强记；另一方面还要会寻找规律，学会归纳，避免机械记忆而事倍功半。在学习和复习的过程中留心词的惯用法，把习语作为一个整体储存在脑海里。要多读、多记，对所学习语或固定搭配牢固掌握，并能灵活运用。

第三招：认真审题，确定搭配

注意题干的语境、语态、时态和习惯搭配，判断试题前后的单词能否和要填入的单词形成固定搭配。同时如遇到未学过的词组可用排除解题法。

典型真题

例 1：

As the firm's business increased they _____ more and more employees.（浙江大学 2013 年）

A. took up　　B. took in　　C. took after　　D. took on

【名师点评】D。动词词组辨析。take up“开始（从事），选修，占据（时间，空间）”；take in“吸收”；take after“长得像”take on“雇用，承担，呈现，具有”。根据句中 business，employees 提供的语境，可知二者为“雇用”关系。故答案为 D。

例 2：

The initial results of the experiment didn't _____ quite as expected, to their disappointment.（南京大学 2012 年）

A. take place　　B. end up　　C. bring about　　D. turn out

【名师点评】D。动词词组辨析。take place“发生，举行”；end up“结束，死亡”；bring about“引起，使掉头”；turn out“生产，结果是”。根据句意，最初结果与他们预期的相差甚多。故答案为 D。

例 3：

You could be _____ many dangers by traveling alone in that area.（复旦大学 2011 年）

A. subject to　　B. immune to　　C. sensitive to　　D. resistant to

【名师点评】A。形容词词组辨析。be subject to“受支配，从属于”；be immune to

“对……有免疫力，不受……的影响”；be sensitive to “对……感到敏感，灵敏”；be resistant to “抵抗……的，对……有反抗作用的”。根据句意：独自一人在该地区旅行，你要面临很多危险，故答案为 A。

例 4：

The discussion was so prolonged and exhausting that _____ the speakers stopped for refreshments.（山东大学 2013 年）

A. at large　　B. at intervals　　C. at ease　　D. at random

【名师点评】B。介词词组辨析。at large “自由行动，逍遥自在地”；at intervals “不时，时时”；at ease “不紧张，自由自在”；at random “随便，随机的，随意的”。注意 so…that…句型中 so 后面的内容 prolonged and exhausting（冗长且使人筋疲力尽）是原因，that 是导致的结果，根据句意，只有 B 项符合题意。refreshments 意为 “饮料，点心”。

例 5：

Too much _____ to X-rays can cause skin burns, cancer or other damage to the body.（山东大学 2014 年）

A. manifestation　　B. revelation　　C. attachment　　D. exposure

【名师点评】D。固定搭配。exposure “暴露，揭露”，与介词 to 连用，意为 “暴露于……中”，符合题意。manifestation “表示，显明”，revelation “泄露，启示”，attachment “连接物；附件”，都不符合题意。故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. Having decided to rent a flat, we _____ contacting all the accommodation agencies in the city.
   A. set about　　B. set down　　C. set out　　D. set up
2. What is most obvious in this book are all those details of daily living which make Mrs. Richard _____ common.
   A. nothing but　　B. anything but　　C. above all　　D. rather than
3. If you _____ the bottle and cigarettes, you'll be much healthier.
   A. take off　　B. keep off　　C. get off　　D. set off
4. He stopped his ears with his hands to _____ the terrible noise.
   A. show off　　B. cut out　　C. keep from　　D. shut out
5. Juan is _____ examining his own feelings and motives: he cannot tolerate introspection.
   A. embarrassed about　　B. accustomed to
   C. averse to　　D. mindful of
6. The small mountain village was _____ by the snow for more than one month.
   A. cut back　　B. cut out　　C. cut off　　D. cut away
7. Henry is so arrogant after being promoted president of the company _____ accept the invitation to his former coworker's wedding.
   A. in order to　　B. as to　　C. as to not　　D. as not to
8. Almost 300 ships arrived in Victoria in 1852, bringing 100, 000 people _____ gold to the colony at the rate of 2, 000 a week.

A. in search of　　B. in the search of　　C. searching of　　D. in search for

9. The society is unstable, full of criminal cases, so you can't be _____careful.

A. very　　B. so　　C. too　　D. such

10. Doing your homework is a sure way to improve your test scores, and this is especially true _____ it comes to classroom tests.

A. when　　B. since　　C. before　　D. after

答案解析

1. A。动词词组辨析。本句前边说“已经决定租房，我们联系房屋中介商……”这里需要填“开始”的意思。从动词后的介词来说，只有 about 表示“将来”，故 A 为正确答案。在 set about 结构中，about 是介词，因此它后面如果跟动词，需要用动词的-ing 形式。
2. B。词组辨析。anything but（=far from being）“根本不”；nothing but“只不过”；above all“最重要的”；rather than“而不是”。根据句意，anything but 符合逻辑，故答案为 B。
3. B。动词词组辨析。keep 与 off 合在一起是“与……保持距离，远离……”的意思，根据句意“如果你不喝酒（这里 bottle 代指酒）、不吸烟，你就会更健康”，故正确选项为 B。
4. D。动词词组辨析。shut out“排除；关在外面；遮住”；show off“炫耀”；cut out“删掉”；keep from“隐瞒；不沾，避开；使不做某事”。
5. C。形容词词组辨析。embarrassed about“尴尬”；accustomed to“习惯于”；averse to“反感，厌恶”；mindful of“知道的，注意的”。根据冒号后面的 cannot tolerate 判断，此处应填入与 examining his own feelings and motives（检查自己的感觉和动机）同义的词组，故答案为 C。
6. C。动词词组辨析。cut back“削减，缩减”；cut out“停止，切下”；cut off“切断，使隔断”；cut away“切除，砍掉”。根据句中的主语 the small mountain village 判断，village 被 snow 阻断，故答案为 C。
7. D。固定搭配。so…as to…是个固定搭配，意为“太……以至于……”；动词不定式的否定形式是 not to do，故答案为 D。
8. A。介词固定搭配。in search of 为固定搭配，意为“寻找”。也可以这样搭配：in the search for sth.。没有 D 项的搭配。
9. C。固定搭配。cannot…too 表示“无论怎么……都不过分”。
10. A。固定搭配。when it comes to 是习惯用语，意为“当涉及……时，当谈到……时”。

二、非谓语动词

考点分析

动名词、现在分词、动词不定式与过去分词以及它们的相应时态与语态下的各种形式叫作动词的非谓语形式。换言之，不能作谓语的动词形式叫非谓语动词。非谓语动词是常见的语法之一。

非谓语动词的语法功能（在句中充当何种成分）：

（一）非谓语形式有三种：

1. 动词不定式：to do 表示目的和将来，除了谓语外，不定式可以担当句子的任何成分：

（1）动词不定式做主语

❖ 不定式前置：To make high scores in the matriculation for postgraduate in a short time is really a hard nut.

❖ 上述形式一般情况不多见，作为考试的规范英语，如果动词不定式较长目做主语，为避免头重脚轻，则可由代词“it”做形式主语（形式主语“it”不能由“that”或“this”等其他代词代替），而将动词不定式放到后面：It is difficult for me to concentrate while someone is using a vacuum cleaner.

（2）动词不定式做宾语

❖ 动词＋带 to 的动词不定式结构：只跟动词不定式的动词，常见的有 afford，agree，aim，appear，arrange，ask，believe，care，claim，decide，decline（拒绝），demand，desire，determine，endeavor，expect，fail，hesitate，hope，intend，learn，long，manage，mean（想要），offer（表示愿意做……），pretend，promise，refuse，seek（试图），swear，undertake，wish（想要）等。

❖ 动词＋疑问代（副）词＋动词不定式：这类动词或短语常见的有 advise，decide，discuss，find out，forget，inquire，know，learn，regard，remember，see，settle，teach，tell，think（＝consider），understand，wonder 等。这些疑问代（副）词有 what，when，where，which，how，whether 等，但不包括 why，如：He does not know when to speak before strangers.

（3）动词不定式做表语

❖ 主语是动词不定式（表示条件），表语也是动词不定式（表示结果），如：To work means to earn a living.

❖ 主语是以 aim，duty，hope，idea，happiness，job，plan，problem，purpose，thing，wish 等为中心的名词，或以 what 引导的名词性从句，动词不定式表语对主语起补充说明作用，如：The boss's plan is to start building the skycraper immediately.

（4）动词不定式做定语

❖ 只能放在它所修饰的名词或代词后面，这时被修饰的名词与不定式之间有逻辑上的主谓关系，如：The flexibility of film allows the artist to bring unstrained imagination to the animation of cartoon characters. 因为动词不定式所修饰的名词是不定式的宾语，所以如果动词不定式动词是不及物动词，那么就要在动词后加上相应的介词，如：This is the very person to sell your ticket to.

❖ 表示企图、努力、倾向、目的、愿望、打算、能力、意向等意义的名词后面要求接动词不定式做其定语，如：ability，attempt，effort 等。

（5）动词不定式做状语，注意：做状语的动词不定式要与其逻辑主语在意义上和数上一致。

2. 动词的-ING：doing 表示主动和进行，在句中起名词的作用，可做主语、宾语、表语和定语；

（1）做主语

❖ 一般形式，如：Taking part in the matriculation for postgraduate is probably the turning point of my life.

❖ 有时可以用 it 做形式主语，如：It's waste of time arguing with the gossip about it. 但考生要注意这种结构通常适用于名词和形容词，但不适用于 possible，important，essential，necessary 等表示性质的形容词，这些词后面一般要跟动词不定式。

（2）做表语

His aims are learning two foreign languages and applying the theory he has learned to practice.

（3）做动词宾语

❖ 动词或短语后边跟宾语的非限定性动词只能是-ING 分词，如：acknowledge，admit（坦白，承认），advise，advocate，anticipate，appreciate，avoid，can't help，consider，contemplate（深思），delay，deny，dislike，enjoy，escape（躲过，避开），excuse，fancy，finish，give up，imagine，include，keep on，justify，mean（意味着，等于），mind（在乎），miss，postpone，practise，prohibit，put off，quit，recall，regret，resist，resume，risk（冒险干……），suggest，threaten 等。

❖ 动词后边做宾语的非限定性动词可以是-ING 分词的动名词，也可以是动词不定式，如：attempt，begin，can't bear，cease，continue，deserve，endure，forget，hate，intend，like，love，need，neglect，omit，plan，prefer，propose，regret，remember，start，stop，try 等。

❖ -ING 分词作宾语还有另一结构，即用 it 代表-ING 分词，而把-ING 分词短语放到句子的后面，如：He found it marvellous having a journey with him.

（4）做介词的宾语

❖ 几乎所有介词，不管是单个介词还是介词词组，不管它们是不是谓语动词的组成部分，-ING 分词都能做其宾语。所以，-ING 结构做介词宾语的时候很多，如：We insist on your leaving the place before any further disturbances take place.

❖ 名词（形容词、不及物动词）+介词 to（不要把它视为动词不定式的标志）形式后面接-ING 分词。常见的有（be）contrary to（与……相反），in contrast to（与……成对比），be dedicated to（致力于），resort to（诉诸），react to（对……反应），with regard to（关于），look forward to（期待），contribute to（贡献）等。

（5）-ING 结构做宾语补足语

表示感觉和心理状态的动词或短语，如 hear，feel，find，give，listen to，look at，notice，observe，see，smell，watch 等后可以用-ING 做其宾语补足语。

表示“致使”等意义的动词，如 catch，have，get，keep，leave，set 等。

（6）-ING 结构做状语：表示主语在进行一动作的同时所进行的另一动作，它对谓语动词起修饰或陪衬的作用。这时要注意-ING 与其逻辑主语在时态、意义上的统一。

（7）-ING 分词可以单独做定语，也可以构成合成词做定语，但在更多情况下是分词短语做定语，包括限定性和非限定性（用逗号与其他部分分开），在意义上相当于一个定语从句（包括限定性定语从句和非限定性定语从句）。

3. 动词的过去分词：done 表示被动和完成，在句中起名词的作用，可做表语、定语、补语、状语。

（1）做表语，如：He is greatly discouraged by her refusal of inviting him to the party.

（2）做定语，如：-ED 分词可以做前置定语也可以做后置定语，做后置定语时相当于一个定语从句：Commercial banks make most of their income from interest earned on loans and investments in stocks and bonds.

（3）做状语，如：这样的-ED 分词通常来自及物动词。-ED 分词用做状语时，跟-ING 分词做状语时一样，修饰主句的谓语动词，意义上相当于状语从句，表示时间、条件、原因、伴随状况等。-ED 分词结构做状语，前边往往可以加 when，while，if，as if，though。这时，考生可以把-ED 分词结构理解为一个省略句，即省去了“主语和 be 的变化形式”。一般说来，这种结构的逻辑主语必须与主句的主语一致。

（4）复合结构，如：They are talking about the experiment made in the new lab.

（5）独立结构：如果-ED 分词短语与-ING 短语带有与句子主语不同的主语，即本短语本身带有主语，这就构成了独立结构（也叫独立主格结构或悬垂结构），这种结构也可做状语表示时间、原因等。有时在独立结构前还可加介词 with 或 without，如：Her eyes filled with tears，she did not notice his coming.

（二）不定式、-ING 分词和-ED 分词三者间的关系

1. 动词不定式与-ING 分词的区别

（1）做宾语时，-ING 分词表示抽象的、一般性或习惯性的和连续性的动作，而不定式则表示某次具体动作，特别是将来的动作。

（2）做定语时，-ING 表示正在进行的动作，用-ING 的完成时表示动作的完成；不定式表示未来发生。

（3）当谓语动词是进行时的时候，用不定式而不用-ING 分词做宾语。

（4）在 remember，forget 等词后，如果跟-ING 分词，表示-ING 分词的动作发生在主要谓语动作之前；如果跟不定式则表示不定式的动作发生在主要谓语动作之后。

（5）stop，go on 和 leave off 之后跟接动词不定式和-ING 分词所表达的意义有所不同。

（6）used to 后跟不定式和-ING 分词，后跟不定式有两种情况：一种是 used to，是固定用法，表示“过去经常干……”；另外一种情况是 use 的被动态“be used”后跟不定式；后跟-ING 分词的情况有一种，那就是当 used to 中的 used 是形容词时，to 后跟名词或-ING分词。

（7）一般情况下，for 后边跟 there to be，而 of 后边则跟 there being。

（8）be +形容词后面要跟动词不定式做状语，而不用-ING。

2. -ING 分词与-ED 分词的区别

虽然在语法功能上，-ED 分词在句子中所能承担的成分基本与-ING 分词相同，但在意义上两者有差别：-ING 分词表示主动的意义，而-ED 分词则表示被动的意义；-ING 分词表示一般性的或正在进行的动作，而-ED 分词则表示已经完成和被动的动作。在表现形式上，-ING 分词有“一般式”和“完成式”与“主动式”和“被动式”之分；而-ED 分词只有一种形式。下边分析-ING 分词与-ED 分词在语法功用上的区别。

（1）做表语时，-ING 分词表示主语所具有的特征，而-ED 分词表示主语所处的状态。

（2）做状语时-ING 分词表示主语正在进行的另一动作，而-ED 分词则表示主语发生动作的背景或情况。

（3）①做定语时，-ING 分词表示正在进行的动作，而-ED 分词表示动作发生在谓语动词之前；②-ING 分词表示它所修饰的词经常或当时的状态，而-ED 分词则没有时间性；③-ING分词表示主动，而-ED 分词表示被动。

（4）但少数几个动词的-ED 分词，有两种形式而且在意义上有差别，如：bear 的-ED 分词有 born 和 borne 之分，前者只用于“出生”的意义，而后者用于“负担”，“负荷”，“承担”和“传送”之意。

英语非谓语动词题的八条原则

一：用作目的状语，原则上要用不定式。

二：用作伴随状语，原则上要用现在分词。

三：用作结果状语时，可用-ING 或不定式。

四：凡是含有被动意义时，原则上要用过去分词，过去分词没有被动式。

五：非谓语动词作状语时，其逻辑主语原则上应与主句主语保持一致。

六：强调动作发生在主句谓语动作之前时，原则上要用完成式。

七：用于名词后做定语时，原则是：用不定式，表示动作尚未发生；用-ING，表示动作正在进行；用过去分词，表示动作已经发生，同时表示被动意义。

八：非谓语动词的否定形式都应将否定放在前面。

技巧点拨

熟悉非谓语动词形式后，做题时可分四步进行。

(1) 固定搭配

遇到考查非谓语动词的题时，首先看是否为固定搭配，则不需要分析非谓语动词的句法功能，直接判定。

例如：

Mr. Wang made up his mind to devote all he could _____ his oral English before going abroad.

A. improve　　B. to improve　　C. improving　　D. to improving

【解析】此题中包含固定短语 devote… to，其中 to 为介词，后应接动名词。动词 devote 后接的宾语为 all，all 又为先行词，后又包含一个定语从句 he could（do）。此题很容易以为 could 后应接动词原形，而误选 A 项。答案为 D 项。

(2) 分析句子结构

如果不是固定搭配，那就要分析句子结构，辨别“谓语与非谓语”。一般情况下，一个完整的句子只有一个标志时态和语态的谓语动词，注意辨别复合句和并列句的连接词，如：and，but，so，although…。如果没有连接词而出现两个动词，则有一个要用非谓语形式。

例如：

1. _____ many times，but he still repeated the same mistakes.

2. _____ many times，he still repeated the same mistakes.

A. Having been told　　B. Told

C. He was told　　D. Though he had been told

分析：句 1. 用连词 but 引导并列句子，因此，前面也是个独立句子成分，故选 C。

句 2. 句中用逗号隔开，且无连词引导，因此，前面不是句子结构，只是句子的一个成分，故选 A，用非谓语动词做状语。或者选 D，构成条件状语从句。

(3) 分析逻辑主语

确定要选非谓语动词之后，第三步要分析其逻辑主语。非谓语动词虽不能做谓语，但仍具有动词的特点，其逻辑上的动作执行者就叫作逻辑主语。非谓语动词做状语时，其逻辑主语须和句子的真正主语一致。若不一致，则须加上自己的逻辑主语。

例如：

1. Walking along the street one day，she saw a little girl running up to her.（a little girl 为 run 的逻辑主语）

2. Convinced of the truth of the reports, he told his colleagues about it. (he 为逻辑主语)

一般来说，做状语的非谓语动词的逻辑主语是句子的主语；做宾补的非谓语动词的逻辑主语是宾语；做定语的非谓语动词的逻辑主语是被修饰词。

(4) 分析语态

分析语态就是在确定逻辑主语之后，分析非谓语动词和逻辑主语在搭配使用时是主动还是被动关系。若是主动关系，非谓语动词就用主动式；若是被动关系，非谓语动词就用被动式。

(a) 涉及不定式的主动与被动式

The message is very important, so it is supposed _____ as soon as possible.

A. to be sent　　B. to send　　C. being sent　　D. sending

分析： be supposed 后习惯上不接动名词，而接不定式，其意为“应该做某事”，故可排除 C 和 D，又因为“消息”与“传达”之间为被动关系，故用被动式。答案选 A。

(b) 涉及动名词的主动与被动式

At the beginning of class, the noise of desks _____ could be heard outside the classroom.

A. opened and closed　　B. to be opened and closed

C. being opened and closed　　D. to open and close

分析： 由于 desks 与 open 和 close 的关系是被动关系，故要用被动式，可排除 D；又因为 desks 用于介词 of 后做宾语，所以要用动名词，不用不定式或过去分词，故可排除 A 和 D，所以答案选 C。

(c) 涉及现在分词的主动与被动式

_____ that she was going off to sleep, I asked if she'd like that little doll on her bed.

A. Seeing　　B. To see　　C. See　　D. Seen

分析： 首先要排除 B 和 C，因为 B 为不定式，它用于句首时，通常是表示目的，在此不合句意；而 C 为动词原形，选它会构成祈使句，一是句意不通，二是这样会导致前后两句之间没有连词而出错。在剩下的 A 和 D 之间，只能选 seeing，不能选 seen，因为句子主语是 I，与 see 之间为主动关系，而非被动关系。

典型真题

例 1：

Professor Wang, _____ for his informative lectures, was warmly received by his students. (厦门大学 2013 年)

A. knowing　　B. known　　C. to be known　　D. having known

【名师点评】 B。考查非谓语动词用法。过去分词表被动，做状语。故答案为 B。

例 2：

There are too many complaints about society _____ move too fast to keep up with the machine. (北京大学 2011 年)

A. that have to　　B. have to　　C. having to　　D. has to

【名师点评】C。语法知识。分析句子的成分，主句 there be 句型结构完整，不缺成分，排除 B 和 D 项。空格后的句子是 complains 的具体内容，若跟 that 从句，则不能放在 society 后，容易产生歧义，排除 A 项。用动词的现在分词形式做后置定语。故答案为 C。

实战演练

1. He was not _____ to the club because he wasn't a member.
   A. allowed　　B. admitted　　C. permitted　　D. approved
2. The retired man donated most of his savings to the school damaged by the earthquake in Yushu, _____ the students to return to their classrooms.
   A. enabling　　B. having enabled　　C. to enable　　D. to have enabled
3. That is the only way we can imagine _____ the overuse of water in students' bathrooms.
   A. reducing　　B. to reduce　　C. reduced　　D. reduce
4. As the light turned green, I stood for a moment, not _____ and asked myself what I was going to do.
   A. moved　　B. moving　　C. to move　　D. being moved
5. If water becomes increasingly scarce in decades _____, water shortage will become a hot issue all over the world.
   A. coming　　B. having come　　C. to come　　D. to be coming
6. In 1938 Pearl S. Buck became the first American woman _____ the Nobel Prize for Literature.
   A. receiving　　B. received　　C. who receives　　D. to receive
7. All the investigations _____ before the deadline, the staff decided to have a party as a celebration.
   A. been fulfilled　　B. had been fulfilled
   C. were fulfilled　　D. having been fulfilled
8. After _____ for the job, you will be required to take a language test.
   A. being interviewed　　B. interviewed
   C. interviewing　　D. having interviewed
9. The little girl, kind and sensitive, resented _____ by her intimate friends.
   A. be fooling　　B. to be befooled
   C. being befooled　　D. having befooled
10. A convenient way is to set the food on a piece of aluminum oil, _____to the air for half an hour, and then cover it with a dish.
    A. let it stay open　　B. let it stay opened
    C. letting it stay open　　D. letting it stay opened

答案解析

1. B。allow 和 permit 后均接 sb. to do sth.，不符合本题题意。admit sb. to 意为“允许某人进入；让某人进入”，admit 后可接动名词的一般式或完成式，也可以接复合结构；approve sth. 批准，approve of doing sth. 赞成，赞许做某事。只有 admitted 符合句意。

2. A。现在分词短语做谓语动词 donated 的结果状语。故答案为 A。
3. B。the way to do sth. 意为“做某事的途径、方式”。we can imagine 做定语，前面省略了 that。故答案为 B。
4. B。move 的逻辑主语就是句子的主语，所以用现在分词，not moving 做伴随状语。如果不注意分析，很容易受并列的谓语动词 stood…and asked 干扰而误选 A。
5. C。用不定式表示将要到来的。句意为：如果在将来的几十年水资源变得稀少，那么水资源的缺乏将会成为全球热门话题。故答案为 C。
6. D。动词不定式。名词词组 the first + noun 的后置定语不使用-ing 分词，而必须使用不定式。故答案为 D。
7. D。独立结构。“名词/代词 +ing 分词/过去分词/不定式”是独立结构，一般可以置于句首（也可以置于句末），表示原因、时间、条件、方式或伴随情况。B 和 C 项不符合语法规则，没有连词连接的两个独立的句子不能并置。由句意判断，这里应选现在分词的完成被动形式，应选 D。
8. A。分词结构。介词 after 之后须接名词或代词或动名词。根据题意可以看出该句空格处应接动名词，又因为句子的主语是 you，与该动名词所表示的动作有逻辑上的动宾关系，因此，interview 应用动名词的被动式。B 项 interviewed 不是动名词，C 和 D 项皆是动名词的主动式，不符合逻辑，故 B，C 和 D 都不符合题意。
9. C。非谓语动词。resent 后接名词或动名词做宾语，根据句意，应用动名词的被动语态形式。故答案为 C。
10. C。分词做伴随情况状语，形容词 open 在短语中做补语，表示状态，不用过去分词。故答案为 C。

周六　语法（二）

语法和词汇是英语中最为基础也最为核心的部分，其在考博英语考试中的重要性不言而喻。目前博士研究生入学英语考试中，不仅部分院校通过词汇题直接考查语法知识，而且语法知识的考查贯穿在整个博士英语考试中。对语法的考查在英语知识运用、阅读理解、翻译、完型和写作中均有直接涉及。

没有扎实的语法基础知识的积累，英语知识运用试题中对时态、语态、虚拟语气、强调句型、介词等的考查考生就会丢分；语法知识基础不扎实，阅读理解中对于长难句的语法结构分析就会望而却步，直接影响到对整个语篇的理解和分析；翻译试题更是直接考查长难句的语法结构的综合分析；语法知识不扎实，写作中遣词造句就会漏洞百出，错误连篇。所以，对于语法知识的学习和掌握应该引起考生高度的重视。考博英语词汇题中，主要考查虚拟语气和倒装等语法现象。

一、虚拟语气

考点分析

语气是一种动词形式，用以表示说话者的意图或态度。英语中有三种语气：陈述语气（表示陈述事实）、祈使语气（表示命令、要求、建议、请求等）和虚拟语气（表示主观愿望、强烈遗憾，建议或与事实相反的假设等）。虚拟语气是英文中一特殊的语言现象，所说的话或与现在事实相反，或与过去事实相反，或与将来事实相反或与将来事实可能相反。

虚拟（条件）语气中，大致分为四类

假设类型	从句谓语动词形式	主语谓语动词形式
与现在事实相反	动词的过去式（be 用 were 而不用 was）	would（第一人称可用 should）+动词原形
与过去事实相反	had + -过去分词	would（第一人称可用 should）+have + -过去分词
与将来事实相反	were to + 动词原形	would（第一人称可用 should）+动词原形
与将来事实可能相反	should + 动词原形	would（第一人称可用 should）+动词原形

所以，还有几种常用的条件句、短语也可表示条件。此外，上下文也能创造虚拟的语言环境。但有时条件从句与结果主句可能发生时间不一致，有时虚拟语气会出现倒装情况。除了与条件句在一起使用的主句用虚拟语气外，有些宾语从句或表语从句也有用虚拟语气的情况。

虚拟语气的表现形式：

（1）虚拟语气总是与假设条件句用在一起。

例如：

If you succeeded，everything would be all right.

If it should rain tomorrow，I would stay at home.

（2）除了 if 条件从句外，由 as if 和 as though 等引导的状语从句表示方式时，意思是“好像”，这时从句中的谓语动词应用虚拟语气，其动词形式用过去式（be 用 were 的形式）表示所说的与现在的事实相反。

例如：Violetta has a curious expression on her face as though she were smiling about something that amused her.

（3）在动词 suggest，order，demand，propose，command，request，desire，insist，require，decide，promise，resolve，argue，maintain，determine，recommend，advise，advocate，persuade 等表示“命令”“建议”“要求”动词后的宾语从句中。但考生要注意如果上述动词做其他意思解释，或者说话者认为所讲的是事实，要用陈述语气。

例如：She insisted that the seats（should）be booked in advance.

He advised that the doctor（should）be sent for.

（4）在 advice，demand，order，necessity，resolution，decision，proposal，requirement，suggestion，idea，recommendation，request，plan 等名词后的主语从句或表语从句中，有时需要用虚拟语气。

例如：He issued the order that the troops（should）withdraw at once.

（5）在形容词 important，necessary，imperative，natural，urgent，essential，appropriate，desirable，vital，advisable，preferable，incredible 以及短语 no wonder，a pity 等可以构成“It is +形容词（名词）+that”句型中。

例如：It is necessary that some immediate effort（should）be made.

It is absolutely unfair that these children should be deprived of the right to receive education.

（6）有时假设的情况并不以条件从句表示出来，而是通过一个介词短语来表示，或通过上下文或其他方式表示出来。如 but for，but that …，in case of，otherwise，supposing，under more favorable condition，without 等表示让步假设。

例如：He worked very hard；otherwise he might have failed.

（7）特殊连词，例如 lest，for fear that 和 in case 引导从句，这时谓语多用 should + 动词原形的形式。

例如：Every attention must be paid to him lest he（should）feel that he is inferior to my other guests.

He’s working hard for fear that he should fail in the exam.

（8）虚拟错综条件句：上面几种假设类型中，主句与从句的谓语动词形式应前后呼应。但是，如果主句与从句的动作发生的时间不一致，谓语动词形式应做适当调整。

例如：If I had a bike（now），I would have lent it to you yesterday.（主句与过去事实相反，从句与现在事实相反。）

I am very sorry if I had done anything wrong to you, but I am sure that it was unintentional.

（9）虚拟条件从句中的谓语动词如果是 were 或 should（could，might），had 等词时，可以省略连词 if，但要将 were 或 should（could，might），had 助动词移至主语前形成倒装句。

例如：Should my car fail, I would have to return home on foot.

技巧点拨

虚拟语气是动词的一种特殊形式。应对虚拟语气题目时，考生需要记住一个公式：语法 + 语境 = 正确答案。语法就是指上述各种虚拟语气的结构和用法，需要考生牢牢把握这些虚拟语气的基础知识。语境即说话人的语义、情感、态度等。全面掌握该语法项目，在结合语境的基础上通过比较、判断得出正确答案。其一般步骤为：

（1）条件句中有 if 引导时，首先要根据句意和句子结构判断是真实条件句还是虚拟条件句，如果符合虚拟的结构，就可以根据句子中的时间和语义判断应该用哪种虚拟结构。

（2）观察试题题干中是否出现一些表示虚拟语气的词语，如 advise，demand，command，suggestion，proposal，essential，would rather 等。如果出现这些词语，它们后面的 that 从句和状语从句中的谓语动词应该用虚拟语气。

（3）研究试题题干的句型、语义，分辨它是陈述事实，还是表示虚拟，并区分选择项中的陈述语气形式和虚拟语气形式，特别是一些省略的虚拟语气形式。然后将题干和选择项结合考虑，从而选择正确的答案。

（4）理解题干中句子的含义，区分选择项中的情态动词。一般而言，would，could，might，should 都可以作为虚拟语气主句中的谓语结构。在表示与将来事实相反的虚拟语气时，从句只能用情态动词 should。

（5）判断审查题干中句子所叙述的情况发生在何时（现在、过去或将来），如果句子是复合句，那么就要仔细确认各个分句叙述的情况是否发生在同一时间层面，然后选择相应的谓语动词的虚拟形式。

（6）在初步确定正确的选项后，将选项放入题目中进行验证是否符合句子的时态、语态等要求。这时需要结合句子的整体结构进行考虑，如：主从句的谓语的时间顺序、是否有明显的时间提示、是否有必须使用虚拟语气的名词或动词、前后主语一致等。

典型真题

例 1：

_____ before we leave the day after tomorrow, we should have a wonderful time together.（北京大学 2014 年）

A. Had they arrived　　B. Would they arrive

C. Were they arriving　　D. Were they to arrive

【名师点评】D。由句中的 leave 和 should have 以及 the day after tomorrow 可以判断，从句表示未来发生的事，要用一般将来时的虚拟语气：were to do sth。因在句首，使用倒装结构。选项 A 是一般过去时的虚拟语气，故答案为 D。

例 2：

If I had car of my own, I _____ it to your sister yesterday.（厦门大学 2014 年）

A. will lend　　B. would lend　　C. should lend　　D. would have lent

【名师点评】D。考查虚拟语气。主句是对过去情况的假设，表示虚拟时主句要用过去完成时态，所以 D 项正确。

实战演练

1. _____ fired, your health care and other benefits will not be immediately cut off.
   A. Would you be　　B. Should you be　　C. Could you be　　D. Might you be
2. Should green plants disappear some day, _____ on the earth.
   A. there will hardly be any life　　B. there will be no life
   C. there must have been no life　　D. there would hardly be any life
3. A group was formed to demand that the bus company _____ its unfair practices and Mr. King was made president.
   A. would change　　B. change　　C. changed　　D. to change
4. If he _____ my advice, he wouldn't have lost his job. (湖南大学 2010 年)
   A. followed　　B. should follow　　C. had followed　　D. would follow
5. It is high time that this wrong spending _____.
   A. checks　　B. checked　　C. was checked　　D. is to check
6. We think it is high time the French government _____ responsibility for their citizens and should pay for this kind of damage.
   A. should take　　B. is to take　　C. took　　D. takes
7. Your proposal that they _____ their conversation in French is quite reasonable.
   A. are to carry on　　B. will carry on　　C. carry on　　D. must carry on
8. If not for the open-door policy, the situation in China _____ what it is today.
   A. would never have been　　B. would never be
   C. will never have been　　D. will never be
9. She asked that she _____ allowed to see her son in police custody.
   A. would be　　B. could be　　C. be　　D. was
10. If he _____ on tourists for his business, he would have to close his shop.
    A. depends　　B. will depend　　C. depended　　D. has depended

答案解析

1. **B**。虚拟条件句的从句部分含有 were，should 或 had 时，可省略 if，再把 were，should 或 had 移到从句的句首，实行倒装。在表示与将来事实相反的虚拟语气时，从句只能用情态动词 should。故答案为 B。
2. **D**。从本题题干中句子的形式和内容来看，这是一个省略了 if 的使用倒装语序的对未来情况做出假定和推测的句子，其主干部分应该使用与将来事实相反的虚拟语气的谓语形式。C 中的 must have done 是表示对过去事情发生的可能性的猜测，只有 D 中的“would be”符合。
3. **B**。本题题干中出现了动词 demand，它后面的 that 从句中应该使用结构为“(should) + 动词原形”的谓语来表示虚拟语气。
4. **C**。题意：如果他听了我的建议就不会失去工作了。根据 wouldn't have lost 结合题意可

判断 if 引导的状语从句表示与过去事实相反的虚拟，因此前面条件句应该是对过去的虚拟假设，需用过去完成时，故选 C 项。

5. C。It is high time +that 结构，从句应用过去时，且 spending 与 check 为被动关系。故答案为 C。
6. C。句式 It is（high time）that…中 that 从句中动词要求用虚拟语气，动词时态要求用过去时。故答案为 C。
7. C。在以 suggestion，motion，proposal，order，recommendation，plan，idea 等名词引导出的表语从句或同位语从句中，谓语动词要用虚拟语气，即用动词原形或 should + 动词原形。故答案为 C。
8. A。根据从句中的时间状语 today，可以知道是与到目前为止的情况相反的。故答案为 A。
9. C。因为动词 ask 表示请求，从句中的谓语动词是动词原形，助动词 should 省略。故答案为 C。
10. C。与现在的事实相反的假设，从句谓语动词使用过去式。故答案为 C。

二、倒　装

考点分析

英语句子的一般语序为“主语部分 +谓语部分”。如果把谓语放到主语前面，称之为倒装。倒装分为完全倒装和部分倒装：

谓语动词提前至主语之前为全部倒装，

如：There lived an elderly lady whose husband died long ago.

助动词或情态动词提至主语之前，谓语动词位置不变，即为部分倒装，

如：So little did I know about him that I was easily taken in by his words.

倒装有多种原因：

1 句子结构的需要

（1）疑问句的倒装

❖ 疑问句（包括一般与特殊）在直接引语中仍需倒装，如：A question often posed about journalism is “How much freedom should reporters have in interpreting any given news item?”

❖ 特殊疑问句在从句中为间接引语时不能倒装，如：He asked me where I wanted to go.

（2）表示前一种也适用于后一种情况的倒装。

如果第一分句是肯定句，第二分句用 so + 倒装结构；如果第一分句是否定句，则用 neither，nor，no more：He had no friends or acquaintances，nor did he make any.

（3）在虚拟结构中的条件从句中，如果 if 被省略，那么 were，had 或 should 要移至主语之前（could，might 很少引导这样的倒装句）。

（4）有些让步状语从句需要倒装。

2 强调的需要

（1）某些副词（短语）+助动词+主语+谓语的倒装结构

这些副词（短语）有（just）then，soon，often，only（in this way，then），so（+形容词），especially，near（+地点名词或短语），early（+时间状语），in vain，many a time 等。如：So little did I know about mathematics that the lecture was completely beyond me.

注意：上述有些词有时虽然位于句子的开头，但它们做形容词用，不是修饰介词短语或状语从句，而是修饰名词或代词，这时句子不需要倒装，如：Only he managed to pass the exam.

（2）以表示“否定”意义的副词（短语）开始的句子需要倒装

❖ 常见的否定副词有 never，little，nowhere，not only（…but also，as well），not until，nowhere，hardly，scarcely，rarely，not once，seldom，no sooner 等。

如：Not only was France Viuard an excellent political speaker but she was also among the first members of the Populist Party.

❖ 如果否定副词只是限定句子主语而非修饰谓语或全句，则句子不必倒装。

如：Hardly anyone has seen a man who eats ants.

❖ 某些否定词，如 no，not 修饰主语而不是做状语时，句子也不必倒装。

如：Not all that glitters is gold.

❖ 当“not a 或 many a +名词”位于句首时，要用倒装语序。

如：Many a time has the manager emphasized this point.

❖ barely、hardly、scarcely 和 when、before 连用，no sooner 和 than 连用，它们位于句首时，为固定的倒装结构，表示一件事紧接着另一件事发生，相当于汉语的“一……就……”。但在时态上，主句一般用过去完成时而从句（when，before 或 than 引导）用过去时。但表示一般情况时，主句也可用现在完成时，从句用一般现在时。

如：No sooner had I left the house than it began to rain.

上述句中，若 barely，hardly，scarcely，no sooner 用于句中，则不必倒装。

如：I had no sooner left the house than it began to rain.

（3）介词短语+倒装结构

❖ 以否定意义的短语为句首的句子应用倒装语序：under no circumstances，on no account，in no way，at no point，at no time，in no sense，这些短语都表示“绝不”。上述短语若用于句子中间，则不必用倒装。

如：On no account will my reference books be removed from the library.

❖ 下面一些倒装句也应引起考生足够的重视：

如：An old house stood at the side of the hill. →At the side of the hill stood an old house.（本句是为了保持句子平衡，避免主语过长）

The measure our company took to prevent loss was absurd. →Absurd was the measure our company took to prevent loss.（用来强调主语补足语）

（4）为了强调从句中的某个成分的倒装：正式文体中，为了强调从句中的某个成分（通常为补语或状语），可将其放在句首，从句由连词 as 引导，但这时不用倒装。

如：Difficult as the task was，they managed to accomplish it in time.

倒装句是考博英语中的重要语法项目和重要考点之一，解答倒装试题可以遵循下面的三步。

第一步：寻找信息——分清倒装的类型

任何倒装句都有其构成此类句型的条件。能够识别前面讲到的各类倒装句的标志词，寻找信息来判断倒装的类型很关键。常见的标志词有：

（1）here，there，now，then，up，down，in，out，away，off 等表示方式或方位的副词或介词短语位于句首，谓语动词是 be，come，go，remain ，stand，sit ，lie 等，且当句子的主语是名词时，句子用全部倒装。

（2）做状语的介词短语放于句首时引起的句子要全部倒装。

（3）含有否定意义的副词或连词置于句首引起部分倒装结构。这类词有：never，seldom，rarely，little，few，at no time，by no means，no longer，hardly/scarcely…when…，no sooner…than…，not only…but also…，not until，nowhere，neither…nor…等。

（4）在非真实条件句中含有 were，had，should 等助动词时，可以将 if 省略，把助动词放在非真实条件句的句首用部分倒装形式。

（5）so/neither/nor 表示前面所说的情况也适合于后者时，用部分倒装结构，形式为“so/neither/nor +助动词/系动词/情态动词 + 主语”（so 表示肯定意义，neither/nor 表示否定意义）。

第二步：研究标志 ——判断倒装的位置

任何倒装句型都有其标志，这个标志也是构成倒装句型的条件。部分倒装句中，若有主从句，应认真研究标志词，判断哪句倒装。

（1）not until 放句首做状语，表示强调时，主句用倒装结构。

（2）Hardly …when…；No sooner…than…句型中，前面的主句用倒装语序（主句一般用过去完成时而从句用过去时）。

（3）neither… nor…（既不……，也不……）句型，前后两个句子都倒装。

（4）not only…but also…（不但……而且……）句型中，前面的句子倒装。

（5）only 修饰的副词、介词短语或状语从句放于句首时，主句要用倒装结构。

（6）so…that…/ such…that…（如此……以至于……）中 so + adj. /adv. 或 such… 提前到句首时，主句用倒装语序。

（7）as（尽管）引导的让步从句中必须将表语或状语（名词、形容词、副词、分词、实义动词等）提前，构成“名词/形容词/副词/分词/动词 +as +主语 +谓语的其他部分”的倒装形式，有时用 though 代替 as。使用 as 进行倒装时需要注意的是：

①句首有名词时，名词不能带任何冠词。

②句首是实义动词时，其他助动词则放在主语之后。如果实义动词有宾语和状语，则宾语和状语随实义动词一起放在主语之前。如：Try hard as he will，he never seems able to do the work satisfactorily.

第三步：斟酌句意——确定倒装的时态

例如：

Never before _____ in greater need of modern public transport than it is today.

A. has this city been　　B. this city has been

C. was this city　　D. this city was

分析：当含有否定意义的 never 放在句首时，句子用部分倒装。句意为：这座城市从

来没有比现在更需要现代公共交通运输系统。结合语境判断，本题应为完成时态，而 C 项为过去时态，不合适。故答案为 A。

典型真题

例 1：

The student can hardly speak simple English, _____ write articles in their language.（南京师范大学 2015 年）

A. much less they can　　B. much less they do

C. much less can they　　D. much less do they

【名师点评】 C。much less 引导从句使用部分倒装，情态动词 can 放到主语之前，表示“更不用说”的意思。故答案为 C。

例 2：

Rarely _____ a technological development _____ an impact on many aspects of social, economic, and cultural development as greatly as the growth of electronics.（中国社会科学院 2015 年）

A. has…had　　B. had…had　　C. has…has　　D. have…had

【名师点评】 A。rarely 作为否定副词置于句首，句子结构要使用倒装，句子的主语为 a technological development，分析句子可知，句子表达的是电力发展所带来的影响，故应使用现在完成时态，表示过去持续到现在的动作。句意为：很少有技术发展像电力这样在社会、经济和文化发展各方面产生如此大的影响。故答案为 A。

例 3：

_____down than the telephone rang.（复旦大学 2011 年）

A. Not until I lay　　B. No sooner had I lain

C. Hardly had I lain　　D. Scarcely did I lie

【名师点评】 B。lie 意为“躺，位于”，lie 的过去式、过去分词、现在分词分别是：lay，lain，lying；lay 意为“放，搁；下蛋”，lay 的过去式、过去分词、现在分词分别是：laid，laid，laying。根据句意：我刚躺下，电话铃就响了。故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. It was announced that only when the fire was under control _____ to return to their homes.

   A. the residents would be permitted　　B. had the residents been permitted

   C. would the residents be permitted　　D. the residents had been permitted

2. They often resort to listening Emo music as a release or escape but little _____ they know that it would just make matters worse.

   A. have　　B. did　　C. had　　D. do

3. I have been living in the United States for twenty years, but seldom _____ so lonely as now.

   A. have I felt　　B. I had felt　　C. I have felt　　D. had I felt

4. Typical of the grassland dwellers of the continent _____, or pronghorn.

   A. it is the American antelope　　B. the American antelope is

   C. is the American antelope　　D. the American antelope

5. Television is one of the means by which these feelings are created and conveyed and

perhaps never before _____ so much to connect different peoples and nations as in the recent events in Europe.

A. has it served　　B. it did served　　C. had it served　　D. it serves

6. _____ she wondered if she had made a mistake.

A. Not until long afterwards that　　B. Not long until afterwards

C. It was not until long afterwards that　　D. It was long afterwards until

7. _____ that the pilot couldn't fly through it.

A. The storm so severe was　　B. So severe was the storm

C. So the storm was severe　　D. Such was the storm severe

8. So seriously _____ in the train accident that he has lost his memory of anything.

A. he is injured　　B. injures him　　C. does he injured　　D. is he injured

9. Little _____ a year ago that I would be studying here today in Britain.

A. I thought　　B. thought I　　C. I did think　　D. did I think

10. Only after food has been dried, salted or canned _____ for later consumption.

A. that is should be stored　　B. should be stored

C. should it be stored　　D. it should be stored

答案解析

1. C。that 从句中 only 引导的时间状语从句位于句首，that 从句需用部分倒装结构。根据句意可知控制火势在先，允许回家在后，所以应用过去将来时。故答案为 C。
2. D。当否定副词 little 置于句首时，句子要用部分倒装形式。but 连接的两个并列句，不分时间先后，所以应该用一般现在时态。故答案为 D。
3. A。当否定副词 seldom 置于句首时，句子要用部分倒装形式。将现在与以前相比较，故用现在完成时。故答案为 A。
4. C。此句为形容词短语 be typical of 做表语前置而引起的完全倒装句，空白处缺少的实为倒装句的主语和谓语动词，A 和 B 未倒装，D 无动词，均排除。此句正常语序应为：The American antelope, or pronghorn, is typical of the grassland dwellers of the continent. 故答案为 C。
5. A。该句是复合句，and 前是一复合句，定语从句 by which…修饰 the means，后一分句中 never 置于句首引起倒装。故答案为 A。
6. C。强调句。本题综合考查了 not…until…和强调句的用法。本句正常语序为 She did not wonder if she had made a mistake until long afterwards. 可以将 not until 放在句首，此时主句部分倒装，变为 Not until long afterwards did she wonder if she had made a mistake. 还可以再加上 It was…that…结构将此句变为强调句，但是由于此时 not until 不再位于句首，故主句不需倒装。
7. B。加强语气。so（such）…that 结构中的 so 位于句首时使用倒装。
8. D。将程度副词调到句首，起强调的作用，所以需要将相关的动词倒装，来靠近程度副词。一般是将助动词提前。
9. D。否定副词 little 在句首，句子应该倒装，是半倒装，助动词提前。故答案为 D。
10. C。only + after 从句放在句首，需要倒装。it 指代食物。故答案为 C。



一周总测

There are 150 sentences in this section. Beneath each sentence there are four words or phrases marked A, B, C and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Mark your answers on your answer sheet.

1. I _____ with thanks the help of my colleagues in the preparation of this new column.
   A. express B. confess C. verify D. acknowledge
2. The tenant must be prepared to decorate the house _____ the terms of the contract.
   A. in the vicinity of B. in quest of
   C. in accordance with D. in collaboration with
3. To survive in the intense trade competition between countries, we must _____ the qualities and varieties of products we make to the world market demand.
   A. improve B. enhance C. guarantee D. gear
4. The glaciers that reached the Pacific Coast were valley glaciers, and between those tongues of ice _____ that allowed the original forests to survive.
   A. that many sanctuaries were B. were many sanctuaries
   C. were there many sanctuaries D. there the many sanctuaries
5. When he realized the police had spotted him, the man _____ the exit as quickly as possible.
   A. made off B. made for C. made out D. made up
6. Dozens of scientific groups all over the world have been _____ the goal of a practical and economic way to use sunlight to split water molecules.
   A. pursuing B. chasing C. reaching D. winning
7. A window in the kitchen was _____; there was rubbish everywhere, and the curtains and carpets had been stolen.
   A. scattered B. scraped C. scratched D. smashed
8. _____ was the first fully successful transatlantic cable finally laid.
   A. Not until 1866 B. Until 1866, just C. Until 1866 D. In 1866, not until
9. _____ from the top of the tower, the south foot of the mountain is a sea of trees.
   A. Seen B. Seeing C. Having seen D. To see
10. If the United States had built more homes for the poor in 1955, the current housing problem in some parts of the country _____ so serious.

A. is not　　B. would not be
C. will not have been　　D. would not have been

11. Mr. Wang made up his mind to devote all he could _____ his oral English before going abroad.
A. improve　　B. to improve　　C. improving　　D. to improving

12. You should have been more patient _____ that customer.
A. of　　B. with　　C. for　　D. at

13. On this happy occasion, I'd like to say that we are _____ much obliged to you for your kind cooperation.
A. even so　　B. ever so　　C. as yet　　D. so far

14. You should _____ to one or more weekly magazines such as *Time*, or *Newsweek*.
A. ascribe　　B. order　　C. reclaim　　D. subscribe

15. She says the firm placed her under guard in a shipping container and she was released only after her father asked the US embassy to _____.
A. interfere　　B. intervene　　C. interrupt　　D. disturb

16. I have a lot of readings _____ before the end of this term.
A. completing　　B. to complete　　C. completed　　D. being completed

17. In Scotland, as in the rest of the United Kingdom, _____ schooling begins at the age of 5 and ends at the age of 16.
A. compelling　　B. forced　　C. obliged　　D. compulsory

18. Our company's product line _____ 2, 500 different items.
A. comprises　　B. composes　　C. consists　　D. constitutes

19. He looked at me, with an expression _____ that he felt even more puzzled.
A. indicate　　B. indicates　　C. indicating　　D. indicated

20. When he finally emerged from the cave after thirty days, John was _____ pale.
A. enormously　　B. startlingly　　C. uniquely　　D. dramatically

21. Competition, they believe, _____ the national character rather than corrupt it.
A. reinforces　　B. aggravates　　C. increases　　D. strengthens

22. If anything, there will actually be an embarrassing margin _____ the opposition in the run-off.
A. in relation to　　B. in excess of　　C. in contrast to　　D. in favor of

23. Some studies confirmed that this kind of eye disease was _____ in tropical countries.
A. perpetual　　B. prospective　　C. prevalent　　D. provocative

24. He is a very honest official and has never _____ any gifts from the people who sought his help.
A. accepted　　B. received　　C. taken up　　D. excepted

25. Henry's news report covering the conference was so _____ that nothing had been omitted.
A. understanding　　B. comprehensible　　C. comprehensive　　D. understandable

26. The tourists _____ through the fog, trying to read what was engraved on the gravestone Shakespeare had chosen for himself.
A. glanced　　B. glimpsed　　C. peered　　D. peeped

27. He wanted very much to run for a second term, but owing to poor health, he was _____ to give it up.
A. driven B. permitted C. rebuked D. compelled

28. _____ your opinions are worth considering, the committee finds it unwise to place too much importance on them.
A. As B. Since C. Provided D. While

29. If you want to know the train schedule, please _____ at the booking office.
A. acquire B. inquire C. request D. require

30. There are not many teachers who are strong _____ of traditional methods in English teaching.
A. sponsors B. contributors C. advocates D. performers

31. A large part of human activities, particularly in relation to the environment, is _____ conditions or events.
A. in response to B. in favor of C. in contrast to D. in excess of

32. The majority of the nurses are women, but in the higher ranks of the medical profession, women are in a _____.
A. minority B. scarcity C. rarity D. minimum

33. The foreign student advisor recommended that she _____ more English before enrolling at the university.
A. studied B. study C. would study D. was studying

34. All individuals are required to _____ to the laws made by their governments.
A. obey B. conform C. concede D. observe

35. Because of the complexity of the modern machine, most offices require secretaries _____.
A. to have specified training B. specified in training
C. to train specifically D. training specified

36. Louis Brailele designed a form of communication enabling people to _____ and preserve their thoughts by incorporating a series of dots which were read by the finger tips.
A. retain B. visualize C. convey D. transfer

37. Human beings have _____ themselves to very diverse environments with the help of fire, agriculture and machines.
A. adapted B. addicted C. adopted D. adhered

38. Rather like a spoilt child, he can force you into feeling that his survival depends on your _____ presence and care.
A. considerate B. constant C. conscientious D. consistent

39. Though steam engines have now passed the _____ of their usefulness, their heritage remains.
A. prime B. era C. epoch D. date

40. James regretted his decision to come to _____ appeared to him to be a backward, run-down, poverty-stricken island.
A. where B. as C. what D. which

41. Cohesion has been found to _____ positively with group productivity and member

satisfaction.

A. concur B. co-occur C. co-exist D. correlate

42. When he tried to make a _____, he found that the hotel was completely filled because of a convention.

A. reservation B. claim C. mess D. revision

43. Great as Russell was, many of his ideas _____ today and are being modified by the work of philosophers of our time.

A. are to challenge B. may be challenged

C. have been challenged D. are challenging

44. When traveling, it is possible that you may be advised to take the travelers' checks, which provide a secure _____ to carrying your money in cash.

A. selection B. preference C. alternative D. substitute

45. Climate change was probably important in both _____ and evolution of dolphins.

A. execution B. extinction C. exclusion D. excavation

46. The energy gained from the sun can then be used during the night to enable the necessary chemical reactions to _____ in his body.

A. conduct B. proceed C. progress D. practice

47. Humidity is so intense in some parts of the tropics that Europeans find they are unable to _____ it.

A. maintain B. persist C. endure D. sustain

48. The National Geographic Society headquarters, _____ in Washington D. C., is well-known for its magazine.

A. situated B. placed C. stood D. positioned

49. From the moment of his birth the _____ into which he is born shape his experience and behavior.

A. habits B. practices C. customs D. conventions

50. Mary wants to study medicine but she is not very clever. I don't think she is _____ it.

A. up to B. for C. within D. towards

51. Modern appliances _____ us from a good deal of household work. For instance, the dryer frees us from hanging the laundry.

A. escape B. benefit C. liberate D. comfort

52. Using extremely different decorating schemes in adjoining rooms may result in _____ and lack of unity in style.

A. conflict B. confrontation C. disturbance D. disharmony

53. Personally I think he's _____ the most original of all the contemporary fashion designers.

A. in all B. by far C. for all D. at best

54. The bond of true affection had pulled us five very different men from five very different countries across Antarctica; we proved in the end that we weren't very different _____.

A. for all B. as usual C. in particular D. after all

55. In the _____ of human life the honors and rewards fall to those who show their good

qualities in action.

A. ring B. terrace C. arena D. ground

56. Not only was the paper money _____ which Napoleon so graciously distributed to the unfortunate, but even silver lost its value in relation to gold.

A. invaluable B. valueless C. priceless D. valuable

57. He _____ on the simple quantity theory to provide a more sophisticated framework for the explanation of a link between monetary growth and inflation.

A. remarked B. commented C. elaborated D. spelled

58. _____ for the timely investment from the general public, our company would not be so thriving as it is.

A. Had it not been B. Were it not C. Be it not D. Should it not be

59. Things went well for her during her early life but in her middle age her _____ seemed to change.

A. affair B. luck C. event D. chance

60. The thieves _____ the waste paper all over the room while they were searching for the diamond ring.

A. spread B. scratched C. scattered D. burned

61. We object to the idea that it is military force that should be _____ in settling international disputes.

A. applied to B. resorted to C. fallen back on D. restrained from

62. The digestive enzyme pepsin breaks down proteins into components _____ readily absorbed by the human body.

A. that can be B. and are C. which they D. are to be

63. At three thousand feet, wide plains begin to appear, and there is never a moment when some distant mountain is not _____.

A. on view B. at a glance C. on the scene D. in sight

64. The message is clear: Just as tea and banana can't go together, _____should the son of a low-class family expect to marry the daughter of a nobleman.

A. either B. not C. neither D. or

65. This sum of money played a vital role in the completion of the project. _____ it, the project would not have been completed so successfully.

A. With B. Without C. Except for D. But that

66. There ought to be less anxiety over the perceived risk of mountain climbing than _____ in the public mind today.

A. exists B. exist C. existing D. to exist

67. They began to sail around the world single-handed at _____ the same age, but their results were quite different.

A. approximately B. appropriately C. closely D. similarly

68. As we all know, thick forests are the natural _____ for birds, animals and insects, and we must forbid cutting trees without any limitation.

A. habitat B. resort C. residence D. refuge

69. The reporters exposed the corruption of several senior officers in the government; consequently, these officers _____ to resign from office.

A. have asked B. were asked C. had asked D. had been asked

70. It is _____ whether Sam will come to attend his best friend's funeral as he has taken the town's money and made off with it.
A. unlikely B. doubtful C. improbable D. unexpected

71. The cradle of oversea traffic and of the art of naval combats, the Mediterranean, the common _____ of all mankind, makes a tender appeal to a seaman.
A. estate B. heritage C. property D. possession

72. Since a circle has no beginning or end, the wedding ring is accepted as a symbol of _____ love.
A. successive B. consecutive C. eternal D. insistent

73. With an eighty-hour work and little enjoyment, life must have been very _____for the nineteenth-century factory workers.
A. hostile B. anxious C. tedious D. obscure

74. What Professor Clinton mentioned just now was a virtually extinct Caucasian language spoken _____ in Turkey.
A. exceedingly B. excessively C. extensively D. exclusively

75. My parents, _____ touring in Britain, are looking forward to a traditional English afternoon tea in a beautiful setting.
A. presently B. instantly C. nowadays D. publicly

76. If you are looking for a quality education at a reasonable price, consider State University as the place to _____.
A. sit B. encounter C. situate D. enroll

77. Despite the wide range of reading material specially written or _____ for language learning purposes, there is yet no comprehensive systematic program for the reading skills.
A. appointed B. assembled C. acknowledged D. adapted

78. This law _____ the number of accidents caused by children running across the road when they get off the bus.
A. intending to reduce B. is intended to reduce
C. intended reducing D. intends reducing

79. No longer are contributions to computer technology confined to any one country; _____ is this more true than in Europe.
A. hardly B. little C. seldom D. nowhere

80. Country life differs from city life in that a sense of community generally _____ the inhabitants of small villages together.
A. combines B. links C. binds D. ties

81. After Mark Felt revealed himself to be Deep Throat, the breaking news _____ all over the globe in a second.
A. sparkled B. flashed C. shined D. twinkled

82. I _____ a letter to an Internet service that distributes journalists' questions to more than 850 institutions.
A. assigned B. attached C. dispatched D. detached

83. It is unfortunate that now violence and cartoons _____ the most distinctive

characteristic of children's programs.

A. would be　　B. should be　　C. might be　　D. will be

84. The worst thing is that sometimes husbands live the _____ that they can do anything even when they have been repeatedly proved wrong.

A. delusion　　B. illusion　　C. misconception　　D. deception

85. When I try to understand _____ that prevents so many Americans from being happy as one might expect, it seems to me that there are two causes.

A. what it does　　B. what it is　　C. why it does　　D. why it is

86. The largest system serving e-mail messengers is the Internet, a _____ of millions of computers linked worldwide.

A. unity　　B. combination　　C. network　　D. connection

87. He was ordered away upon a long _____ to the ice-covered south, to make war upon the natives there and rob them of their furs.

A. excursion　　B. expedition　　C. tour　　D. voyage

88. Franklin D. Roosevelt argued that the depression stemmed from the American economy's _____ flaws.

A. underlining　　B. vulnerable　　C. vulgar　　D. underlying

89. Your story about the frog turning into a prince is _____ nonsense.

A. sheer　　B. shear　　C. shield　　D. sheet

90. Being somewhat short-sighted, she had the habit of _____ at people.

A. glancing　　B. peering　　C. gazing　　D. scanning

91. The habit of economy _____ one of the greatest differences between the savage and civilized men.

A. contains　　B. contributes　　C. constitutes　　D. continues

92. The vision of that big black car hitting the sidewalk a few feet from us will never be _____ from my memory.

A. ejected　　B. escaped　　C. erased　　D. omitted

93. Though science is often imagined as a disinterested subject, scientists are no different from anyone else: they are _____ human beings enmeshed in a web of personal and social circumstances.

A. vulnerable　　B. rational　　C. careless　　D. passionate

94. The government has provided the capital library with heavy _____ to keep it one of the largest in the world.

A. subscriptions　　B. tips　　C. subsidies　　D. bonuses

95. The sentence "She saw a girl with a binocular" is _____, because "with a binocular" can be used either as a modifier or as an adverbial.

A. ambiguous　　B. euphemistic　　C. straightforward　　D. generalized

96. The girl was so _____ by the mighty river that she would spend hours sitting on its bank and gazing at the boats and rafts going and coming.

A. absorbed　　B. fascinated　　C. moved　　D. touched

97. Their _____ building is located next to the park, so it is very convenient for them to

have a walk after supper.

A. residential B. presidential C. conditional D. accidental

98. Each one of them prayed that he might lead her home to be his wedded wife, so greatly were they _____ at the beauty of violet-crowned Cytherea.

A. astonished B. amazed C. astounded D. shocked

99. If negotiations for the new trade agreements take _____ critical food shortages will develop in several countries.

A. too much longer B. much long too C. too many longer D. much too long

100. Operations which left patients _____ and in need of long periods of discovery time now leave them feeling relaxed and comfortable.

A. exhausted B. unhealthy C. upset D. fearful

101. This work has given a close _____ into problems of pollution, congestion, intense company group pressure, sexism and racism.

A. view B. insight C. percept D. prospect

102. Most people would like to find apartments in this area. There are very few _____ apartments in the area.

A. free B. vacant C. empty D. deserted

103. In some cases, your instructor may tell you the topics _____ or may give you a choice of topics to write about.

A. in advance B. ahead of C. above all D. right away

104. The scenery of the Way-lee-way had charmed the travelers with its mingled _____ and grandeur and filled them with admiration and astonishment.

A. amenity B. equipment C. convenience D. appliance

105. Only by smashing the _____ of convention can we carry our reform forward and win the victory eventually.

A. gloom B. revolts C. defects D. shackles

106. His maturity appears in the _____ clear-sightedness with which he could observe his own character.

A. indifferent B. unconcerned C. detached D. incurious

107. We all enjoy our freedom of choice and do not like to see it _____when it is within the legal and moral boundaries of society.

A. compacted B. dispersed C. delayed D. restricted

108. If a scientist holds an idea to be true and finds any counter evidence whatever, the idea is either _____ or abandoned.

A. testified B. ascertained C. violated D. modified

109. Millions of workers were on the streets in the greatest _____ of working class solidarity this country has ever seen.

A. demonstration B. explanation C. presentation D. communication

110. For the advertised position, the company offers a(n) _____ salary and benefits package.

A. generous B. plentiful C. abundant D. sufficient

111. In one scene of Modern Times Charlie Chaplin was shown trying _____ to keep in time with a rapid assembly line.
A. aimlessly B. violently C. hardly D. desperately

112. It is not so much the language _____ the cultural background that makes the book difficult to understand.
A. but B. nor C. as D. like

113. Going out for a holiday is a good way to relax and refresh yourself, and this is especially true _____ it comes to preventing depression.
A. since B. before C. after D. when

114. If human beings want to enjoy the long-lasting peace and happiness, they must avoid falling into war and live in _____ with each other.
A. coincidence B. harmony C. uniform D. alliance

115. Not a few excellent proposals by the countries of the third world have been _____ to the United Nations, acceptance of which will strengthen peace and lessen the danger of war.
A. submitted B. suggested C. advanced D. released

116. The _____ cycle of life and death is a subject of interest to scientists and philosophers alike.
A. incompatible B. exceeding C. instantaneous D. eternal

117. I guess Jones didn't have a chance to win the election. Almost all of the people in the city voted for his _____.
A. candidate B. opponent C. alternative D. participant

118. Martin from time to time offered remarks _____ the effect that he was a wonderful scientist and that he had a good command of psychology.
A. to B. in C. with D. for

119. The girl was in low spirits because her throat infection left her very _____ and made her solo at the party impossible.
A. dumb B. hoarse C. silent D. speechless

120. After the cameraman had taken three or four photographs of the soldier ants, he found they had _____ all over his feet.
A. gathered B. flocked C. crowded D. swarmed

121. Working under the new expert who always encourages creativity in young people, we have been _____ with better ideas.
A. coming down B. coming out C. coming along D. coming up

122. News reports say peace talks between the two countries _____ with no agreement reached.
A. have broken down B. have broken out
C. have broken in D. have broken up

123. Nobody noticed the thief slip into the house because the lights happened to _____.
A. be put up B. give in C. be turned on D. go out

124. If you had _____ your test paper carefully before handing it in, you would have made fewer mistakes.
A. looked up B. thought about C. gone over D. gone round

125. We thought of selling this old furniture, but we've decided to _____ it. It might be valuable.
A. hold on to B. keep up with C. turn to D. look after

126. She wondered if she could have the opportunity to spend _____ here so that she could learn more about the city.
A. sometimes B. some time C. sometime D. some times

127. All the schools _____ because of the earthquake, students and teachers had to go back home.
A. having destroyed B. were destroyed
C. having been destroyed D. have been destroyed

128. Our country had made great efforts to promote the family-planning policy, but _____ the birth rate is getting higher and higher.
A. as it were B. as it is C. as it be D. as it has been

129. Peter felt very guilty for not being able to reunite with his family on Christmas Eve, so he decided to _____. He wanted to work till midnight.
A. work it over B. work it out C. work it off D. work it up

130. The conquerors tried to _____ the very name of the peoples national hero from their memories.
A. raze B. ruin C. demolish D. wreck

131. The profitable offices under the government were filled by men who had contracted luxurious habits of living which they would not lay _____.
A. off B. out C. in D. aside

132. The divorced mother would have her own family, in which his position as an _____ stepson and his education would not be good.
A. illicit B. illegal C. illegitimate D. illegible

133. I replied to him thus: "Why, sir, it is a valuable thing, indeed, to be an instrument in God's hand to _____ thirty-seven heathens to the knowledge of Christ."
A. alter B. modify C. convert D. adapt

134. When I picked up the phone, I didn't recognize it was Anne. Her voice sounded _____ on the phone.
A. twisted B. deformed C. distorted D. unregulated

135. The scientist _____ his great energy and endurance to his habit of dozing off whenever he wanted.
A. contributed B. attributed C. devoted D. distributed

136. No one is more _____ than Frank for the promotion as a sales department manager; he has been a salesman for years and he knows the market well.
A. illegible B. legitimate C. legible D. eligible

137. He quickened and _____ his walking pace as he heard the announcement in the

loudspeakers that the train would leave in ten minutes.

A. prolonged B. lengthened C. extended D. stretched

138. His supervisor asked him to _____ his departure for home, because his paper was not so well-done.

A. infer B. prefer C. defer D. refer

139. He noticed the helicopter hovering over the field. Then to his astonishment, he saw a rope ladder _____ out and three men climbing down it.

A. throwing B. being thrown

C. having thrown D. having been thrown

140. One way to conserve water is to _____ dishes, instead of rinsing them, before loading the dishwasher.

A. polish B. scrub C. scrape D. scribe

141. With over 1.5 million elderly and dependent adults now living in nursing homes throughout the country, abuse and _____ has become a widespread problem.

A. ignore B. disregard C. neglect D. overlook

142. It's hard to confirm or refute that there's a causal relationship between the amount of fat we eat and the _____ of heart attacks.

A. incidence B. impetus C. momentum D. emergence

143. A state with more _____ instruments in its hands will find that with small men no great thing can really be accomplished.

A. tractable B. mild C. docile D. controllable

144. Lacking _____ sensibility because of unique upbringing, Monica does not care about right and wrong.

A. amoral B. immoral C. moral D. immortal

145. A man escaped from the prison last night. It was a long time _____ the guards discovered what had happened.

A. before B. until C. since D. when

146. Not only _____ people to send words, music, and codes to any part of the world, it can also be used to communicate far into space.

A. enabled by radio B. radio enables

C. does radio enable D. has radio enabled

147. It is believed that the authorities are thinking of _____ new taxes to raise extra revenue.

A. impairing B. imposing C. invading D. integrating

148. When I got out of the car and walked about among them, _____ one old man who shook his head disapprovingly, they all began to cheer.

A. see that B. except that C. provided that D. except for

149. The old gentleman was a very _____ looking person, with grey hair and gold spectacles.

A. respectful B. realistic C. respective D. respectable

150. Of course, most immigrants did not get rich overnight, but the _____ of them

were eventually able to improve upon their former standard of living.

A. maximum　　B. minority　　C. majority　　D. minimum

答案

1. D	2. C	3. D	4. B	5. B	6. A	7. D	8. A	9. A	10. B
11. D	12. B	13. B	14. D	15. B	16. B	17. D	18. A	19. C	20. B
21. D	22. D	23. C	24. A	25. C	26. C	27. A	28. D	29. B	30. C
31. A	32. A	33. B	34. B	35. A	36. C	37. A	38. B	39. A	40. C
41. D	42. A	43. C	44. C	45. B	46. B	47. C	48. A	49. C	50. A
51. C	52. D	53. B	54. D	55. C	56. B	57. C	58. A	59. B	60. C
61. B	62. A	63. D	64. C	65. B	66. A	67. A	68. A	69. B	70. B
71. B	72. C	73. C	74. D	75. A	76. D	77. D	78. B	79. D	80. C
81. B	82. C	83. B	84. A	85. B	86. C	87. B	88. D	89. A	90. C
91. C	92. C	93. D	94. C	95. A	96. B	97. A	98. B	99. D	100. A
101. B	102. B	103. A	104. A	105. D	106. C	107. D	108. D	109. A	110. A
111. D	112. C	113. D	114. B	115. A	116. D	117. B	118. A	119. A	120. D
121. D	122. A	123. D	124. C	125. A	126. B	127. C	128. B	129. C	130. A
131. D	132. C	133. C	134. C	135. B	136. D	137. B	138. C	139. B	140. B
141. C	142. A	143. C	144. C	145. A	146. C	147. B	148. D	149. D	150. C

第三周 完形填空

周一　八大解题要诀——词义与词形辨析法
周二　八大解题要诀——固定搭配法
周三　八大解题要诀——语法分析法
周四　八大解题要诀——词汇重复法
周五　八大解题要诀——语义逻辑法
周六　八大解题要诀——关联对应法和褒贬一致法
周日　一周总测

考核要求

完形填空的理论依据是心理学关于“场”的原理。该理论的观点是：人们观察物体形状时，往往下意识地把不连贯的空缺的部分补上，然后把它看成一个完整的形状。

完形填空最初用于测试智商。随着心理学和语言学研究的发展，完形填空被引入语言教学领域。语言学家们认为，完形填空可用于检查学生外语学习的综合水平。由于它是一个有效检测学生外语水平的题型，所以在当前各个级别的外语测试中，包括考博英语考试中大多采用这一题型。

在考博英语的考试当中，完形填空题是考生感到困难、得分率较低的综合性题型之一。完形填空要求考生拥有一定的词汇量，并有英语阅读上的前后句意理解能力。设计者要遵循一定的要求和准则，以保证测试的效度和信度。

完形填空要求考生从每题给出的四个选项中选出最佳答案，使补全后的文章意思通顺、前后连贯、结构完整。在考博当中，英语完形填空部分的题型主要测试考生如下能力：

- ❖ 考生在语篇水平上的理解能力和实际运用的能力。
- ❖ 运用所学过的语法知识和词汇联系上下文理解语篇的逻辑关系能力。
- ❖ 扎实的语法知识基础和丰富的词汇量，有较强的阅读能力。
- ❖ 进行综合填空的能力。
- ❖ 灵活运用自己所掌握的所有英语知识，能够融会贯通的能力。

试题分析

完形填空作为考博英语当中的常考题型，其选材广泛，涉及日常生活、文史知识、科技小品、社会热点、政治经济、人物传记等。考查的形式主要是：

- ❖ 完整的短文（200 ~250 词）有意去除一些词或短语，使信息链中断，造成间隔性的语义空白（10、15 或 20 个空白），但为一篇意思表达完整的文章，而命题首句往往不设空。
- ❖ 测试内容可以是句型、结构，也可以是词汇、词组和习惯用语。要求考生从所给的四个选项中选出最佳答案。

命题特点和考查点

考博英语的完形填空命题体裁上多为说明文。在实质上它是以阅读为形式，以上下文为基础，以词法和句法为内容测试考生解决连接语言信息中断问题的能力，包括语篇的衔接和语义的连贯。语篇的衔接体现在语篇的表层结构，其中语法手段与词汇手段是结构衔接手段的具体体现。语义的连贯性体现在语篇的深层结构，即逻辑的内在联系。在选项上，空格的设置以意义完形为主，惯用搭配和语法完形为辅，所给选项以实词为主，虚词为辅。而对实词的考查又以考查情景意义为主。动词、名词、形容词等占很大比重，而介词的考查多以习语、惯用法等形式出现。考查点主要集中在：

- ❖ 语义辨析。主要集中在动词、形容词、副词、连词和名词等。所给的四个选项基本

上属于同一种词性和词形，要么都是名词，要么都是动词。这种题型要求考生从所给词语本身的意义和用法入手进行分析，逐一排除错误的或不太妥当的选项，最终确定最佳答案。

❖ 固定搭配。固定搭配类的题目难度相对较低，此类题基本不需要依靠理解上下文就能确定答案。掌握常见的固定句型、固定词组和习惯搭配，对确定某些题目的答案很有帮助，这就要求考生平时多加积累，特别是动词短语。

❖ 词汇复现。某一词以原词、同义词、近义词、上义词、下义词、概括词等出现在语篇中，语篇中的句子通过这种复现关系得到了相互衔接。主要有四种：①原词复现；②同义词、近义词复现；③上下义词复现；④概括词复现。

❖ 词汇同现。在语篇中，围绕着一定的话题，一类词往往就会同时出现，这种词的同现关系与语篇范围关系密切。

❖ 语境。“词不离句，句不离文”是完形填空最突出的一个特点。所给的四个选项从语法角度来看都正确，或者没有明显的语法错误，单独从此空所在的句子很难做出判断，需通读上下文才能选出正确答案。题目的设置绝大多数是就近暗示，某些关键词、短语，甚至是标点符号，都有可能是解题的关键词，主要有以下几种情况：

① and，or，however，but 等前后连接成分的同义或反义关系；

② that is，in other words 等的解释说明作用等；

③ 以信息句的形式出现，通过上下句的对照可找到答案。

❖ 句际逻辑联系。在完形填空中，句际间的逻辑关系主要包括：转折关系、顺序关系、解释关系、替代关系、因果关系等。

❖ 语法。从语法的角度来看，完形填空涉及的语法规则主要包括：从句、非谓语动词、主谓一致、独立主格、虚拟语气、倒装等。

❖ 推理性。完形填空侧重考查考生根据上下文所提供的信息进行语言逻辑推理判断的能力。这要求学生不仅要捕捉上下文乃至全文的信息，而且要依照事物的发展规律、前因后果等进行综合分析判断，推断出正确的答案。

❖ 常识性。有些题目的设置无论从词汇、语法、惯用法还是语境方面考虑都无法确定正确答案。这种情况下，就需要考生借助于常识或某些背景知识来解决问题。所以考生不仅要熟练掌握语言基础知识，还要了解英语文化和风俗习惯，养成跨文化思维。



八大解题要诀——词义与词形辨析法

对词汇的测试在博士研究生入学英语考试中应该说是无处不在的，它贯穿考卷的各个部分。在完形填空题中重点考查考生在上下文中认词和辨词的能力。词汇的辨析和使用占完形出题量很大的比重。所以，考前词汇的准备对于完形显得尤为重要。完形填空的词汇题一种是词义辨析题，另一种是单纯的测试词义的题。要做好词汇题，考生应掌握词汇的内涵、外延和语法功能，了解近义词的细微差异。

考点一　不相干词辨析

技巧点拨

完形填空所涉及的词汇题主要考查难词识别、近义词辨析和形近易混词的辨析。难词识别指的是四个选项设置为没有相互联系的难词，词形词义均不同，仅仅考查考生对难词词义的识别，只要你认识，就能做出来，不认识，就束手无策。此类题主要考查考生对构成语篇词汇的认知能力。此类题要求考生有较大的词汇量，备选项中的词汇多数为考博英语词汇表中要求领会或掌握的单词。此类题应特别注意一词多义以及所选的答案与题干中其他词的搭配。

例 1：

Other identifiable causes of offensive acts include frustration or failure in school, the increased _____ of drugs and alcohol, and the growing incidence of child abuse and child neglect. All these conditions tend to increase the probability of a child committing a criminal act, although a direct causal relationship has not yet been established.

A. expense　　B. restriction　　C. allocation　　D. availability

分析：D。选项是四个关系不大的名词辨析。expense“开支，费用”；restriction“限制，局限”；allocation“分配，配置”；availability“可获得性，可得到性”。根据语义，药物和酒精的可得到性增加导致孩子的攻击性行为。故答案为 D。

例 2：

From childhood to old age, we all use language as a means of broadening our knowledge of ourselves and the world about us. When humans first evolved, they were like newborn children, unable to use this _____ tool. Yet once language developed, the possibilities for human kind's future attainments and cultural growth increased.

A. valuable　　B. appropriate　　C. convenient　　D. favorite

分析：A。选项是四个关系不大的形容词辨析。根据语法分析，答案应用来修饰语言。valuable“珍贵的”；appropriate“合适的，适当的”；convenient“方便的，便利的”；favorite“最喜欢的”。语言并不是人类选择的结果，而是人类在进化过程中慢慢发展起来的，对人类来说，应当是珍贵的。故答案为A。

典型真题

例1：

In the 1960s and 1970s a philosophical movement called postmodernism developed among humanities professors displeased at being deposed by science, which they regarded as right-leaning. Postmodernism __27__ ideas from cultural anthropology and relativity theory to argue that truth is relative and subject to the assumptions and prejudices of the observer.（北京大学2013年）

27. A. discounted　B. doubted　C. adopted　D. shared

【名师点评】C。动词词义辨析。discount“打折，贴现”；doubt“怀疑”；adopt“采纳”；share“共享”。根据上下文，后现代主义“采纳”了某些观点，adopt与ideas搭配合理。故答案为C。

例2：

After that, the boys were seen less and less and __85__ disappeared. It is said that they were suffocated in bed by pillows being pressed over their mouths.

85. A. eventually　B. later　C. lastly　D. completely

【名师点评】A。副词词义辨析。根据原文中的less and less and…判断，此处是逐渐变化的过程，应该用eventually，意为“最终”。故答案为A。

例3：

“We are flying blindly into a new era of agricultural biotechnology with high hopes, few constraints, and little idea of the potential __50__,” said science writer Jeremy Rifkin.（山东大学2013年）

50. A. navigations　B. mystery　C. outcomes　D. destinations

【名师点评】C。名词词义辨析。little idea of意为“不知道”。navigation“航行，航海”；mystery“神秘”；outcome“产生，结局”；destination“目的地，终点”。根据句意，不知道基因技术会带来的潜在结果。故答案为C。

实战演练

1. Shopping habits in the United States have changed greatly in the last quarter of the 20th century. Early in the 1900s most American towns and cities had a Main Street. Main Street was always in the heart of a town. This street was _____ on both sides with many various businesses.

   A. built　B. designed　C. intended　D. lined

2. They even propose the use of graphic warnings for junk food, similar to those on cigarette packages, which now have pictures of a dying cancer _____ on them. They would discuss a tax on junk foods.

   A. prey　B. encounter　C. bearer　D. victim

3. Yet, unfortunately, few attempts have been made to _____ fathers in this

resocialization process. Although numerous books have been written about mothers, only recently has literature focused on the role of a father.

A. educate　　B. cultivate　　C. inform　　D. convert

4. We may want to question the appropriateness of this public relations function. Publicity is not _____ a good thing. If this publicity is scandalous (or even negative), the school has not benefited. There is a university on the banks of the river that sponsors a "Mississippi River Festival" every summer.

A. especially　　B. necessarily　　C. exclusively　　D. definitely

5. Instead of trying to keep down the body temperature deep inside the body, which would involve the expenditure of water and energy, desert mammals allow their temperatures to rise to what would normally be fever _____, and temperatures as high as 46 degrees Celsius have been measured in gazelles.

A. height　　B. degree　　C. scale　　D. domain

6. It is a highly developed international company with a deep worldwide involvement and a global perspective in its management and decision making. More _____, the multinational company in manufacturing does business in a number of countries; it has a substantial commitment of its resources in international business; it engages in international production in a number of countries; and it has a worldwide perspective in its management.

A. specifically　　B. specially　　C. socially　　D. substantially

7. Quite a lot, as it turns out the 4-year-old who is able to hold out in order to receive a second treat is demonstrating more self-control that will serve him or her well as an adult. This ability to control one's _____ is just one part of what is called Emotional Intelligence.

A. intelligence　　B. gratification　　C. empathy　　D. impulses

8. It may have to do with how a teacher talks to the class: many positive, supportive expressions and few expressions of impatience, annoyance, or irritation. Non-verbal communication, including _____ expressions, probably plays a role too.

A. facial　　B. variable　　C. suggestive　　D. emotional

9. Thus, the following are possible use of television watching, a proper leisure activity, a change of experience to provide escape from the stress and strain of work; to learn more about what is happening in one's environment; to provide an opportunity for understanding oneself by comparing other people's life experiences as _____ in the programs.

A. portrayed　　B. described　　C. related　　D. narrated

10. Probably the greatest magician of all time was Harry Houdini who died in 1926. Houdini mastered the art of _____. He could free himself from the tightest knots or the most complicated locks in seconds.

A. escaping　　B. locking　　C. opening　　D. dropping

答案解析

1. **D**。动词词义辨析。build "建造，修建"；design "设计"；intend "打算"；line

“沿……排列”。根据上下文和介词 on 后是 both sides 判断，此处意为“两旁排列着……商店”。故答案为 D。

2. D。名词词义辨析。此处的 victim 意为“牺牲者”，香烟包装盒上印有即将死于癌症的抽烟者的图案。故答案为 D。prey“猎物”；encounter“相遇，邂逅”；bearer“持有者”。
3. A。动词词义辨析。educate“教育”，侧重动机、结果，或对潜在能力的开发；cultivate 虽然也有“培养”的意思，但通常指培育植物或培养兴趣；inform“通知，为……提供信息”；convert“转变，转化”，多指形态的变化或信仰的改变。根据下文中的 numerous books 判断，educate 符合语义。
4. B。副词词义辨析。necessarily“必然地，必定地”，常用在否定句中，意为“不一定”，符合本题题意。故答案为 B。especially“特别地”；exclusively“独有地，唯一地”；definitely“肯定地，必定地”，多用于肯定句中。
5. A。名词词义辨析。本句中的动词词组 rise to 表明其后面应该跟达到的具体数据，选项中可以表示点的有 degree 和 height。fever 很少与 degree 直接搭配，可说 the degree of fever，表示具体的发烧度数。fever 可与 height 搭配，表“发烧的程度”，故答案为 A。scale“刻度，衡量，比例”；domain“范围，领域”。
6. A。副词词义辨析。specifically“明确地”，使用 specifically 表明对前面所述事情进一步阐述、说明。specially 意为“尤其，特别地”，句中并没有指明在整体中包含某点特别的东西，故排除；socially“在社交方面地”；substantially“充分地，相当地”。根据上下文，specifically 符合语义。
7. D。名词词义辨析。intelligence“智力，理解力”；gratification“满意，喜悦”；empathy“移情作用，同理心”；impulse“冲动”。在文中与 control 连用，根据意思只能选择 D 项。
8. A。形容词词义辨析。facial“面部的，用面部的”；variable“变化的，可变的”；suggestive“提示的，暗示的，使人联想的”；emotional“情绪的，情感的”。根据空格前的 Non-verbal communication 判定，选项中，只有 facial 与 expressions（面部的表情）搭配符合语义。
9. A。动词词义辨析。分析句子结构可知，as … in the programs 在句中做 other people’s life experiences 的后置定语。所以 the programs 与 other people’s life experiences 的关系就是 the programs（电视节目）能够描述或展现 other people’s life experiences。portrayed 意为“描绘，用图画来描绘或表现”，符合要求。故答案为 A。
10. A。动词词义辨析。根据上下文可知，魔术家 Houdini 擅长“逃脱”，他可以轻易地打开锁头，从被锁处逃脱。故答案为 A。

考点二　同义词、近义词辨析

技巧点拨

英语中有大量的同义词（或近义词）译成汉语后意思相同或相近；还有一些译成汉语似乎是同义词或近义词，但在英语中并不是同义词；另有一些英语的同义词翻译成汉语不一定是同义词。即使是英语中的同义词，它们之间的内涵、用法、搭配以及使用场合也常常不同。

备选项是同义词或近义词的题目主要测试考生对常用同义词或近义词之间的细微差别

的掌握情况。因此，考生在完形语篇中遇到备选答案为同义词（或近义词）辨析时，要分析每个词的内涵，区分其在用法和词义上的细微差别，提高词义的辨析能力，还要结合上下文的语义，符合语境，这样才能在遇到这类题时稳操胜券。

例 1：

Indeed, more and more schools are discovering that foreign languages are best taught in the lower grades. Young children often can learn several languages by being exposed to them, while adults have a much harder time learning another language once the _____ of their first language have become firmly fixed.

A. regulations　　B. formations　　C. rules　　D. constitutions

分析：C。近义名词辨析。选项中的 regulations 和 rules 均有“规则，规定”的意思。regulation 特指 official rule 及官方制订的规章制度，而 rule 指在特定环境或游戏中的规则、规章，还有习惯、惯例的意思。此句意思是：一旦母语的规则被深深印入脑海中，成年人就很难再学好另一种语言。

例 2：

The stem family system was once common in Japan, but changes in inheritance laws, as well as broader social changes brought about by industrialization and urbanization, have _____ the tradition. In 1960 about 80 percent of Japanese over 65 lived with their children; by 1990 only 60 percent did—a figure that is still high by U. S. standards, but which has been declining steadily.

A. undermined　　B. decreased　　C. diminished　　D. defeated

分析：A。近义动词辨析。选项中的 undermined，decreased 和 diminished 动词均有“少，低”的意思。undermine“削弱”，是指渐渐破坏（信心、权威等）；decrease“减少；变少；降低”，指数量上的减少；力量或者强度的减弱；diminish“减少，变小”，指因为不断消耗，在数量方面缓慢减少，也指素质或者价值的下降。与 tradition 搭配的动词最合适的是 undermined。

典型真题

例 1：

His team's study, published in the journal *Nature*, concludes that between 443－629bn tons of meltwater overall are added to the world's oceans each year. This is __37__ sea level by about l. 5mm a year, the team reports, in addition to the 2mm a year caused by expansion of the warming ocean.（北京大学 2012 年）

37. A. rising　　B. arising　　C. raising　　D. rearing

【名师点评】C。rising 和 arising 均为不及物动词，不能直接接宾语，排除。根据句意和常识，应该是导致海平面上升 1. 5 mm，rear 意为“养育，抚养”，不符合句意，只有 C 项（举起，增加）符合要求。

例 2：

In a significant tightening of legal controls over the press, Lord Irvine, the Lord Chancellor, will introduce a __33__ bill that will propose making payments to witnesses illegal and will strictly control the amount of publicity that can be given to a case before a trial begins.（山东大学 2014 年）

33. A. sketch　　B. rough　　C. preliminary　　D. draft

【名师点评】D。近义名词辨析。sketch“草图，素描”，通常指画家所作的草图或指简单的计划；rough“草图，草样”；preliminary“准备；预赛；初步措施”，通常指某些重大行动或重要问题的前期、初步准备；draft“草案，草稿”，draft bill 是惯用搭配，由题意可知，bill 是指在立法机关未通过之前由立法委员会提出的法律草案，与 draft 构成搭配。故答案为 D。

例 3：

In a significant tightening of legal controls over the press, Lord Irvine, the Lord Chancellor, will introduce a draft bill that will propose making payments to witnesses __34__ and will strictly control the amount of publicity that can be given to a case before a trial begins.（山东大学 2014 年）

34. A. illogical　　B. illegal　　C. improbable　　D. improper

【名师点评】B。形近词辨析。选项中的形容词以 il-or im-开头，但词义不同。illogical“不合逻辑的”；illegal“不合法的”；improbable“未必会的，不太可能的”；improper“不适当的”。根据题意，making payments to witnesses（向证人付款）显然是不合法的行为，故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. Attracted by hundreds of free parking space, customers were drawn away from downtown areas to outlying malls. And the growing _____ of shopping centers led in turn to the building of bigger and better stocked stores. By the late 1970s, many shopping malls had almost developed into small cities themselves.
   A. distinction　　B. fame　　C. popularity　　D. liking
2. Never mind the obesity epidemic—Canada is _____ with an epidemic of bad ideas on how to fight obesity. The latest is to treat fast-food restaurants as if they were akin to porn shops, and bar them from—or at least limit their numbers in—neighborhoods with schools or hospitals.
   A. inflicted　　B. afflicted　　C. anguished　　D. wounded
3. Yet the youthful idolizing of athletes, which tends to upset a boy's concept of values and may do _____ harm to the objects of this hero-worship, is a very different matter.
   A. factual　　B. genuine　　C. conceptual　　D. visual
4. With the baby boom, the focus of educators inevitably turned toward the lower grades and back to basic academic skills and _____. The system no longer had much interest in offering nontraditional, new, and extra services to the older youths.
   A. conference　　B. symposium　　C. seminar　　D. discipline
5. As time went by, computers became smaller and more powerful, and they became “personal” too, as well as institutional, with display becoming sharper and storage _____ increasing. They were thought of, like people, in terms of generations, with the distance between generations much smaller.
   A. ability　　B. capability　　C. capacity　　D. faculty
6. Design of all the new tools and implements is based on careful experiments with electronic instruments. First, a human “guinea pig” is tested using a _____ tool.

Measurements are taken of the amount of work done, and the buildup of heat in the body.

A. regular　　B. usual　　C. common　　D. constant

7. We may see how another photographer failed at one shot, and instantly, we know how to make it better. We may see how another photographer used a _____ technique to incredibly deliver a wonderful message and we take that into our own.

A. especial　　B. particular　　C. specific　　D. special

8. We live in a materialist society. We are trained from our earliest years to be greedy. Our possessions, "mine" and "yours ", are clearly _____ from early childhood. When we grow older enough to earn a living, it does not surprise us to discover that success is measured in terms of the money we earn.

A. marked　　B. titled　　C. signed　　D. labeled

9. Every course of studies must lead somewhere: i. e. to a bigger wage _____. The demand for skilled personnel far exceeds the supply and big companies compete with each other to recruit students before they have completed their studies. Tempting salaries and "fringe benefits" are offered to them.

A. package　　B. packet　　C. baggage　　D. socket

10. Over the past several decades, though, experimental psychologists have _____ which methods reliably lead people to concede, comply , or change. Their research shows that persuasion is governed by several principles that can be taught and applied.

A. studied　　B. learned　　C. examined　　D. investigated

答案解析

1. C。近义名词辨析。distinction "声望"；fame "卓越，好名声"；popularity "名声很大，知名度很高"；liking "喜爱，喜好"。根据语义可知，越来越大的应该是名气。故答案为 C。
2. B。inflict "使……遭受危害或损失"，惯用的结构是 inflict harm or damage on sb.；afflict "引起悲伤或痛苦"，be afflicted with 可以看成一个固定的短语，意为 "因为……而痛苦"；anguish 指肉体或精神上的 "痛苦"，一般用作名词；wound "伤害，破坏"，一般指肉体上的。根据语义，此处意为加拿大在与肥胖作斗争时有着流行的错误观念，这让它在痛苦中煎熬，afflicted 符合语义。故答案为 B。
3. B。近义形容词词义辨析。句意为：这会对崇拜的对象（这里指运动员）产生真正的害处。genuine "真实的，真正的"；近义词 factual 则表示 "事实的，根据事实的"；对英雄的崇拜不可能产生视觉上的和概念上的伤害，所以排除 visual 和 conceptual。
4. D。近义名词词义辨析。因为回归到基本技能和学科，所以选择 discipline "学科"。其他选项中，conference "学术会议"；symposium "座谈会，讨论会"；seminar "研究会，讨论会"，均与上文 "回归到基本" 意思不符。
5. C。近义名词辨析。选项都有 "能力" 的意思，而 capacity 更强调 "潜能"，并能表示 "（存储）的容量"，所以，填入本句更恰当。故答案为 C。
6. A。近义形容词辨析。regular "常备的，合格的"；usual "通常的"；common "普通的"；constant "持续的，不变的"。根据上下文，这里指的应当是使用常规工具，所以是 regular tool。

7. C。近义形容词辨析。这里是指 specific（具体的）某种技术，而不是指 especial（特别的）、particular（特殊的）、special（专门的）技术。故答案为 C。
8. D。近义动词辨析。label“贴标签于，分类”，是指为了识别贴上标记。句中的 mine 和 yours 均使用了引号，说明这是两类东西，符合 label 的使用语境。故答案为 D。mark“做记号”，而此处并不是真的给每件事物做标记，故排除 A；title“赋予头衔，加标题于”；sign“签名”，都不符合句意。
9. B。近义名词辨析。packet“小包裹”，wage packet“工资袋”，用在句中是指人们在意学习的课程是否能够带来更多的收入，故 B 符合语境。package“包裹”，既可以指大的包裹，例如邮包，也可以指小一点儿的包，但不与 wage 一起使用；baggage“行李”；socket“插座”，均不符合句意。
10. B。近义动词辨析。study 与 examine 都有“仔细研究”的意思；investigate 是“调查研究”的意思；learn 除了有“学习”的意思外，还有“认识到”的意思。由于下文中具体讲述了这些原则和方法也就是研究的结果，因此这里的意思应是这些实验心理学家们已经认识到了哪些方法是可以使人让步、服从和改变的，因此 learn 是最恰当的。故答案为 B。

考点三　形近词辨析

技巧点拨

备选项是形似义异词，其特点是备选的四个单词中全部或部分是前缀、后缀或词根相同但意义却不一样的词。这不仅要求考生准确掌握词汇意义，而且要有一定的构词知识。由于英语中大多数单词都是由词根（或根词）加前、后缀构成，掌握了词根，即掌握了词汇的基本意思，再加上前缀和/或后缀，就可推测出大量生词的含义，所以熟练运用构词法知识是在这部分试题上得分的诀窍。

例 1：

Their grown children visit them only occasionally, but more often, they do not have any regular visitors. The truth is that this idea is an unfortunate myth _____ story. In fact, family members provide over 80 percent of the care that elderly people need.

A. imaginary　　B. imaginable　　C. imaginative　　D. imagery

分析：A。选项中的四个形容词具有相同的前缀，但意义不同。imaginary“不真实的，虚构的”；imaginable“可想象的”；imaginative“富有想象力的”；imagery“肖像”。根据语义和 unfortunate 判断，imaginary 符合上下文语义。

例 2：

In the United States, older people rarely live with their adult children. But in many other cultures children are expected to care for their aged parents. In some parts of Italy, the percentage of adult children who _____ with their parents reaches 65 to 70 percent. In Thailand, too, children are expected to care for their elderly parents; few Thai elderly live alone.

A. reside　　B. recite　　C. redeem　　D. rebel

分析：A。选项中的四个动词具有相同的前缀，但意义不同。reside“住，居住”；recite“背诵，细述，列举”；redeem“赎回，挽回，恢复，补偿，兑换”；rebel“造反，反叛，起义”。根据上下文，能与 adult children 和 their parents 搭配的动词只有 reside 合理。

例 3：

The sensors will work through the central home computer and they will do much more than just turn the fires and lights on and off for you. They will detect __42__ electrical appliances, plugs or switches. isolate them so that they cannot harm anyone, and then warn you that they need repair.（浙江大学 2013 年）

42. A. fault　　B. faultless　　C. faulty　　D. faultiness

分析：C。选项中的词为同根词，以 fault-开头。fault“故障”，为名词，动词的意思为“挑剔”；faultless“完美的；无缺点的”；faulty“有错误的；有缺点的”；faultiness“不完善，可指责；有过失”，为名词。空格后的 electrical appliances（家用电器）应该用形容词修饰，能与之搭配的只有 faulty，意为“出故障的家用电器”。故答案为 C。

典型真题

例 1：

Science is just one of many ways of knowing, they argued, neither more nor less __29__ than others, like those of Aborigines, Native Americans or women. Furthermore, they defined science as the way of knowing among Western white men and a tool of cultural oppression.（北京大学 2013 年）

29. A. variable　　B. valid　　C. valuable　　D. various

【名师点评】B。形近词辨析。variable“可变的，不定的”；valid“正确的，有效的”；valuable“重要的，有价值的”；various“不同的，多方面的”。选项中，valid 与 science（科学）搭配符合上下文语义，“并不比其他方式更有效”。故答案为 B。

例 2：

Some have a very specific focus, such as storing Web e-mail messages or digital pictures. Others are __15__ to store all forms of digital data.（华中科技大学 2012 年）

15. A. available　　B. capable　　C. applicable　　D. desirable

【名师点评】A。形近形容词辨析。选项中的形容词均以-able 结尾，都可以接 to do sth. 形式。available“可获取的”；capable“能够的，可以的”，一般用于 be capable of 结构，谈及某人能够做某事；applicable“适用的”；desirable“需要的，期望的”。根据句意，只有 A 项符合上下文语义，be available to 意为“可被……利用或得到的”。

实战演练

1. What all this means is that people develop “quasi theories” of human behavior, that is, theories that are not developed in a(n) _____, scientific manner. When doing so, people believe they know why humans do the things they do.

   A. theoretic　　B. subjective　　C. conclusive　　D. objective

2. For other couples, pregnancy was an accident that both husband and wife have accepted willingly or unwillingly. Whatever the _____ to the birth of a child, it is obvious the shift from the role of husband to that of a father is a difficult task.

   A. reply　　B. reaction　　C. readiness　　D. reality

3. Unfashionable goods are made to be discarded. Cars get tinnier and tinnier. You no sooner acquire this year's model than you are thinking hard about its _____. This materialistic outlook has seriously influenced education.

   A. replacement　　B. supplement　　C. requirement　　D. substance

4. Thus, people who need to exert much energy in their work will find relaxation most _____ in leisure. Those with a better education and in professional occupations may tend more to seek recreation and personal development (e. g. cultivation of skills and hobbies) in leisure.

A. preferable B. desirable C. obtainable D. perfect

5. Removing this source of uncertainty allows investors to locate according to economies of scale and may lead to more plants of _____ size, a reduction in unit cost of production, and increase in efficiency.

A. largest B. maximum C. medium D. optimum

6. The explanation for insensitivity to smell seems to be that the brain finds it _____ to keep all smell receptors working all the time but can create new receptors if necessary. This may also explain why we are not usually sensitive to our own smells — we simply do not need to be.

A. ineffective B. incompetent C. inefficient D. insufficient

7. If leadership, at its most basic meaning, consists of getting things done through others, then persuasion is one of the leader's _____ tools, many executives have assumed that this tool is beyond their grasp, available only to the charismatic and the eloquent.

A. fundamental B. rudimentary C. elementary D. essential

8. These ideas are not very controversial, but some other aspects of Emotional Intelligence are. For example, some scholars are offended at the idea that such a _____ and abstract idea would be reduced to a simple numerical measure in the form of an "EQ".

A. complex B. complete C. complaint D. controlled

9. A volcano can be very dangerous because when it is active it sometimes explodes and causes great damage. Diamonds were _____ towards the surface of the earth—millions of years ago by a number of great volcanic explosions.

A. pulled B. pumped C. pursed D. pushed

10. "First, I believe that this nation should commit itself to achieving the goal, before this decade is out, of landing a man on the Moon and returning him safely to the earth. No single space project in this period will be more _____ to mankind, or more important in the long-range exploration of space; and none will be so difficult or expensive to accomplish..." said President Kennedy.

A. expensive B. impressive C. expressive D. explosive

答案解析

1. **D**。形近形容词辨析。选项中的词均以-ive 或-ic 结尾，但词义不同。theoretic "理论上的"；subjective "主观的，个人的"，用在否定的句子里正好与文章意思相反；conclusive "结论性的，决定性的"，放在句中意思不通。只有 objective "客观的，有依据的，无个人偏见的"，放在句子中合乎文意。根据句子意思，作者将这种理论解释为 "不以客观、科学的方法得出的理论"。
2. **B**。形近名词辨析。选项中的词均以 re-开头，但词义不同。reaction "反应"；reply

“答复”；readiness “准备就绪”；reality “现实”。前文讲的是父母对孩子出生的不同反应，后面讲的是父母角色的转变。本句起到承上启下的作用。因此，本题应选能与 to 搭配的 reaction。

3. A。形近名词辨析。三个选项中的词以-ment 结尾，但词义不同。replacement “替代品”，本句是解释前文的 “Unfashionable goods are made to be discarded.”，根据上下文，此处表示产品的更新速度之快，replacement 符合句意。故答案为 A。supplement “补充”；requirement “要求，必要条件”；substance “物质”，这三项都不能表达此处的意思。
4. B。形近形容词辨析。选项中的前三个词以-able 结尾，但词义不同。所填词由 most 修饰，同时又修饰 relaxation，desirable（值得要的，合意的）符合消耗精力过多的人对 relaxation 的需求。故答案为 B。
5. D。形近形容词辨析。选项中的后三个词以-um 结尾，但词义不同。本句主要是讲消除了汇率变动所带来的积极影响。投资者可以根据 economies of scale 来选择投资地，而不同的投资地适合多大的工厂肯定也是不同的，也就是说工厂的大小要因地制宜，选项中的词只有 optimum（最适宜的）符合句意。largest，maximum，medium 用在句中都表明不同的投资地，工厂的大小都是一定的，不符合原文。
6. C。形近形容词辨析。本题所填的形容词用于修饰空格后的 to keep all smell receptors working all the time，从选项看，只有 inefficient 最符合题意，说明让所有感受器一直工作 “效率太低”。ineffective “无效的，不起作用的”；incompetent “不能胜任的”；insufficient “不充足的”。
7. D。形近形容词辨析。fundamental “基本的，基础的”；rudimentary “初步的，基本的，未充分发育的”；elementary “入门阶段的，初步的，基础的”；essential 除了指 “本质的，基本的” 外，还指 “必要的，不可缺少的，最重要的”，强调一事物与另一事物的不可分割性。故答案为 D。
8. A。形近形容词辨析。选项中的词均以 com-或 con-开头，但词义不同。complex “复杂的，难懂的”，与后面的 abstract（抽象的）相呼应；complete “完整的，完全的”；complaint 名词，意为 “抱怨，投诉”；controlled “控制的”。故答案为 A。
9. D。形近动词辨析。选项中的词均以 pu-开头，但词义不同。push “推”；pull “拉”；pump “用泵等抽出”；purse “撅起（嘴唇）”。根据上下文，只有 push 符合上下文意思。故答案为 D。
10. B。形近形容词辨析。选项中的词均以-sive 结尾，但词义不同。impressive “难忘的”；expensive “昂贵的”；expressive “具有表现力的；意味深长的”；explosive “爆炸性的，激烈的”。根据句意，应选 B。



八大解题要诀——固定搭配法

技巧点拨

完形填空要求将不完整的短文恢复为语义和结构都完整的一个语篇，而连接语篇的有短语本身的搭配和篇章结构的逻辑。固定短语的搭配构建了句子的完整和准确性，上下文的逻辑衔接构建了文章的整体脉络。固定搭配作为很直观的考查点，具有独特的特点，即在对于某一固定搭配的考查之中，对于认识和掌握这一固定搭配的考生来说，固定搭配非常简单易选，但对于不熟悉这一固定搭配的考生来讲，往往很难凭借既有英语基础做出正确推断。所以对于体系庞大的固定搭配的不断重复记忆往往变成这一部分备考的突破点所在。只有熟悉其意义和用法，才能准确迅速地做出判断。

例如：

Federal, State and local governments gradually began to exercise a measure of control _____ the day nurseries…

A. over　　B. in　　C. at　　D. about

分析：本题测试名词与介词的搭配，宾语 control 后面的词组 day nurseries 是政府管理的对象，这个空格中填入的介词和名词搭配，要表示“对……实施管理”之意，四个选项中只有 A 可以和原文中的 control 相搭配。

在博士研究生入学英语考试中，完形填空中主要考查的固定搭配题包括对动词短语、名词短语、形容词短语和介词短语的考查。

（1）考生平时应积累和掌握尽可能多的固定短语，牢记常见的固定搭配，尤其是其中心词，只要在文中出现中心词就先联想其所对应的常见搭配，可以很快得出答案。扎实的英语词组、短语、习惯用法等英语固定搭配的知识，特别是对英语词语意义和用法的辨析能力对考博完形填空必不可少。

（2）当选项中的词可以表示相近的含义时，就要考虑从搭配的角度解题。要特别注意空格所在句子的主语，空格前后出现的名词、介词、形容词、副词、不定式、双宾语等，以快速排除不能搭配的选项。

（3）在设题时为了提高难度，常常把一些固定搭配变为被动形式或者拆开进行考查。做此类题目时，关键就是将固定搭配还原。

考点一　动词固定搭配

典型真题

例 1：

The couple _____ their old house and sold it for a vast profit.（华南理工大学 2015 年）

A. did for　　B. did in　　C. did with　　D. did up

【名师点评】 D。did for“对……有效”；“did in”杀害，搞垮；did with“处理，应付”；did up“整修”；根据句意，应选 D 项。句意：这对夫妇把老房子整修了一下，并且把它卖了一个好价钱。

例 2：

Whatever games you take part in, you have to _____ to the established rules of the game.（四川大学 2015 年）

A. confine　　B. confirm　　C. confront　　D. conform

【名师点评】 D。选项中能与 to 搭配使用的动词只有 confine 和 conform。confine to“只限于，关在……里面”；conform to“遵照，符合”。动词词组的宾语为既定的比赛规则，故使用 conform to。

例 3：

The statement said the people of Srebrenica _____ to the president of the United States and France to help halt the offensive.（北京大学 2014 年）

A. aroused　　B. ascribed　　C. acclaimed　　D. appealed

【名师点评】 D。arouse“引起，唤醒，激发”；ascribe to“把……归于，归因于”；acclaim to“称赞，喝彩”；appeal to“呼吁，要求”。将选项代入语境，appeal to 符合语境，表示民众向总统呼吁停止攻击。故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. It is only when the inner skin is injured that the arrangement will be destroyed. Some criminals make use of this to remove their own finger-prints but this is a dangerous and rare step to _____.

   A. make　　B. take　　C. do　　D. adapt

2. They are _____ of free fresh fruit. They want to get back to their herds and start farming again.

   A. seeking　　B. dreaming　　C. longing　　D. searching

3. Having passed what I considered the worst obstacle, our spirits rose. We _____ towards the left of the cliff, where the going was better, though rather steeper.

   A. set　　B. got　　C. made　　D. took

4. He said the same region of the brain has been found in prior studies to play a role in motor control. “If you are driving along and you see a yellow light, you have to inhibit one response in order to _____ on the brake,” he said.

   A. drive　　B. stamp　　C. step　　D. stop

5. If the ape-men had attempted to compete on those terms in the open, they would have

been _____ to failure and extinction. But they were endowed with enormous concealed advantages of a kind not possessed by any of their competitors.

A. driven　　B. doomed　　C. forced　　D. led

6. Out in the open, however, this simple solution was not enough. Climbing a hill would have helped, but in many places the ground was flat. The ape-men _____ the only possible solution.

A. chose　　B. adopted　　C. accepted　　D. took

7. He and colleagues scanned the brains of 30 people—18 women and 12 men between 18 and 36—who were shown pictures of faces expressing strong emotions. They were asked to _____ the feelings in words like sad or angry, or to choose between two gender specific names like "Sally or Harry" that matched the face.

A. describe　　B. generalize　　C. change　　D. categorize

8. Fatherhood is going to have a different meaning and _____ a different response from every man who hears these words. Some feel proud when they receive the news, while others worry, wondering whether they will be good fathers.

A. bring down　　B. bring forth　　C. bring off　　D. bring in

9. Drunk drivers _____ one half of all fatal automobile accidents each year in the United States. Drinking is a leading cause of loss of income and of social and personal problems.

A. add to　　B. account for　　C. amount　　D. sum up

10. The doctors, _____ by the cardiologist Mark Eisenberg of McGill University, seem to view a bag of potato chips as the moral equivalent of a package of cigarettes.

A. preceded　　B. steered　　C. led　　D. pioneered

答案解析

1. B。take a step 为固定搭配，意为"采取措施"。make a step "走一步"。故答案为 B。
2. B。题目中空格后为 of，四个选项中 seek 常与 for，after 搭配，long 与 for 搭配，dream 与 of 搭配，search 与 for 搭配。因此 B 为正确答案。
3. C。make towards（= make for，go forwards，move in the direction of …）意为"朝……走去"，是固定搭配。故答案为 C。
4. C。step on the brake 意为"踩刹车"，为惯用搭配，用在此处符合语义。故答案为 C。
5. B。be doomed to 后一般接 death，failure 等一类的词，意为"注定……"。be driven to 后常接 madness，sorrow 等一类的词。lead to 一般为主动式。
6. D。take 常与 solution，action，measure 搭配，表示"采取"（解决方法、行动、措施），与 approach 搭配，表示"采取"（立场、态度），在后两种情况下可与 adopt 互用。
7. D。根据文章上下文可以推断，此处是研究人员让接受调查的人用悲伤或生气等词来对他们所看到的图片中人的表情进行分类。categorize 意为"以类别分类"，categorize sth. in（into）是习惯表达，故答案为 D。
8. B。bring down "推翻，使……下降"；bring off "圆满完成"；bring in "引入，引进"；这三项不符合句意，且不能与 response 搭配。bring forth "产生，引起"，符合句意。故答案为 B。
9. B。文章是要表达酒后驾车的司机占美国每年所有严重的机动车事故的一半。add to 表

示“增加”；amount 与介词 to 搭配，意为“总计”；sum up 意为“总结”，均不适合文章的意思。account for 意为“占……”，为正确答案。

10. C。lead“领导”，led by 为固定的词组，意为“在……领导或带领下”；precede“处于……前面”；steer“掌握方向”；pioneer“领先”。故答案为 C。

考点二　名词固定搭配

典型真题

例 1：

The whole country was in _____ for Christmas until mid-December.（华南理工大学 2015 年）

A. suspension　　B. suspense　　C. suspending　　D. suspender

【名师点评】 A。in suspension“暂停”，符合放假的语境。in suspending“悬浮”；in suspense“悬而未决”，suspender“悬挂物”。故答案为 A。

例 2：

Pattern recognition, analytical thinking and similar abilities need to be stimulated from birth onward. To destroy this natural curiosity or to attenuate the joy of discovery is the greatest disservice we do __53__ the developing person.（复旦大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 to。考生需要先分析句子的成分。句子的主语由动词不定式 To destroy this natural curiosity or to attenuate the joy of discovery 构成，谓语为 is，后面的 we do 是省略 that 的定语从句，修饰 disservice，句子表语为 the greatest disservice _____ the developing person，disservice 后接 to 为固定用法，意为“对……伤害”。

例 3：

With the gradual improvement of transportation and communications, farmers have now had easier _____ to cities and towns.（首都师范大学 2014 年）

A. access　　B. reach　　C. approach　　D. touch

【名师点评】 A。have access to 为固定搭配，意思为“到达，接触”。在句中表示的意思为：农民们去城市和城镇更容易。故答案为 A。

实战演练

1. The widespread inhuman treatment of migrant workers has aroused much indignation among not only the workers themselves, but also city dwellers with a _____ of justice. Apart from exhausting labor, low pay and maltreatment, migrant people have to put up with some city dwellers' prejudice against them.

   A. notion　　B. conception　　C. idea　　D. sense

2. “A job that challenges and interests a mother and gives her an opportunity to exercise judgment and solve problems clearly has positive consequences for her children's behavior,” indicates _____ professor of sociology Elizabeth Monahan.

   A. vice　　B. deputy　　C. associate　　D. junior

3. Doing so would not only invalidate the patent, it would expose the company and its brand to serious damage when revealed. Apple is many things; stupid is not one of

them. Taking Steve's contribution _____ the patents as legitimate, what lessons might there be in the revelation?

A. with　　B. in　　C. to　　D. on

4. _____ with money, and then more money, in order to buy the conveniences and luxuries of modern life, has brought great changes to the lives of most Frenchmen.

A. Care　　B. Worry　　C. Concern　　D. Anxiety

5. Offices, shops, and factories are discovering the greater efficiency of a short lunch hour in company lunchrooms. In almost all _____ of work emphasis now falls on ever-increasing output.

A. lines　　B. areas　　C. walks　　D. classes

6. Since the late 1950s life in France has indeed taken on qualities of rush, tension and the _____ of material gain. The so-called Americanization of France has its critics.

A. pursuit　　B. discovery　　C. search　　D. research

7. In a panic, I sold all my stocks in the company, paying off margin debt with cash advances from my _____ card. Because I owned so many shares, I lost a small fortune, half of it from money I borrowed from the brokerage company.

A. credit　　B. identity　　C. identification　　D. loan

8. When we take education too seriously, we put standardized _____scores above children, we put lesson plans above teachers, and we put on our blinders, only to see a rather small segment of the child — that segment that can be got easily rather than looking at the child as a whole.

A. paper　　B. checks　　C. test　　D. quizzes

9. "The traditional American affinity for sports and _____ for education combined to form an unbeatable attraction. Every Saturday, educated sports heroes performed for an appreciative audience.

A. support　　B. consideration　　C. reverence　　D. hesitation

10. Even for working people whose incomes are going up, inflation can be a problem. The _____ of living goes up, too. People who work must have even more money to keep up their standard of living.

A. price　　B. level　　C. cost　　D. standard

答案解析

1. **D**。a sense of justice 是固定的名词短语，意为"正义感"，移民工遭受的非人道待遇不仅激起了工人们的极大愤怒，而且激起了那些具有正义感的城市居民的愤怒。notion 和 conception"观念，概念"；idea"想法，主意"，无此搭配。故答案为 D。
2. **C**。associate professor 副教授。
3. **C**。contribution 与 to 为固定搭配，意为"捐助；促成；对……贡献"。
4. **C**。care 后面通常跟 for/about，意为"关心，在乎"；worry 后常跟 about/over，意为"担心，焦虑"；anxiety 后常接 about，意为"忧虑，担心"；只有 concern 后可跟 with，意为"关注，关心"，此外 concern 后也可跟 about/for，意为"关心，担心"。
5. **A**。all lines of work 意为"各行各业"，all walks of life 也有类似的含义，可指"各行各业"，也可指"各色人"等。

6. A。pursuit 意为“追求，寻找”，与 of 搭配；search 虽也有“寻找，追寻”之意，但后面常跟介词 for。discovery 意为“发现”，research 意为“研究，调查”，与上下文意思不符。
7. A。credit card 是固定搭配，意为“信用卡”。根据上文 debt 可知答案为 A。
8. C。习惯用法 test scores，意为“测试的分数”。
9. C。reverence for sth. 为固定搭配，意为“对……的尊敬，敬仰”，符合本题题意。
10. C。the cost of living 为常用搭配，意为“生活费用”。根据词语搭配和上下文用词线索，可推断出答案为 C。

考点三　形容词固定搭配

典型真题

例 1：

Many linguists believe that evolution is __39__ for our ability to produce and use language.（浙江大学 2012 年）

39. A. essential　　B. available　　C. reliable　　D. responsible

【名师点评】 D。固定短语。be responsible for 意为“对……负责，是……的缘由”。其他选项不与 for 搭配。故答案为 D。

例 2：

The Lord Chancellor said introduction of the Human Rights Bill, which makes the European convention on Human Rights legally binding in Britain, laid down that everybody was __45__ to privacy and that public figures could go to court to protect themselves and their families. “Press freedoms will be in safe hands 46 our British judges,” he said.（山东大学 2014 年）

45. A. authorized　B. credited　C. entitled　D. qualified

46. A. with　B. to　C. from　D. by

【名师点评】

45. C。固定搭配。be authorized to do sth. “被授权做某事”；be credited to sth. “归因于……”；be entitled to sth. “有权得到……”，be entitled to privacy 是指“给予隐私权”。故答案为 C。

46. A。固定搭配。be in safe hands with sb. /sth. “因为有某人负责，……会很安全”，为固定搭配。故答案为 A。

实战演练

1. But most employers are _____ to let them do so. The government, which has stepped back from its traditional role as a regulator of work time, should take steps to make shorter hours possible.

   A. discouraged　B. unwilling　C. forbidden　D. inclined

2. In the future, such tolerance is almost _____ to increase. But a headlong plunge toward unbridled individualism is also dangerous. The ideal approach may be to achieve a complementary fusion of the collectivism of Japan's traditional community and the individualism of the new age.

A. known　　B. supposed　　C. prone　　D. certain

3. The landscape and figurative traditions developed together in the 19th century in an atmosphere that was increasingly _____ "painterly" qualities of the interaction of light and color and the expressive qualities of paint handling.
   A. concerned with　B. concerning　C. concerning with　D. concerned for
4. They developed customized software to help them efficiently locate, identify and edit material stored on the Internet. The name Yahoo is _____ to stand for "Yet Another Hierarchical Officious Oracle", but David Filo and Jerry Yang insist that they select the name because they considered themselves yahoos.
   A. doomed　　B. bound　　C. designated　　D. supposed
5. This leads us to the conclusion that violence is not a consequence but the cause. People who are originally _____ to violence may get irritated by games and perform violence in the "real world". But in this case violence in games is a simple justification of the violent nature of the player.
   A. likely　　B. probable　　C. prone　　D. credited
6. This gives rise to enmity between these two groups, and may sow the seeds of social unrest. However, all the suffering mentioned above may be less serious and more too tolerable compared with another headache migrant workers are _____ with: their children's education. Nobody wants their sons or daughters to grow up only to toil and be bullied like them.
   A. engaged　　B. confronted　　C. connected　　D. preoccupied
7. As a result of this outpour which he termed as "repression", they felt easy, and were more _____ to suggestions. Repression, Sigmund pointed was an obstacle to the normal functioning of the human being and if suppressed for a long time can alter the mental health of an individual.
   A. prone　　B. wide　　C. open　　D. disposed
8. They said talking about negative feelings activates a part of the brain _____ for impulse control. "This region of the brain seems to be involved in putting on the brakes," said University of California, Los Angeles researcher Matthew Lieberman, whose study appears in the journal *Psychological Science*.
   A. suitable　　B. responsive　　C. applicable　　D. responsible
9. Using census data for more than one million people in Austria, Denmark and Australia, scientists at the Max Planck Institute for Demographic Research in the northern German town of Restock found the month of birth was _____ life expectancy over the age of 50.
   A. related to　B. concerned with　C. charged with　D. vulnerable to
10. When she stops breast-feeding and starts giving her baby normal food, it's in the hot weeks of summer when babies are _____ to infections of the digestive system.
    A. prone　　B. likely　　C. accessible　　D. dedicated

答案解析

1. **B**。be unwilling to do sth. 意为"不愿意做某事"，为固定搭配。故答案为 B。

2. C。be prone to 指的是“易于……”，指一种倾向。故答案为 C。
3. A。be concerned with 为固定搭配，意为“涉及，与……有关”。故答案为 A。
4. D。根据文意，应填“被认为是”，而 be supposed to 是固定搭配。其他几个也可以跟 to 连用，但是 be doomed to “注定要……”；be bound to “肯定会……”；be designated to “被指定，选定用作某个特别的用途”，均不合题意。
5. C。be prone to 是固定的短语，意为“有……的倾向”，后面一般接名词；be likely to 意为“有可能……”，后面一般接动词；be credited to 意为“钱入账”，后面一般接表示“账户”的名词。故答案为 C。
6. B。be confronted with 为固定的短语，意为“面临着”，移民工面临的另一个让人头疼的问题就是子女的教育问题；be engaged with “与……订婚”；be connected with “与……关联”；be preoccupied with “沉浸于……”，均不符合语义。故答案为 B。
7. C。be open to 为固定的表达法，意思是“某人对某物不太确信”，介词 to 后面经常接诸如 suggestion，criticism，interpretation，discussion 等词；be prone to 和 be disposed to 意思是“具有……的倾向”；be wide to “宽阔的”。
8. D。选项中只有 suitable 和 responsible 可以与 for 连用，本句是说“谈心能够刺激大脑中负责控制冲动的部分”，由此可知答案为 responsible。suitable 常与 for 连用，意为“适当的，相配的”；applicable 常与 to 连用，意为“可适用的，可应用的”；responsive 常与 to 连用，表示“反应的；回答的”。
9. A。be related to 与……相关，由上下文文意可知考查的是出生月份和 50 岁以上人寿命的关联性。be concerned with “关注，关心”；be charged with “被指控”；be vulnerable to “容易受伤的，容易受到……袭击的”。
10. A。be prone to “有……倾向的，易于……的”；be accessible to “能够接近的，达到的”；be dedicated to “奉献给，贡献给”。

考点四　介词固定搭配

典型真题

例 1：

I looked at mum and thought _____ she was as nice as she looked maybe all our lives would have been better.（中科院 2016 年）

A. only if　　B. if only　　C. even if　　D. even though

【名师点评】B。if only 为固定搭配，表示“要是……就好了”，与句中 would have been 的虚拟结构呼应。故答案为 B。句意为：我看着妈妈想：要是她能像看起来那么好就好了，那样我们的生活可能会好过些。

例 2：

They bought the land with an eye _____ building a school for children in the village.（首都师范大学 2014 年）

A. to　　B. of　　C. at　　D. with

【名师点评】A。with an eye to sth/ doing sth 为固定搭配，相当于 for the purpose of，意为“以……为目标，着眼于，考虑到”。句意为：他们买这块的目的是要为村里的孩子建一所学校。故答案为 A。

1. When Dr. Cheek videotaped shy people talking to strangers, and then had raters evaluate how socially skilled the people were, he found that, in the _____ of other people, the shy group had few obvious problems.
   A. name　　B. terms　　C. ease　　D. eyes
2. Though this is very convenient for both buyers and sellers, it should not be forgotten that cheques are not real money: they are quite valueless in themselves. A shop-keeper always runs a certain risk when he accepts a cheque and he is quite _____ his rights if, on occasion, he refuses to do so.
   A. within　　B. beyond　　C. without　　D. out of
3. Police and fire protection and sanitation services are also the responsibilities of local government. Private enterprise in many ways, for the _____ of assuring that business serves the best interests of the people as a whole.
   A. assertion　　B. purpose　　C. asset　　D. assumption
4. Thus, the "typical" Frenchman produces more, earns more and buys more consumer goods than his counterpart of only a generation ago. He gains in creature comforts and ease of life. What he loses _____ is his sense of personal uniqueness, or individuality.
   A. to some extent　　B. by some extent
   C. to some extension　　D. by some extension
5. Many people invest in the stock market hoping to find the next Microsoft and Dell. However, I know _____ personal experience how difficult this really is. For more than a year, I was spending hundreds and sometimes thousands of dollars a day in investing in the market.
   A. at　　B. in　　C. from　　D. by
6. He liked to carry a small steel needle-like tool strapped to his leg and he used this in _____ of a key. Houdini once asked the Chicago police to lock him in prison. They bound him in chains and locked him up, but he freed himself in an instant.
   A. use　　B. place　　C. view　　D. absence
7. The latter may commit crimes _____ lack of adequate parental control. All theories, however, are tentative and are subject to criticism. Changes in the social structure may indirectly affect juvenile crime rates.
   A. on　　B. in　　C. for　　D. with
8. However, to their disappointment, they find that their kids are _____ a serious disadvantage in this regard. They have to go to special schools for migrant workers' children, which are cheap but rather ill equipped with teachers and teaching facilities. If they drop out, they have no choice but to do hard manual jobs like their parents.
   A. in　　B. at　　C. over　　D. on
9. I first met Albert Einstein in 1935, at the famous Institute for Advanced Study in Princeton, N. J. He had been among the first to be invited to the Institute, and was offered carte blanche as to salary. _____ the director's dismay, Einstein asked for an impossible sum: it was far too small. The director had to plead with him to accept a

larger salary.

A. In　　B. To　　C. For　　D. Of

10. More than 40 thousand readers told us what they looked for in close relationships, what they expected of friends, what they were willing to give in _____, and how satisfied they were with the quality of their friendships.

A. return　　B. reply　　C. addition　　D. turn

答案解析

1. D。in the eyes of sb. 意为“在某人看来”；in the name of sb. 意为“以某人的名义”。根据上下文，选用 eyes 最合逻辑。
2. A。within one's right 意为“有权……，在某人的权限内”。故答案为 A。
3. B。for the purpose of 意为“出于……的目的”。故答案为 B。
4. A。to some extent 意为“在某种程度上”，其他的选项都不对。故答案为 A。
5. C。句意为：我通过亲身经历才知道这绝非易事。from experience “凭经验，从经验中”。故答案为 C。
6. B。in place of 为固定搭配，意为“代替……位置”，符合句意。故答案为 B。
7. C。选项中只有 for 可与 lack of 连用，意为“因为缺乏”。故答案为 C。
8. B。at a disadvantage 意思是“处于困难或者劣势的状态中而难以成功”，让农民工苦恼的是，他们发现自己的小孩在受教育方面处于严重劣势；该短语中的介词 at 不能用其他介词代替。故答案为 B。
9. B。to one's dismay 意为“使某人沮丧的是……”，为固定搭配。故答案为 B。
10. A。in return 是固定搭配，意为“作为回报，报偿”。本句意为“他们愿意用什么来回报朋友”。其他三个选项都可以和 in 搭配，但在此处不符合句意。in reply “答复”；in addition “除此以外还，除了”；in turn “轮流”。



八大解题要诀——语法分析法

语法部分的测试是英语知识运用的主要内容之一。语法包括词法和句法，词法研究词形的变化，如名词的数、格，动词的时态、语态等。句法研究句子结构，如句子的成分、语序以及句子的种类等。语法结构问题，主要是限定词、主谓一致、非谓语动词、虚拟语气、从句（包括连接词和关系代词或关系副词）等方面的问题。特别是，在特定的语境中应该选用何种时态或何种句子结构，往往是容易出错的关键。做完形题时，应首先以句子为单位，运用所学的语法知识做出分析和判断。

考点一　限定词

技巧点拨

限定词是与名词密切相关的词类，包括冠词［a(n)，the］、形容词性指示代词（this，that，these，those）、形容词性物主代词（my，your，our 等）、形容词性不定代词（both，every，much，some 等）、数词（one，two 等；first，second 等；one-third，three-fifths 等）和特指形容词（next，only 等）。限定词的使用并非随意，受着名词种类及形式的制约，与名词有着特定的搭配关系，在多个限定词连用时相互之间还有着相对固定的位置。

一、限定词与名词的搭配关系

（1）能与三类名词搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 the，some，any，no，other，whose 以及 my，your 等物主限定词和名词所属格（John's，my friend's）等能与三类名词搭配。

（2）只能与名词单数搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 a(n)，one，another，each，every，either，neither，many a，such a 等只能与单数名词搭配。

例如：

neither sentence，such a book

（3）只能与复数名词搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 both，two，three，another two/three，many，(a) few，several，these，those，a (great) number of 等只能与复数名词搭配。

例如：

both workers，several students，another two students

（4）只能与不可数名词搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 a（little）bit of，a large amount of，a great deal of，（a）little，much，less，（the）least 等只能与不可数名词搭配。

例如：

a bit of water，a large amount of money，much noise，less oil

（5）能与单、复数名词搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 the first，the second，the last，the next 等既可与单数名词搭配，也可与复数名词搭配。

例如：

the first rose，the next meetings

（6）能与单数名词和不可数名词搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 this，that 等能与单数名词和不可数名词搭配。

例如：

this/that job，this/that work

（7）能与复数名词和不可数名词搭配的限定词。有些限定词如 a lot of，lots of，plenty of，enough，more，most，such，other 等可与复数名词和不可数名词搭配。

例如：

a lot of books，most people，other bread

二、限定词相互之间的位置

限定词往往是两个或两个以上连用限定一个名词。这就涉及它们相互之间的前后顺序。实际上，限定词的位置是有规律可循的。根据其位置的前后，限定词可分为三类：

（1）中位限定词

定冠词和不定冠词：a(n)，the

物主限定词（物主代词和 's 属格名词）：my，your，Mary's，my friend's

指示限定词：this，that，these，those

不定数量词：some，few，no，any，every，each，either，neither，enough

疑问限定词和关系限定词：what(ever)，which(ever)，whose

（2）前位限定词

all，both，half；double，twice，three times 等；

one-third，two-fifths 等；

what，such（a/an）（跨类限定词）。

（3）后位限定词

one，two，three 等；

first，second，third 等；next，last，other，another 等；many，much，（a）few，（a）little，fewer，（the）fewest，less，（the）least，more，most，several 等；

plenty of，a lot of，lots of，a great/large/good number of，a great/ good deal of，a large/ small amount of 等。

如果一个名词词组带有上述三类限定词，其搭配关系总是按照“前位——中位——后位”的顺序排列。

例如：

all the four teachers，all these last few days
前 中 后　　前 中 后 后

完形填空中，关于限定词的解题技巧：

第一步：掌握上边提到的限定词语法。

第二步：分析句子结构。若空格后的名词或者“形容词＋名词”前没有形容词性物主代词、不定代词、冠词等限定词时，很可能是填限定词。

第三步：理解上下文和句子的意思。根据所需意义选择恰当的限定词。

典型真题

例 1：

However, marriage is no longer as widespread as it was several decades ago. __39__ of American adults who are married declined from 72 percent in 1970 to 60 percent in 2002.（浙江大学 2011 年）

39. A. A proportion　B. The proportion　C. The number　D. A number

【名师点评】B。名词与冠词用法。proportion“比例”；number“数量”。根据下文的 72 percent 可知 proportion 是一个已知数，故空格处需定冠词 the。

例 2：

I'd like to believe, as many of my friends seem to, that this practice won't do much harm. But even as I've heard over the past decade that things weren't __36__ bad, that the music industry was moving to a new, better business model, each year's numbers have been worse.（北京大学 2011 年）

36. A. so　B. this　C. that　D. much

【名师点评】C。形容词性指示代词。空格所在的句意为：正如我在过去 10 年内听说的那样，形势并没有那么糟糕……。这里用 that 代替上文提到的一种情况。故选项 C 正确。

例 3：

Are we at the beginning of another Age of Exploration? Perhaps even more important, are we at the beginning of __51__ Age of Colonization?（四川大学 2011 年）

51. A. another　B. an　C. the　D. one

【名师点评】A。形容词性不定代词。空格前一句有相同的结构 another Age of Exploration，所以此处也应该使用这个不定代词。故答案为 A。

例 4：

Once it is given a “program” — that is, a carefully worked out set of instructions devised by a technician trained in computer language — a computer can gather __61__ information for many purposes.（南开大学 2010 年）

61. A. many　B. all kinds of　C. a great number of　D. a wide range of

【名师点评】D。此题考查修饰不可数名词的限定词。information 为不可数名词，只能用 a wide range of 来修饰，其他选项均修饰可数名词。故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. When she had successfully done this, she took the thread out of the needle again and handed _____ the needle and the thread to the judge, saying, “Now it is your turn. I suppose you drive a car, and that you are quite sure about your own eyesight.”

   A. both　B. all　C. neither　D. either

2. On the other hand, mothers whose jobs are less controlled by supervisors and _____ must work closely with other people probably rely less on physical punishment, instead of encouraging children to think themselves about consequences of their actions and

take responsibility for their behavior.

A. whom　　B. whose　　C. who　　D. those

3. And they are made _____ worse by our willful blindness to risk as much as our reluctance to work together before everything goes to hell.

A. little　　B. less　　C. more　　D. much

答案解析

1. A. 限定词。指针和线两者，所以用 both。
2. C。定语从句的用法。先行词为 mothers，且在从句中做主语，因此引导词既可以为 who，也可以为 that（不能省略）。
3. D。比较级。在比较级前面添加副词，只能用副词原级，不能再用比较级。B 和 C 显然错误。根据文章的感情色彩，文章表示的是贬义，在嘲笑人们喜欢做马后炮的事情，因此用 much 不用 little.

考点二　主谓一致

技巧点拨

在英语中，最重要的一致关系就是主谓一致。主谓一致指谓语动词要与主语的中心词语在“人称”和“数”的方面保持一致。主谓一致主要遵循三个原则：

（1）语法一致

根据主语的单复数来确定谓语动词的单复数，在语法上保持一致。the girl plays 和 the girls play 完全符合语法一致的原则。如果主语是复数，谓语动词用原形；如果主语是单数，那么谓语动词也用单数。

（2）意义一致

动词的单复数取决于主语所表达的概念，而不仅仅由表面的语法标记决定。如：The basketball team are warming up. 集合名词 team 本身就有复数的意思，表示整个球队的队员们。做题时就应该考虑主语表达的真正意思。

（3）就近原则

谓语动词的单、复数取决于最靠近它的主语。如：Mike is one of the brightest students who have graduated from Harvard University. 在这个句子里，最靠近先行词的是 students，而不是 one，所以从句中的动词采用复数形式。

关于主谓一致的问题，另外还有几点需要注意：

（1）以单数名词或代词、动词不定式短语、动名词短语或从句做主语时，谓语动词一般用单数形式；主语为复数时，谓语动词用复数形式。

（2）由 what 引导的主语从句，后面的谓语动词多数情况用单数形式，但若表语是复数或 what 从句是一个带有复数意义的并列结构时，主句的谓语动词用复数形式。

（3）两个或两个以上做主语的单数名词用 and 连接，谓语用复数。但若表示一个集合体时则用单数。用 and 连接的两个名词若被 no，each，every，many a 修饰，则谓语动词用单数。复数名词用作书、电影、戏剧、报刊、国家等名称时，谓语动词用单数。and 后面加 no 或 not，谓语也用单数形式。

（4）以连词 or，either… or ，neither… nor，there be，not only… but also 连接的复

合主语，其谓语与其相邻的那个名词的数保持一致。

例如：Neither my friends nor I was able to persuade him to accept our advice.

（5）either，neither，each，every 或 no + 单数名词和由 some，any，no，every 构成的复合不定代词都做单数看待。

（6）a number of 表示“很多”的意思时，修饰可数名词的复数；the number of 表示“数量”做主语时，其谓语动词用单数形式。

（7）由“a lot of（lots of，plenty of，the rest of ）+名词”构成的短语以及由“分数或百分数 +名词”构成的短语做主语时，其谓语动词的数要根据短语中后面名词的数而定。

（8）what，who，which，any，more，most，all 等代词可以是单数，也可以是复数，主要依意思而定。

（9）形容词加定冠词 the 表示一类人时，谓语动词用复数。

（10）当主语后面跟由 with，together with，but，along with，like，in addition to，as well as，as much as，rather than，except 等连接的词组时，其谓语动词的形式依主语的单复数形式而定。如：Statistics as well as physics always causes me a lot of headaches。学科的名词都要用单数谓语动词，所以应该是 causes。

（11）当动名词短语、不定式短语或从句做主语时，谓语动词用单数。如果用 and 连接两个从句或短语做主语，则需看是表示一个整体还是不同的两件事。注意：从句做主语时有时需根据表语来定。

（12）倒装句 there be 中的主谓一致也要运用就近原则。例如：There is a pen. 这句话的主语并不是 there，而是 a pen，用陈述句语序来说，应该是 A pen is there. 如果是两支铅笔和一支钢笔，就该说 There are two pencils and a pen. 如果是一支钢笔和两支铅笔就成了 There is a pen and two pencils. 在倒装句中，要找到真正的主语。

完形填空中，关于主谓一致，考生需要掌握的技巧：

（1）语法一致、意义一致和就近原则。

（2）找对主语。主语是复数形式的时候，要确定它的单复数意义，若是单数意义就要用谓语动词的单数形式，若是复数意义就用谓语动词的原形。

（3）在倒装句中，找对主语，再根据就近原则来决定谓语动词的单复数。

典型真题

例 1：

New research from Australia supports the belief that many pet owners have — it shows that pets are good for your health. The findings of this new study suggest that people who have pets are at less risk from heart disease than __33__ who do not.（吉林大学 2012 年）

33. A. others　　B. ones　　C. these　　D. those

【名师点评】D。指示代词。who do not have pets 应该用复数 those 指代。故答案为 D。

例 2：

Many years ago people thought the earth was flat. They believed that the sky __61__ a big upside-down bowl and that the sun，moon，and stars were lamps hanging from the top of the bowl.（北京航空航天大学 2012 年）

61. A. is　　B. was　　C. had been　　D. were

【名师点评】B。主谓一致和时态。根据空格后的“that the sun，moon，and stars

were lamps hanging from the top of the bowl”是过去时，所以这个空格也应该是过去时，又由于主语 the sky 是单数，所以此处填 was。B 项符合文意。

实战演练

1. Electronic futures markets that are based on econometric indices of house prices by city, already begun by City Index and IG Index in Britain and now _____ developed in the United States, will enable home-equity insurers to hedge the risks that they acquire by writing these policies.
   A. is　　B. being　　C. been　　D. are
2. Professor Taylor, with six of his students, _____ a conference in Boston organized to compare current practice in the United States with those of other nations.
   A. are attending　　B. is attending　　C. attending　　D. is attended
3. They said, the sample size, 1.2 million, is impressive—far greater than that of a typical survey. And the number of people whom the study shows to be paying attention to the news online _____ consistent with the low ratings of cable news during the same period.
   A. was　　B. is　　C. are　　D. were

答案解析

1. **B**。动词时态。being 代入后，时态上与空格前的 now 呼应，构成分词结构，与前面的 already begun 并列为后置定语，共同修饰 Electronic futures markets（电子期货市场）。
2. **B**。主谓一致。主语带有 with 附加成分，谓语的数不受附加成分的影响仍然与主语保持一致。
3. **B**。主谓一致。“the number of + 复数名词/代词”结构中的中心词是 number；“a number of + 复数名词/代词”结构中的中心词是 of 后的复数名词或代词，故谓语动词分别用单、复数。故答案为 B。

考点三　非谓语动词

技巧点拨

非谓语动词内容繁多，用法复杂，是考生在英语学习过程中的最大难点，也是博士研究生入学考试的必考项目，在完形填空中，经常会出现。非谓语动词的用法在**词汇结构**一周已讲解，这里不再赘述。但在完形填空中，其解题技巧略有不同，具体内容如下：

（1）牢记核心意义。不定式表将来或能够，动词-ing 形式表主动或进行，过去分词表被动或完成。

（2）分析句子成分。非谓语动词在句中可充当主语、宾语、定语、表语、补语以及状语。

（3）寻找逻辑主语。非谓语动词虽然在语法上没有主语，但表示的仍是动作，在意义上会有一个动作的发出者，这个发出者就是它的逻辑主语。

- 做主语补足语、表语和状语时，逻辑主语为句子的主语；
- 做宾语补足语，逻辑主语为宾语；

❖ 做定语，逻辑主语是所修饰的先行词；
❖ 复合结构自带逻辑主语。
（4）把握前后主语一致性和主被动关系。
❖ 非谓语动词与其逻辑主语是主动关系，用现在分词或不定式的主动式；
❖ 非谓语动词与其逻辑主语是被动关系，用过去分词或不定式的被动式。
❖ 如果表被动进行，用现在分词的被动式或不定式的被动进行式。
（5）根据上下文的语境和意义确定时间关系。
❖ 如果非谓语动词与句子的谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生，用一般式；
❖ 如果发生在之前，则用完成式，如果强调正在进行，则用进行式；
❖ 如果动作在将来发生，则用不定式。
（6）分析特殊情况。
主要是指一些习惯用法、固定搭配等。详见**词汇结构**部分。

典型真题

例 1：

Ancient scientists studied the skies by simple instruments. The first person __70__ a telescope was named Galileo. In 1610 he discovered four moons around the planet Jupiter.（北京航空航天大学 2012 年）

70. A. to use　　B. used　　C. uses　　D. of using

【名师点评】A。动词不定式。主语 the first person 和 a telescope 是主动关系，所以用 to use。A 项符合文意。

例 2：

At its most basic level，a cloud storage system needs just one data server __18__ to the Internet. A client e. g. ，a computer user subscribing to a cloud storage service sends copies of files over the Internet to the data server，which then records the information. When the client wishes to retrieve the information，he or she accesses the data server through a Web-based interface. The server then either sends the files back to the client or allows the client to access and manipulate the files on the server itself.（华中科技大学 2012 年）

18. A. connecting　　B. connected　　C. connect　　D. being connected

【名师点评】B。后置定语。划分句子成分后，__18__ to the Internet 做 data server 的后置定语。data server 应该是被连接到网络，使用 connect 的过去分词形式。

例 3：

“We weren't able to break the games down by educational versus non-educational or nonviolent versus violent，” says Swing，__35__ that the impact that different types of games may have on attention is a ripe area for future research.（中国科学院 2013 年）

35. A. adding　　B. adds　　C. added　　D. having added

【名师点评】A。分词结构。分析句子结构，句子不缺谓语，应用分词形式，前后构成主动关系，用 adding 形式。故答案为 A。

例 4：

Who won the World Cup 1994 football game? What happened at the United Nations? How did the critics like the new play? Soon after an event takes place，newspapers are on

the street __2__ the details. Wherever anything happens in the world, reporters are on the spot to gather the news. (华中科技大学 2013 年)

2. A. to give　　B. giving　　C. given　　D. being given

【名师点评】B。现在分词表示主动，报纸主动报道事件细节，所以用 giving。故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. Salesmen depend upon the person-to-person approach in trying to persuade consumers to buy. Advertising, however, has to depend upon reaching consumers indirectly through messages on radio and television, in the newspapers, or even on handbills _____ you in the street.
   A. give　　B. given to　　C. to give　　D. given
2. Typical examples are the driver who brakes violently to allow a car to emerge from a side street at some hazard to following traffic, when a few seconds later the road would be clear anyway; or the man who waves a child across a zebra _____ into the path of oncoming vehicles that may be unable to stop in time.
   A. crossing　　B. cross　　C. being crossed　　D. to cross
3. Remember, all the goods _____ today, have to be sold. And you cannot buy something if you do not know about it. Later, we shall discuss the pros and cons of advertising. First, let us see how advertisers try to reach the teenage consumer.
   A. being produced　　B. produced　　C. producing　　D. to be produced

答案解析

1. B。非谓语动词。根据句子的结构，紧跟在 handbills 后的短语应该是一个定语。“传单”应做“给”的宾语，是“被给”的，所以，分词短语应该用被动语态。故答案为 B。
2. A。非谓语动词。现在分词 crossing 在句中做 a child 的补语，表动作正在进行。故答案为 A。
3. A。非谓语动词。根据句子的结构，紧跟 the goods 的短语应该是做定语的分词短语，根据上下文的意思和时间指示词 today 所示，此处应该用 produce 的进行时的被动语态表示。故答案为 A。

考点四　虚拟语气

技巧点拨

虚拟语气历来是英语学习中的一个难点，尤其是它还有一些特殊形式和用法，是博士研究生入学考试的常考项目，在完形填空中，经常会出现。虚拟语气的基本构成和解题技巧在**词汇结构**一周已讲解，这里不再赘述。

典型真题

例 1：

The discovery has stunned scientists, who __28__ that around 50bn tons of meltwater

were being shed each year and not being replaced by new snowfall. (北京大学 2012 年)

28. A. believed B. had believed C. have believed D. were believing

【名师点评】B。本句的句意为：这一发现震惊了科学家，与科学家以前的看法不同，所以用过去完成时，had believed 意为“以前一直认为……”。故答案为 B。

例 2：

The experienced driver looked over the engine carefully lest it _____ on the way. (南京师范大学 2015 年)

A. goes wrong B. would go wrong C. went wrong D. go wrong

【名师点评】D。lest 一般跟 should do 的虚拟结构，should 可以省略，故答案为 D。句意为：这位经验丰富的司机仔细地检查了发动机以防车在路上抛锚。

实战演练

1. A magazine has pointed out that headache pills without sold name can be sold very cheaply, but the same pills, if advertised _____ a cost of half a million pounds a year, cost five times competition.
   A. they were B. it was C. there was D. there were
2. There is a general understanding among the members of the Board of Directors that chief attention _____ to the undertaking that is expected to bring the highest profit.
   A. is given B. gives C. should be given D. must be given
3. Had the little Scotch lad, Ferguson, allowed the busy brain to go to sleep while he tended sheep on the hillside, instead of calculating the position of the stars by a string of beads, he _____ become a famous astronomer.
   A. would never have B. had never
   C. have never D. would have never

答案解析

1. D。虚拟语气。根据题意，这里应是一个 there be 的结构，由于 if 引导的从句是虚拟语气，所以答案是 D。
2. C。虚拟语气。understanding 如同 suggestion, motion, plan, idea, order 等词一样，其后同位语从句中的谓语动词须用虚拟语气，should 加动词原形或直接用动词原形。句意为：董事会的成员一致认为主要的精力应该放在为取得最高利润而做的努力上面。
3. A。虚拟语气。had sb. done sth. 意为“……坏事”，为虚拟语气结构；sb. would never have done sth. 意为“……好事”。

考点五 从句

技巧点拨

从句是相对于主句而言的，即它是从属于某一个主句，而不能单独做一个句子。在英语中，主要有三大从句，即名词性从句（包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句）、形容词性从句（即定语从句）、副词性从句（即状语从句，包括时间、条件、结果、目的、原因、让步、地点、方式等）。考博英语完形填空专门测试从句的题目不多，重点在

词汇及对上下文的理解上，但完形填空一旦考从句，就一定是与定语从句、同位语从句、比较句、主语从句和宾语从句等有关。

(1) 定语从句

定语从句在句中做定语，其作用是修饰主句的某个名词性成分，相当于形容词，所以又称为形容词性从句。通常定语从句皆置于它所修饰的名词或代词之后，被修饰的名词或代词叫作先行词，而引导定语从句的词称为关系词。常用的关系词有 that，which，who，whom，whose，as 等，但在此提醒考生们绝对没有“what”。who，whom，whose 指人，who 是主格，在定语从句中用作主语；whom 是宾格，在定语从句中用作宾语；whose 是属格，在定语从句中用作定语。

注意：① 定语从句的关系词一般紧跟在其先行词之后，如：I will never forget the day when I first came to Beijing. 关系副词 when 引导的定语从句紧跟其先行词 the day 之后。

② 有时也可以与先行词分离，如：A new teacher will come tomorrow，who will teach you Chinese. 关系代词 who 引导的定语从句与其先行词 teacher 分离。

③ 非限制性定语从句只与先行词有一种松散的修饰关系，在口语中用停顿的方法表示，在书面语中用逗号分开。因此从句中的关系代词不能省略。that 一般不引导非限制性定语从句。

如：Water，which is a clear liquid，is the giver and taker of life.

They gave up the plan，which was a very good one.

(2) 同位语从句

同位语从句在句中做某一名词的同位语，一般位于该名词（如：belief，fact，hope，idea，doubt，news，rumor，conclusion，evidence，suggestion，problem，decision，discovery，explanation 等）之后，说明该名词的具体内容。引导同位语从句的连接词有：that，what，which，who，whoever，whom，whomever 等。

(3) 比较句

英语中表示同级比较的词有 as +形容词或副词原形 +as，the same as，not so +形容词或副词原形 +as（不如……）等。英语中的差级比较，仅限于两者之间，常由形容词或副词的比较级形式 +than 构成。

注意：①表示比较的特殊词语：inferior to，senior to，prior to，superior to，junior to，preferable to，minor to 等。

②特殊的比较句型：not so much…as…（与其说……，不如说……）；not/no more…than…（两者一样都不……）；not any/no less…than…（两者都……）；just as…so…（正如……）等。

③英语中的最高级常用 the +形容词或副词的最高级形式，注意这种形式仅限于三者或三者以上，且常有表示比较范围的介词 in，over，of，among 等。

(4) 主语从句

主语从句在复合句中做主语，由 what 等代词引导，表示“所……的（东西）”，实际上等于一个先行词加上一个定语从句，也可以由-ever 等代词引导。

(5) 宾语从句

① 由连接代词或副词引起的从句，还可以做介词的宾语。

② 由 what 等连接代词引起的从句。

③ 由 that 引起的从句，在 believe，think，suppose 后常不加 that。在 think，believe，suppose，expect 等动词引起的宾语从句中，有时谓语尽管是否定的意思，也只将前面的词否定。

④ 有时在宾语和谓语之间可以插入一个间接宾语或状语。

⑤ 有时在这种带有复合宾语的句子中，that 引导的从句常常移到后面，前面用一个 it 做形式宾语。

典型真题

例 1：

The sample polling populations so far suggests that we may have entered __22__ will be the planet's sixth great extinction wave.（中国科学院 2012 年 3 月）

22. A. that　　B. what　　C. when　　D. which

【名师点评】B。宾语从句。句子中缺少从句的主语成分，选项中只有 what 可以充当宾语从句的主语。故答案为 B。

例 2：

__27__ can do little in these cases is terribly distressing for everyone involved but is certainly understandable.（中国科学院 2013 年 10 月）

27. A. Though　　B. Which　　C. That　　D. While

【名师点评】C。主语从句。句子的主语为主语从句，选项中只有 that 可以引导主语从句，故答案为 C。

例 3：

The old saying _____ genius is one per cent inspiration and ninety-nine per cent perspiration is applicable for anyone who gets successful.（华南理工大学 2015 年）

A. which　　B. of　　C. that　　D. what

【名师点评】C。由先行词 the old saying "古语" 可知，从句为同位语从句，是对先行词内容的进一步解释。一般使用关系代词 that，故答案为 C。

实战演练

1. But when he asked the shy people themselves _____ they had done, they were unanimous in saying that they had been social flops.

   A. what　　B. whatever　　C. how　　D. however

2. This has led to a proliferation of types of home loan, some of _____ have improved risk-management characteristics.

   A. that　　B. which　　C. what　　D. how

3. We are also beginning to see new kinds of insurance for homes, which will make it possible to protect the value of _____, for most people, is the single most important component of their wealth.

   A. what　　B. those　　C. where　　D. it

答案解析

1. C。名词性从句。从句 they had done 缺少宾语，根据上下文，此句意为：研究者问了别人对害羞者行为的评价后，又问他们自己觉得自己表现怎么样。因此选用 how 最合适。
2. B。非限制性定语从句。根据原文中的逗号判定，此处为非限制性定语从句，用 which 引导。
3. A。宾语从句。what 引导宾语从句“what，for most people，is the single most…”，做介词 of 的宾语。



八大解题要诀——词汇重复法

考点一　词汇同现法

技巧点拨

词汇同现是一种词汇的衔接手段，这种词的同现关系与语篇范围关系密切。一篇特定的语篇必然要围绕某个特定的主题展开，那么与这个主题相关的词汇出现的频率就比较高，比较集中，而其他词汇就不大可能会出现或根本不会出现。同现实际上就是一组具有相同倾向性的词语，这些词语所表现的倾向性往往与中心主线中的导向一致，或者说这些同现词语的任务就是对文章的导向进行展开支持。因此，文章的整体导向——这个已知线索可以成为解出这些同现词语的关键信息。

(1) 场所同现

场所同现是考博英语完形填空经常考查的一种技巧，要求考生根据短文中出现的场所名词判断与之相关的人物、动作、事件。确定的场所中有相对固定的事物，利用这种生活常识，考生便可轻易锁定答案。

例如：

…Sometimes it may not be so easy to know exactly what is right or wrong. Some people choose not to eat meat because they believe that it is cruel to eat animals, but other argue that they can eat meat and still be kind to animals; some insist that stealing is always wrong, but others think that one does not need to feel so guilty when stealing some food to eat, if he lives in a really poor area and he is _____. Rules help us live together in harmony, because they show us the right way to treat others.

A. begging　　B. starving　　C. growing　　D. wandering

分析：B。根据上下文以及前文中的 he lives in a really poor area，这里应选 starving，属于场所同现。

(2) 因果同现

利用语义逻辑关系中的因果关系，结合题目中已给的因或果信息，进行合理推理，确定相应的果或因信息。

例如：

“Hooray!” shouted the crowd. It was the loudest _____ I had ever heard at a meet. The first-place runner was two laps ahead of me when she crossed the finishing line.

A. cheer　　B. shout　　C. cry　　D. noise

分析：A。句中 Hooray，meet，runner，laps，finishing line 和 cheer，shout 为同现词汇，都为赛跑比赛中所用的词汇，尽管选项中有 shout 一词，但由下文 two laps ahead of me when she crossed the finishing line 可知，cheer（喝彩声）最为贴切。

（3）结构同现

结构同现是指利用语言结构和形式上的固定搭配关系，同时结合上下文语义，选定固定结构中所缺失的部分为正确选项。

比如：for one thing…for another；either… or；neither… nor…；not only… but also…；one…another…等。

例如：

Sometimes he would invite a student to a game of chess. _____, he would join student groups to discuss a variety of subjects: agriculture，diving，mathematics.

A. As a matter of fact　　B. Later on

C. Other times　　D. In general

分析：C。sometimes 与 other times 为结构上的同现关系，故答案为 C。

（4）同义同现

指利用语义学中的同义词和近义词，快速找出空格前或空格后意思相近或相同的词项，与选项所给词进行对比，意思相同或相近者便是正确选项。

例如：

Suddenly，I wanted to write about that，but I wanted to _____ it down simply for my own joy，not for Mr. Fleagle，my composition teacher. It was a moment I wanted to recapture and hold for myself. I wanted to relive the pleasure of that evening.

A. settle　　B. put　　C. take　　D. let

分析：B。句中 write about that 与 put it down 之间构成同义同现关系。故答案为 B。

再例如：

All you need is a webcam and your pretty face to access your PC. No more _____, confusing passwords to remember or change every few months.

A. simple　　B. complicated　　C. special　　D. useful

分析：B。与 confusing（易混的）同现的单词，应当是 complicated（复杂的），共同修饰 passwords，属于同义同现。

典型真题

例 1：

This demonstrates that interaction with other human beings is necessary for proper language development. Some linguists believe that this is even more basic to human language __52__ than any innate capacities.（浙江大学 2012 年）

52. A. acquisition　B. appreciation　　C. requirement　　D. alternative

【名师点评】A。同义同现。本句中的 this 和 even more basic 分别指代上句的 interaction with other human beings 和 necessary，此处所填词对应上文中的 language development。也就是说，language acquisition 语言习得。故答案为 A。

例 2：

Acceptance of this relativistic worldview undermines democracy and leads not to

tolerance but to authoritarianism. John Locke, one of Jefferson's "trinity of three greatest men", showed why almost three centuries ago. Locke watched the arguing factions of Protestantism, each claiming to be the one true religion, and asked: How do we know something to be true? What is the basis of knowledge? In 1689 he defined what knowledge is and how it is grounded in observations of the physical world in *An Essay Concerning Human Understanding*. Any claim that fails this test is "but faith, or opinion, but not knowledge". It was this idea — that the world is knowable and that objective, empirical knowledge is the most __37__ basis for public policy that stood as Jefferson's foundational argument for democracy. (北京大学 2013 年)

37. A. practical B. equal C. useful D. equitable

【名师点评】D。场所同现。根据上下文一直在说民主判断，空格应填入与 democracy 对应的形容词，equitable（公平的，公正的）符合上下文，意为"以经验为依据的知识是制定公共政策最公正的基础"。故答案为 D。

例 3：

We have __59__ to promote the excitement and exhilaration of discovery. We have not promoted the fact that it is not only very common but very reasonable to have a successful research career and an exciting and normal personal life. (复旦大学 2012 年)

【名师点评】failed。结构同现。空格所在的句子与后面的句子 We have not promoted...为结构上的同现关系，表达同向的意思，所以空格应填入与 not 对应且表示否定的词，fail to do sth. 表示"未能做……，没能做……"。再根据空格前面的 have，说明时态是现在完成时，所以答案为动词的过去分词形式 failed。

实战演练

1. Here, shoppers walked into stores to look at all sorts of merchandise: clothing, furniture, hardware, groceries. In addition, some shops offered _____. These shops included drugstores, restaurants, shoe repair stores, and barber or hairdressing shops.
   A. medical care B. food C. cosmetics D. service
2. Measurements are taken of the amount of work done, and the buildup of heat in the body. _____ joints and stretched muscles cannot perform as well, it has been found, as joints and muscles in their normal positions. The same person is then tested again, using a tool designed according to the suggestions made by Dr. Tichauer.
   A. Distracted B. Twisted C. Exaggerated D. Tilted
3. First of all, there is a commission charge (usually a fixed amount); secondly, the price at which the traveler purchases foreign currency for domestic currency differs from the price of exchanging back surplus foreign currency. The removal of these _____ costs constitutes a gain from monetary union.
   A. transaction B. traveling C. purchase D. finance
4. Proper street behavior in the United States requires a nice balance of attention and inattention. You are supposed to look at a _____ just enough to show that you are aware of his presence. If you look too little, you appear haughty or furtive, too much and you are inquisitive.

A. foreigner　　B. friend　　C. stranger　　D. passerby

5. You interpret this as a sign—a polite one—that he is interested in you as a person rather than just in the topic of conversation. Probably you also feel that he is both self-confident and sincere. All this has been demonstrated in elaborate _____. Subjects sit and talk in the psychologists' laboratory, innocent of the fact that their eye behavior is being observed from a one way vision screen.

A. interviews　　B. experiments　　C. observations　　D. surveys

6. To outsiders, Americans seem tied to the clock. People in other cultures value relationships more than schedules. In these societies, people don't try to _____ time, but to experience it. Many Eastern cultures, for example, view time as a cycle. The rhythm of nature — from the passing of the seasons to the monthly cycle of the moon — shapes their view of events. People learn to respond to their environment. As a result, they find it easier to "go with the flow" than Americans, who like plans to be fixed and unchangeable.

Even Americans would admit that no one can master time. Time — like money — slips all too easily through our fingers. And time — like the weather — is very hard to predict.

A. catch　　B. contain　　C. control　　D. cherish

7. In one fairly typical experiment, subjects were induced to cheat while performing a task, then were _____ and observed. It was found that those who had cheated met the interviewer's eyes less often than was normal, an indication that "shifty eyes" — to use the mystery writers stock phrase — can actually be a tip off to an attempt to deceive or to feelings of guilt.

A. interviewed　　B. inquired　　C. interfered　　D. investigated

8. This means that our noses are limited to perceiving those smells which float through the air, _____ the majority of smells which stick to surfaces. In fact, though, we are extremely sensitive to smells, even if we do not generally realize it.

A. catching　　B. ignoring　　C. missing　　D. tracking

9. Teachers need to be aware of the emotional, intellectual, and physical changes that young adults experience. And they also need to give serious thought to how they can best _____ such changes.

A. strengthen　　B. accommodate　　C. stimulate　　D. enhance

10. Desert animals can drink prodigious' volumes in a short time, and camels have been known to _____ over 100 liters in a few minutes. A very dehydrated person, on the other hand, cannot drink enough water to rehydrate at one session, because the human stomach is not sufficiently big and because a too rapid dilution of the body fluids causes death from water intoxication.

A. devour　　B. digest　　C. imbibe　　D. gather

答案解析

1. **D**。词汇同现。medical care "医疗护理"; food "食物", cosmetics "化妆品"; service "服务", 根据 In addition 判定, 空格应填入与 all sorts of merchandise:

clothing，furniture，hardware，groceries 不同类的名词，因此 service 一词放在这里最合适。故答案为 D。

2. B。词汇同现。distracted“心烦意乱的”，twisted“扭曲的”，exaggerated“夸张的”，tilted“倾斜的”。根据下文“拉紧的肌肉”，结合同一语义场景词汇同现的原则，前面应该是“扭曲的关节”。故答案为 B。
3. A。词汇同现。本句中的 these _____ costs 指代上文提到的兑换货币所需的手续费和本币在兑换过程中的价格差异。根据词汇同现原则，空格应填入与 exchanging 意思相近的名词。故答案为 transaction（交易，交换）。
4. D。词汇同现。所看到的人若是朋友，那就不仅仅是看看而已，故排除 B；上下文没有任何线索提示你看到的是一个外国人，故排除 A；stranger 可指马路上不认识的任何人，不符合语义，故排除。根据场所同现原则，从上文中的 street behavior 可知，在马路上看到的离你较近的人应是过路人。故答案为 D。
5. B。词汇同现。根据场所同现的原则，由下文的 Subjects（实验对象），laboratory（实验室）等词可推断，本空所填词与“实验”有关。故答案为 B。
6. C。词汇同现。根据同义同现原则，从上文语境来看，可知其他文化背景的人不受制于时钟，那么他们不会设法去_____时间；下一段首句中的 no one can master time 甚至也是美国人的看法，其中 master 为本题的解答提供了暗示，control 与该词意思相近，故答案为 C。干扰项为选项 A，该项中的 catch 表示某一事件的具体行为，不符合题意。
7. A。词汇同现。本句概括的是某一实验的过程。根据场所同现的原则，由下文中的 interviewer's eyes 可知，本空应填 interviewed（面谈，采访）。inquire 后接 about/of；interfere 后接 in/with，这两项从意义和语法上看均可排除。investigate 意为“调查”，不合语义。
8. C。词汇同现。根据结构同现原则，此处空格与上文中的 perceiving 构成对应关系，空格的意思应为“没有感觉到”。catch，track 均不合题意。ignore 意为“忽略，忽视”，含一种主观上的因素。miss 表达 failing to detect（未察觉）的含义。故答案为 C。
9. B。词汇同现。根据同义同现原则，从上文的 be aware of…changes 可以推断，本句的逻辑语义应与 change 相近，选项中只有 accommodate（此处意为 adapt to，adjust to）符合题意。故答案为 B。
10. C。词汇同现。联系本句的前半句，根据同义同现原则可知此处需要一个跟 drink 词义相近的词，imbibe 表示“喝，吸入”，尤指液体，符合句意。故答案为 C。devour“吞吃”。

考点二　词汇复现法

技巧点拨

复现，是保证文章前后衔接而经常使用的一种写作手段，即作者在文章上下文不同的位置对同一个概念进行重复描述，从而使得同样的意思在文章不同的地方重复出现。复现关系，主要是指同义词复现、近义词复现、反义词复现等。完形填空所选的文章都是具有逻辑关系、意义相连的语篇，因此，在行文中不可避免地会出现词语的复现、前

后同义或反义、相互照应等现象。解题时应联系上下文寻找相关线索，如某一个词的原词、指代词、同义词、近义词、上义词、下义词和概括词等。如果判断出一个未知填空与上下文的那些已知词汇有复现关系，只要从选项中选出与那些词汇意义相同的就是正确答案。

1 原词复现

原词复现是同词复现，是指前后句的重合信息用同一个词语来表达，以达到衔接文章的目的，考生可以利用这种衔接方法在原文中找到与要填入的单词相同的词，也就找到了试题的答案。

2 同义词、近义词复现

同义词、近义词复现是指相同或相近的单词在原文中反复出现，以达到衔接文章的目的。在做完形填空试题时，就可以利用这种衔接方式找到要填入单词的同义词或者近义词，也就找到了试题的答案。

3 反义词复现

反义词复现是指和前文中词义相反的单词在原文中出现，以达到衔接文章的目的。考生可以利用这一衔接手段在文章中寻找要填入单词的反义词。

4 同源词复现

同源词复现指相同词根构成的不同词性的单词在文章中反复出现。很多英语单词的构成有其规律，这些单词一般由三部分组成：词根、前缀和后缀。词根决定单词意思，前缀改变单词词义，后缀决定单词词性。比如 selfish，unselfish 词根都是-self-，词义与“自我”有关；circle，bicycle 的词根是“circ-”或“-cycle”，词义与“圆”有关；cent，centigrade，century，centimeter 的词根都是“cent-”，意义与“百”有关。不难看出，同根词有些词根比较明显，有些则需要更多构词法方面的知识才能看出来。在完形填空题中，运用同根词有时可以解出一些较难的题。

5 上、下义词复现

上义词和下义词是相对的一对概念。上义词具有概括的作用。在篇章中，有时为了表达的需要，作者会先概述，再分述。概述时用的为上义词，分述则用比较具体的下义词。例如：animal 是对 horse，cow，lamb，zebra，lion 等词的概括，是它们的上义词，反过来 horse，cow，lamb，zebra，lion 又是 animal 的下义词，比较具体。解完形填空题时，往往可通过下义词概括上义词或通过上义词推断下义词。在解答完形填空题时，考生应注意分析这种分总或总分关系，选择适当的表达方式。

6 概括词复现

为了避免词语重复使用过多给人造成词汇贫乏、苍白乏味之感，在语篇中有关人、物、事或地点时，可由一些代表上述概念的词语替代，如 people，man，thing 等，增强语篇的衔接力。概括词复现与上、下义词复现的不同在于，概括词不一定是同一个范畴的词汇，而上、下义词则更严格。如：

Susan went to France last month. She has never been to the place. 第二句中的 place

和前面的 France 属于概括词复现关系。

Michael Greenberg is a very popular New Yorker… For those people, he is "Gloves" Greenberg. How did he get that name? name 就是对 "Gloves" Greenberg 的概括，属概括词复现。

典型真题

例 1：

Comedian George Carlin has a routine in which he talks about how humans seem to spend their lives accumulating "stuff". Once they've gathered enough stuff, they have to find places to store all of it. If Carlin were to update that routine today, he could make the same observation about computer information. It seems that everyone with a computer spends a lot of time acquiring data and then trying to find a way to __2__ it.（华中科技大学 2012 年）

2. A. store　　B. update　　C. process　　D. acquaintance

【名师点评】 A。原词复现。与前两句对比，动词 find 为重现，a way to 与前两句的 places to 对应，答案可能是前两句重现的动词 store；同时由空格后的 it 指代的是前面的 data，store 与 data 搭配符合上下文逻辑。

例 2：

A great deal of attention is being paid today to the so-called digital divide—the division of the world into the info（information）rich and the info poor. And that __51__ does exist today. My wife and I lectured about this looming danger twenty years ago.（四川大学 2012 年）

51. A. divide　　B. information　　C. world　　D. lecture

【名师点评】 A。原词复现。根据空格前的 that 判断，空格填入的词与文中首句的 digital divide 为重现关系。故答案为 A，意为 "鸿沟"。

例 3：

They claim that our highly evolved brain provides is with an __41__ language ability not found in lower organisms. Supporters of this innateness theory say that our potential for language is inborn, but that language itself develops gradually, as a function of the growth of the brain during childhood. Therefore there are critical biological times for language development.（浙江大学 2012 年）

41. A. innate　　B. basic　　C. inspiring　　D. outgoing

【名师点评】 A。同源词复现。下一句中出现 innateness。故答案为 A，意为 "先天语言"。

例 4：

Parents who believe that playing video games is less harmful to their kids' attention spans than watching TV may want to reconsider. …

Shawn Green, a psychologist at the University of Minnesota, points out that the study doesn't distinguish between the type of __27__ required to excel at a video game and that required to excel in school…（中国科学院 2013 年）

27. A. competition　B. technique　　C. attention　　D. strategy

【名师点评】 C。原词复现。全文的主题就是在研究不同的 attention。首句就出现 attention 一词。故答案为 C。

1. Another benefit is that the removal of exchange rate _____ between the countries of the EU would provide much more assurance to corporate location decisions. At present, a company takes account of the risk of exchange rate variation in its location decision, and this may lead it to scatter its plants across the various economies, to hedge against the risk of exchange rate variation.
   A. float　　B. variations　　C. difference　　D. variety
2. As I watched several people go by, get into their cars and drive off, I _____ an old man on a bicycle with a bucket on its handle and a basket of rags and bottles on its back-carriage. He moved from one car to another, washing and cleaning them. From the water on the ground, it seemed that he had already finished washing and cleaning about a dozen or more cars. He must have begun to work quite early in the morning.
   A. noticed　　B. recognized　　C. called　　D. assisted
3. Forcing yourself to recall almost never helps because it doesn't _____ your memory; it only tightens it.
   A. loosen　　B. weaken　　C. decrease　　D. reduce
4. Of wealth, power and prestige, power is the hardest to measure. Most studies are nothing more than an average of guesses about where power is found. Many forms of power are so well hidden that only its holders know the source. Because it's so hard to _____, and tied to ideology, the subject of power is a source of much debate in sociology.
   A. test　　B. measure　　C. balance　　D. detect
5. Addresses of webpages also appear in other more conventional media, such as magazines, newspapers and television programs, and on posters. Webpages, in their turn, facilitate access to information made available by other _____ of media, for example, collections held in libraries or programs broadcast on television.
   A. modes　　B. forums　　C. shapes　　D. forms
6. The term "quality of life" is difficult to define. It _____ a very wide scope such as living environment, health, employment, food, family life, friends, education, material possessions, leisure and recreation, and so on.
   A. composes　　B. consists　　C. covers　　D. constitutes
7. Education is too important to take _____, when people take anything for seriously, they put on blinders which cause them to miss the important aspects of what is going on around them … I believe the accountability movement has encouraged many educators to take education too seriously. When we take education too seriously, we put standardized tests scores above children, we put lesson plans above teachers, and we put on our blinders, only to see a rather small segment of the child — that segment that can be got easily rather than looking at the child as a whole.
   A. up　　B. seriously　　C. easily　　D. over
8. Music comes in many forms; most countries have a style of their own. At the turn of the century when jazz was born, America had no prominent _____ of its own. No one knows exactly when jazz was invented or by whom.
   A. music　　B. song　　C. melody　　D. style

9. But it began to be heard in the early 1900s. Jazz is America's contribution to _____ music. In contrast to classical music, which follows formal European traditions, jazz is spontaneous and free form. It bubbles with energy, expressing the moods, interests, and emotions of the people.

A. classical　　B. sacred　　C. popular　　D. light

10. The purpose of non-REM sleep is even more _____. The new experiments, such as those described for the first time at a recent meeting of the Society for Sleep Research in Minneapolis, suggest fascinating explanations for the purpose of non-REM sleep.

A. subtle　　B. obvious　　C. mysterious　　D. doubtful

答案解析

1. B。原词复现。本句为本段的主题句，指出单一货币的另一个优点是可以消除欧盟国家之间的 exchange rate 差别。由下文多次提到的 exchange rate variation 可知，所填词应是 variation 的原词复现，故答案为 B（变化）。
2. A。同义复现。句中 watched 与 noticed 是同义复现。句意：我往下看时，noticed（注意到了）一个老人……。故答案为 A。
3. A。反义复现。前后两部分互为诠释，一为肯定，一为否定，为反义复现。从下文 tighten 可判定，空格处应填入 loosen。
4. B。原词复现。根据上下文句意："因为如此难以测定……"这里应该填写具有"衡量，测定"的单词意思。只有选项 measure 合适。并且该段首句已出现这个词，有提示。test "进行测验"，含义是以某种手段来试一试某人或某物是否达到了一定的标准；balance "权衡比较，使抵消"；detect "查明，发现"，意思不合适。
5. D。上、下义词复现。由上文提到的 magazines，newspapers，television programs，posters 等多种 conventional media，可推断出这里指的是其他媒体形式。form 表示"形式"，故答案为 D。mode 强调模式；forum "论坛，讨论会，会议场所"；shape "外形，形状"。
6. C。上、下义词复现。本句主语 it 指代 quality of life，它与后面列举的 living environment，health，employment，food，…是上、下义词复现关系，故答案为 covers（包括，包含，涉及）。compose 用于 be composed of 结构，consist 表示"组成"时需与 of 连用，constitute（组成），应该是下义词在前，上义词在后。
7. B。原词复现。根据词汇复现的原则，全文多次提到 seriously 一词。此句的意思是：因为教育太重要，所以我们不能对它太严肃了。下文讲如果我们严肃地对待一件事情会产生消极影响，因为不想产生这种消极影响，所以不能对它太严肃了。故答案为 B。
8. D。原词复现。根据上文所说的大多数国家都有自己的音乐 style（风格），而美国却没有自己突出的……，后面也应该是风格，故答案为 D。
9. C。反义复现。in contrast to 表明此处应遵循反义复现的原则。popular music 是指"流行音乐"，与 classical music（古典音乐）相对。jazz（爵士乐）是流行音乐的一种，故答案为 C。
10. C。同义复现。开头说的 the purpose of non-REM sleep 和结尾的 the purpose of non-REM sleep 遥相呼应，而在后文的 fascinating 就提示空格应填与其同义的词，故答案为 mysterious（神秘的，为之着迷的）。

周五 八大解题要诀——语义逻辑法

一、语义连接法

技巧点拨

英语连词的两种主要功能为起结构连接作用和语义连接作用。英语的连接关系大量地表现在语义方面。语义上的连接关系多数表现为超句子的，即句子与句子之间的语义连接。如果把句子与句子之间表示语义连接关系的词去掉，那每个句子的结构虽然完整，但句子与句子之间的语义却不能连贯或不能充分连贯。

如：I was not informed. I should have taken some action. 句中前后两个句子在语义上是互不连贯的。如果在后一句的句首加进表示连接关系的词 otherwise，那么句子就连贯了：I was not informed. Otherwise I should have taken some action. 由此可见，语义连接关系在语义连贯方面是十分重要的。

完形填空考查的是一种综合能力，而不仅仅是对词汇和语法的考查。对语篇语义连接关系的判断也是完形填空考查的重点。语篇通过连接性词语的运用，实现语义上的连贯。通过逻辑衔接，人们可以了解句子或句群之间的语义联系，甚至可经前句从逻辑上预见后句的语义。逻辑衔接反映在考题上主要是选择逻辑连接词：包括反映句际逻辑关系的连接词、介词、短语等。语篇的连接关系主要包括列举、原因、结果、让步、对照、补充、时间顺序、目的、条件等。而这些连接关系又是靠逻辑词来表达的，没有逻辑词，文章就显得语义模糊不清，不能形成篇章。考生应熟记表达不同连接关系的连词：

（1）表示时间关系：作者在描述一个连续的动作或事情时，常遵循一定的时间、空间或事理逻辑顺序。

相关连接词有：when，while，as，after，before，since，until，as soon as，once 等。

（2）表示列举关系：用于解释原因、观点等之后。

相关连接词有：first，second，third…；firstly，secondly，thirdly…；first，next，then…；in the first place，in the second place…；for one thing，for another thing…；to begin with，to conclude…等。

（3）表示并列关系：并列关系是比较简单的一种逻辑关系。

相关连接词有：also，further，similarly，moreover，in addition，what's more，too，furthermore，likewise，either，neither，not…but…，not only…but also…等。

（4）表示让步和转折关系：指的是在句子或语段中，后文不是顺着前文的意思写下来，

而是转了一下，跟前文的意思相反，或是对前文意思的修改补充。

相关连接词有：however，nevertheless，though，yet，nonetheless，still，in spite of，at any rate，in any case，whoever，whatever 等。

（5）表示因果关系：因果关系词是比较容易判断的一种逻辑关系，前面叙述原因，后面叙述结果，反之亦然。因果关系除了传统意义上的显性因果表达词外，隐性的因果同样是不可忽略的一个重要部分。

相关连接词有：because，since，as，now that，so，therefore，accordingly，thus，hence，consequently，as a result 等。

（6）表示目的关系：

相关连接词有：that，so that，in order that，lest，for fear that 等。

（7）表示对照关系：在对比关系的句子中，前后两部分应该有明显的对比或对照成分。

相关连接词有：in contrast，by contrast，on the contrary，in comparison，by comparison，conversely 等。

（8）表示条件关系：判断这种逻辑关系的重点在于仔细阅读前后两句话是不是一方以另外一方为条件。

相关连接词有：if，suppose，unless，in case，so（as）long as，so far as，on condition（that），provided（that）等。

考查语义关系的完形填空需要以下技巧：

（1）了解考查形式，理顺要填入的语义关系词前后文的语义。

❖ 逻辑词位于句首，前后为逗号隔开的两个小分句，考生需分析这两个小分句之间的逻辑关系；

❖ 逻辑词位于句首，其后为一个完整的句子，考生需分析逻辑词所在的句子与前一句的逻辑关系；

❖ 逻辑词位于句中，前后为逻辑词隔开的两个意群或小分句，考生需分析这两个意群或小分句之间的逻辑关系；

❖ 逻辑词位于段首，其后为一个完整的句子，考生需分析逻辑词所在的句子与上一段落最后一个意群之间的逻辑关系。

（2）分析逻辑关系，熟知各个逻辑关系的标志词，快速判断，找出选项。

例 1：

The foreign research scholar usually isolates himself in the laboratory as a means of protection; _____, what he needs is to be fitted into a highly organized university system…

A. otherwise　　B. moreover　　C. however　　D. also

分析：C。根据上下文，空格前的意思为“那位外籍研究学者通常把自己隔离在实验室里作为一种保护的手段”。空格后为“他需要融入的是高度的组织化的大学系统”。前者是一种孤立的状态 isolate，而后者是一种组织化的系统 be fitted into a highly organized university，从逻辑的角度而言，前后已然成为对立、矛盾的关系。所以此空所填的连词必然是能将前后平衡的表示对比（转折）关系的连词 however。故答案为 C。

例 2：

It turns out that peculiar way of conducting the experiments may have led to misleading interpretations of what happened. _____, lighting was always changed on a Sunday. When work started again on Monday, output suddenly rose compared with the previous Saturday and continued to rise for the next couple of days. However, a

comparison with data for weeks when there was no experimentation showed that output always went up on Monday, workers tended to be diligent for the first few days of the week…

A. In contrast　　B. For example　　C. In consequence　　D. As usual

分析：B。原文首句提出了一个观点：实验的方法不对，由此得出的对事件的解释可能会对我们产生误导。接着后面举了一个实验的例子，然后以这个例子来说明为什么这种实验方法会误导人。因此，上下文之间为例证关系。故答案为 B。

典型真题

例 1：

The melting of Himalayan glaciers caused controversy in 2009 when a report from the UN's intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change mistakenly stated that they would disappear by 2035, instead of 2350. __35__, the scientist who led the new work is clear that while greater uncertainty has been discovered in Asia's highest mountains, the melting of ice caps and glaciers around the world remains a serious concern. (北京大学 2012 年)

35. A. Besides　　B. Furthermore　　C. Despite　　D. However

【名师点评】D。转折关系。前面陈述了喜马拉雅山的积雪损失可以忽略不计是好的结果，接着作者笔锋一转，警示读者全球冰帽和冰川融化的情况很严峻，前后构成转折关系，选项中只有 However（然而）符合要求。

例 2：

__49__ some aspects of language are undeniably innate, language does not develop automatically in a vacuum. Children who have been isolated from other human beings do not possess language. (浙江大学 2012 年)

49. A. Although　　B. Whether　　C. Since　　D. When

【名师点评】A。转折关系。从句的句意为：语言的某些方面肯定是先天的。主句句意为：语言不会在与人隔绝的状况下自行发展。前后应为转折关系。故答案为 A。

例 3：

Previous studies have examined the effect of TV or video games on attention problems, but not both. By looking at video-game use __25__ TV watching, these scientists were able to show for the first time that the two activities have a similar relationship to attention problems. (中国科学院 2013 年)

25. A. far from　　B. except for　　C. as well as　　D. instead of

【名师点评】C。并列关系。根据前句是对 video-game use 和 TV watching 进行调查，应是并列关系。故答案为 C。

例 4：

It will also call the police should the sensors detect an intruder. This will not be too difficult __49__ the locks on the outside doors will be electronic. You will open them using your personal card-the one you use for shopping-maybe using a number known only to you. (浙江大学 2013 年)

49. A. because　　B. where　　C. why　　D. how

【名师点评】A。因果关系。根据句意，“这不是很难”与“外门的锁是电子锁”构成

因果关系。选项中，只有 because 引导原因状语从句。故答案为 A。

例 5：

One cereal company might be an environmental champion, __15__ the other manufactures its corn flakes via destructive environmental practices.（四川大学 2010 年）

15. A. when　　B. while　　C. as　　D. because

【名师点评】 B。对比关系。据上下文的关键词“one… the other…”可见，这句话是对两类公司的对比。故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. One third thought Columbus reached the New World after 1750. Two thirds cannot correctly lock the Civil War between 1850 and 1900. _____ when they get the answers right, some are just guessing. Unlike math or science, ignorance of history cannot be directly connected to loss of international community. But it does affect our future as a democratic nation and as individuals.
   A. Even　　B. Though　　C. Thus　　D. So
2. For many of us the “cashless society” is not on the horizon — it's already here. _____ computers offer these conveniences to consumers, they have many advantages for sellers too. Electronic cash registers can do much more than simply ring up sales. They can keep a wide range of records, including who sold what, when, and to whom.
   A. While　　B. When　　C. If　　D. Though
3. Finger-prints can be made very easily with a printer's ink. They can be recorded easily. With special method, identification can be achieved successfully within a short time. _____ the simplicity and economy of this system, finger-prints have often been used as a method of solving criminal cases.
   A. In spite of　　B. Irrespective of　　C. Because of　　D. In case of
4. This vital change of physical position brought about considerable disadvantages. It was extremely unstable and it meant that the already slow ape-men became slower still. _____, they persevered and their bone structure gradually became accustomed to the new, unstable position that earned them the name Homo erectus, upright man.
   A. However　　B. Therefore　　C. Meanwhile　　D. Subsequently
5. However, the typical teenage lifestyle is already filled with so much competition that it would be wise to plan activities in which there are more winners than losers, _____, publishing newsletters with many student-written book reviews, displaying student artwork, and sponsoring book discussion clubs.
   A. in effect　　B. as a result　　C. for example　　D. in a sense
6. In these activities, it is important to remember that the young teens have different attention spans. A variety of activities should be organized _____ participants can remain active as long as they want and then go on to something else without feeling guilty and without letting the other participants down.
   A. if only　　B. now that　　C. so that　　D. even if
7. Some economists distinguish between the international firm and the multinational

company in the following way. The "international firm" is a term that consists of enterprises with various degrees of world orientation in their business; _____ the "multinational company" is one type of international firm. The international firm engages in any activity or combination of activities from exporting, importing and licensing to full scale manufacturing in a number of countries.

A. as a matter of fact B. for one thing C. on the other hand D. as a result

8. Significant differences exist among multinational companies. First, such a company may not necessarily do business in every region and country in the world, _____ it considers opportunities throughout the world. Second, it has a considerable portion of its assets invested in international business; as a result it makes a substantial part of its sales and earns a considerable part of its profits overseas.

A. however B. but C. so D. therefore

9. An overwhelming desire to drink alcohol, _____ it is causing harm, is a disease called alcoholism. Alcohol is a drag. In the United States alcoholism is the most widespread form of drug abuse, affecting at least 5 million persons.

A. as B. if C. despite D. even though

10. With the repeated use of the same tool all day long on production lines and in other jobs, even light manual work can put a heavy stress on one small area of the body. In time, such stress can cause a disabling disease. _____, muscle fatigue is a serious safety hazard.

A. However B. Lastly C. Beside D. Furthermore

答案解析

1. A。语义连接。根据上文说"三分之二的人不能正确判断内战发生在 1850 年到 1900 年之间"。下文又说"即使他们说出了正确答案，一些人也仅仅是猜测"。所以此处用副词 even"即使……也……"，以加强语气。
2. A。语义连接。两句之间有并列对比关系，因此选 while，意为"在……的同时"。其他不合逻辑。
3. C。语义连接。in spite of"尽管"；irrespective of"不顾的，不考虑的"；because of"由于"；in case of"万一"。根据上下文判断此处表示因果关系，故应选 C。
4. A。语义连接。根据上下文的语义，此句与上句之间在语义上存在转折关系。选项中，只有 however 可以表达转折的意思。故答案为 A。
5. C。语义连接。本句前一部分提到要设计一些获胜者多于失败者的活动，而空格后则建议出版一些学生写的书评的通信等，这无疑是对 activities 的举例说明，选项中，只有 for example 可以表示举例子。故答案为 C。
6. C。语义连接。经分析句子结构可知，前后两个分句之间存在着因果关系，故 so that 为答案。
7. C。语义连接。本句中前一部分是对国际化公司下定义，后半部分是对跨国公司进行定义。两部分应该是对比、对照关系。on the other hand 意为"另一方面"，正是表示两部分之间的对照关系。故答案为 C。as a matter of fact"事实上，实际上"；for one thing"首先，一则"；as a result"结果"。
8. B。语义连接。空格前后中的 not… in every region 与 considers…throughout the world

这两部分之间显然为转折对比关系，因此 but 正确。however 也表示转折关系，但为转折副词，不能连接句子的两部分，之间需要并列连词 and 或逗号；so 和 therefore 都表示因果关系，两部分之间没有因果关系。

9. D。语义连接。从上下文语义上判断，本文表达的意思是：即使会带来害处，却无法抵御的饮酒欲望被称为酗酒。此处是要表达“即使”的意思。as 可以表示时间或原因；if“如果，假如”；despite“不管，无论”，后面常加短语；even though“即使”，可以引导从句，为答案。

10. D。语义连接。前文提到重复使用同一工具的第一个危害，这里要说的是第二个，故使用 furthermore，表递进。

二、逻辑关系对应分析法

技巧点拨

完形填空中有不少题目在设计上非常注重干扰项在语法结构上的合理性，使四个选项在语法上均无懈可击。还有的干扰项从局部角度讲可以被认可，例如在短语或单句层面上符合习惯搭配或逻辑表达。但当这些词置于全文背景中便不合理：前后矛盾或与主题不相关。考生在解题中一定不能脱离上下文，要结合周围语境，得出答案。逻辑关系语对准确理解语篇意义能够起到很强的提示作用。完形填空中很多题目都围绕它们而设。

（1）充分利用逻辑关系语，找到与文中某些词、短语有密切关系的选项，如与其为同义词、近义词或反义词等。

（2）并列、递进关系、同义词解法

表现形式是空格的前后部分在语法结构或意义方面对称，具体可以分为句子内部的并列和句子间的并列。句子内部并列又可分为词性并列、褒贬并列、动静并列以及肯定与否定并列；而句子间的并列主要为语义并列。该类题型选项中经常出现的逻辑词有 and（和）、or（或者）、also（也）、as well as（也）、while（而，表示并列）、either…or…（要么……要么……）、neither…nor…（既不……也不……）、not…but…（不是……而是……）、not only…but also…（不仅……而且……）等。因此在空格周围出现并列结构时，并列的内容是推断答案的线索。

例如：Together with another two scientists, he is publishing a paper which not only _____ that one group of humanity is more intelligent than the others, but explains the process that has brought this about.

A. advises　　B. suggests　　C. protests　　D. objects

分析：B。此题考查的是 not only…but（also）… 平行并列结构，只要懂得平行并列结构所连接的两个部分在语法结构或意义方面对称，考生就可以轻松作答。空格的答案要和 but 后面的 explains 形成对应，因而只能用 suggests（提出，表明）。故答案为 B。

（3）转折对立关系、反义词解法

根据上下文的语义或前后表示转折意义的连接词提示，包括 however（然而）、although（虽然）、yet（还，但是）、even if（即使，纵然）、even though（虽然，即使）、while（而）、on the contrary（相反地）、rather than（而不是）、though（虽然）、but

（但是）、whereas（相反，反之，然而）、by contrast（与之相反，对比之下）、instead of（代替，而不是）等，选出与中心线索语义反义关系的选项。

例如：

Large animals that inhabit the desert have evolved a number of adaptations for reducing the effects of extreme heat. One adaptation is to be light in color, and to _____ rather than absorb the sun's rays.

A. react　　B. reflect　　C. reduce　　D. repel

分析：B。根据空格后的 rather than（而不是）之后的 absorb 可确定此处应该选择它的反义词 reflect。故答案为 B。react "起反应，起作用"；reduce "减少，缩小，简化"；repel "击退，抵制"。

典型真题

例 1：

Modern TV shows are so exciting and fast paced that they make reading and schoolwork seem __32__ by comparison, and the same may be true for video games, the study notes.（中国科学院 2013 年）

32. A. industrious　　B. limited　　C. dull　　D. funny

【名师点评】C。形容词词义辨析。根据句中 by comparison 判定，Modern TV shows 与 reading and schoolwork 形成对比，空格应填入与 exciting and fast 意思相对的形容词。故答案为 C。

例 2：

Current __44__ of innateness theory are mixed; however, evidence supporting the existence of some innate abilities is undeniable. Indeed, more and more schools are discovering that foreign languages are best taught in the lower grades.（浙江大学 2012 年）

44. A. reviews　　B. reference　　C. reaction　　D. recommendation

【名师点评】A。名词词义辨析。reviews "评论"；reference "参考"；reaction "反应"；recommendation "推荐"。根据句中的转折词 however 和后面的 evidence 判定，前面的意思为对 "先天论" 观点评论不一。故答案为 A。

例 3：

The scientists are careful to point out that lower-altitude glaciers in the Asian mountain ranges — sometimes dubbed the "third pole" — are definitely melting. Satellite images and reports confirm this. But over the study period from 2003-10 enough ice was added to the peaks to __40__.（北京大学 2012 年）

40. A. replace　　B. refund　　C. compensate　　D. balance

【名师点评】C。上下文语义理解。空格所在句子的转折连词 but 说明，空格应填入与 melting 相反意思的词，根据句意 "补偿损失"，故 C 项符合句意。

例 4：

Do you forget to turn off the lights and heaters when you go out of a room? In 2040 it will not matter. They will turn themselves off and on again when you __37__. You will choose the temperatures for each room, the lighting and the humidity. A sensor will detect

the presence of a human (and, with luck, ignore the dog!) and turn the systems on, and when the humans leave it will turn them off again. (浙江大学 2013 年)

37. A. go out　　B. return　　C. run out　　D. go away

【名师点评】B。动词词义辨析和上下文语义。根据句中 turn… off and on 中 off 和 on 互为反义词，空格填入的动词应与上文中 go out of 的意思也相反。选项中，只有 return 符合句意。故答案为 B。

实战演练

1. Again, the customer sends a check and the item is delivered to his or her home. Online shopping is the latest development, where the "catalogue" is available on the Internet, combining the advantages of both the book catalogue and the television and indeed adding more _____. The customer makes his choice but rather than sending an order and a check through the post, he places the order and pays for it using his credit card, all using the Internet.
   A. disadvantages　　B. features　　C. advantages　　D. characteristics
2. Together with other activities that may have been ritualistic in origin but have come to be designated as artistic (such as music or dance), painting was one of the earliest ways in which man sought to express his own personality and his emerging understanding of an existence beyond the material world. _____ music and dance, however, examples of early forms of painting have survived to the present day.
   A. As　　B. Unlike　　C. Like　　D. Since
3. The researchers did not find significant differences along gender lines, but Lieberman said prior studies had hinted at some differences in the benefits men and women derived from talking about their feelings. "Women may do more of this _____, but when men are instructed to do it, they may get more benefit from it," he said.
   A. unconsciously　　B. spontaneously　　C. willingly　　D. reluctantly
4. In the past, our concept of intelligence was mainly limited to the kinds of skills that enable one to do well in school. But Emotional Intelligence _____ what it means to be smart by focusing on how the mind processes feelings rather than ideas. There are many ways in which an understanding of Emotional Intelligence can be very handy.
   A. rectifies　　B. redefines　　C. endures　　D. enables
5. Over the next six days, the volunteers reported on any aches, pains, sneezing or congestion they had, while the researchers collected _____ data, like daily mucus production. Cohen and his colleagues found that based on objective measures of nasal woes, happy people were less likely to develop a cold.
   A. objective　　B. subjective　　C. positive　　D. negative
6. Now things are changing. The children of the people who left the cities in the 1950s are now adults. They, unlike their parents, want to live in the cities. Some continue to move to cities in the Sun Belt. Cities are expanding and the population is increasing in such states as Texas, Florida, and California. Others are moving to more _____ cities of the Northeast and Midwest, such as Boston, Baltimore and Chicago.
   A. organized　　B. famous　　C. official　　D. established

7. One of the patients is a woman with epilepsy. Doctors are monitoring Denise Harris to see if she is a good candidate for an operation that could stop her seizures. They are monitoring her through wire electrodes implanted in her brain. But _____ she is in the hospital, she is also helping scientists understand how the brain works with language. The study centers on a part of the frontal lobe called Broca's area.
A. as soon as B. then C. whereas D. while

8. The imagined or real prestige of a profession or a "white-collar" job is no good reason for choosing it as a life's work. Moreover, these occupations are not always well paid. Since a large proportion of jobs are in mechanical and manual work, the majority of young people should give serious _____ to these fields.
A. priority B. regulation C. assessment D. consideration

9. Chief executive Richard Brook said, "Most people already know that it's good to talk, but when you're in mental distress it isn't always that _____. If the crucial links are missing, things can go downhill rapidly." He urged the government to take the lead in providing better social support for those at risk.
A. difficult B. obvious C. simple D. special

10. The ethical judgments of the Supreme Court justices have become an important issue recently. The court cannot maintain its legitimacy as guardian of the rule of law when justices behave like politicians. Yet, in several instances, justices acted in ways that _____ the court's reputation for being independent and impartial.
A. restored B. weakened C. established D. eliminated

答案解析

1. C。名词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。advantage 意为"优点"，本句前面提到"网络购物结合了商品目录购物与电视购物两者的优点"，然后用 indeed adding more...表明顺承关系，显然，这里应指前文的 advantage。feature 和 characteristic 均是"特点"之意，为中性词；disadvantage 意为"缺点，不足"，与该处语境相矛盾。
2. B。逻辑衔接。however 表示转折，所以空格处应填入一个表示否定的介词，因此 unlike 为最佳答案。
3. B。副词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。空格后的 but 表明，空格前 Women 的表现和空格后 men 的表现是相反的，空格后的 men 是 are instructed to do it，即必须有人引导，由此可推出 Women 是自发地谈心，spontaneously 意为"自发地"，符合语义，故答案为 B。unconsciously"无意识地，不觉察地"；willingly"情愿地，乐意地"；reluctantly"不情愿地，勉强地"。
4. B。动词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。本段首句讨论了以前对 Emotional Intelligence（EQ）的定义，第二句是上一句的转折，根据后面的意思，应该选"重新定义"。选项中，redefine（重新定义）符合要求。rectify"整顿，调整"；endure"承担，承受"；enable sb. to do sth."使某人能够做某事"。
5. A。形容词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。注意 while 连接前后两个句子，前面的句子强调志愿者的主观感受，如疼痛等；后面的句子强调研究人员收集的实验数据，具有客观性，选项中只有 objective（客观的）符合题意。故答案为 A。
6. D。形容词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。空格所在句中的 Others 表明此处与前面所谈及的 Sun

Belt（阳光地带）的 changing（新兴）城市相对比，此处应为 established（古老的，早就建设起来的）城市。故答案为 D。official“官方的，正式的”；famous“著名的”；organized“组织好的”，均不合题意。

7. D。逻辑关系题。But 一词表明前后意思转折，句中连词 also 表明 Denise 虽然是病人，但是住院的同时也在帮助科学家理解大脑如何处理语言。故答案为 D，表示“与此同时”。
8. D。名词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。根据空格所在句中的 since 判断，空格所在的句子与前面的句子构成因果关系，因此空格处填入的词大意应为 consideration（考虑，思考）。故答案为 D。priority“优先权，优先考虑的事情”；regulation“规章，条例”；assessment“评估，估计”。
9. C。形容词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。根据空格所在句中的转折词 but 判定，这里作者想表达的意思是“知道是一回事，做起来又是另一回事”，这样前后才能构成转折关系，选 difficult 逻辑矛盾，obvious 和 special 都不构成对比关系，只能用 simple。故答案为 C。
10. B。动词词义辨析和逻辑衔接。本段首句讨论了法官的行为表现的像政治家时，法院就无法维持其守卫法规的合法性。此处 Yet 是转折语气，空格应填入与前面 maintain 意思相近的动词。选项中，weaken（削弱）符合要求，意为“法官还是削弱了法院独立、公正的声誉”。



八大解题要诀——关联对应法和褒贬一致法

一、关联对应法

技巧点拨

关联是完形文章中经常出现的一种结构，即将两个或两个以上的同类别词语，比如两个动词、两个形容词、两个名词以连续排比的结构出现。在这种情况下，两个关联词汇在句子中的语法地位一样，且常常起相同的语法作用，而它们之间又明显具有某种逻辑关系。关联的解题意义在于：出题人一般会将一个关联词语设置成已知信息，另一个是未知的，因此那个已知的词语便成为破解未知词语的关键线索。通常情况下，出题人用表示并列顺承关系的连接词，如 and，or，将类似结构的内容并列在一起，而 and 更是要求并列的内容具有一致性。

例 1：

Every year, our school has a dance for all the students. It's a little funny seeing friends in clean shoes and trousers or colorful _____, instead of the usual school uniform. Most of us think the dance is great fun — even the teachers enjoy being there.

A. shapes　　B. dresses　　C. flowers　　D. pictures

分析：B。由空格前的 or 可知，空格应与前面的 trousers 对应。选项中，与 trousers 同类的名词只有 dresses。故答案为 B。

例 2：

Industrial safety does not just happen. Companies with low accident rates plan their safety programs, work hard to organize them, and continue working to keep them _____ and active. When the work is well done, a climate of accident-free operations is established where time lost due to injuries is kept at a minimum.

A. alive　　B. vivid　　C. mobile　　D. diverse

分析：A。从本题所处的句子结构来看，to keep them _____ and active，本题的选项受到两个已知信息点的控制：一个是对 them 起修饰作用；另一个是与后边形容词 active 之间形成并列的关联关系，而且形容词 active 同样也是修饰 them。从这两个信息点来看，能够同时满足这两点的选项只有 alive，表示 them 是既 alive（有效）又 active（被广泛执行）。

例 3：

All consumers have certain basic needs or wants: food, clothing, and _____. But those needs of most teenagers are provided for by their parents.

A. safety　　B. security　　C. sleep　　D. shelter

分析：D。根据句意，基本需求包含 food，clothing，还有就是与此平行的住处

shelter，故答案为D。其他选项，safety“安全”；security“治安，安全”；sleep“睡觉”，均不合句意和逻辑。

典型真题

例1：

Yet once language developed, the possibilities for humankind's future __38__ and cultural growth increased.（浙江大学2012年）

38. A. attainments　B. feasibility　C. entertainments　D. evolution

【名师点评】A。名词词义辨析。根据连词and判定，空格应填入与cultural growth同向的名词。选项中，attainments意为“成就”，符合句意，语言的发展增加了人类未来的成就和文化进步的可能性。故答案为A。

例2：

Furthermore, they defined science as the way of knowing among Western white men and a tool of cultural __31__.（2013年北京大学）

31. A. assimilation　B. inhibition　C. representation　D. oppression

【名师点评】D。名词词义辨析。根据连接词and的并列结构，空格中应填入与Western white men相对应的概念，选项中assimilation“同化”；inhibition“禁止，压抑”；representation“表示，表现”；oppression“压迫”。只有oppression与Western white men相对应。故答案为D。

例3：

It is this idea—that the world is knowable and that objective, empirical knowledge is the most __37__ basic for public policy that stood as Jefferson's foundational argument for the democracy.（北京大学2013年）

37. A. practical　B. equal　C. useful　D. equitable

【名师点评】D。形容词词义辨析。句中提及objective和empirical，因此空格中填入的词应该是与民主相关的，是与objective（客观的）和empirical（经验证明的）同类的词。practical“实际的”；equal“平等的”；useful“有用的”；equitable“公平的，公正的”。选项中，只有equitable为最佳答案。故答案为D。

实战演练

1. Her activism and writing proved inspirational. She wrote, “Character cannot be developed in ease and quiet. Only through experiences of trial and _____ can the soul be strengthened, vision cleared, ambition inspired and success achieved.”
   A. suffering　B. worrying　C. despair　D. desire
2. Growing bodies need movement and _____, but not just in ways that emphasize competition. Because they are adjusting to their new bodies and a whole host of new intellectual and emotional challenges, teenagers are especially self-conscious and need the confidence that comes from achieving success and knowing that their accomplishments are admired by others.
   A. care　B. nutrition　C. exercise　D. leisure
3. It is generally recognized, however, that the introduction of the computer in the early 20th century, _____ by the invention of the integrated circuit during the 1960s, radically changed the process, although its impact on the media was not immediately

apparent.

A. brought B. followed C. stimulated D. characterized

4. As they travel aimlessly over water warmed by the summer sun, they are carried westward by the trade winds. When conditions are just right, warm, moist air flows in at the bottom of such a disturbance, _____ upward through it and comes out at the top. In the process, the moisture in this warm air produces rain, and with it the heat is converted to energy in the form of strong winds.

A. moving B. moved C. moves D. which moves

5. Elderly people who do not work face serious problems in stretching their incomes to meet their needs in time of inflation. Retirement income _____ any fixed income usually does not rise as fast as prices. Many retired people must cut their spending to keep up with rising prices. In many cases they must stop buying some necessary items, such as food and clothing.

A. or B. and C. excluding D. including

6. First, the teacher's personality should be pleasantly _____ and attractive. This does not rule out people who are physically plain, or even ugly, because many such have great personal charm. But it does rule out such types as the over-excitable, melancholy, frigid, sarcastic, frustrated, and over bearing: I would say too, that it excludes all of dull or purely negative personality.

A. live B. living C. lifelike D. alive

7. By the end I was in the middle of a faceless crowd who clapped and _____ and jumped around like monkeys. It was the most degrading human spectacle I have ever had the misfortune to witness, and I seriously believe that in time to come our present younger generation would thank us if we managed to put a stop to it now.

A. sat B. stood C. paced D. stamped

8. As was discussed before, it was not until the 19th century that the newspaper became the dominant pre-electronic medium, following in the wake of the pamphlet and the book and in the _____ of the periodical. It was during the same time that the communications revolution speeded up, beginning with transport, the railway, and leading on through the telegraph, the telephone, radio, and motion pictures into the 20th-century world of the motor car and the airplane.

A. process B. company C. light D. form

9. If you were to begin a new job tomorrow, you would bring with you some basic strengths and weaknesses. Success or _____ in your work would depend, to a great extent, on your ability to use your strengths and weaknesses to the best advantage. Of the utmost importance is your attitude.

A. improvement B. victory C. failure D. achievement

10. Those who depend on agriculture for their livelihoods, he says, would be adversely affected by the decrease. "At the global level, with the decline in agricultural productivity, in the largest countries of the world or the most _____ countries of the world, we will find that food stocks will diminish," Pachauri said. "And, as a matter of fact, that has already started happening."

A. poor B. remote C. populous D. underdeveloped

答案解析

1. A。名词关联对应。填入的名词与 trial（考验）并列，选项中，只有 suffering（苦难）合适。worrying“忧虑”，程度不够；despair“绝望”，程度太高；desire“愿望”与“考验”在意思上无关联。故答案为 A。
2. C。名词关联对应。本题的判断点在于用 and 连接的并列词 movement。从词的属性来看，movement 表示行为动作，因此可排除 nutrition 和 leisure；movement 的逻辑主语是青少年自己，因此可以排除 care。只有 exercise 与 movement 属同一类词。故答案为 C。
3. B。时间关联对应。根据时间线索 in the early 20th century，during the 1960s 判定，只有 followed（伴随，随后）符合上下文逻辑。brought，stimulated 和 characterized 均不符合句子意思。故答案为 B。
4. C。谓语动词关联对应。由句中的 and 可知空格与该句中的 flows，comes 为并列谓语，应该使用相同的时态和语态。故答案为 C。
5. A。逻辑关系关联对应。Retirement income 属于 fixed income 的一种，再根据句中的 any，does not 提示句子为否定句，所以不用 and，而是用 or 连接两个前后表达属于同类范畴的名词。故答案为 A。
6. D。形容词关联对应。空格所填形容词应与后文 attractive 相一致，而选项中只有 alive 可表示“活跃的，精力充沛的”的意思。故答案为 D。
7. D。谓语动词关联对应。由 and 可知空格处要填的词应与前后的动作接近，由 clap，jump 可知填入的词是动态可持续的，比较激烈的，故选项中 stamped（跺脚，用力踏）符合要求。故答案为 D。
8. B。短语关联对应。本题关键在于弄清 in the wake of（继……之后）与 in the company of（伴随着）这两个短语是平行关系。故答案为 B。
9. C。名词关联对应。根据空格前面出现的 or 以及后面出现的 depend，可知此处填入的词和前面的 success 意思相反，选项中，只有 failure 符合要求。故答案为 C。improvement“进步”；victory“胜利”；achievement“成就”，都不合题意。
10. C。形容词关联对应。并列连词 or 连接的 in the largest countries of the world（世界上最大的国家）和 the most _____ countries of the world 两个短语的意思应该相近，因此空格应填入与 largest 意思对应的形容词。选项中，只有 populous（人口多的）符合题意，意为“世界上人口最多的国家”。故答案为 C。poor“贫穷的”，不用 the most 表示最高级；remote“偏远的”和 underdeveloped“欠发达的”，文中并没涉及这两方面的含义，不符合题意。

二、褒贬一致法

技巧点拨

几乎每篇完形填空的语境都有一定的褒贬性，这种褒贬性反映了主人公的特定心理和情绪状态，及作者的写作意图，因此利用好文章的语境褒贬性就能对文章进行准确的逻辑判断，在吃透文意并准确传递文意的基础上推断出每一空的准确信息。

（1）认真阅读原文，找出反映语境褒贬性的标志性词汇或句子，并大胆预测下文。

通读原文时，应在掌握文章大意、弄清作者思路的基础上，着重寻找反映语境褒贬性的标志性词汇或句子。描绘褒义语境的常常是轻松、愉快和赞美性语言；描绘贬义语境的常常是沉重、悲伤和批判性语言。这些标志性词汇或句子往往对文章的语境褒贬性起着决

定性的作用。寻找语境褒贬的标志性词汇时，应着重阅读首段或首句，因为首段或首句往往体现文章的主旨大意，也就体现了作者的意图，从而就能体现语境褒贬性。确定好语境后，要根据其进行逻辑推理，推断出该语境的未知信息。

（2）注意反映语境褒贬性产生变化的标志性词汇或句子。

有的完形填空语境的褒贬不是贯彻始终而是有所变化的，文意和文章发展方向随着作者的心理、情绪和作者的意图而改变，因此文章未知信息的褒贬性也必然随着改变，因此考生做完形填空题时应认真阅读原文，找出反映语境褒贬性变化的标志性词汇或句子，并据此进行逻辑判断，从而推断出未知信息。

（3）完整地阅读原文，检验其褒贬语境及变化是否与文意完全吻合。

做完完形填空后，考生一定要把原文完整地读一遍，看看其褒贬语境及变化与文章的情节发展、作者的写作意图是否一致，文义是否顺畅、有道理、一气呵成，再在主旨文义及褒贬语境的指引下，做适当的调整。

典型真题

例 1：

And that divide does exist today. My wife and I lectured about this looming danger twenty years ago. What was less __52__ then, however, were the new, positive forces that work against the digital divide. Actually, there are reasons to be optimistic.（四川大学 2012 年）

52. A. obscure　　B. visible　　C. invisible　　D. indistinct

【名师点评】 B。形容词词义辨析。根据 however 和否定意义 less 判定，空格应填入与 new，positive 正向的形容词。选项中只有 visible（看得见的，明显的）符合上下文。故答案为 B。

例 2：

Within the next decade or two, one to two billion people on the planet will be netted together. As a result, I now believe the digital divide will __61__ rather than widen in the years ahead. And that is very good news because the Internet may well be the most powerful tool for preventing world poverty that we've ever had.（四川大学 2012 年）

61. A. decrease　　B. narrow　　C. neglect　　D. low

【名师点评】 B。根据句中的 rather than 判断，空格应填入与 widen 反义的动词。选项中，narrow（变窄）符合句意。故答案为 B。

例 3：

This argument __32__ with many feminists and civil-rights activists and became widely adopted, leading to the "political correctness" justifiably __33__ by Rush Limbaugh and the "mental masturbation" lampooned by Woody Allen.（北京大学 2013 年）

32. A. resonated　　B. agreed　　C. appealed　　D. responded

33. A. liked　　B. approved　　C. verified　　D. hated

【名师点评】

32. A。固定搭配和上下文语义理解。根据句子中的 widely adopted 可推知，这一观点受到广泛的认同。只有 resonated 与 with 搭配符合上下文意思，意为"得到共鸣"。故答案为 A。agreed 应与 by 搭配，意为"受到……认同"。

33. D。上下文语义理解。此句后半部分 and 分句表示这一运动受到 Woody Allen 的讽刺，由此可以推断出，空格处也是表示否定的意思。选项中只有 hated 表示否定的含义。故答案为 D。

实战演练

1. The question is no cycle academic one. The ease with mere people can change from working in the day to working at night is a which of growing importance in industry where automation _____ round-the-clock working of machines.
   A. problem　　B. difficulty　　C. trouble　　D. matter
2. I climbed the stairs slowly, carrying a big suitcase, my father following with two more. By the time I got to the third floor, I was helpless and at the same time feeling lonely. Worse still, Dad minded a step and fell, sending my new suitcases rolling down the stairs. "Damn!" he screamed, his face turning red. I knew _____ was ahead. Whenever Dad's face turns red, look out.
   A. suffering　　B. difficulty　　C. trouble　　D. danger
3. Most newspapers depend on advertising for their very existence. Newspapers are sold at a price that _____ even a small fraction of the cost of production. The main source of income for most newspapers is commercial advertising.
   A. tries to cover　　B. manages to cover　　C. fails to cover　　D. succeeds in
4. Many theories concerning the causes of juvenile delinquency (crimes committed by young people) focus either on the individual or on society as the major contributing influence. Theories centering on the individual suggest that children engage in criminal behavior because they were not sufficiently penalized for previous misdeeds or that they have learned criminal behavior through _____ with others.
   A. interaction　　B. assimilation　　C. cooperation　　D. consultation
5. But it also gives you a chance to individualize a school assignment, to suit a piece of work to your own interests and abilities, to show others what you can do. Writing a research paper is more than just a classroom exercise. It's an experience in _____ out, understanding and synthesizing, which forms the basis of many skills applicable to both academic and nonacademic tasks.
   A. searching　　B. scouting　　C. plundering　　D. stretching
6. About 15 percent of heavy drinkers develop cirrhosis, which can be fatal. Changes in the brain and nervous system result in hostile behavior, loss of mental _____, and poor judgment. One third of the babies born to mothers who drink heavily, especially during the first trimester, have birth defects or retardation.
   A. alert　　B. villain　　C. sharpness　　D. attention
7. The United States is well-known for its network of major higher highways designed to help a driver get from one place to another in the shortest possible time. Although these wide modern roads are generally smooth and well maintained, with much sharp curves and many straight sections, a direct route is not always the most _____ one. Large highways often pass by scenic areas and interesting small towns.
   A. terrible　　B. possible　　C. enjoyable　　D. profitable
8. This book has been designed to help you capitalize on the strength and overcome the _____ that you bring to the job of learning. But in order to measure your development, you must first take stock of where you stand now.
   A. idea　　B. weakness　　C. strength　　D. advantage
9. Many critics consider that far more stress is placed on achievements in athletics than in

the academic sphere. We're told that it's _____ to compel boys with no athletic bent to spend hours of misery on the playground, when, if left to themselves, they would occupy their time far more usefully in some profitable hobby.

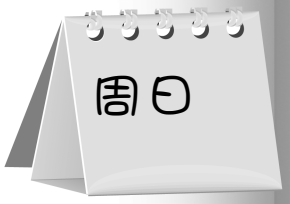
A. tyrannical　　B. bossy　　C. beastly　　D. inhumane

10. Laughter does produce short-term changes in the function of the heart and its blood, _____ vessels heart rate and oxygen consumption.

A. stabilizing　　B. boosting　　C. impairing　　D. determining

答案解析

1. D。名词词义辨析。空格前的 growing importance 提示，所填词不应表示消极意义，由此可知答案为 D。problem“问题”；difficulty“困难”；trouble“麻烦”都表达消极意义，不符合本句语境，故排除。
2. C。名词词义辨析。文中 slowly，lonely，worse still，fell 等词带有明显的贬义，反映出文章的沉闷气氛和作者怏怏不乐的心情。父亲的失足、两个手提箱滚落楼梯、父亲的脸变红和喊叫预兆着前边出现了 trouble（麻烦）。故答案为 C。
3. C。上下文语义理解。根据空格后 even 提供的信息，此处意为“报纸的售价之低，不足以抵付成本的一小部分”。符合上下文关于广告收入的说法。
4. A。名词词义辨析。原文所提供的信息是“青少年学习犯罪的途径是什么”，空格处的词即表达这个途径，而 interaction 这个词表达了“与别人交流”的意思，这样与前面的 learned criminal behavior 就形成合理搭配了。consultation 的意思虽然符合上下文要求，但不能与 with 搭配；assimilation 意为“吸收，使同化”，而非“模仿”；cooperation“合作”，有中性偏褒义色彩。此处表示孩子学坏，不是与别人的“合作”关系。
5. A。动词词义辨析。分析上下文，空格应填入与 understanding and synthesizing 同类的动词。选项中 search 和 out 搭配，表示“搜寻，找到”，合乎题意。scout“物色，侦查”，语气过重；plunder“抢劫，掠夺”，感情色彩不对；stretch out“伸展，延展”，不符合语义。
6. C。名词词义辨析。从语法判断本题应当填名词，同时根据上下文的 hostile，loss，poor judgment 判定空格应填入褒义词，表示“大脑敏锐、灵活”等方面的含义。选项中，alert 常做形容词，表示“警惕的，机警的”；villain“坏人，反面角色”；attention 不会与 mental 搭配，只有 sharpness 能与 mental 搭配，构成 mental sharpness，表示“头脑的敏锐”。故答案为 C。
7. C。Although 引导转折状语从句，根据本句中的 sharp curves 判定，此处讲的是公路不好的一面，又因为本句为否定句，所以此处应选择一个褒义形容词，选项中，只有 enjoyable（可享受的）为褒义词。故答案为 C。
8. B。名词词义辨析。根据动词 overcome（克服）以及前面提到的 capitalize on the strength，可知所选名词应与前面的 strength 意思相反，表示负向的词。选项中，weakness 意为“弱点”符合要求。故答案为 B。
9. B。形容词词义辨析。tyrannical“残暴的，专横的”；bossy“擅自做主的，对别人意见不睬的，跋扈的”；beastly“残忍的”；inhumane“残忍的，不人道的”。这里填入的形容词用来修饰 to compel，只有 bossy 符合要求，其他选项语气过重。故答案为 B。
10. B。动词关联对应。由句中的 does changes 可知填入空格的动词应与该句的谓语 produce 表达一样的积极意义。选项中，stabilizing“安定，稳定”；boosting“提高，推动，促进”；impairing“损害，削弱”；determining“决定”。符合一致表达的只有 boosting。故答案为 B。



一周总测

Directions: *There are 20 blanks in the following ten passages, respectively. For each blank there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. You should choose the ONE that best fits into the passage.*

Passage 1

What is your earliest childhood memory? Can you remember learning to walk? Or talk? The first time you heard thunder or watched a television program? Adults seldom __1__ events much earlier than the year or so before entering school, __2__ children younger than three or four __3__ retain any specific, personal experiences.

A variety of explanations have been __4__ by psychologists for this "childhood amnesia"(失忆症). One argues that the hippocampus, the region of the brain which is __5__ for forming memories, does not mature until about the age of two. But the most popular theory __6__ that, since adults don't think like children, they cannot __7__ childhood memories. Adults think in words, and their life memories are like stories or __8__ — one event follows __9__ as in a novel or film. But when they search through their mental __10__ for early childhood memories to add to this verbal life story, they don't find any that fits the __11__. It's like trying to find a Chinese word in an English dictionary.

Now psychologist Annette Simms of the New York State University offers a new __12__ for childhood amnesia. She argues that there simply __13__ any early childhood memories to recall. According to Dr. Simms, children need to learn to use someone else's spoken description of their personal __14__ in order to turn their own short-term, quickly forgotten __15__ of them into long-term memories. In other __16__, children have to talk about their experiences and hear others talk about __17__ — Mother talking about the afternoon __18__ looking for seashells at the beach or Dad asking them about their day at Ocean Park. Without this __19__ reinforcement, says Dr. Simms, children cannot form __20__ memories of their personal experiences.

1. A. figure　　B. interpret　　C. recall　　D. affirm
2. A. now that　　B. even if　　C. as though　　D. just as
3. A. largely　　B. rarely　　C. merely　　D. really

4. A. refuted	B. defied	C. proposed	D. witnessed
5. A. responsible	B. suitable	C. favorable	D. available
6. A. declines	B. assesses	C. estimates	D. maintains
7. A. reflect	B. attain	C. access	D. acquire
8. A. narratives	B. forecasts	C. communications	D. descriptions
9. A. the rest	B. another	C. the other	D. others
10. A. deposits	B. dreams	C. flashes	D. files
11. A. model	B. pattern	C. frame	D. formula
12. A. emphasis	B. assertion	C. explanation	D. assumption
13. A. aren't	B. weren't	C. isn't	D. wasn't
14. A. instincts	B. feelings	C. sensations	D. experiences
15. A. impressions	B. beliefs	C. minds	D. insights
16. A. senses	B. cases	C. words	D. aspects
17. A. him	B. their	C. it	D. them
18. A. taken	B. utilized	C. applied	D. spent
19. A. habitual	B. verbal	C. unique	D. particular
20. A. permanent	B. mental	C. spiritual	D. conscious

Passage 2

Things in the henhouse changed practically overnight when McDonald's announced in 1999 that it would no longer buy eggs from producers who didn't meet its guidelines for care of chickens. Those guidelines included limiting the __1__ of birds that could be kept in one __2__ and prohibiting beak removal, __3__ trimming just the tips.

Once McDonald's had __4__ the way in is suing animal care guidelines for the company's suppliers, many other giants of the fast-food industry rapidly followed __5__, including Burger King, Taco Bell, Pizza Hut, Wendy's, A and W and KFC. Now, the American Meat Institute has __6__ welfare guidelines and audit __7__ for cattle, pigs, and chickens. And the European Union, representing our foreign customers, is also __8__ in with, among other things, legislation banning __9__ use of crates to house pregnant sows, __10__ in 2013.

Questions about animal care __11__ with the explosive growth in large-scale livestock farms, __12__ spurred customers to complain about animals being treated as "factory parts". That spurred ARS and the livestock industry to take a proactive approach to addressing animal __13__ issues, making sure that guidelines are based on facts __14__ through scientific research. The goal is to share research findings with the retail food industry and others so that the livestock industry can improve its __15__ guidelines.

Ten years ago, to __16__ these concerns, ARS started a research program on livestock behavior and stress. The scientists involved were tasked with finding out whether modern farming practices were __17__ stressing animals. And if so, could scientific methods be developed to measure this stress so that __18__ could be evaluated objectively rather than subjectively?

A decade later, the __19__ answer is "yes" to both questions. Many had expected the answer to be "no" on both counts, but science works independently __20__ people's opinions.

1. A. amount	B. number	C. figure	D. sum
2. A. cage	B. cave	C. case	D. cart
3. A. but for	B. except for	C. aside from	D. away from
4. A. paved	B. changed	C. led	D. opened
5. A. suit	B. step	C. set	D. super
6. A. adapted	B. adopted	C. approved	D. accepted
7. A. booklets	B. pamphlets	C. brochures	D. checklists
8. A. measuring	B. weighing	C. considering	D. thinking
9. A. prolonged	B. proceeded	C. programmed	D. progressed
10. A. efficient	B. effective	C. effusive	D. elective
11. A. raised	B. rose	C. arose	D. pose
12. A. who	B. what	C. which	D. how
13. A. health	B. life	C. wealth	D. welfare
14. A. decided	B. determined	C. proved	D. tested
15. A. voluntary	B. revolutionary	C. preliminary	D. necessary
16. A. express	B. address	C. suppress	D. compress
17. A. unduly	B. unequally	C. unfortunately	D. unfavorably
18. A. performances	B. programs	C. problems	D. practices
19. A. sequential	B. initial	C. essential	D. financial
20. A. of	B. on	C. by	D. with

Passage 3

While radio broadcasting was still __1__ its early stage the wonder of television was __2__ being developed. The first step towards its invention was __3__ in 1873 but the person responsible for developing __4__ was John Logie Baird. In 1926 he gave the __5__ of a television picture. As a home entertainment, __6__ rapidly became more popular than any __7__ form. A news broadcast became more immediate __8__ people could actually see the scene __9__ question and the movements of the figures. Films could also be available. One of the advantages of travel programs was the __10__ of far-away places which many viewers __11__ not otherwise have seen. __12__ much of the entertainment was of a popular __13__ like quiz competitions, some remarkable cultural programs were also broadcast. Just as __14__ radio in earlier days, a group of actors and actresses became familiar in __15__ household. __16__ of the most popular programs on television was sport and an interesting __17__ of the television broadcast was the increased __18__ at the actual events. How far this was due to a growth in interest __19__ the game and how far out of the people's desire to appear on the __20__ is not clear.

1. A. during	B. on	C. in	D. with
2. A. already	B. always	C. not yet	D. ever

3. A. marked	B. quickened	C. kept	D. taken
4. A. it	B. television	C. the design	D. the machine
5. A. exhibition	B. glimpse	C. demonstration	D. review
6. A. radio	B. film	C. television	D. broadcasting
7. A. entertainment	B. other	C. performance	D. enjoyment
8. A. though	B. when	C. before	D. if
9. A. without	B. out of	C. on	D. in
10. A. sight	B. glimpse	C. retrospect	D. glance
11. A. might	B. should	C. would	D. could
12. A. Though	B. If	C. As	D. For
13. A. nature	B. quality	C. tendency	D. kind
14. A. with	B. for	C. to	D. /
15. A. any	B. each	C. no	D. every
16. A. Some	B. One	C. Either	D. Neither
17. A. result	B. phenomenon	C. behavior	D. appreciation
18. A. enjoyment	B. attendance	C. entertainment	D. performance
19. A. of	B. at	C. in	D. for
20. A. spot	B. stage	C. platform	D. screen

Passage 4

The United States has historically had higher rates of marriage than those of other industrialized countries. The current annual marriage __1__ in the United States — about 9 new marriages for every 1,000 people — is __2__ higher than it is in other industrialized countries. However, marriage is __3__ as widespread as it was several decades ago. __4__ of American adults who are married __5__ from 72 percent in 1970 to 60 percent in 2002. This does not mean that large numbers of people will remain unmarried __6__ their lives. Throughout the 20th century, about 90 percent of Americans married at some __7__ in their lives. Experts __8__ that about the same proportion of today's young adults will eventually marry.

The timing of marriage has varied __9__ over the past century. In 1995 the average age of women in the United States at the __10__ of their first marriage was 25. The average age of men was about 27. Men and women in the United States marry __11__ the first time at an average of five years later than people __12__ in the 1950s. __13__, young adults of the 1950s married younger than did any previous __14__ in U. S. history. Today's later age of marriage is __15__ the age of marriage between 1890 and 1940. __16__, a greater proportion of the population was married (95 percent) during the 1950s than at any time before __17__. Experts do not agree on __18__ the "marriage rush" of the late 1940s and 1950s occurred, but most social scientists believed it represented a __19__ to the return of peaceful life and prosperity after 15 years of severe economic __20__ and war.

1. A. ratio	B. rate	C. percentage	D. poll

2. A. potentially	B. intentionally	C. substantially	D. randomly
3. A. not any longer	B. no more	C. not any more	D. no longer
4. A. The proportion	B. A proportion	C. The number	D. A number
5. A. deteriorated	B. declined	C. deduced	D. demolished
6. A. past	B. passing	C. throughout	D. through
7. A. period	B. level	C. point	D. respect
8. A. promise	B. plan	C. project	D. propose
9. A. unexpectedly	B. irregularly	C. flexibly	D. consistently
10. A. time	B. year	C. stage	D. age
11. A. at	B. in	C. of	D. for
12. A. do	B. did	C. marry	D. married
13. A. Besides	B. However	C. Whereas	D. Nevertheless
14. A. descendants	B. ascendants	C. generation	D. population
15. A. caused by	B. according to	C. based on	D. in line with
16. A. Moreover	B. Likewise	C. Similarly	D. Therefore
17. A. and after	B. or after	C. ever since	D. or since
18. A. why	B. how	C. when	D. what
19. A. refusal	B. realization	C. reality	D. response
20. A. repression	B. aggression	C. depression	D. restriction

Passage 5

The "standard of living" of any country means the average person's share of the goods and services the country produces. A country's standard of living, __1__, depends first and __2__ on its capacity to produce wealth. "Wealth" in this sense is not money, for we do not live on money __3__ on things that money can buy: "goods" such as food and clothing, and "services" such as transport and "__4__".

A country's capacity to produce wealth depends upon many factors, most of __5__ have an effect on one another. Wealth depends __6__ a great extent upon a country's natural resources. Some regions of the world are well supplied with coal and minerals, and have a fertile soil and a __7__ climate; other regions possess none of them.

Next to natural resources __8__ the ability to turn them to use. China is perhaps as well __9__ as the USA in natural resources, but suffered for many years from civil and __10__ wars, and __11__ this and other reasons was __12__ to develop her resources. __13__ and stable political conditions, and __14__ from foreign invasion, enable a country to develop its natural resources peacefully and steadily, and to produce more wealth than another country equally well __15__ by nature but less well ordered.

A country's standard of living does not only depend upon the wealth that is produced and consumed __16__ it own borders, but also upon what is indirectly produced through international trade. __17__ Britain's wealth in foodstuffs and other agricultural products would be much less if she had to depend only on __18__ grown at home. Trade makes it possible for her surplus manufactured goods to be traded abroad

for the agricultural products that would __19__ be lacking. A country's wealth is, therefore, much influenced by its manufacturing capacity, __20__ that other countries can be found ready to accept its manufactures.

1. A. however	B. therefore	C. nevertheless	D. furthermore
2. A. primary	B. principal	C. foremost	D. uniquely
3. A. or	B. nor	C. but	D. except
4. A. recreation	B. enlightenment	C. refreshment	D. entertainment
5. A. if	B. them	C. which	D. that
6. A. with	B. for	C. to	D. on
7. A. neutral	B. favorable	C. virtuous	D. marine
8. A. comes	B. come	C. coming	D. came
9. A. off	B. known	C. done	D. furnished
10. A. military	B. external	C. contemporary	D. domestic
11. A. for	B. because	C. because of	D. due to
12. A. impossible	B. incapable	C. unable	D. proficient
13. A. Strong	B. Sturdy	C. Sound	D. Robust
14. A. liberty	B. freedom	C. prevention	D. liberation
15. A. assisted	B. avenged	C. rescued	D. served
16. A. with	B. within	C. near	D. without
17. A. In short	B. For example	C. Firstly	D. On one hand
18. A. those	B. what	C. that	D. it
19. A. likely	B. likewise	C. certainly	D. otherwise
20. A. provided	B. depended	C. given	D. supposed

Passage 6

When women do become managers, do they bring a different style and different skills to the job? Are they better, or worse, managers than men? Are women more highly motivated and __1__ than male managers?

Some research __2__ the idea that women bring different attitudes and skills to management jobs, such as greater __3__, an emphasis on affiliation and attachment, and a __4__ to bring emotional factors to bear __5__ making workplace decisions. These differences are __6__ to carry advantages for companies, __7__ they expand the range of techniques that can be used to __8__ the company manage its workforce __9__.

A study commissioned by the International Women's Forum __10__ a management style used by some women managers (and also by some men) that __11__ from the command-and-control style __12__ used by male managers. Using this "interactive leadership" approach, "Women __13__ participation, share power and information, __14__ other people's self-worth, and get others excited about their work. All these __15__ reflect their belief that allowing __16__ to contribute and to feel __17__ and important is a win-win __18__ — good for the employees and the organization." The

study's director __19__ that "interactive leadership may emerge __20__ the management style of choice for many organizations."

1. A. confronted	B. commanded	C. confined	D. committed
2. A. supports	B. argues	C. opposes	D. despises
3. A. combination	B. cooperativeness	C. coherence	D. correlation
4. A. willingness	B. loyalty	C. sensitivity	D. virtue
5. A. by	B. in	C. at	D. with
6. A. disclosed	B. watched	C. revised	D. seen
7. A. therefore	B. whereas	C. because	D. nonetheless
8. A. help	B. enable	C. support	D. direct
9. A. evidently	B. precisely	C. aggressively	D. effectively
10. A. developed	B. invented	C. discovered	D. located
11. A. derives	B. differs	C. descends	D. detaches
12. A. inherently	B. traditionally	C. conditionally	D. occasionally
13. A. encourage	B. dismiss	C. disapprove	D. engage
14. A. enhance	B. enlarge	C. ignore	D. degrade
15. A. themes	B. subjects	C. researches	D. things
16. A. managers	B. women	C. employees	D. males
17. A. faithful	B. powerful	C. skillful	D. thoughtful
18. A. situation	B. status	C. circumstance	D. position
19. A. predicted	B. proclaimed	C. defied	D. diagnosed
20. A. into	B. from	C. as	D. for

Passage 7

One hundred and thirteen million Americans have at least one bank-issued credit card. They give their owners automatic __1__ in stores, restaurants, and hotels, at home, across the country, and even abroad, and they make many banking services __2__ as well. More and more of those credit cards can be __3__ automatically, making __4__ possible to withdraw or __5__ money in scattered locations, whether or not the local branch bank is open. For many of us the "cashless society" is not __6__ — it's already here.

__7__ computers offer these conveniences to consumers, they have many __8__ for sellers too. Electronic cash registers can do much more than simply __9__ sales. They can keep a wide __10__ of records, including who sold what, when and to whom. This information allows businessmen to __11__ track of their list of goods __12__ showing which items are being sold and how fast they are moving. __13__ to reorder or return goods to suppliers can then be made. At the same time these computers record which __14__ are the busiest and which employees are the most efficient, allowing personnel and staffing assignments to be made __15__. And they also __16__ preferred customers for promotional campaigns. Computers are relied on by manufacturers for __17__ reasons. Computer-analyzed marketing reports can help to decide which products to emphasize now, which to develop for the future and which to drop. Computers keep

track of goods in __18__, of raw materials __19__ hand, and even of the production process itself.

Numerous other commercial enterprises, from theaters to magazine publishers, from gas and electric __20__ to milk processors, bring better and more efficient services to consumers through the use of computers.

1. A. mortgage	B. acknowledgement	C. loan	D. credit
2. A. available	B. profitable	C. homogeneous	D. instantaneous
3. A. issued	B. read	C. taken	D. used
4. A. it	B. that	C. those	D. them
5. A. lodge	B. secure	C. input	D. deposit
6. A. on the air	B. in the distance	C. on the horizon	D. before long
7. A. While	B. When	C. If	D. Though
8. A. drawbacks	B. handicaps	C. rewards	D. advantages
9. A. bring up	B. ring up	C. show up	D. mark up
10. A. range	B. area	C. field	D. scope
11. A. take	B. follow	C. keep	D. make
12. A. with	B. through	C. in	D. by
13. A. Resolutions	B. Determinations	C. Requirements	D. Decisions
14. A. ages	B. hours	C. times	D. eras
15. A. respectively	B. rationally	C. accordingly	D. justifiably
16. A. identify	B. recognize	C. distinguish	D. discriminate
17. A. comparative	B. dissimilar	C. compatible	D. similar
18. A. stock	B. order	C. store	D. cash
19. A. at	B. by	C. under	D. on
20. A. utilities	B. appliances	C. apparatus	D. equipment

Passage 8

An estimated 11, 300 laptop computers, 31, 400 handheld computers and 200, 000 mobile telephones have been left in taxis around the world during the last six months, according to a survey. Taxi drivers in nine cities also said they had found a __1__ of other items __2__ by passengers, including a harp, 37 milk bottles, dentures and __3__ limbs. One driver said he __4__ found a baby in his taxi.

The survey of some 1, 000 taxi drivers said that passengers had lost three times more __5__ computers in the second __6__ of 2004 than in 2001, __7__ the research by security software company Pointsec was first __8__. Most of the items were __9__ to their owners, cab drivers said. Four out of five mobile phones and 19 out of every 20 computers found their __10__ back, they said. Londoners appeared more __11__ than others with their laptops, __12__ Danes were most likely to forget their mobile phones, the survey found. In Chicago in the United States, passengers often __13__ handheld computers on the back __14__. The survey's __15__ were extrapolated to reflect the __16__ number of taxis in each city. One customer, who later __17__ to be the girlfriend of actor Hugh Grant, left her iPod music player, mobile phone and __18__. When the

lady taxi driver was asked to __19__ the items to Grant, she received an __20__ as a thank-you.

1. A. range	B. rank	C. region	D. return
2. A. claimed	B. found	C. left	D. declared
3. A. arbitrary	B. apparent	C. artificial	D. assistant
4. A. even	B. still	C. however	D. somehow
5. A. handmade	B. handheld	C. handcrafted	D. handbound
6. A. part	B. year	C. time	D. half
7. A. which	B. where	C. when	D. what
8. A. carried out	B. worked out	C. found out	D. figured out
9. A. replaced	B. returned	C. recommended	D. recreated
10. A. road	B. path	C. journey	D. way
11. A. careful	B. caretaking	C. careless	D. care laden
12. A. when	B. while	C. wherever	D. whenever
13. A. fell behind	B. stayed behind	C. left behind	D. dropped behind
14. A. seat	B. bench	C. car	D. taxi
15. A. consequences	B. fruits	C. findings	D. conclusions
16. A. total	B. all	C. whole	D. complete
17. A. turned in	B. turned on	C. turned out	D. turned off
18. A. profile	B. pulse	C. preface	D. purse
19. A. deliver	B. designate	C. dedicate	D. direct
20. A. automobile	B. authority	C. autograph	D. autobiography

Passage 9

Most people have no idea of the hard work and worry about going into the collection of those fascinating birds and animals that they pay to see in the zoo. One of the questions that is always asked of me is __1__ I became an animal collector in the first __2__. The answer is that I have always been interested in animals and zoos. According to my parents, the first word I was able to say with any __3__ was not the conventional "mamma" or "daddy", __4__ the word "zoo", which I would __5__ over and over again with a shrill __6__ until someone, in order to __7__ me up, would take me to the zoo. When I __8__ a little older, we lived in Greece and I had a great __9__ of pets, ranging from owls to seahorses, and I spent all my spare time __10__ the countryside in search of fresh specimens to __11__ to my collection of pets. __12__ on I went for a year to the City Zoo, as a student __13__, to get experience of the large animals, such as lions, bears, bison and ostriches, __14__ were not easy to keep at home. When I left, I __15__ had enough money of my own to be able to __16__ my first trip and I have been going __17__ ever since then. Though a collector's job is not an easy one and is full of __18__, it is certainly a job which will appeal __19__ all those who love animals and __20__.

1. A. how	B. where	C. when	D. whether
2. A. region	B. field	C. place	D. case

3. A. clarity	B. emotion	C. sentiment	D. affection
4. A. except	B. but	C. except for	D. but for
5. A. recite	B. recognize	C. read	D. repeat
6. A. volume	B. noise	C. voice	D. pitch
7. A. close	B. shut	C. stop	D. comfort
8. A. grew	B. was growing	C. grow	D. grown
9. A. many	B. amount	C. number	D. supply
10. A. living	B. cultivating	C. reclaiming	D. exploring
11. A. increase	B. include	C. add	D. enrich
12. A. Later	B. Further	C. Then	D. Subsequently
13. A. attendant	B. keeper	C. member	D. aide
14. A. who	B. they	C. of which	D. which
15. A. luckily	B. gladly	C. nearly	D. successfully
16. A. pay	B. provide	C. allow	D. finance
17. A. normally	B. regularly	C. usually	D. often
18. A. expectations		B. sorrows	
C. excitement		D. disappointments	
19. A. for	B. with	C. to	D. from
20. A. excursion	B. travel	C. journey	D. trip

Passage 10

Coffee can be considered one of nature's greatest gifts. It gives mental and emotional __1__ without harmful side effects, and it __2__ a wealth of nutrients. Yet, when most people drink coffee, they are not thinking that the beverage is __3__ their health. In fact, some may even feel a little guilty, __4__ some believe coffee isn't good for you at all.

Well, coffee, like anything else, can cause problems if too much is __5__. Moderate consumption of coffee __6__ your body with a wealth of antioxidants. These substances are responsible __7__ eliminating free radicals. They are the chemical byproducts produced any time your body does something. A small number of them can help serve __8__ a buffer against negative elements, if they aren't __9__ in check. They can cause health problems. Antioxidants ensure that this doesn't happen.

The psychological effects of caffeine cannot be __10__ either. Not only does caffeine make you more __11__, but it can actually affect your mood. If you were feeling __12__ or overwhelmed, a nice cup of coffee could change your __13__. The stack of work that seemed impossible before isn't even a problem now.

__14__, caffeine helps stimulate creativity as it speeds up the body's functioning. That's why coffee is often __15__ with writers and other intellectual professions. Other drugs __16__ to make people dumber. Consider what happens when people get high off of crack or when they get drunk off of alcohol. They won't be __17__ at all. But with coffee, an individual gets a creative boost __18__ still helping their bodies.

In conclusion, don't feel bad when you're brewing your morning cup of coffee.

__19__ a can of soda or a shot of alcohol, coffee will make you feel wonderful while keeping you healthy. Just remember, you do have to consume the beverage in __20__.

1. A. clean	B. clarity	C. brightness	D. clear
2. A. combines	B. contents	C. consists	D. contains
3. A. improving	B. harming	C. threatening	D. stimulating
4. A. and	B. but	C. since	D. while
5. A. consumed	B. conducted	C. engaged	D. attracted
6. A. provides	B. attributes	C. absorbs	D. attaches
7. A. with	B. of	C. for	D. to
8. A. for	B. as	C. to	D. with
9. A. taken	B. made	C. put	D. kept
10. A. ignored	B. abandoned	C. deleted	D. canceled
11. A. stern	B. shrewd	C. alert	D. nasty
12. A. immersed	B. depressed	C. oppressed	D. compelled
13. A. interpretive	B. relative	C. representative	D. perspective
14. A. On the contrary	B. On the other hand	C. In addition	D. At last
15. A. associated	B. connected	C. coincided	D. compared
16. A. intend	B. tend	C. extend	D. pretend
17. A. deliberate	B. credible	C. accurate	D. functional
18. A. though	B. while	C. before	D. until
19. A. Like	B. Whether	C. Either	D. Unlike
20. A. moderation	B. particular	C. meditation	D. standard

答案

Passage 1

1. C	2. D	3. B	4. C	5. A	6. D	7. C
8. A	9. B	10. D	11. B	12 C	13. A	14. D
15. A	16. C	17. D	18. D	19. B	20. A	

Passage 2

1. B	2. A	3. B	4. C	5. A	6. B	7. D
8. B	9. A	10. B	11. C	12. C	13. D	14. B
15. A	16. B	17. A	18. D	19. B	20. A	

Passage 3

1. C	2. A	3. D	4. A	5. C	6. C	7. B
8. B	9. D	10. B	11. C	12. A	13. D	14. A
15. D	16. B	17. A	18. B	19. C	20. D	

Passage 4

1. B	2. C	3. D	4. A	5. B	6. C	7. A
8. C	9. D	10. A	11. D	12. B	13. B	14. C
15. D	16. A	17. B	18. A	19. D	20. C	

Passage 5

1. B 2. C 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. C 7. B
8. A 9. A 10. B 11. A 12. C 13. C 14. B
15. D 16. B 17. B 18. A 19. D 20. A

Passage 6

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. C
8. A 9. D 10. C 11. B 12. B 13. A 14. A
15. D 16. C 17. B 18. A 19. A 20. C

Passage 7

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D 6. C 7. A
8. D 9. B 10. A 11. C 12. D 13. D 14. B
15. C 16. A 17. D 18. A 19. D 20. A

Passage 8

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. B 6. D 7. C
8. A 9. B 10. D 11. C 12. B 13. C 14. A
15. C 16. A 17. C 18. D 19. A 20. C

Passage 9

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D 6. C 7. B
8. A 9. C 10. D 11. C 12. A 13. D 14. D
15. D 16. D 17. B 18. D 19. C 20. B

Passage 10

1. B 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. A 6. A 7. C
8. B 9. D 10. A 11. C 12. B 13. D 14. C
15. A 16. B 17. D 18. B 19. D 20. A

第四周 改 错

周一 常考要点（一）代词、冠词
周二 常考要点（二）介词、比较级和最高级
周三 常考要点（三）名词、句子结构
周四 常考要点（四）谓语动词、非谓语动词
周五 常考要点（五）词性混用、易混词误用
周六 常考要点（六）平行结构、逻辑关系
周日 一周总测

考核要求

改错题是现代英语语言测试试题中一个重要的类型，对考生的语言水平进行科学的测定，具有知识性强，测试难度大，能力要求高等特点。改错题与完形填空题一样，属于综合考点单技能间接试题，特点就是把各类考点综合起来放在一定篇幅的语篇中进行考查：

- ❖ 语言评价能力以及综合应用英语的准确性；
- ❖ 测试考生发现、判断及纠正文章中语言错误的能力；
- ❖ 语言篇章结构的整体理解和把握能力；
- ❖ 考查词法（词形、搭配）、句法及语篇的行文逻辑等方面的知识。

试题分析

英语改错有两种形式：

（1）短文改错（proofreading），也译做阅读改错。这种类型的试题是一篇语言上有若干错误的短文，要求考生仔细阅读后，辨明其中的错误并加以改正。

试题的格式是在短文每行文字的右边设一空白。考生如果认为某行没有错误，则在空白处画一对号。如果发现某行有错误，应指出错误的位置并在有错的地方划出相应的标记，指明这一错误需以增补、改写或删除的办法加以改正，然后在空白处写出应该增补或改正的单词，或画一斜线表示删除。短文改错有一种变通形式，即只在短文中出现错误的各行文字之后留空设问，考生无须判断每行是否有错，只需集中精力找出并改正设问各行的错误就可完成任务，因此一般认为这要比前一种形式容易。这种变通形式被命名为 Error Correction（综合改错）。

例如：

When a consumer finds that an item she or he bought is in faulty or in 1. _____
some other way does not live to the manufacturer's claim for it, the first 2. _____
step is to present the warranty or any other records which might help, at the store of purchase. In most cases, this action will produce results. Moreover, … 3. _____

（2）单句改错

单句改错题要求从所给的 A、B、C、D 四个选项中选出错误的选项（每题只有一个错误）并加以改正。

例如：

The repetitions that concern Domhoff pertains largely to repetitions within an
A
individual's dream history. But there is a sense in which all dreamers dream
B
each other's dreams in the form of so-called universal dreams, which are
C
the equivalent of literary archetypes.
D

命题特点和考查点

改错题一般是选择一段或几段文字正确、语言地道、题材得当的英语材料为母本，按照一个适当的字数大体给这篇语言材料分行，再在测试学科学命题理论指导下，对其中的某些文字进行有目的地添加、删减或错误改动，使这段文字的某些行出现无错、错词、多词或缺词中的一种情况，让考生对测试行的文字进行判断或改动，以恢复原文正确、地道、得体的本来面貌，以此来测试考生语篇或句子水平上的理解能力。改错题的主要考查点多种多样，涉及语法、词汇和逻辑结构等方面。

- 主、谓语不一致
- 虚拟语气方面的错误
- 非谓语动词的误用
- 词序有误
- 句子结构错误
- 形容词和副词的误用
- 可数与不可数名词的误用
- 时态和语态方面的错误
- 固定搭配不当
- 连词的误用
- 词性（动词、名词、形容词或副词）的误用

周一

常考要点（一）
代词、冠词

一、代　词

考点分析

代词顾名思义，用来替代前面出现过的成分，以使语言简练、避免重复。

代词种类繁多，包括人称代词（如：I，him）、物主代词（如：her，ours，their）、反身代词（如：yourself，themselves）、指示代词（如：that，these）、不定代词（如：every，any）、疑问代词、关系代词等。

（一）人称代词

1）主格

主格代词分别是：

第一人称：I，we（复数）

第二人称：you（单复同）

第三人称：he，she，it，they（复数）

主格代词在句中作主语，填空题缺少主语时，有时填主格代词。

2）宾格

宾格代词分别是：

第一人称：me，us（复数）

第二人称：you（单复同）

第三人称：him，her，it，them（复数）

宾格代词在句中作动词或介词的宾语，改错题中常误用主格代词作宾语，应改为宾格。

（二）物主代词

物主代词用来表示所属关系，分为形容词性和名词性两类：

1）形容词性物主代词：

第一人称：my，our（复数）

第二人称：your（单复同）

第三人称：his，her，its，their（复数）

形容词性物主代词不能单独使用，只能作名词的限定词，如：my watch，their coach。

改错题经常误用其他类型的代词作名词定语，此时应改为形容词性物主代词。

2）名词性物主代词：

第一人称：mine，ours（复数）

第二人称：yours（单复同，你的东西）

第三人称：his，hers，its，theirs（复数）

名词性物主代词相当于名词，可单独使用，作句子的主语、表语或宾语。

（三）反身代词

反身代词分别是：

第一人称：myself，ourselves（复数）

第二人称：yourself，yourselves（复数）

第三人称：himself，herself，itself，themselves（复数）

还有 oneself

改错题经常混淆反身代词的写法，结尾的-self 和-selves 经常故意写错，也会出现反身代词用错的时候，其中最主要的是 oneself。

反身代词常和一些介词连用组成一些惯用语：

by oneself 单独、独自

for oneself 为了自己

（四）who 和 which 的区别。

which 指代事物或者动物，who 指代人

who/whom son 往往要改为 whose son，whose 可以指代事物。

（五）that 和 which 的区别

介词后面使用 which，而不用 that，in that 除外。

（六）定语从句的特殊省略

reason 后面有定语从句，中间往往省略 why；

time 后面有定语从句，中间往往省略 when；

way 后面有定语从句，中间省略了 in which。

（七）不定代词

不定代词的误用经常出现

1）both 和 all

both，either，neither 都是在谈到两个人或者东西的时候用到。如：

Both of them are right.（他们两个人都对。）

You can take either book.（两本书你可以任意挑一本。）

Neither of them is going to get haircut.（他们俩谁也不愿意理发。）

All of the books are worth to read.（三本书以上）

None of them is going to get haircut.（them 指三个人以上）

2）none 和 no

none 和 no 都用于否定的意思。但是 none 是“没有一个人或者没有一个东西”，在句子中可以用作主语、宾语、同位语等。而 no 是“没有”的意思，只能够当作形容词用，不能够作代词用。如：

None of them knew how to do it.（不能够说 no of them）

No women are allowed to come in.

3）another，the other，the others

涉及两个人或者东西的时候，任意取一个用 one，另外那个用 the other（表示特指）。如：

I have two computers: one is IBM，the other is Dell.

涉及三个以上时，任意取一个用 one，泛指另外一个用 another。如：

Three people went to the meeting. One was a software programmer，another was a network expert，and the third was a college student.

涉及三个以上时，任意取一个用 one，表示特指其他的那些用 the others 或者用 the other +名词。如：

Two of them go to Canada，the others go to America.

Two of the students go to Canada，the other students go to America.

技巧点拨

1. 熟悉上述代词的常见用法。

2. 在考试中，代词错误的概率是非常高的，因此代词画横线，应该先看代词有没有错。

3. 注意代词的单复数，代词的性别。

典型真题

例 1：

（68）Diesel soot，what is also a carcinogen，is a major problem because it is concentrated in cities along transportation corridors impacting densely populated areas.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】 ~~what~~ →which。what 为疑问代词，在从句中充当主语或宾语成分。which 为关系代词，充当引导词。这里为非限制性定语从句。因此应该将 what 改为 which。

例 2：

44. I found that (A) impossible to (B) answer (C) all the question within (D) the time given.（河海大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】 A。形式宾语。found 后接形式宾语，不能用 that，应改为 it。

例 3：

38. One major obstacle to (A) economic development is population growth. The populations (B) of most developing countries grow at a rate much faster than that (C) of industrialized countries. One reason for this growth is the high crude birth-rate—the number of live births (D) per 1，000 people.（中国社会科学院 2013 年）

【名师点评】 C。指示代词单复数。由复数名词 the populations 可知，此处 that 应该为 those。故答案为 C。

例 4：

34. Culture in general is concerned with (A) beliefs and values on the basis of that (B) people interpret experiences and behave, individually and in groups. Broadly and simply put (C), "culture" refers to a group or community with which (D) you share common experiences that shape the way you understand the world. (中国社会科学院 2011 年)

【名师点评】B。定语从句关系代词。on the basis of 是由"介词 + 关系代词"引导的定语从句，介词后面的代词只能用 which 或 whom。根据先行词 beliefs and values 可知，此处只能用 which。

实战演练

1. The texture of soil is determined (A) by the size (B) of the grains or particles that (C) make up (D).
2. Mammals lose body (A) heat to them environment (B) in cold weather more (C) quickly than in hot weather (D).
3. In Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia until 1780 (A), people conducted (B) themself (C) much like the gentry (D) in London.
4. It is not a voice we recognize at once, whereas (A) our own handwriting is something which (B) we almost always (C) know. We begin the natural learning of pronunciation long before we start learning to read or write, and in our early years we go on (D) unconsciously imitating and practicing the pronunciation of those farmers around us for many hours every day. (中国社会科学院 2015 年)

【名师点评】B。定语从句关系代词。在定语从句中，如果先行词是代词 something, everything, nothing, little, few 等时，关系代词应用 that 而不是 which，故此处应将 B：which 改为 that。

5. When television was first introduced (A), the extent to that it (B) would affect (C) society could not have been (D) foreseen.
6. Clothing made (A) of plastic fibers has certain advantages (B) over one (C) made of natural fibers like cotton, wool, or (D) silk.
7. Variables such (A) as individual and corporate behavior make (B) nearly impossible for

economists (C) to forecast economic trends with (D) precision.

8. Only 20 percent of Britons said they (A) had consumed no alcohol (B) in the past 12 months, compared (C) to double one (D) figure in Portugal, Italy and Hungary.

9. Physics is (A) the present day equivalent of what (B) used to be called natural philosophy, from that (C) most of present (D) day science arose.

10. The astronauts and their (A) achievements which (B) you mentioned stimulate the youth much so that (C) some (D) of them are engaged in astronautics.

11. Among the physicians, those where are younger, the women, the gynecologists and those in private practice were the most inclined to favor annual exams. _____

12. Until they fulfilled this (A) role, his (B) position in the structure of the family was one (C) of subordination, and their psychological needs (D) and capacities received little consideration.

13. In the center of your heart and my (A) heart where there (B) is a wireless station: so long as (C) it receives messages of beauty, hope, cheer, courage and power from men and from the infinite, so (D) long are you young.

14. They (A) experience no obesity, no middle-aged spread, little (B) dental decay, no high blood pressure, no heart disease, and their (C) blood cholesterol levels are very low (about half of the (D) average American adult).

15. The period between (A) learning a nursery rhyme and transmitting it (B) may be something (C) from twenty to (D) seventy years.

16. Individuals first (A) decode individual words by matching the aural (B) or visual pattern of the word with their (C) representation in the declarative knowledge stored in (D) long-term memory.

17. The widespread use of such (A) electrical appliances means (B) that there is a need for servicemen to (C) keep it (D) running properly.

18. The new houses, typically (A) in the suburbs, were (B) often small and more or less identical,

but it (C) satisfied a deep need (D).

19. Primarily, the banker-customer relationship is of (A) debtor and creditor—which (B) is depending on whether (C) the customer's simple account is in credit or is overdrawn (D).

20. It pleases those (A) resentful of disciplines, it (B) flatters the empty-minded by calling him (C) open-minded, it (D) comforts the confused.

答案解析

1. D。形式宾语。make up 是及物动词词组，需要宾语，依句意加上宾格代词 it，指代 soil，即 make it up。
2. B。形容词性物主代词。人称代词 them 不能修饰名词，与其对应的物主代词 their 恰好作名词 environment 的限定词。因此应将 them 改为 their。
3. C。反身代词。them 对应的反身代词为 themselves。应将 them 改为 themselves。
4. B。定语从句的关系代词。先行词不是指人，而是指物，关系代词不能用 who，故改为 which 或 that。
5. B。定语从句的关系代词。介词 to 后应加 which 引导的定语从句，不能用 that，即 the extent to which。
6. C。代词误用。题干主语 clothing 是衣服、被褥的总称，不能用 one 来指代，应该用 that 来指代 clothing。
7. B。it 形式宾语用法。根据句子结构，主语是 variables，空格中需要填入谓语成分，空格后面的 nearly impossible 充当补语成分，for economists…短语充当真正的宾语，谓语动词后面必须由形式宾语 it 补充完整。
8. D。代词误用。that 和 one 二者均可代替前文提到的人或物，在被替代成分后有介词短语修饰时，或被替代的成分为不可数名词时，用 that。而在被替代成分前有形容词修饰时，则用 one。
9. C。关系代词用法。句子中的 natural philosophy 为非限制性定语从句的先行词，应用 which 作引导。
10. B。关系代词用法。定语从句中，当先行词中既有表示人的名词又有表示物的名词时，关系代词用 that，不能用 which。
11. where→who。关系代词用法。根据上下文，those 其中的一个主语，指代前面的 the physicians，是人，定语从句的关系代词不能用 where，而是 who。
12. B。此句中前面用的是 they，后面要与 they 在数方面一致，因此将 his 改为 their。
13. B。关系代词误用。句中的 there is a wireless station 并非 in the center of your heart and my heart 的定语从句，而是 there be + 主语 + 状语句型，并且将状语 in the center of your heart and my heart 提到了句首。需要把 where 去掉。
14. D。缺少代词。of 前应加入 that。that 在这里表示指代，指前面提到的 cholesterol levels。这里未用 those，是因为后面出现的名词是单数：the average American adult。
15. C。不定代词误用。something 特指某事，而 anything 泛指任何一事，此处指从二十到七十年之间的任何时段，因此，something 要改为 anything。

16. C。代词误用。此处代词指代前面的 the word，单数意义，应使用单数形式的代词，因此 their 要改为 its。
17. D。分析句子结构，it 指代的是 appliances，应改为复数形式 them。
18. C。代词误用。but 后的 it 指代句首的 The new houses，为复数，应将 it 改为 they。
19. A。is of 前应加入 that，在这里 that 是代词，指代 relationship。
20. C。代词误用。先行词为 the empty-minded，而“the + adj.”表示一类人时，通常表示复数概念，因此将 him 改为 them。

二、冠　词

考点分析

冠词是英语中特有的词，由于汉语中没有与之相对应的词，所以考生对它的用法感到难以掌握，考博英语改错题对冠词考查多数为基本用法。

（一）两个不定冠词之间的误用

（1）不定冠词 a 和 an 主要用在可数名词单数前，表示“一个，某一个，某类人或物”。a 与 an 的用法区别主要在于其后的名词是以元音音素开头，还是以辅音音素开头。如果其后的名词是以元音音素开头，就用 an，如果是以辅音音素开头，就用 a。

（2）抽象名词在一定情况下可以加不定冠词，表示：

① 一种，一场等；a strong dislike

② 某动作的一次，一例等；a smoke

③ 引起某种情况的人或事；a great encouragement

④ 有某种品质的具体行为或人。

（3）物质名词前可以加不定冠词，表示“一场，一阵，一种，一份”等。

如：a large coffee

（4）不定冠词可用于名词化的动词-ing 形式，形容词，过去分词，序数词等之前。

如：I will not take this one. I want a better.

（5）在一些特殊情况下，人名前可以加不定冠词。

如：There wasn't a single Jones in the village.

（6）不定冠词可以用在某些专有名词前，表示“一种车或一张某人的画像”等。

如：a Buick

（7）不定冠词放在序数词前，表示“又，再”。

如：a second coffee

（8）一些专有名词前可以加不定冠词，这时专有名词表示普通概念。

如：a new China

（9）固定用法。

如：have a rest，as a rule，in a word，have a word with

（二）定冠词和不定冠词之间的误用

（1）用于指代上文出现过的事物。在叙述过程中，前面已提到的事物再次提到时，意义上有限定，所以要加定冠词 the。

（2）用在姓氏复数形式前，表示一家人。

如：The Greens are at table.

（3）用在年代、朝代、时代等名词前。

如：the Tang dynasty，the Spring and Autumn Period，in the 1870s

（4）用在作为课程或演奏的乐器等名词前。

如：play the violin

（5）用在表示单位的名词前。

如：I have hired the car by the hour.

（6）用在方向名词和某些表示时间的名词前。

如：on the left/right，the other day，in the daytime，in the east

（7）用于表示物质环境——考生周围的物质和气候，或考生生活中其他常见的事物的词组。

如：the country，the night，the Internet

（8）在某些地理名词（江、河、海洋、山脉、群岛、海峡、海湾）前要加定冠词。

如：the Yangtze River；the English Channel

（9）序数词、形容词最高级前要加定冠词。

（10）only，very，same 等词前如没有物主代词或指示代词时，通常要加定冠词。

（11）the 加某些说明人的性格或状态的形容词表示“一类人”。

如：the blind，the rich，the poor，the wounded，the learned

（12）固定用法。

如：out of the question　不可能

in the charge of　在……的主管下

（三）零冠词

考生还应注意出现以下几种情况时名词前不能用冠词。

（1）季节、月份、星期、节假日、学科、三餐、球类和棋类等名词前。

如：Spring follows winter.

（2）用于专有名词表示机构、院校等。

如：Congress 国会（美国），University of Washington（华盛顿大学）

（3）表示身份、官衔及称呼语的名词做表语、同位语、补足语时一般不加冠词。

如：Comrade Li was chairman of the meeting.

（4）表示抽象意义和一般意义的时间名词前。

如：at daybreak，at sunset，at noon，at midnight

（5）表示乘交通工具的短语中。

如：by bike，by car，by plane

（6）单数可数名词前不用 a/an 的情况：

① 连系动词 turn 后的单数可数名词做表语时。

如：After graduation from college，he turned teacher.

② as 引导的让步状语从句中被前置的可数名词单数之前。

如：Child as he is，he knows a lot.

③ man 做“人类”，word 做“消息”之意讲时。

如：The driver was at a loss when word came that he was forbidden to drive for speeding.

（7）在一些表示行为、状态、特征、原因以及说明方式、目的等的固定习语中。

如：at breakfast，in good health，on end，with ease

（8）固定用法。

如：out of question　毫无疑问

go to sea　去当水手

on fire　在燃烧

技巧点拨

（1）分清名词的可数与不可数。

（2）分清名词的范指与特指。一般表示特指时，名词前加定冠词，表示范指时名词用复数或加不定冠词。

（3）熟悉特殊类别的名词前定冠词的用法。一般专有名词前一定要加定冠词，三餐前和球类名词前不加冠词。

（4）熟悉带有定冠词或不定冠词的固定短语。比如 a number of 和 an amount of 意为“大量的”，后面分别接可数名词复数和不可数名词，a number of…做主语时谓语动词用复数形式，an amount of…做主语时谓语动词用单数形式；the number of…和 the amount of …意为“……的数量”，后面分别接可数名词单数或复数和不可数名词，做主语时谓语动词均为单数形式。

典型真题

例 1：

61. Apple's iPad may be latest and greatest tech gadget, but oddly enough, it also represents a return to model that most tech companies long ago abandoned—vertical integration.（北京大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】（be）the（latest）。漏用冠词。句中的 latest 和 greatest 都是形容词的最高级。形容词的最高级前通常加定冠词 the。

例 2：

（62）But there is byproduct to that growth, one that's visible — or sometimes less than visible — in the smoggy, smelly skies above cities like Beijing, New Delhi and Jakarta.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】（is）a（byproduct）。漏用冠词。byproduct 为可数名词，前面需要加冠词。

例 3：

…said Jim Bock, dean of admissions and financial aid at Swarthmore College.（74）Admissions directors say strategy can backfire.（北京大学 2006 年）

【名师点评】strategy→the strategy。漏用冠词。名词 strategy 前要加冠词，根据上下文，此处是特指某一策略，用定冠词 the。

例 4：

We've seen it all: CVs printed on pink paper, CVs that are 10 pages long and CVs with silly mistakes in first paragraph.（重庆大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】in first→in the first。序数词前要加定冠词 the。

实战演练

1. When an idea or an explanation is described as clear, a mental process is being

compared with a passage of light through something. 1. _____

2. The truth is (A) that you will never really (B) know the corporate culture until you have worked at the company for (C) a number of months, but you can get close to it through research and observation. Understanding culture is a two-step process, starting with the research (D) before the interview and ending with observation at the interview.

3. You will want to be in a place where you fit for the culture, a place where you can have voice, be respected, and have opportunities for growth. 3. _____

4. Dinosaurs, sabered-tooth tigers and the dodo bird are famous examples of animals that have become extinct. In case of the dinosaurs, it seems likely that a catastrophic event altered the global climate enough to lead to their disappearance. 4. _____

5. The amplified warming in Arctic (A), in turn, directly (B) contributes to overall global warming, as well as causing (C) changes that create impacts over the rest of the globe (D).

6. Prior to joining (A) NBC in 2007, Whitaker served as an Editor (B) at Newsweek from 1998-2006, becoming the first (C) African-American top editor of a national newsmagazine (D).

7. United workers slice hockey-puck-shaped (A) ingots of colored vinyl in two or three pieces (B) and then (C) reassemble them by the hand (D).

8. A leading Canadian (A) feminist and author, Jackson, struggled relentlessly in early twentieth (B) century to win (C) political and legal rights for Canadian women (D).

9. He believed in the fresh air (A) and would leave the windows (B) open all winter, working bundled up (C) with mittens (D) on.

10. We need the nation to (A) go on diet (B) together and the most important places (C) to start are at the grocery store (D), schools and media.

11. Sixty-five percent of 783 (A) physicians who completed a questionnaire (B) maintained that an annual (C) physical was necessary, and 55 percent believed that annual physicals (D) for healthy adults were recommended by national organizations.

12. If children are old enough (A) to understand difference (B) between fantasy and reality, they should learn to cope with the idea (C) that the image that haunts (D) them is not real.

13. Children were (A) valued in the terms of (B) their productivity, and they assumed the role of producer (C) quite early (D).

14. While suggesting that (A) we return to an aboriginal life style (B), we certainly could use their (C) eating habits as a model for healthier diet (D).

15. The previous (A) section has shown how quickly a rhyme passes from one schoolchild to the next (B) and illustrates the (C) further difference between school lore and nursery lore (D).

16. With the playground lore (A), however, a rhyme (B) may be excitedly passed on within the very hour it is learnt; and, in the general (C), it passes between children of the same age, or nearly so, since it is uncommon for the difference in age (D) between playmates to be more than five years.

17. It is commonly proposed that the mental processes (A) necessary for comprehending aural and written texts (B) are sufficiently similar that comprehension of both can generally be discussed (C) as common phenomenon (D).

18. It can be a general science (A) that can be applied to any kind of (B) dynamic population, that is, one that (C) changed over the time or space (D).

19. Britain's imperial expansion (A), which continued for 400 years (B), was motivated by the desire (C) to acquire the wealth (D), and to maintain the British navy's control of the seas.

20. There has been the passionate debate (A) between those who believe that the function (B) of educational system is the transmission (C) of a received body of facts and procedures for conceptualizing and adding to that body of knowledge, and those who believe that the function of educational system (D) is to create the conditions whereby learners might generate their own skills and knowledge.

答案解析

1. a（passage 前头的 a）→the。冠词误用。当 passage 为 pass 名词形式时不可数，此处又是特指，所以改为 the。

2. D。这里 research 是类指，而非特指。去掉定冠词 the。
3. voice→a voice。have a voice in something 意为“有权利对某事发表看法”，是固定词组，词组中的不定冠词不能省略。
4. case→the case。in case of 和 in the case of 的意思不同，前者的意思是“万一”，后者的意思是“在……的情况中”。本题是后面的意思，the 不能省略。
5. A。地理名词 Arctic（北极）前要加定冠词 the。
6. B。冠词误用。在介词 as 后面有表示人或者东西的身份的名词时，不用冠词。另外在有核心名词 title 和 rank 的所有格后面也不加冠词。
7. D。冠词误用。by hand 意为“用手”，是固定搭配，不用加冠词。因此，需要将 the 去掉。有相当多的词组不加冠词：by post；by boat；by radio；by tube；by express。
8. B。一般说来，定冠词表示特指，不定冠词表示泛指。twentieth 为序数词，前需要加 the。
9. A。冠词误用。物质名词、抽象名词在用来表示一般概念时通常不加冠词，因此 fresh air 前的 the 要去掉。
10. B。冠词误用。be/go on a diet 意为“节食”，此时 diet 为可数名词，需加冠词 a。
11. A。冠词误用。一般来说在数词修饰名词的前面不需要再加冠词，但是因为在 783 physicians 的后面有定语从句修饰，因此要加定冠词起限定作用。因此，783 前面应加入 the。
12. B。difference 后面有一个短语 between fantasy and reality 作后置定语，所以 difference 前面要加定冠词，表示特指。
13. B。冠词误用。句中 in terms of 是固定短语，表示“关于……，以……观点来看”。因此，应该去掉 the。
14. D。冠词误用。diet 是可数名词，故应为 a healthier diet。
15. C。冠词误用。定冠词 the 具有确定的意思，用以特指人或事物，以别于同类中其他的人或事物，此处应用 a further difference 表示泛指，意思是进一步展示 school lore 和 nursery lore 的不同。
16. C。冠词误用。in general 是固定短语，意为“一般来说，大体上，通常”。因此 in the general 应去掉 the。
17. D。冠词遗漏。phenomenon 是可数名词，而且是第一次出现，应该与不定冠词搭配使用。因此，common 前应加入 a。
18. D。冠词用法。抽象名词 time 或 space 之前如果用定冠词，是表示特指。从上下文可以判断这里的时间和空间是指普遍意义上的时空，是类指，所以应当用零冠词。因此，删去 time 之前的定冠词 the。
19. D。冠词误用。wealth 在这里是一种泛指状态，故应省略 the。
20. A。冠词误用。debate 为可数名词，且首次提到，故应为 a passionate debate。

周二 常考要点（二）介词、比较级和最高级

一、介　词

考点分析

介词在英语中有着举足轻重的地位，其数量不多，拼写也不复杂，但要准确地把握其用法却非易事，介词的恰当使用常常成为令英语学习者头疼的问题。

（一）常用介词

常用介词，如：in，on，at，from，to，like，of，for，after，before，by，with，since，between；

还有一些组合介词，如：into，onto，out of，throughout，within，upon。

这些介词的具体用法需要下功夫弄清楚。

（二）及物动词和不及物动词

在改错题目中，经常会出现混淆及物动词和不及物动词。

（1）不及物动词后面必须要加上介词；

（2）及物动词后面不能随意加上介词，因为及物动词后面可以直接接名词。

（三）介宾短语

介词不能单独使用，而必须和其他词连用，这些词称作介词的宾语，它们共同构成的介宾短语常在句中作状语，作名词的后置定语，有时作某些动词的宾语补足语。

名词和动名词可以作介词宾语，改错题中常把应该用动名词作宾语的地方误用为名词或不定式，需留心陷阱。

如：under the tree，during the day

（四）连接从句或不定式

介词之后还可以接宾语从句或不定式短语，但要借助：

连接代词：what，which，whom

连接副词：how，when，where

（五）最重要的两个介词

（1）介词 of 多余或者遗漏

例：Christopher Plummer is a Canadian actor who has starred in stage，television，

and film productions on both sides the Atlantic Ocean.

分析：sides 为名词，the Atlantic Ocean 也是名词，中间明显少了一个介词 of。

（2）介词 by

❖ 表示被动，be +过去分词 +by

❖ 表示“通过……的方式”，by doing

例：The ceremony of marriage in the United States can be performed from a justice of the peace.

分析：谓语动词是被动式，performed 的动作执行者应该由介词 by 来引导。

技巧点拨

要识别这类错误，考生应注意以下几点：

（1）平时多积累、总结介词的用法。

（2）注意动词与介词、名词与介词、形容词与介词等习惯搭配中的介词。

（3）注意 at best，in brief，on（an/the）average 等固定短语中的介词。

典型真题

例 1：

（70）The program will include about 40, 000 items likewise electronics，toys，home décor and sporting goods.（北京大学 2011 年）

【名师点评】likewise→like。likewise“同样，也”，句子中后面跟的是名词，表列举，这里应该用介词 like。

例 2：

37. A child learning to talk does not learn by being corrected (A) all the time；if corrected (B) too much，he will stop talking. He notices a thousand times a day the difference (C) between the language he uses and the language those around him use. Bit by bit，he makes the necessary changes to make his language as other people's (D).（中国社会科学院 2010 年）

【名师点评】D。as 和 like 都可以表示“像……一样”，但 as 是连词，而 like 是介词。句中应使用介词 like。故答案为 D。

例 3：

One of th most important non-legislative functions of the U. S. Congress is the power to investigate，which is usually delegated to (A) committees-either standing (B) committees，special committees set for (C) a specific purpose，or joint committees consisting of (D) members of both houses.（中国社会科学院 2014 年）

【名师点评】C。set up 为固定搭配，表示“建立，创立”。C 项缺少介词 up。

例 4：

63. Retailers say that trying online and in-store inventory together lets them to sell

more products.（北京大学 2011 年）

【名师点评】删掉 to。let sb. do sth. 为固定搭配，去掉 to。

例 5：

（63）Because of new cars and power plants, air pollution is bad and getting worse in much of the world, and it is taking a major toll to global health.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】~~to~~ →on。take a toll on 为固定词组，意义为“对……造成损失”。

例 6：

Print your CV on good-quality white paper. CVs with flowery backgrounds or pink paper will stand out upon all the wrong reasons.（重庆大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】upon→for。stand out for 为固定短语，意为“坚决要求”。

实战演练

1. Can any spectacle, for instance (A), be more grimly (B) whimsical than that (C) gunners using science to shatter men's bodies while, close at hand, surgeons use it (D) to restore them?
2. If the matter involves (A) a church wedding, a reception, a honeymoon in Venice, and returning (B) a new home, this requires (C) even more planning to make sure (D) that it is successful.
3. Since a long time scholars have been puzzled over the striking difference of words in different languages.
4. A savings instrument (A) has an “interest rate” associated with (B) it; this refers to the rate which (C) the money in the instrument increases (D) during a certain period of time.
5. The associated (A) risk of cancer in the digestive system (B) may be more about (C) a dietary problem—too much fat and a lack of fiber than (D) a weight problem.
6. The letter told the White House to turn (A) over all records that could be relevant (B) investigators looking into (C) who may have revealed the operative's identity to (D) journalists.
7. The pain, which (A) was due to the pressure of the cancer on a nerve, was entirely relieved by (B) the shrinking of the growth (C), to the extent which (D) it caused no further suffering.
8. They've bought (A) a holiday cottage near the sea (B), and for due course (C) they plan to move there (D) permanently.

9. The main interest in Blackpool (A) will be the extent which (B) delegates complain about (C) the government's economic policy (D).

10. The final legislation still has a broad definition of terrorism (A), and the attorney general needed (B) nothing more than reasonable grounds believe (C) that an immigrant was a possible terrorist (D).

11. In Japan (A) most people still feel that a woman's place is in the home (B); and most women willingly accept their traditional role as wife (C), leaving the business of making a living their husbands (D).

12. My school's examination (A) system was patterned into (B) the successful project (C) that was popular in other schools (D).

13. The vast majority of people (A) in any given culture (B) will conform (C) established standards (D) of that culture (D).

14. The superstar descended for (A) a small coastal town, which was splashed across (B) the front page of (C) the local newspaper (D).

15. The wealth of a nation (A) should be measured to terms of (B) the health and happiness of its people as well as (C) the material goods it can produce (D).

16. The voice gives (A) psychological clues on (B) a person's self-image, perception of others (C), and emotional health (D).

17. Animals perform many useful and entertaining jobs (A). Dogs are particularly valuable guiding (B) the blind, protecting property (C), finding lost people, and hunting criminals (D).

18. It is now possible to (A) influence the details of (B) the socialization of another person's child in (C) spreading the gospel of (D) current and fashionable theories and methods of child rearing.

19. A new study uses advanced (A) brain-scanning technology to (B) cast light on (C) a topic that

psychologists have puzzled over (D) more than half a century: social conformity.

20. Interestingly, if (A) they escape fatal infections or (B) accidents, these contemporary aborigines live to (C) old ages despite of (D) the absence of medical care.

答案解析

1. C。that→that of。在 that 后面加上 of 为了避免重复，这里用 that 指代 spectacle，后面的 gunners using 是 that 的内容，因此应该用介词 of 引出。
2. B。returning→returning to。return 一般做“回家”意思时，为不及物动词，后加介词 to。
3. Since→For。since 做介词，表示“自从……起”，后面一般不跟表示一段时间的名词，应用介词 for。
4. C。which→at which。关系代词 which 在此引导的是一个定语从句，并且在此应该用“介词 + 关系代词”这个形式，因为前面的 rate 往往用于短语 at a rate，此处的介词可以提前。
5. C。about→of。about 意思为“相关的”，这里应该为 of，表性质。句意：与之相关的消化系统患癌症的危险实际上是饮食问题引起的，而非体重问题。
6. B。介词遗漏。be relevant to 意为“与……相关”，为固定搭配，其中的介词 to 不能少。
7. D。介词遗漏。which 指代先行词 extent，因为 extent 表示程度的点，而在某个点上往往用介词 to。to which 是介词加关系代词的组合。
8. C。in due course 为惯用搭配，意为“在适当的时候”，for 应改为 in。
9. B。介词遗漏。本句为介词提前的定语从句。根据短语 to…extent，可以判断 which 前需要加入 to。
10. C。介词遗漏。“比较级 + than + to + 动词”的结构，意为“不至于……，懂得……不该……”，动词前的介词 to 不能少。因此，believe 前需要加 to。
11. D。介词遗漏。leave sth. to sb. 意为“把……留给……做”，是固定短语，因而不能省略也不能用别的介词代替 to。
12. B。介词误用。pattern after 意为“仿造，模仿”，pattern 不能与介词 into 搭配。因此，into 应改为 after。
13. C。介词遗漏。conform 后面一般接介词 to，意为“遵循”。
14. A。介词误用。descend on 意为“突然拜访，意外来到”，为固定搭配。因此，for 应改为 on。
15. B。介词误用。in terms of 意为“根据，从……方面”，为固定搭配。因此，to 应改为 in。
16. B。介词误用。clue 一般与介词 to 搭配，表示“有关……的线索”。因此，将 on 改成 to。
17. B。介词遗漏。valuable 句型应为 be valuable in sth.，意为“对……具有价值”。因此，在 valuable 后面加入 in。
18. C。介词误用。influence… by 是习惯用法。因此，in 应改为 by。
19. D。介词漏用。完成时态中的时间状语需要介词 for 表示持续了多长一段时间。因此 over 后应加入介词 for。
20. D。despite 后面不加 of。因此删去 of。

二、比较级和最高级

考点分析

形容词一般在句中做定语修饰名词或代词，做表语说明主语的性质、特征；而副词的作用较复杂，常常修饰形容词、副词、介词短语、动词或全句。形容词和副词比较等级的误用现象有：

（一）比较等级形式上的重复

例：The most easiest process for mining gold is panning, which involves using a circular dish with a small pocket at the bottom.

分析：easiest 本身已是最高级，不必再用 most，这是最高级形式上的重复。

（二）比较等级之间的混用

例：The greenest and plentifulest leaves are the leaves of grasses.

分析：plentiful 是多音节形容词，须在前面加 most 构成最高级。

（三）比较词 than 的前面一定要有比较级

改错题中，通常会看见 than 前面有一个原级。

例：Film directors can take far great liberties in dealing with concepts of time and space than stage directors can.

分析：根据后面有 than 一词可以判定前面的形容词用比较级形式，great 应改为 greater。注意 far，much 修饰比较级。

（四）在 as…as 以及否定 not so…as，not as…as 的中间使用形容词原级

例：as sweeter as，这是不对的，应改为 as sweet as。

（五）the 与比较级最高级的关系

（1）比较级前面可以出现 the，修饰后面的名词。

例：the taller boy

（2）副词的最高级加不加 the 均可以。

（3）形容词的最高级做定语前面必须使用 the，如果不做定语的话，加不加 the 均可以。

例：Of all the Native Americans in the United States, the Navajos form largest group.

分析：形容词最高级前面要加定冠词，应改为 form the largest。

（4）如果最高级前面有形容词性物主代词或所有格的话，不用加 the。

例：my best friends

（六）than 连接的两个比较对象不一致或不平行。

例：Nothing has created more bitterness, for example, that forced busing to achieve racial balance.

分析：more…than 为比较级结构，因此 that 应改为 than。

技巧点拨

要识别这类错误，考生应注意以下技巧：

（1）熟悉形容词和副词比较等级的基本结构和特殊用法。

（2）熟悉某些特殊形式的比较级和最高级，如 good-better-best，little-less-least 等。

（3）熟悉常见的比较结构，如 as…as 同级比较、“the more…，the more…”等。

（4）了解一些本身含有比较意义的形容词，如 superior，senior 等，这些词没有比较级和最高级形式，表示比较时也不与 than 连用，而与 to 连用。

典型真题

例 1：

（61）Apple's iPad may be latest and greatest tech gadget, but oddly enough, it also represents a return to a model that most tech companies long ago abandoned—vertical integration.（北京大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 be latest→be the latest。形容词的最高级。形容词的最高级作定语前面必须使用 the。

例 2：

Of the remaining fraction, which is somewhat fewer __10__ than 1% of the whole, there is 10 ~20 times as much stored as underground water as is actually on the surface.（南开大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】 fewer→less。比较级误用。文中的 remaining fraction 指代 water，为不可数名词，因此不能用 fewer，要用 less。

例 3：

36. An American university president once commented that “Einstein has created a new outlook, a new view of the universe. It may be some generations (A) before (B) the average mind grasps the identity of time and space, and so on, but even ordinary men understand now that the universe is something vast (C) than ever thought before (D).”（中国社会科学院 2010 年）

【名师点评】 C。形容词比较级误用。句中出现 than，因此，something vast 应改为 something vaster。故答案为 C。

例 4：

（72）Switching from diesel fuel to unleaded helps, as do newer and cleaner cars that are more likely to spew pollutants. Power plants — even ones that burn fossil fuels like coal — can be fitted with pollution-control equipment that, at a price, will greatly reduce smog and other contaminants.

（73）But the best solutions may involve urban design. In the Guardian, John Vidal notes that Delhi now has 200 cars per 1, 000 people, far more than much rich Asian cities like Hong Kong and Singapore.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】 ~~more~~ →less。根据常识可知，更洁净的新型车产生的污染会更小一些，因此将 more 改为 less。

~~rich~~ →richer。根据句中的 than 可知，前后形成比较，因此，应使用比较级。

例 5：

33. The work confirms hints that (A) had already been emerging in the scientific literature in recent years and that related proteins might play an important role in life, but the new

paper is far more detailed (B) — and, scientists say, more compelling — that (C) anything published (D) previously. (社会科学院 2007 年)

【名师点评】C。than 对等结构。破折号的内容是插入成分，与 C 构成对等结构的是 B 中的 more，应该用 than，构成 more…than 结构。

实战演练

1. He ran away from it because he fancied that he had been ill-treated, and soon found it easy to make more money by thieving as his father had done by a lifetime of honest work. _____
2. For most (A) of the past 30 years it has also managed its affairs quite (B) better than (C) its southern Mediterranean peers have done (D).
3. The report says that evidence from around the world shows the risk of maternal or infant illness (A) and death is the highest (B) in four specific types of pregnancy; pregnancies before (C) the mother is 18 years old; those after the mother is 35 years old; pregnancies after four births; and those lesser (D) than two years apart.
4. Power should be (A) used with moderation; for whoever finds himself among (B) valiant men will discover (C) that no man is superior than (D) others.
5. From the 1940s through the early 1960s, Americans married at a high rate and at a younger age than their European counterparts. _____
6. More men and women are waiting more longer to (A) get married and are using birth control (B) devices and methods (C) to prevent and delay pregnancy (D).
7. Issues of (A) price, place, promotion, and product are among the more (B) conventional concerns in (C) planning marketing strategies (D).
8. Running an ETF isn't as a mutual fund expensive as (A) to begin with, mostly because (B) the bill for shareholder servicing and other administrative (C) tasks is much lower (D).
9. Bruckner's Ninth Symphony, which (A) the composer dedicated to not less than (B) God, is an unfinished work consisting of (C) only three movements (D).
10. The indoor (A) swimming pool seems (B) to be a great deal more luxurious (C) than being (D) necessary.

11. A light with no more (A) power than as that produced (B) by an ordinary electric light bulb (C) becomes intensely strong as it is concentrated to (D) a pinpoint-sized beam.

12. Indeed, almost every scientist (A) now finds it is impossible to read all the works (B) relevant to his own subject, much less reading (C) extensively outside of it (D).

13. Generally speaking, the most (A) immigrants cannot totally cut the tie (B) with their motherland (C) and be assimilated by the foreign culture (D).

14. The first (A) two stages in the development of civilized man were probably (B) the invention of weapons and the discovery of fire, although nobody knows exactly when he acquired the use (C) of the latest (D).

15. Individually and collectively, he has enjoyed a wonderful career (A) as a batting run machine (B) and an integral member of one of the successfullest (C) cricket teams in the history of the game (D).

16. In his lifetime, he enjoyed a reputation great, if not as greater as Beethoven. _____

17. Scientists (A) generally agree that the Earth's climate will warm up (B) over the next 50 to (C) 100 years than (D) much as it has warmed in the 20, 000 years since the Ice Age.

18. The higher (A) the standard of living and the greater (B) the national wealth, greater (C) the amount of paper used (D).

19. I understand better (A) most the enormous amount of (B) preparation that the staff must put in under (C) pressure to (D) meet the deadline.

20. Consequently, viewing children potentially acceptable and necessarily multifaceted members (A) of society means that (B) they are regarded more as (C) people in their own right so (D) as utilitarian organisms.

答案解析

1. as→than。than 对等结构。句中的 more 表明此句应有比较级的结构，as 不能引导比较级，应改为 than。
2. B。比较级修饰词。quite 不能修饰比较级，而 far 可以修饰比较级。因此 quite 应改为

far。

3. D。形容词比较级书写错误。little 的比较级形式为 less，lesser 是同根词，意为“较少的；次要的；更小的”。因此 lesser 改为 less。
4. D。介词搭配错误。superior 本身含有比较级，但却不能与 than 连用，要跟 to 搭配。be superior to 意为“比……更优，更好”。因此 than 改为 to。
5. high→higher。此处意为美国人结婚率比欧洲人高，有与欧洲人相比的意思，因此应用比较级。将 high 改为 higher。
6. A。比较级结构。longer 本身就是比较级，不需再加 more。因此，去掉 more。
7. B。最高级结构。among 与最高级连用，表示“在……中最……”，more 的原形为 much 或 many，最高级为 most。因此，more 应改为 most。
8. A。比较级结构。在比较结构中，形容词可以做前置或后置修饰语修饰名词，但是若限定词修饰名词时，则只能做前置修饰。因此，as a mutual fund expensive as 应改为 as expensive a mutual fund as。
9. B。比较级结构。not less than 和 no less than 有不同的含义，前者为一般意义上的比较级，意为“不少于……”，而后者意在言其多。因此，应该用 no less than 结构。
10. D。比较级结构。在比较句中，than 可以做代词，兼有连词和代词的性质。在这种情况下，句子的主语可以省略，留下谓语。根据前面的谓语 seems 判定，being 应改为 is。
11. B。比较级结构。as 表示原级比较，不与 than 用在一起，应将 as 去掉，相当于 A light with no more power than the power that is produced by…，其中 that 代替 power，表示相比较的事物。
12. C。比较级结构。因题干中谓语动词 finds 的真正宾语为 to read…，所以 much less 应用不定式，与 to read 复合宾语的成分相对等。
13. A。最高级误用。the most 后面应跟最高级，most 做形容词时意思是“大多数的”，后面直接跟名词。因此，去掉 most 前面的 the。
14. D。比较级误用。latest 意为“最后的，最新的”，放在这里不符合句意，应该改为 latter，意为“（两者中的）后者”。
15. C。最高级结构。successful 为多音节形容词，需在前面加上 most 构成最高级，即 the most successful。
16. 比较级结构。表示两个成分进行比较的时候，其中一个与另一个齐名，或者更好的时候，常常采用这种结构：“as + 形容词原级，if not + 形容词比较级，as + 名词”。因此，great，if not as greater as Beethoven 应改为 as great，if not greater，as Beethoven。
17. D。比较级误用。than 前面需要有形容词或副词的比较级形式，根据后面的 as 提示，此处应用 as much as 结构，意为“和……一样多”。
18. C。比较结构。“the + 比较级，the + 比较级”是固定结构，意为“越……就越……”。因此，greater 前应加 the。
19. A。比较级结构。better 为 good 的比较级形式，后面应跟 than。understand better than…是固定搭配，意为“对……非常理解”。
20. D。比较级结构。在此句中前面有 more 这个词，这句是比较句型，因此句中的 so 应改为 than。

周三 常考要点（三）名词、句子结构

一、名　词

考点分析

名词的误用主要包括：

（一）可数名词单复数形式混淆

单复数互改是博士研究生入学考试中英语改错题的基本题型之一。在具体语境中可数名词复数被误用为单数，或可数名词单数被误用为复数形式。改动的依据有：一是名词前的修饰限定成分；二是上下文的逻辑关系。

❖ 可数名词的规则变化形式（见下表）：

	构成方式	例　词
1	在词尾加-s	lesson→lessons，pen→pens
2	在词尾加-（e）s: ①词尾是 s，x，ch 加-es ②词尾是 e 只加-s	bus→buses，box→boxes page→pages，horse→horses
3	以 o 结尾的词：①在词尾加-s ②但有些在词尾加-es	kilo→kilos，piano→pianos hero→heroes，tomato→tomatoes
4	词尾为 f，fe 则变为-ves，但有些以-f 结尾的在 f 后加-s	knife→knives，leaf→leaves belief→beliefs，roof→roofs
5	以辅音 +y 结尾，将 y 改成 i 再加-es	city→cities story→stories

❖ 名词的不规则变化形式（见下表）：

	构成方式	例　词
1	改变名词中的元音字母或其他形式	analysis → analyses，basis → bases，crisis → crises man→men，foot→feet，goose→geese ox→oxen，phenomenon→phenomena

（续）

构成方式			例　词
2	单复数相同		sheep，deer，series，means，species，*yuan*，*jin*，aircraft
3	只有复数形式		compasses，goods，glasses（眼镜），scissors（剪刀），shorts（短裤），trousers
4	一些集体名词总是用作复数		people，police，cattle，staff
5	有些名词如被看作整体时就作单数用，如被看作组成该集体的各个成员时就作复数用		audience，class，family，crowd，couple，group，committee，government，population，crew，team，public，enemy，party
6	有些抽象名词的复数形式表示不同的含义		times（时代），drinks（饮料），sands（沙滩），papers（文件，报纸），looks（外表），brains（头脑，智力）
7	表示“某国人”	加-s	Americans，Australians，Germans，Swedes，Europeans
		单复数同形；-man 或-woman 结尾的改为-men，-women	Swiss，Portuguese，Chinese，Japanese，Englishmen，Frenchmen
8	复合名词	将主体名词变为复数	sons-in-law，lookers-on，passers-by，story-tellers，boyfriends，editors-in-chief
		无主体名词时将最后一部分变为复数	grown-ups，housewives stopwatches，go-betweens
		将两部分变为复数	women singers，men servants

（二）可数名词与不可数名词的混淆

名词的“可数”与“不可数”是考博英语改错题的命题的热点之一，因此，考生在备考时应注意以下可数和不可数名词问题。

（1）不可数名词包括抽象名词、物质名词和专有名词，一般没有复数形式，不能直接被数词修饰。英语中除了如 air，water，butter，milk，iron 等这些容易识别的不可数名词外，还有一些很容易弄错，其中典型的有：

fun（乐趣），homework（家庭作业），advice（劝告，建议），behavior（行为），equipment（设备），housework（家务）等。

（2）物质名词一般不用复数形式，但有些物质名词的复数形式可以表示不同的类别，如：foods 各种食品，fishes 各种鱼，fruits 各种水果。

（3）物质名词表示数量时，一般用表示数量的短语来表示，如：a cup of tea，four pieces of bread。但下列名词可以具体为有数量的相应物体，作单数、复数均可：some coffee（一些咖啡）/a coffee（一杯咖啡），drink（饮料）/ two drinks（两杯饮料），ice（冰）/ two ices（两份冰淇淋）等。

（4）有一些抽象名词有复数形式，但意义有所改变。

如：work（工作）→works（著作），glass（玻璃）→glasses（眼镜）

quarter（四分之一）→quarters（军营），force（力气）→forces（军队）。

（5）定冠词加上姓氏的复数形式，表示全家人或夫妇二人；姓氏的复数形式前加数词，则表示若干个同姓的人。如：the Zhangs 张家，three Zhangs 三个姓张的。

（三）单复数同形的名词的误用

只用作单数的复数形式的名词。如：physics，mathematics，news，the United States 等。

例：Physics is taught by Mr. Wang in our school this semester.

句中 physics 指“物理学”，是单数名词，故其谓语动词应为第三人称单数。

技巧点拨

要识别这类错误，考生应注意以下技巧：

（1）注意名词前表示数量概念的修饰语和名词后的谓语等线索，判断名词的单复数形式。

（2）一般来说，单数可数名词前必须有冠词，否则就应该是复数形式。

（3）熟悉常见的表示数量概念的短语，牢记其修饰的是可数名词还是不可数名词。常见的修饰可数名词的短语有 a number of 等。

（4）熟悉两种名词所有格（’s 所有格和 of 所有格）的用法。一般来说，有生命的名词所有格既可用 ’s 又可用 of 表示，无生命的名词所有格必须用 of 表示。词尾有 s 的复数名词所有格加 ’，词尾没 s 的复数名词所有格加 ’s；复合名词或名词短语的所有格在最后一个词后加 ’s。

（5）熟悉双重所有格的用法。当 a（n），this，these，that，some，any，no 等与名词所有格修饰同一名词时，两者不能同时放在该名词前面，要用双重所有格表示，即 a（this，that…）+名词 +of +名词所有格，如 a daughter of Mrs. Brown’s。

典型真题

例 1：

39. Television is one of the means by which (A) these feelings are created and conveyed — and perhaps never before it’s served (B) so much to connect different peoples and nations (C) as (D) in the recent events in Europe.（中国社会科学院 2012 年）

【名师点评】peoples →people。抽象名词复数误用。people 变为复数 peoples 时，意义已发生改变，意为“人民”，此处的意思是“人（个体）”，应为单数形式。

例 2：

39. The language has always changed, but (A) the rate of change has been uneven; minor changes have slowly accumulated in every generation, but there have been period of rapid change (B) as well (C). The most important of these periods occurred during the two hundred and fifty years after 1066, the year the Normans (D) conquered England.（中国

社会科学院 2010 年）

【名师点评】B。可数名词单复数误用。根据 B 项前面的 have been 可知，应该使用复数形式。应将 period 改为 periods。故答案为 B。

例 3：

35. Although postmodernism incorporates large helpings (A) of Freudianism and the more credulous kind of cultural anthropology, it remains a fundamentally "left" phenomena (B), in the sense of (C) maintaining an implacable hostility (D) to market economics and traditional social structures.（社会科学院 2006 年）

【名师点评】B。可数名词单复数误用。不定冠词 a 后加名词的单数形式。phenomena 为复数形式，应改为 phenomenon。

例 4：

6. "For a statesman to try to maximize the GNP is about as sensible as for a composer of music to try to maximize the number of note in a symphony."（对外经贸大学 2005 年）

【名师点评】note→notes。可数名词单复数误用。the number of 后应接复数名词。

例 5：

18. There is few evidence (A) that children in language classrooms (B) learn foreign languages any better (C) than adults in similar classroom situations (D).（南京大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】D。situation 作"情境"之意时，为不可数名词。classroom situation 意为"教室情境"。

实战演练

1. They quickly brought down the age at marriage for both men and women and brought the birth rate to a twentieth century height after more than a hundred years of steady decline, producing the "baby boom". _____
2. Nowadays visitors (A) no longer threw waste papers (B) or plastic bags everywhere and (C) it looked cleaner and more beautiful (D).
3. There is no guarantee that plant breeders can continue to develop new, higher-yielding crop, but most researchers see their success to date as reason for hope. _____
4. Moreover, toward the end of their seven-years, teacher-disciple relationship, Jung prophetically wrote to Freud, quoting from Nietzsche's *Thus Spake Zarathustra*, "One repays a teacher badly if one remains only a pupil." _____
5. According to some further (A) researches, for (B) the part of some contemporary woman playwrights (C), the issue of women's rights (D) to speak in drama has been handled skillfully.

6. Mornings (A) have a tang of exhilaration and the evening sun sets (B) red as a smoke-grey mist softens (C) the outline (D) of trees and houses.

7. In 1975, Gonzales began attending classes (A), but he struggled (B) with classes like physicses (C) and engineering (D).

8. Believe it or not, no one can afford to deny or ignore (A) the tiny sparkle of an idea (B), especially in an eras (C) of knowledge explosion (D).

9. The researchers (A) found that even many a doctors (B) who was aware of published guidelines continued to perform annual physicals (C), either patients wanted them, or because they believed the procedure gave them the chance to offer advice about preventive health measures (D).

10. As the society became more complex (A), the status (B) of children in the family and in the society become more obvious, each member must fulfill a number of personal and occupational role (C) and be in constant contact with a great many other members (D).

11. Demographic analysis (A) can be applied to whole societies (B) or to groups defined by criterion (C) such as education, nationality, religion and ethnicity (D).

12. The authors warned that their results (A), published in the June issue of *Social Psychiatry and Psychiatric Epidemiology*, depended on reports (B) by mothers about their children's experience (C), and that the mothers' emotional states (D) might have affected those reports.

13. It can be shown in facts and figures (A) that cycling is the cheapest, most convenient, and most environmentally desirable form of transport (B) in towns, but such cold calculation (C) do not mean much on a frosty (D) winter morning.

14. Its shared knowledge is vicarious experience (A); by this means (B) we enlarge our understandings (C) of what it means to be human, of the corporate and interdependent nature of human society (D).

15. It is a debate (A) between those who believe that education (B) is a matter of making meaning

for the learners on the one hand, and those who <u>believe</u> (C) that the function of education is to facilitate the process whereby <u>learner</u> (D) make their own meaning, on the other hand.

16. Those <u>jobs</u> (A) require a great deal of contact with <u>others</u> (B) who can engage in <u>activities</u> (C) that are quiet and peaceful—far from the madding crowd, far from <u>client</u>and business (D) associates.

17. The <u>images</u> (A) play out for us <u>event</u> (B) which are not present to our senses, and thereby guard the past and create the future—a <u>future</u> (C) that does not yet exist, and may never come to exist in that <u>form</u> (D).

18. Under either <u>schemes</u> (A), the <u>driver</u> (B) would specify the desired, destination furnishing <u>it</u> (C) to a computer <u>in the car</u> (D) in the beginning of the trip.

19. Since, however, a great deal of the world's <u>works</u> (A) must be done <u>indoor</u> (B) in <u>cities</u> (C), it is important that we take every precaution to ventilate our <u>houses</u> (D) properly.

20. In fact, the <u>proper</u> (A) ventilation of a <u>bedrooms</u> (B) is one of the first <u>necessity</u> (C) for good <u>health</u> (D).

答案解析

1. height→high/peak。名词误用。high 可以用作名词，意为“高峰”“高水准”“最高纪录”。height 可以作“极点，顶点”解释。他们把男女的婚龄降了下来，使出生率达到了 20 世纪的高峰。
2. B。不可数名词误用。paper 在此处是物质名词，属于不可数名词，故没有复数形式。其用作复数时，意为“报纸，文件”。
3. crop→crops。可数名词单复数误用。crop 是可数名词，前面有两个形容词充当其定语，且根据句意，此处应该不是表示一种农作物，故应将 crop 改成 crops。
4. seven-years→seven-year。修饰名词时，这种结构中的量词以单数出现。
5. C。可数名词复数形式误用。woman playwright 的复数形式应为 women playwrights。因此 woman 应改为 women。
6. D。可数名词单复数误用。outline 是可数名词。树影与屋影，trees and houses 是两样事物，outline 也应使用复数形式。
7. C。不可数名词单复数误用。physics 作为学科讲时，为不可数名词，physicses 应改为 physics。
8. C。可数名词单复数误用。era 意为“时代”，尤其用来指以特殊环境、特殊事件或特殊

人物为标志的一段时间，是可数名词。根据前面的冠词 an 判定，era 应该用单数形式。

9. B。可数名词单复数误用。many a 等于 many，但是其后的名词必须为可数名词的单数形式。故 doctors 应改为 doctor。
10. C。可数名词单复数误用。a number of 后须用名词复数，因此，role 应改为 roles。
11. C。可数名词单复数误用。名词后面有 such as 词组修饰，应该是复数概念，所以用 criterion 的复数形式 criteria。考生应当熟悉一些常用的外来词的复数形式，并了解这些外来词单数变复数的规律，如：stratum—strata，alumnus—alumni，crisis—crises 等。
12. C。可数名词单复数误用。此处的 experience 是可数名词，根据前面的 their，应改为 experiences。
13. C。可数名词单复数误用。根据上文可以看出是经过多次计算得出结论，而不是经过一次实验得出数据，进而得出结论。calculation 应改为 calculations。
14. C。不可数名词复数误用。将 understandings 改为 understanding，因为在作为“对……的理解”意思时，understanding 是一个不可数名词。
15. D。可数名词单复数误用。该句中动词使用了表示复数意义的 make，代词用了表示复数意义的 their，所以名词不能用单数，也要改成相应的复数形式。
16. D。可数名词单复数误用。分析句子结构client 和 business associates 为并列成分，再根据 those，associates 等复数形式，可知 client 应为复数形式，改成 clients。
17. B。可数名词单复数误用。此句中包含一个 which 引导的定语从句，修饰 event，从句中的几个并列动词 are，guard，create 都用了原形，因此其先行词应该是复数形式 events。
18. A。可数名词单复数误用。either 意为“任一的”，修饰单数名词，其后的名词 scheme 应是单数形式，而不用复数形式。
19. A。不可数名词复数误用。分析句子结构和句意，work 在这里意为“工作”，是不可数名词。因此，works 应改为 work。
20. B。bedroom 为可数名词，根据前面的冠词 a 判定，应该用单数形式 bedroom。

二、句子的结构

考点分析

句子的结构主要考查以下几个出题方向。

1 主语的重复

名词 + 代词 + 谓语，这个代词永远是重复的主语，永远是错的。

例 1：Woodrow Wilson he was an idealist who refused to make any compromises concerning the establishment of the League of Nations.

分析：代词 he 不是同位语，主语重复；如果是 A prolific writer，Woodrow Wilson 这样的主语，那么便是主语同位语。

例 2：Two unique features of the Arctic they are lack of precipitation and permanently frozen ground.

分析：they 和前面的主语 two unique features 重复。

2 谓语的重复

完整的句子后面又多了一个谓语，这种情况往往改为定语从句或非谓语形式。

例 1：A paragraph is a portion of a text consists of one or more sentences related to the same idea.

分析：句中有两个无法连接的谓语动词，is 和 consists，可以改 consists 为非谓语动词形式或在它前面加 which 使之成为定语从句中的谓语动词。

3 谓语的缺少

例：Most mammals to maintain a relatively constant body temperature, regardless of what the air temperature might be.

分析：句中缺谓语动词，故去掉不定式符号 to 使 maintain 变成谓语动词。

4 主句的重复

主句的重复总是考 even，instead，during，despite 等引导的句子，但是实际上它们无法把两个句子连接起来，因为它们都是副词或者介词，连接两个句子应该用连接词。

例 1：Salmon spend most of their adult lives in salt water, despite they return to their freshwater birthplaces to spawn and die.

分析：despite 是介词，后面一般接名词做宾语，而在句中它后面却跟着一个完整的句子，所以改为连词 though。

例 2：Solar eclipses occur during the Moon's shadow sweeps across the face of the Earth.

分析：during 应改为 when 或 as。介词不能引导条件状语从句，根据题意 during 改为从属连词 when 或 as。

典型真题

例 1：

（65）Encourage customers to retrieve items they have ordered online in a store increases visits to the stores, which usually increases sales.（北京大学 2011 年）

【名师点评】 Encourage→Encouraging。谓语重复。分析句子结构，increases 为谓语，那只能是现在分词短语 Encouraging…做 increases 的主语。

例 2：

Edison had solved certain problems, make it possible for other inventors move ahead with their own［81］_____ devices.（山东大学 2005 年）

【名师点评】 make→making。谓语重复。分析句子结构，had solved 为谓语，而 make 引导分词短语，表伴随。因此 make 应改为 making。

例 3：

26. Perhaps all societies significantly more advanced (A) than our own have achieved an effective personal immortality and lose the motivation for interstellar gallivanting, which may (B), for all we know (C), a typical (D) urge only of adolescent civilizations.（社会科学院 2004 年）

【名师点评】D。∧a typical→be。谓语遗漏。分析 which 引导的定语从句，缺少谓语，根据先行词 all societies 和从句中的情态动词 may 判定，此处应加入 be。

实战演练

1. It is (A) the moral qualities of its leading personalities and (B) that are perhaps of even greater significance for a generation and (C) for the course of history than pure accomplishments (D).
2. Normally a student must attend (A) a certain number of courses in order to graduate, and (B) each course which he attends and (C) gives him a credit which he (D) may count towards a degree.
3. With a little imagination and effort (A), if desks are fixed to the floor, the teacher (B) can correct (C) this situation and create space encourages (D) interchanges among students.
4. This idea knowledge (A) is some kind of commodity to be traded (B) in intellectual marketplaces known as schools and (C) universities is (D) only one of many characterizations.
5. The total public (A) for Titian in the 16th century or Velazquez in the 17th probably no more (B) than a few thousands of people—though that included (C) most of the crowned heads (D), nobility and intelligentsia of Europe.
6. An effect can become (A) a cause, reinforce (B) the original cause and producing (C) the same effect (D) in an intensified form, and so on indefinitely.
7. When you think (A) about the time has spent (B) on cleaning, cooking, grocery shopping, the yardwork, and laundry, it's clear (C) that managing a home is (D) no small feat.
8. Many of the people they (A) who developed (B) modern linguistics had had (C) an education (D) in Latin and Greek.
9. At the turn of 19th century, when the study of cultural anthropology suggested (A) that the linguistic barriers were (B) insuperable and that language was entirely the product of culture, the view translation was impossible (C) gamed some currency, and with it that, if attempted at all, it must be (D) as literal as possible.

10. Educational attainment in rural America reached (A) a historic high in 2000, with (B) nearly one in six rural adults holding (C) a 4-year college degree, and more than three in four complete (D) high school.

11. The view of Walter Benjamin and Vladimir Nobokov (A) they (B) culminated the statements of the extreme (C) "literalists" Walter Benjamin and (D) Vladimir Nobokov.

12. AMERICARES' First airlift to India in response to (A) the tsunami has arrived (B) in Chennai, carrying 36 tons of medicines, medical equipment, water purification treatments (C) and other aid has valued (D) at nearly $ 8 million.

13. A very small fraction of the Sun's light and heat emitted (A) in such directions (B) that after passing (C) unhinderedly through interplanetary space, it hits (D) the Earth.

14. The ways of history are (A) so intricate and the motivations of human actions so complex that it is (B) always hazardous to attempt to represent events cover (C) a number of years, a multiplicity of persons, and distant localities (D) as the expression of one intellectual or social movement.

15. No matter what job you have (A), deal (B) with dialectal differences is something (C) that you will face (D).

16. The first real organized (A) effort to unite Europe came with (B) the creation (C) of the Council of Europe, was (D) established in 1949.

17. Shyness becomes (A) so severe that it interferes (B) significantly our social activities, relationships or occupational functioning could be what experts (C) call social anxiety disorder (D) or "crippling shyness".

18. Water shortages (A) do not have to trouble the world if we starting (B) valuing water more than we (C) have (D) in the past.

19. Traditionally, new technology concerning (A) with the construction of machines (B),

structures, and tools (C) on a relatively large scale (D).

20. Even (A) many early leaders of the United States have provided (B) names for towns (C), only George Washington is remembered in the name (D) of a state.

答案解析

1. B。and 后的 that 指代不明，导致后面的句子没有主语。分析句子结构后发现此句为 It is …that，为强调句型。因此，把 and 去掉即可。
2. C。去掉 attends 后的 and。句子结构不完整。此处如果有 and，那么就证明 gives 和 attends 是一个层次上的动词，即定语从句的两个并列的谓语。可是这样一来，主句就缺少谓语动词。根据上下文，此处的 gives 应该是主句的谓语动词，句意为“……他上的每一门课程都会让他获得一个学分……”
3. D。space 后为定语从句，先行词 space 已出现，在从句中充当主语，因此需要用关系代词 that 或 which 连接，否则句子的谓语重复。因此 encourages 前应加入 that/which。
4. A。判断名词后面的从句究竟是定语从句还是同位语从句的关键就是看这个名词在从句中是否作成分，但凡名词在从句中作成分的，该从句就是定语从句，而不做成分的就是同位语从句。该从句完整，不缺任何成分，所以是 this idea 的同位语从句。同位语从句，引导词不能用 which，只能用 that。故 idea 后应加入 that。
5. B。分析句子后发现，主语是 the total public，没有谓语，根据句子的主语和时间状语 in the 16th century or Velazquez in the 17th，应用过去时单数，故 probably 前加入谓语动词单数形式 was。
6. B。根据句意，an effect can become a cause 和 reinforce the original cause 不是并列关系，这样句子存在谓语重复问题，应该将 reinforce 变为-ing 形式，与后面的 producing the same effect 保持形式上的一致。此处非谓语动词表伴随。
7. B。时间状语从句中，谓语动词为 think，has spent，存在谓语重复的问题，spend 这里应用作非谓语动词，因为 time 与 spend 之间是动宾关系，所以此处用 spend 的过去分词形式作 time 的定语。去掉 spent 前的 has。
8. A。分析句子，Many of the people 为句子的主语，那么后面的 they 是多余的，应该去掉。
9. C。根据句子结构可知，句中“translation was impossible”在句中为同位语成分，修饰 the view，that 不能省略。因此 view 后加 that。
10. D。with 引导的介词词组相当于一个独立主格结构，这个结构通常是由介词 with 或 without 加上名词词组或分词构成。这里 more than three in four 承前省略了介词 with。complete 改成 completing。
11. B。分析句子结构，句子的主语为 The view of Walter Benjamin and Vladimir Nobokov，后面的 they 与主语重复，应去掉。
12. D。分析句子结构，句子的主语为 AMERICARES' First airlift to India，谓语为 has arrived，后面的 has valued 与谓语重复。value 和它前面的名词 medicines，medical equipment，water purification treatments and other aid 之间构成被动关系，是这些药品等物资被估价，因此是过去分词短语做后置定语，应把 has 去掉。

13. A。light and heat 与 emit 之间应该是被动关系，且句子缺少主语。此处 light and heat 应作为一个整体看待，所以谓语动词要用单数形式。因此，emitted 前加入 is 即可。
14. C。cover 应改为 covering。如果使用动词原形 cover，则会导致 that 引导的结果状语从句内部在没有任何连词的情况下出现两个谓语动词：is 和 cover 不符合语法，因而此处应使用相应的非谓语动词形式，由于 cover 和它的逻辑主语 events 之间是主动关系，所以应使用其现在分词形式 covering。
15. B。分析句子结构可知，若使 deal with dialectal differences 部分做句子的主语，须将 deal 改为现在分词的形式，使整个现在分词短语作主语。deal 改为 dealing。
16. D。句子有两个谓语 came 和 was established，可以把 was 去掉或在 was 前加 which。
17. A。分析句子结构，句子的谓语是 could be，shyness 后的 becomes so severe that… 为定语从句，先行词为 shyness。因此，becomes 前应加入 that。
18. B。if 引导的条件句没有谓语，starting 是动词非谓语形式。主句的时态为一般现在时 do not have to trouble，if 从句里也用一般现在时。从句主语为 we，故从句的谓语应为一般现在时的复数形式。因此，starting 应该改为 start。
19. A。句子没有谓语。由 traditionally 可知句子为完成时态，concern 表达“涉及，有关”的意义时，是及物动词，这里需用到被动语态，故 concerning 应改为 has been concerned。
20. A。even 为副词，不能引导从句，根据题意，改为引导让步状语从句的 Even though。



常考要点（四）谓语动词、非谓语动词

一、谓语动词

考点分析

谓语动词是与非谓语动词相对应的概念。两者都是动词，但是前者做谓语，后者不能做谓语。而谓语就是说明主语的动作或状态的，一般由动词或短语动词承担。

（一）谓语动词的主谓一致

主谓一致的原则在**完形填空**一周已经详细讲解，这里不再赘述。

（二）谓语动词的时态

（1）时间状语

改错题中，要根据时间状语判定谓语动词的时态。

例：The metal aluminum has been first isolated early in the nineteenth century.

分析：metal，aluminum 同位语，in the nineteenth century 为明显表示过去时间的状语，因此应该用过去时态，把 has been 改为 was。

（2）for 和 since 的区别

区别一：for 后面使用时间段，since 后面使用时间点。

区别二：since 只能用在现在完成时态，for 最主要用在现在完成时和一般过去时。

例：They have lived in that house since two years ago.

分析：时间状语 since two years ago 一般要求主句用现在完成时态，而句中谓语动词为现在式，因此把 live 改为 have lived。

（3）自然现象和客观事实用一般现在时态

例：In general，prawns lived in shallow coastal waters or in streams.

分析：此句说的是客观事实，把 lived 改为 live。

（三）谓语的语态

语态主要表示是主动语态还是被动语态。有四类动词是改错题中常考的：

（1）prove

例：My advice proved to be wrong. 尽管是“被证明”，但习惯上用主动语态来表达。

（2）locate，situate

这两个词可以用主动语态，表示“把……放置在……地方；确定……的位置”；也可以

用被动语态。

区分 locate 的主动和被动比较难，但是有一个技巧存在：locate 如果用作主动，后面必须跟宾语。

例：The center of gravity of the human body is located behind the hip joint.

（3）**表示需要概念的动词：**need，want，require 等。

例：My watch needed repairing

My watch needed to be repaired.

（4）**表示人的情感的动词：**move，annoy，surprise，please 等。

例：He is so moving. / He is greatly moved.

技巧点拨

英语改错中谓语动词涉及的错误有主谓一致、动词的时态和语态。

要识别这类错误，考生应注意以下几点：

（1）熟练掌握主谓一致方面的语法知识和习惯用法。改错题中，主语、谓语间有时会插入其他成分，如定语、同位语，这些成分往往会对识别主谓一致错误构成干扰。

❖ 从形式上判断。规则名词看字形，不规则名词要熟记，单、复数同形的名词可借助句中其他线索，如从句修饰语的主动词或并列句的主动词是单数还是复数。

❖ 从含义上判断。有些集合名词既可表示单数概念，也可表示复数概念，因此谓语动词的“数”要根据句子的上下文含义判定。很多情况下，概念上的一致是一条行之有效的原则。如：either，neither 等词作主语时，谓语动词按习惯用法应为单数。

❖ 注意寻找谓语动词的主语或逻辑主语，不要受分隔成分的干扰。尤其要注意定语从句中的谓语动词，其逻辑主语要到关系词前面的先行词。

（2）谓语动词的时态

❖ 根据上下文所用时态判断句子时态是否正确。

❖ 找到动词的主语或逻辑主语，弄清楚它们之间的关系。

❖ 注意主语和动词之间的分隔成分，不要受到这些成分的干扰。

❖ 看动词后面是否有宾语，如有宾语，则多半应为主动语态。

（3）谓语的语态

❖ 分析句子结构和成分，找到主语和谓语。

❖ 判定句子中主语与谓语之间的动作关系，是主动关系，就用主动语态；是被动关系，就用被动语态。

❖ 注意谓语语态在不同时态下的表达形式。

典型真题

例 1：

Restrict yourself to one or two pages，and listing any publications or referees on a separate sheet. S7 _____（重庆大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】listing→list。根据连词 and 判定 Restrict 与 listing 构成并列结构，做句子的谓语，应用动词 list 的原形形式。

例 2：

17. More than (A) three years after moving from Australia to this remote (B) point of England，

we are still (C) learning how things have done (D) here.（南京大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】D。谓语语态。主语与谓语的关系是被动的，所以要用被动语态。此外没有强调动作正在进行，所以用一般现在时，have done 改为 are done。

例 3：

37. The food (A) that Mark is cooking (B) in the kitchen is smelling (C) delicious (D).（河海大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】C。谓语时态语态。smell 意为“闻起来”，属于感官动词，这类动词没有被动语态成进行时态，后面经常接形容词做表语，类似的词还有 feel，sound，look，taste 等。因此 is smelling 改为 smells。

例 4：

（67）It is the very finest soot — so small that it lodges deep within the lungs and from there enter the bloodstream — that contributes to most of the public-health toll of air pollution including mortality.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】~~enter~~ →enters。该句子的主语为 it，因此谓语动词要使用第三人称单数形式。

例 5：

36. He was the only one of the candidates (A) who were (B) to carry out (C) his (D) campaign pledges.（河海大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】B。主谓一致。先行词为 the only one of the candidates，定语从句的谓语应用单数形式，且不能直接接动词不定式，因此 were 应改为 was able。

例 6：

40. Older persons typically exhibit greater experienced-based knowledge, increased accuracy (A), better judgment, and generally improved ability to handle familiar tasks than younger persons (B). Such applied knowledge, or wisdom (C), may in fact be considerably more important to one's ability to accomplish most tasks of day-to-day life than were (D) the abstract abilities tapped by intelligence tests.（中国社会科学院 2011 年）

【名师点评】D。谓语动词时态误用。从时态上看，句子中的谓语都是一般现在时，故应将 than were 改为 than are。

实战演练

1. The report found that physicians are largely unaware that current federal government guidelines did not recommend annual exams for healthy adults without symptoms. _____
2. In essence, a nation planning its resources and needs do not differ from the familiar weekly shopping or monthly household budget. _____
3. The spider is too short-sighted to see things at the distance. It only wanted to go where it won't be disturbed. _____
4. Nobody grow old merely by the number of years. We grow old by deserting our ideals.

5. Country life, on the other hand, differs from this kind of isolated existence in that a sense of community generally is kept the inhabitants of a small village together. _____

6. Mr. Wells, together with (A) all the members (B) of his family, are (C) leaving for (D) Europe this afternoon.

7. Neither (A) of the political parties emerged with much (B) credit and polls suggested voters have been (C) turned off by the entire affair (D).

8. My close friend and adviser Carter believe (A) the Chalk River experience had (B) a lasting impact on the president, influencing him when he had (C) to confront nuclear issues while leading (D) the western alliance.

9. Most environmental problems (A) exist because adequate measures (B) for preventing them was not (C) taken in the past (D).

10. The old farmer was (A) run down by a car. He was taken (B) to the hospital and is operated (C) on by the chief surgeon (D) right now.

11. One of the requirements (A) for a fire is (B) that the material is heated (C) to its burning temperature (D).

12. In 2001, a committee of six men (A) and two women have been chosen (B) to investigate (C) the cause soon after (D) the air crash.

13. Defence Secretary Liam Fox have (A) resigned after a week of pressure over (B) his working relationship (C) with friend and self-styled adviser (D) Adam Werritty.

14. The teacher, along with his students, were (A) doing experiments (B) in the laboratory when (C) the explosion happened (D).

15. The Managing Director said (A) that improving relations (B) with the association would (C) not be easy, but that they decide (D) to try.

16. Nothing but some (A) ancient Chinese coins have found (B) in the sunken ship since they

began (C) the exploration (D).

17. The first is the broad area of communication, which include (A) imparting information by use of language, communicating with (B) a group or an individual, and specialized (C) communication through performance (D).

18. Advertising media (A) like direct mail, radio, television and newspapers has used (B) to increase (C) the sales of industrial products (D).

19. The total number of eggs (A) laid per Wolbachia-infected female were (B) 3.5 times higher than that observed (C) in non-infected flies (D).

20. While people may refer to (A) television for up-to-the-minute news (B), it is unlikely (C) that it will replaces (D) the newspaper completely.

答案解析

1. are→were。谓语时态。本句的主句的谓语动词 found 是过去时，故从句中的谓语动词也应该用过去时。
2. do→does。主谓一致。主语是动名词复合结构 a nation planning its resources and needs，应视为单数。
3. wanted→wants。谓语时态。前一句用的是一般现在时。若没有使用表示过去时间的时间状语，具体语句不得使用过去时。显然，wanted 应改为 wants。
4. grow→grows。主谓一致。在 nobody，anybody，everybody，somebody 等不定代词作主语时，谓语动词均用单数。
5. is kept→keeps。谓语的语态。从句的主语 a sense of community 与 the inhabitants of a small village together 之间应该是主动关系。因此谓语动词 is kept 应改为 keeps。
6. C。主谓一致。如果主语是单数，即使后面有 with，together with，as well as 等引起的短语，谓语动词还是用单数形式。因此，are 应改为 is。
7. C。主谓一致。neither of +名词作主语时，谓语动词应用单数，have 应该改为 has。
8. A。主谓一致。此句中 friend 和 adviser 是同一个人，这一点可从 him 上判断出。这种结构是并列主语，指同一事，同一概念或同一种东西时，谓语用单数。believe 改为 believes。
9. C。主谓一致。被动语态的时态、数、性的一致，主要由助动词来表示，要注意它们与主语的一致。此处从句的主语 measures 是复数，谓语动词应用复数形式。was 改为 were。
10. C。谓语时态语态。时间状语 right now 表示“现在，眼下，正在进行”，故应使用进行时态，又因为 operate 存在被动关系，因此 is operated 应改为 is being operated。

11. C。谓语语态。在与 motion，order，plan，recommendation，proposal，idea，request，requirement，suggestion 等名词相关的从句中，谓语要使用“should +动词原形”，should 可以省略。is heated 应改为 be heated。
12. B。谓语时态和语态。由于本题中出现了明确的过去时间，所以时态只能是过去时，而不能用现在完成时。“a committee of +复数名词”后面所跟的通常是动词的单数形式，类似的情况还有“a panel of + 复数名词”和“a/the board of + 复数名词”等。因此，have been chosen 应改为 was chosen。
13. A。主谓一致。句子的主语为 Defence Secretary Liam Fox，谓语应该用单数形式。因此 have 改为 has。
14. A。主谓一致。如果主语是单数，即使后面有 along with，with，together with，as well as 等引起的短语，谓语动词还是用单数形式。题干中 teacher 为单数，were 改为 was。
15. D。谓语时态。根据句意和句子结构，可以看出宾语从句的谓语动词 decide 发生在主句谓语动词 said 之前，从句谓语动词只能使用过去完成时。因此，decide 应改为 had decided。
16. B。主谓一致和谓语语态。nothing but 表示“除了……什么也没有”，nothing 是句子的主语，单数形式。coins 与 find 之间是被动关系。因此 have found 改为 has been found。
17. A。主谓一致。which 引导的从句的先行词 area 是单数，定语从句的谓语应该用单数形式。因此将 include 改成 includes。
18. B。主谓一致和谓语语态。根据实际情况，各种媒介一直以来被广泛用于促销，所以选择被动语态的完成时最符合句意。media 是名词 medium 的复数形式，根据主谓一致原则，has used 应改为 have been used。
19. B。主谓一致。句子的主语是数量 number，谓语动词用单数。如果主语是 a large number of +名词复数，谓语动词就要用复数形式。因此，were 改为 was。
20. D。谓语时态。从 unlikely 一词可以看出从句表示的是将来不大可能发生的事情，用一般将来时，will 后接动词原形。因此，replaces 改为 replace。

二、非谓语动词

考点分析

非谓语动词内容繁多，用法复杂，是考生在英语学习过程中的难点，是博士研究生入学考试改错题中常考的项目。非谓语动词的用法在**词汇结构**一周讲解，这里不再赘述。下面列举了改错题中主要的非谓语动词考点：

（一）现在分词或动名词

（1）对于接-ing 的词来说，考试经常出现。下面这些词必须用-ing 形式的动词，请考生牢记。

动词有：

admit，appreciate，avoid，consider，delay

dislike，enjoy，escape，excuse，celebrate

finish，imagine，keep，mind，advocate
miss，practise，risk，suggest，quit，forgive
词组有：

be used to 习惯于
can't help 情不自禁
can't stand 无法忍受
give up 放弃
go on 继续
feel like 想要
keep on doing sth. 继续做某事
insist on 坚持
look forward to 盼望
put off 推迟
devote to 致力于
stick to 坚持
object to 反对
thank you for 因……感谢你
be busy 忙于
get down to doing sth. 静下心做某事
have difficulty/trouble（in）doing sth. 做某事有困难

（2）一些动词成词组后面可加 to do 形式，也可加-ing 形式

forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事
forget doing sth. 忘记已经做过某事
remember to do sth. 记住去做某事
remember doing sth. 记得曾经做过某事
stop to do sth. 停下来接着去做另一件事
stop doing sth. 停止做某事
mean to do sth. 企图做某事
mean doing sth. 意味着做某事
go on to do sth. 做完某事接着去做另一件事
go on doing sth. 继续做同一件事
try to do sth. 试图做某事
try doing sth. 尝试着做某事
can't help to do sth. 不能帮助做某事
can't help doing sth. 情不自禁地做某事

（二）不定式

动词不定式的固定用法

（1）表示迫使的动词

allow/enable/call +sb. + to do

（2）表示倾向……的形容词

be more likely to do 更有可能做某事
be inclined to do 倾向于做某事
be liable to do 易于……的
be apt to do 易于……的

（3）表示目的的名词

固定格式：the +名词 of sth. is to do sth.
这样的名词有 purpose，objective，aim
goal，reason，function，intension

（4）形容词、动词的同根名词

ability to do（be able to do）
attempt to do（attempt to do）
decision to do（decide to do）
ambition to do（be ambitious to do）
effort to do

（5）动词不定式的省略

❖ help 后面可以省略 to

help to do；help sb. to do

❖ 使役动词后面要省略 to，这样的动词如 make，let，have。

注意 get 不是使役动词，get sb. to do sth.

❖ 感官动词后面可以省略 to，这样的动词如：hear，feel，watch，see，notice，observe。

see sb. do sth. 强调过程

see sb. doing sth. 强调正在做某事

技巧点拨

非谓语动词包括不定式、分词和动名词，不存在人称和数的变化，但具有各种时态形式，并有主动、被动之分。考生需要用下面的技巧识别这类错误：

（1）掌握哪些动词之后只可接动词不定式做宾语，哪些只可接动名词，哪些又两者皆可接。

（2）非谓语动词的逻辑主语和句子的主语是否一致。如不一致，则需要在非谓语动词前加上逻辑主语。

（3）现在分词和过去分词都可以放在其所修饰的名词之后，做后置定语。当所修饰的名词是分词表示的动作的主体时，用现在分词；当所修饰的名词是分词所表示的动作的受体时，用过去分词。

（4）某些动词的现在分词与过去分词可用作形容词，但意思不同。现在分词做形容词时词义为“令人有……的感觉”，它的主语一般为事物。过去分词做形容词时意为“（人）有……的感觉”。如：surprising“令人惊讶的”，surprised“惊奇的，诧异的”；exciting“令人兴奋的”，excited“激动的，兴奋的”。

典型真题

例 1：

4. The government has decided to invest nuclear power (A) as the best way to (B) guarantee that the nation's energy needs continue to be met (C) in the 21st century (D). （中国地质大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 C。continue→to continue。动词 need 作实义动词时，后接 to do 形式。

例 2：

Here are a few ways to avoid end up on the reject pile. S4 _____（重庆大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 end→ending。avoid 后只接动词的-ing 形式。

例 3：

The benefit (A) of goat's milk lies (B) in the fact that (C) it is more easily to digest by infants.（河海大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】 D。因前面有副词 easily 修饰被动语态的谓语动词。如果前面是形容词，easy 后面就用主动语态，也就是句型“be + 某些形容词 + to do”。因此，应该改为 be digested。

1. In the nineteenth (A) century the Mohave Indians lived (B) in the Northern Hemisphere grew (C) their crops on river bottom lands (D).
2. Won (A) its war for independence in 1783, the United States then struggled (B) to establish (C) its own economic and financial system (D).
3. Some experts (A) have advocated to bring (B) that country into the talks, to revive (C) the intermittent dialogue that began (D) after the 1967 Middle East War.
4. A conductor used (A) signals and gestures to let (B) the musicians to know (C) when to play (D) various parts of a composition.
5. For ancient people, myths were (A) often attempts explanation (B) catastrophic events (C) such as (D) volcanic eruptions.
6. His (A) wife doesn't allow smoked (B) inside the room and often advises (C) him to give up smoking (D).
7. Sometimes it overreacts (A) to what should be a perfectly innocuous (B) food or other substance (C), caused (D) an allergic reaction.
8. Iceland lies (A) far north in the Atlantic (B), with (C) its northernmost tip actually touched (D) the Arctic Circle.
9. To tell (A) you the truth, I cannot help but admiring (B) his courage and wisdom after (C) I heard of his stories (D).
10. Supplying (A) with enough instruments necessary for (B) the experiment, these scientists are (C) expecting to finish (D) it ahead of time.
11. I felt (A) so embarrassed that I couldn't do anything (B) but to sit (C) there when I first met (D) my wife.
12. The pressure competing (A) causes Americans to be energetic (B), but it (C) also puts them under a constant emotional strain (D).

13. The police accused (A) him of setting (B) fire to the building but he denied to have been (C) in the area on the night of the fire (D).

14. If you have never planted (A) anything, you won't be able to (B) know the pleasure of watching (C) the thing you have planted to grow (D).

15. At interpersonal levels, the tone may reflect (A) ideas and feelings (B) over and above the words that (C) chosen, or may belie (D) them.

16. The motivation deriving (A) from the text, in combination with (B) the performer's skills, personality, and ability to (C) create empathy will determine (D) the success of artistic, political, or pedagogic communication.

17. In the dense complex world of a tropical forest, it is more important to see (A) well than to develop (B) an acute sense of smell, in the course of evolution members of the primate line have acquired (C) large eyes while the snout has shrunk to give the eye an unimpeding (D) view.

18. The hunter-gatherer tribes (A) that today like (B) our prehistoric human ancestors consume (C) primarily a vegetable diet supplementing (D) with animal foods.

19. More governments, especially in developing (A) nations, now support (B) family planned (C) programs to reduce (D) population growth.

20. Middle-class couples may also marry (A) for love, but the overridden (B) task of middle-class families is also an economic one—to enhance (C) the earning (D) power of the breadwinner.

答案解析

1. B。分词作定语。根据句意和句子结构，句子的谓语为 grew。live 引导的分词短语做 the Mohave Indians 的后置定语，意为“生活在 Northern Hemisphere 地方的人”，人生活是主动，因此改为 living。
2. A。分词作状语。Win 引导的分词短语作整个句子的状语，与句子的主语 the United States 为主动关系，改 Won 为 Winning。
3. B。advocate 后面直接跟 doing，故将 to bring 改为 bringing。
4. C。let 为使役动词，后面接省略 to 的不定式。因此 to know 应改为 know。

5. B。attempts 后应跟动词不定式短语表目的，故将名词 explanation 改为 to explain。
6. B。allow doing sth. 是固定的格式，意思是“允许做某事”。因此，smoked 应改为 smoking。
7. D。逗号之前是完整的句子，逗号后不能用谓语动词。cause 的逻辑主语为 innocuous food or other substance，它们之间是主动关系，因此要用现在分词，caused 应改为 causing。
8. D。with 结构一般用于表示句子中动作的状态，充当状语。“with + 名词或代词 + 动词-ing 形式”表示结构中动词与名词或代词是主动关系；“with + 名词或代词 + 动词-ed 形式”表示结构中动词与名词或代词是被动关系。根据 northernmost tip 与 the Arctic Circle 之间为主动关系，touched 应改为 touching。
9. B。在 cannot help but 结构中，but 之后需要使用动词原形，意为“不得不，必然”，而 can't help 之后则需要使用动词的-ing 形式，表示“禁不住……”的意思。因此，admiring 应改为 admire。
10. A。要根据分词的逻辑主语来判断分词用主动形式还是被动形式，还要看该动词是不是及物动词。如果是及物动词，后面带有宾语，该动词就不会再用被动形式了，如没有宾语，应考虑使用被动形式。本句是使用被动形式，应该是过去分词。而动词不定式表示目的，句子的意思就变成了好像是为了得到实验必需的仪器，科学家在指望提前完成实验。因此，Supplying 应改为 Supplied。
11. C。but/except 在 do anything/everything/nothing 之后时，接不带 to 的不定式，因此 to sit 应改为动词原形 sit。
12. A。pressure 与其后的非谓语动词之间是目的关系，应该用 to compete 形式，不定式做后置定语，没有被动和完成的含义。
13. C。动词 deny 后只能接动名词做宾语，因此 to have been 应改为 having been。
14. D。感官动词 watch 后接不带 to 的不定式做宾语补足语。因此 to grow 应改为 grow。
15. C。将 that 去掉，用过去分词做后置定语。
16. A。derive 为及物动词，用过去分词形式引导后置定语。因此，将 deriving 改成 derived。
17. D。动词 impede 意为“阻止”，而后面所修饰的名词 view 和分词间是典型的被动关系，所以应该使用过去分词。因此，unimpeding 改成 unimpeded。
18. D。非谓语动词 supplementing 为后置定语修饰 diet，但 supplement 与 diet 之间为被动关系。因此，将 supplementing 改成 supplemented。
19. C。plan 和 family 是主动关系，故用现在分词。因此 planned 改为 planning。
20. B。overridden 在句中充当 task 的前置定语，但两者之前没有逻辑上的被动关系；overriding 为表示主动意义的形容词，意为“首要的”，符合句意需要。因此，overridden 改为 overriding。



常考要点（五）词性混用、易混词误用

一、词性混用

考点分析

改错题中常见的词性误用主要包括形容词和名词之间的误用、连词和副词之间的误用以及形容词和副词之间的误用。

（一）做表语时形容词和副词的混用

做表语应用形容词，绝对不能用副词。

例：Giant pandas，which inhabit restricted areas of high mountain bamboo forests，are rarely today and when they are in captivity they breed poorly.

分析：rarely 为副词，不能作表语，故改为形容词 rare。

（二）加宾语时名词和动名词的混用

后面加宾语当然要用动名词

例：Tilling means preparation the soil to plant the seeds and keeping the soil in the best condition to help the crop grow until it is ready for harvesting.

分析：preparation 为名词，后面不能接宾语，改为动名词 preparing，其后既能接宾语，又与后面的 keeping 构成并列关系。

（三）只能用副词修饰数量词，不能用形容词

nearly two hundred students，这里的 nearly 修饰的是 two hundred；

two hundred diligent students，这里的 diligent 修饰的是 students。

（四）逻辑连接词和近义的副词或介词混用

有些副词或介词 else，also，instead，even，during，despite 无法把两个句子连接起来，连接两个句子应该用连接词连接。

例：Mary McDowell shared Jane Adam's interest in social work also was a loyal supporter of the League of Nations.

分析：also 是副词，不能连接并列的谓语动词，故改为并列连词 and。

技巧点拨

改错题中常见的词性误用主要包括形容词和名词之间的误用、连词和副词之间的误用以及前面提到的形容词和副词之间的误用。

（1）注意平行结构各部分之间形式的一致性，如要为名词就均为名词，要为形容词就均为形容词。

（2）分清句子的语法结构，判断各部分应该采用的词性。弄清形容词或副词在句中充当的成分及其所修饰的词语，判断是否存在误用情况。形容词修饰名词，在句中充当定语、表语或补语；副词修饰形容词、动词或整个句子，在句中充当状语。

（3）词汇量的掌握对词性的使用非常重要，但是如果对出题方向有更好的把握，将会弥补词汇量的不足。

典型真题

例 1：

（73）Won't the highly cost of going it alone put Apple at a disadvantage compared to makers that buy chips and software from others?（北京大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 highly→high。形容词和副词间的误用。highly 为副词，不能修饰名词 cost，所以应该改为 high。

例 2：

71. When they had absolute nothing to do with the video in question, then our liability is limited.（北京大学 2010 年）

【名师点评】 absolute→absolutely。形容词和副词误用。根据句子结构，absolutely 修饰前面的动词，修饰动词应该使用副词，故应将 absolute 改为 absolutely。

例 3：

（71）Also, Jobs has been around long enough to remember the advantages of a vertical integrated company.（北京大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】 vertical→vertically。形容词和副词间的误用。句中的 integrated 为过去分词，做形容词用，应该用副词修饰，所以用 vertical 不对，应改为 vertically。

例 4：

31. Such an extravagance (A) merely to provide (B) comfort is peculiarly America and striking at odds with (C) all the recent rhetoric about national sacrifice in a period of menacing (D) energy shortages.（社会科学院 2006）

【名师点评】 C。动名词和副词间的误用。at odds with 意为“与……意见不一致”，应用副词修饰。因此 striking 改为 strikingly。

例 5：

（64）How big? According to a new analyze published in the Lancet, more than 3.2 million people suffered premature deaths from air pollution in 2010, the largest number on record.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】 ~~analyze~~ →analysis。动词和名词间的误用。analyze 为动词，这里需使用名词形式。

例 6：

At the same time,（94）once while the rules allowing delivery of the Internet through

power lines are completed，（95）companies could provide consumers with the ability to plug their modems directly into wall sockets，just like they do with a toaster，or a desk lamp.（北京大学 2004 年）

【名师点评】 like→as。逻辑连接词和介词间的误用。just like 后面的 they do with a toaster，or a desk lamp 为完整的句子，需要连接词引导，而 like 为介词不对，应改为连词 as。

实战演练

1. Research on pain (A) has been neglected, although the mainly (B) reason people take medicine (C) is to relieve (D) pain.
2. Langston Hughes, a prolific writer (A) of the 1920's, was concerned (B) with depiction (C) the experience of urban Black people (D) in the United States.
3. Paper is strong (A) under tension instead (B) crumples easily (C) under the stress (D) of compression.
4. Some of the most (A) celebrated publicity (B) stunts while (C) the history of radio were (D) associated with Gracie Allen.
5. There are near (A) two hundred thousand students, a (B) good many more (C) than there were (D) when Zawahiri and Fadl studied there.
6. Because (A) there are fewer short than medium-sized men, a suit (B) made to their measurements is less likely (C) to find a buyer, and is knocked down according (D).
7. These assets, some time (A) called non-current assets (B), are used in the operation (C) of business rather than being (D) held for sale.
8. Many elderly people (A) are now not used to the tend (B) of modern living (C), which they consider is away from the old customs (D).
9. Mr. Johnson couldn't shake the convict (A) that these wounded soldiers (B) were in deep trouble (C) and it was up to (D) him to help them.
10. In the United States educational (A) system, intermediate (B) school is the transition (C) stage between the primary (D) grades and high school.
11. An institution (A) that properly carries the name university (B) is a more comprehensive (C) and complex institution than any other kind of higher education establish (D).

12. Youth is not a time of life; it is a state of mind; it is not a matter of rosy cheeks (A), red lips and supple knees; it is a matter of will, a quality (B) of the imagination (C), a vigor of the emotions; it is the fresh (D) of the deep springs of life.

13. Another popular (A) trend that I see in the images (B) below is to tightly crop on unexpected (C) but remarkable (D) interesting portions of your subject.

14. If, therefore, a playground (A) rhyme can be shown to have been currently (B) for a hundred years, or even just for fifty, it follows (C) that it has been retransmitted (D) over and again.

15. The even-present possibility (A) of volcanic corruptions (B), such as that of Mt. St. Helens in Washington, added to man's pollution of the atmosphere (C) with oil, gas, coal, and other polluting substances, may bring us increasing (D) colder weather.

16. It was relative (A) easy to give independence to the larger colonies (B) — indeed, most campaigned vigorously for self-rule — but the smaller dependencies (C), which were less economically viable, preferred to remain (D) beyond British rule.

17. Contrary to researchers' expect (A), dysfunctional family relationships (B) and poor communication styles appear to have much effect (C) on whether young children become depressed (D), a study has found.

18. This happens very frequent (A), not just as families separate (B) or fail to be formed, but also within families (C) which to all outer appearance (D) are still intact.

19. With easy (A) parking and convenience (B) evening hours, customers (C) could avoid city shopping (D) entirely.

20. In education (A), there should be a good balance (B) among the branches of knowledge that contribution (C) to effective thinking and wise judgement (D).

答案解析

1. B。形容词—副词误用。mainly 为副词，不能修饰后面的名词，故改为形容词 main。句子中 people take medicine 修饰 reason，定语从句引导词被省略。

2. C。名词—动名词误用。depiction 为名词，后面不能接宾语，应改为动名词 depicting，做介词宾语。
3. B。副词—连词误用。instead 为副词，不能连接两个并列动词，应改为 but。句意：纸张在拉力的作用下很强，而在压力的作用下容易起皱。对等连接词 but 和 and，or 的用法是一样的。
4. C。连词—介词误用。while 为连词，后面要求接从句，而句中显然没有从句，故根据题意改为介词 in。
5. A。形容词—副词误用。near 为形容词，不能修饰数量词，因此 near 应改为副词 nearly。
6. D。形容词—副词误用。分析句子成分，应该用 according 的副词形式 accordingly 修饰动词 knocked，意为“因此，结果是”。
7. A。some time 不是副词，而是名词性成分，意为“一段（较长的）时间”，不能修饰动词 called。sometime 是副词，在此指过去的某个时间。因此，some time 应改为 sometime。
8. B。动词—名词误用。tend 是动词，意为“趋向，倾向；照料，照顾”。of 结构应用名词，tendency 是 tend 的名词形式，指自然因素决定的“趋势，倾向”。因此，tend 应改为 tendency。
9. A。动词—名词误用。convict 是动词，意为“证明……有罪；宣告……有罪”，此处应是名词，应改为 conviction，shake a conviction 是“放弃信念”的意思。
10. C。形容词—名词误用。transition 意为“过渡”，为名词，其后的 stage 是名词，一般用形容词修饰。因此，transition 改为 transitional，意为“过渡的”。
11. D。名词—动词误用。establish 意为“建立；创办；安置”，是动词。根据前面的 higher education 判定，此处应用名词形式，将 establish 改为 establishment。establishment 意为“企业，设施（公司、学校、医院、教会等）”。
12. D。名词—形容词误用。fresh 意为“新鲜的；清新的；淡水的”。介词 of 前应为名词，而 fresh 为名词时，意为“开始，泛滥”，freshness 作为形容词 fresh 的名词形式，意为“气味清新，精神饱满”，符合此句之意。
13. D。形容词—副词误用。remarkable 是形容词，而其后是另一个形容词 interesting，修饰形容词的应该是副词，故改为 remarkably。
14. B。形容词—副词误用。current 是形容词，意为“通用的，通行的，被普遍接受的”。currently 是副词，意思为“当前，时下”。此处 have been 后面需要用形容词 current。
15. D。形容词—副词误用。由于下文为形容词 colder，那么根据“副词修饰形容词”的规则，此处应为 increasingly。因此，increasing 改为 increasingly。
16. A。形容词—副词误用。由于下文为形容词 easy，应该用副词修饰形容词，此处应为 relatively。因此，relative 改为 relatively。
17. A。动词—名词误用。expect 为动词，意为“期望；指望”。根据前面 researchers' 所有格，此处应用名词形式 expectations。
18. A。形容词—副词误用。happens 为动词，这里需用副词修饰 happens。因此，将 frequent 改成 frequently。
19. B。名词—形容词误用。根据下文的 evening hours，前面应是形容词作为其修饰语，convenient 才是形容词，convenient 与前文的 easy 形成并列。
20. C。名词—动词误用。contribution 意为“贡献；促成”，为名词。根据上下文，此处应该用动词形式 contribute。

二、易混词误用

考点分析

博士研究生入学英语考试中，经常出现易混词的错误，其是改错题中常见的一种错误类型。主要包括：

（一）同/近义词误用

例：consist“包括，由……组成”与 compose“组成”

arise“出现，起来”与 rise“上升，站起”

forbid“禁止”与 prohibit“禁止”

（二）形近词误用

例：The disease mainly effects the skin and nerves.

分析：根据句意，此处是说疾病对皮肤和神经有影响，而 effect 作动词时意为“实现，达到”，作名词时才意为“影响”，因此应将 effect 改为 affect。

（三）同根词误用

例：sleep 和 asleep

具体的易混词在**词汇结构**一周的词汇附表中已列出，请考生关注一下。

技巧点拨

（1）平时注意对这些易混词的积累。

（2）记忆单词时，多注意同根词在用法上的区别。

（3）仔细阅读每一个单词，从其词性、含义、用法三方面全面考虑其使用是否恰当。

典型真题

例 1：

62. They said the clips were moved only after complaints from Vivi Down, an Italian organization representing people with Down syndrome and autism, whose name was mentioned in the videos.（北京大学 2010 年）

【名师点评】moved → removed。句中的 moved 意为“移动”，与句意不符，句意说他们是在接到了 Vivi Down 的投诉后，才删除了剪辑。因此，应将 moved 改为 removed。

例 2：

（68）Stanford's $911 million was the most ever collected by a single university, and rose the possibility of a billion-dollar fund-raising year in the not-too-distant future.（北京大学 2007 年）

【名师点评】rose→raised。rise 意为“升起，起身，发源，起义，高耸，增长”，而此处是说筹集基金，因此应改为 raise，意为“筹集”。

例 3：

In education there should be a good balance among the branches of knowledge that attribute to effective thinking and wise judgment.（山东大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】attribute→contribute。attribute to 意为“把……归因于”，而本句的句意是“有助于有效的思考”，因此应改为 contribute。

实战演练

1. A considerable amount of (A) work in linguistics has gone into (B) looking at the distribute (C) of talk between women and men, and there is some evidence that men tend to (D) talk more than women in mixed sex conversations.
2. Now, it is clear that the decline of a language must ultimately have political and economical causes: it is not due simply to the bad influence of this or that individual writer. _____
3. There are (A) some scientists who believe (B) that pollution is even (C) threatening the ability of humans to produce (D).
4. Colorful vision in each eye comes from six to seven million structures called cones.
5. Many Middle-Eastern and Asian countries have a battle to fight with air, water, and land pollution. Lakes and swamps are spread with debris.
6. He feared that population growth (A) would intend (B) to outstrip growth in food production, leading to ever increased famine (C) and poverty; he is seen as the intellectual father of ideas of overpopulation and the limits (D) for growth.
7. In the study, Australian researchers looked at many factors, including marital (A) partner change, mothers' health in pregnancy (B), a child's health in the first six months of life and marital anxiety (C) in more than 5,000 mothers over a period of five years (D).
8. People from working-class families (A) do seek self-esteem and personal (B) confirmation (C), and they come to their jobs full of hopes (D).
9. One source of information is the affect (A) of the eruption (B) of Tambora, a volcano (C) in Sumbawa, the Dutch East Indies (D), in April 1815.
10. The third process, utilization (A), composes (B) of relating a mental representation (C) of the text meaning to declarative (D) knowledge, which is stored in long-term memory in terms of either propositions or schemata.
11. In order to prove (A) that theory, ecologists (B) have turned to historic (C) data in relation to especially huge volcanic (D) eruptions.
12. The effect was previously thought to be negligent (A), but researchers now say the shift (B)

will be large enough that it should be taken into account (C) when interpreting (D) how the Earth wobbles.

13. This is especially (A) important after a tough run or workout (B), when you may feel that a big-calorie (C) binge is justifiable (D).

14. Most people found (A) it hard to believe that such a seemingly (B) respectful (C) man should have done that wicked (D) thing.

15. Alexander, being of a sensible (A), reserved nature (B), pays close attention (C) to what people say about him and does not like making speeches (D) in public.

16. Some people think that a literary (A) translation, or word-for-word translation (B), is easier (C) than a free (D) translation.

17. The whole embarrassing accident (A) in the bar was a great disappointment (B) to them and set (C) a bad example of English hospitality (D).

18. A person conveys (A) thoughts and ideas through choice of words, by a tone of sound (B) that is pleasant or unpleasant (C), by the rhythm that is inherent within the language itself, and finally, by the pitch and melody of the utterance (D).

19. Public performance (A) is a manner of communication highly (B) specialized with its own technologies (C) for obtaining effects (D) by voice and/or gesture.

20. Whether 60 or 16, there is every human being's heart (A) the lure of wonder, the unfailing (B) childlike (C) appetite of what's next and the joy of the game of living (D).

答案解析

1. C。同根词混用。distribute 为动词，而此处 of 前需名词，指男女间对话中话语的分布。因此，distribute 改为 distribution。
2. economical→economic。同根词混用。economical 的意思是“节约的，经济的，省钱的”，而此处应选择 economic 表示“经济的，有关经济的”。因此，economical 改为 economic。
3. D。同根词混用。produce 的意思是“生产，制造”，humans 不是生产出来的，而是 reproduce（生殖，繁殖）。因此，produce 改为 reproduce。
4. Colorful→Color。同根词混用。colorful 是指所修饰的事物本身具有明亮的或者不同的颜色，而 color 作定语是指修饰的事物使别的事物的各种颜色能够展现出来，而不是仅仅

看到黑白两色。因此，Colorful 改为 Color。

5. spread→polluted/littered。近义动词混用。句中的 debris 意为“碎片，残骸”，所以根据上下文这里的意思是“湖泊和湿地被一些碎片残骸所污染或弄得凌乱不堪”才符合逻辑。因此，spread 改为 polluted/littered。
6. B。形近动词混用。动词 intend 和 tend 由于形式上相近，有时会被混淆。intend to do 的意思是 decide to do or plan to do，主语往往是有意识的行为发出者；tend to do 的意思是 usually or often happen，两者是完全不同的。从上下文来看，主语 population growth 并不是行为的主动发出者，应该用 tend，而不是 intend。
7. A。形近形容词混用。词义错误，marital 应改为 maternal，前者表“婚姻的”，后者表“母性的”。
8. C。形近名词混用。confirmation 意为“证实，证明，批准”，而 affirmation 意为“肯定，断言”。结合并列的成分 self-esteem“自尊”，personal affirmation“自我肯定”的意义符合全句的意思。因此，confirmation 应改为 affirmation。
9. A。形近名词混用。affect 与 effect 为一组很容易混淆的形近词。但 affect 主要做动词用，意指“影响”。effect 虽可作动词，但主要做名词用。根据上下文意义，此处应为名词。因此，affect 应改为 effect。
10. B。形近动词混用。compose 和 consist 都可以表示“组成，构成”，但用法不同：compose 可用作及物动词，后面直接加宾语，也可用作 be composed of sth.，表示“由……组成”。consist 是不及物动词，与介词 of 搭配，此处动词后面出现介词 of，而且并没有用作被动语态结构，因此只能用 consists。
11. C。同根形容词混用。historic 和 historical 均为 history 的形容词，但意义有区别。前者强调“历史上著名的，具有历史意义的”；后者则侧重“历史上真实地发生过的”，有别于“传说的”“杜撰的”。因此，将 historic 改为 historical。
12. A。近形形容词混用。negligent 极容易与 negligible 混淆，前者意为“疏忽的；粗心大意的”，后者意为“微不足道的，可以忽略的”。根据句意，应将 negligent 改为 negligible。
13. D。同根形容词混用。justifiable 意思和 justified 很接近，前者意为“有正当理由的”，一般是作前置定语，justified 意为“有合理解释的，有正当理由的”，在此句中是分词作表语，主语一般是具有能动性的人。因此，justifiable 改为 justified。
14. C。同根形容词混用。respectful 意为“表示尊敬的，有礼貌的”，与本题的意思不符，应该改为 respectable，意为“值得尊敬的，尊敬的”。
15. A。同根形容词混用。sensible 意为“有感觉的，明智的，有判断力的”，不能用于修饰 nature，应该改为 sensitive（敏感的，灵敏的，感光的）。
16. A。形近形容词混用。literary 意为“文学的”，放在这里不符合句意；与 literary 形近的形容词 literal 意为“字面的”，符合逻辑。故 literary 应该改为 literal。
17. A。近义名词混用。accident 意为“事故，意外”，与 embarrassing 搭配不符合逻辑，应该改为 incident，意为“事件，事情”。
18. B。近义名词混用。表示说话发出的声音不用 sound，用 voice。因此，将 sound 改成 voice。
19. C。形近名词混用。technologies 意为“科学技术，工艺”等，与句意不符，根据句子的句意，应该改成 techniques，意为“技巧”。
20. C。同根形容词混用。childish 意为“孩子气的，幼稚的”，略带贬义。childlike 意为“天真的，孩子般的”，略带褒义。两者在感情色彩上有所不同。因此，改 childlike 为 childish。

周六 常考要点（六）平行结构、逻辑关系

一、平行结构

考点分析

改错题考得最多的一个方向便是平行结构。

（一）对等连接词

一共有三类连接平行结构的词

单一式：and，or，but

相关式：both…and，not… but，either…or，neither…nor
the same…as；as…as，not so…as，not as…as
such…as，so…that，too…to，from…to，from…until，between…and
not only…but also（also 可以省略），not only ＋主谓，also
not only…but also（also 可以省略） ＋as well

短语式：as well as；rather than（而不是）；other than（除……之外）；instead of（代替）

考试的方式往往是搭配中有一个单词是对的，另一个单词却不对。

（二）平行的内容

（1）词性的平行

例：Photoperiodism is the functional or behavioral response of an organism to changes in duration of daily，seasonally，or yearly periods of light and darkness.

分析：在 daily，seasonally 和 yearly 三个并列的词中，daily 和 yearly 是形容词，seasonally 是副词，故改为形容词 seasonal，共同修饰名词 periods，三个形容词的平行。词性的平行本质上是语法作用的平行。

（2）名词单复数的平行

但是如果既有可数名词，又有不可数名词，可以不平行。

例：The main advertising media include direct mail，radio，television，magazines，and newspaper.

分析：newspaper 为可数名词，在没有任何前置修饰语的情况下一般用复数形式，并且和前面的 magazines 平行，而 mail，radio，television 则是不可数名词。

（3）时态的平行

例：The poet Marianne Moore was initially associated with the imagist movement，but later develops her own thyme patterns and verse forms.

分析：句中前半部分谓语为过去时，与之并列的谓语也应用过去时。因此 develops 应改为 developed。

（4）排列位置的平行

例：not only does rust corrode the surface of metal，but also weakens it.

分析：Not only 位置放错。从句 but also 放在动词前可知，not only 也须置于动词前。即为 Rust not only corrodes。

对于 not only…but also 的用法有以下几种：

- 主语 +not only +谓语，but also +谓语，正确。
- Not only +主谓，but also +主谓，正确。
- Not only +主语 +谓语，but also +谓语，错误。

技巧点拨

平行结构要求各部分采用相同的形式，改错题中经常会出现平行结构的连接词误用或是平行结构中某一部分与其他部分在形式上不统一的错误。

（1）识别这类错误的前提是熟悉各种平行结构；

（2）找到平行结构的连接词，根据上下文判断连接词使用是否正确；

（3）明确平行结构由哪几部分（词之间、两者之间以及句子间的平行）组成，对照其形式是否一致。

典型真题

例 1：

65. Even if automakers (A) modify commercially produced cars to run on (B) alternative fuels，the cars won't (C) catch on in a big way when (D) drivers can fill them up at the gas station.（河海大学 2004 年）

【名师点评】D。对等连接词。D 应该与前面的 won't 搭配，所以用 when 不对，应改为 until。

例 2：

（69）"Not only we see it as a nice convenience for customers，but we also saw it as a way to drive incremental traffic to the stores，and incremental sales，" said Steve Nave，senior vice president and general manager of Walmart. com.（北京大学 2011 年）

【名师点评】（only）do（we）。"not only…but also" 连接两个句子时，not only 部分的句子需要倒装，but also 部分不倒装。not only 句子部分是实义动词，only 后面需要加助动词 do。

例 3：

39. Such changes, combined with (A) the erosion of the area's (B) barrier islands, and the Bush administration's policy of opening up (C) more wetlands to development, weakened the natural frontline defense against a hurricane storm surge and leave (D) the city more vulnerable to death and destruction.（中国社会科学院 2011 年）

【名师点评】D。时态平行。leave 和 weakened 是并列谓语，时态应保持一致，故应将 and leave 改为 and left。

实战演练

1. Even as (A) he wrote copiously on so diverse topics as education (B), politics, and religion, Lewis Mumford remained (C) active in city and regional (D) planning.
2. Ducks have been (A) domesticated for many centuries (B) are raised (C) commercially for their (D) meat and eggs.
3. "We go through life surrounded by protective convoys of others," says Robert Kahn, a psychologist of the University of Michigan who studied the health effects of companionship. _____
4. The man practices what (A) he preaches (B) because he doesn't smoke, drink or does (C) anything to excess (D).
5. A bicycle is simple (A), and it brings (B) to you natural (C) things: fresh air, sunshine and exercises (D).
6. The main reason for the spreading (A) of the disease (B) isn't so much (C) a fall in living conditions like (D) a rise in it.
7. That (A) the giant panda belonged to the bear or (B) raccoon families was a matter of zoological (C) contention (D) for many years.
8. People realize that although (A) animals may not have the same intelligence like (B) human beings, they are smart (C) to learn certain things (D).
9. Dreams of being chased (A) simply suggest that you are avoiding (B) an issue or try (C) to run

away and hide from something that you don't want to confront (D).

10. Big animals (A), such as lions and tiger (B), can be photographed as they bound happily back to (C) their families (D) and dinner.
11. Just as it seemed sensible for (A) us to regard advertising without going to (B) either extreme, so it also seemed logical to (C) try and find as coldbloodedly as if (D) we could, what advertising in the Britain of the sixties really was.
12. In its place were advertising (A) men and advertising agencies — all working (B) in different ways and to different rules and all showed (C) quite startling differences (D) of competence, taste and effectiveness.
13. In nursery lore a verse, learnt (A) in early childhood, is not (B) usually passed on again when (C) the little listener has grown up, and has children of his own, or (D) even grandchildren.
14. Parents want their children to graduate with (A) skills that prepare them to either (B) get a job in today's marketplace and (C) advance to (D) higher levels of education and training.
15. Artists use caricature to distort the human face or comic effect (A), while at the same time capturing an identifiable (B) likeness and suggests (C) the essence of the personality or character beneath (D) the surface.
16. Professor Huntington, of the Foundation for the Study of Cycles, made extensive studies to (A) discover the seasons when people read (B) serious books, attend scientific meetings, make (C) the highest scores on examination, and to (D) propose the most changes to patents.
17. The historical process which culminated in the ascent of Thomas Jefferson to the presidency (A) can be regarded as the outstanding (B) example not only (C) of the birth of a new way of life but nationalism (D) as a new way of life.
18. Female characters who appear strong in plays generally achieve their appearance (A) of strength by (B) manipulating the kinds of discourse they use, and adapt (C) the stereotypes

of masculine and feminine behavior to serve (D) their own ends.

19. Advertising is one (A) of our major industries, and advertising exists not to satisfy desires also (B) to create them — and to (C) create them faster than (D) any man's budget can satisfy them.

20. Most singles either (A) devote an inordinate amount of time and (B) energy cultivating heterosexual (C) relationships, and (D) experience loneliness.

答案解析

1. B。平行结构。such…as 为对等结构。出现 as，往往要注意前面一半。
2. C。谓语重复 Ducks have…many centuries 是一个完整的句子，are raised 处如再出现谓语动词一定要有连词，因此要在 are raised 前面加上 and。
3. studied→has studied。时态平行。全句的主语是现在时，定语从句介绍 Robert 做过的研究项目，所以用现在完成时比较合适。
4. C。词性平行。smoke，drink 与 does 构成并列结构，故 does 应用动词原形 do。
5. D。名词单复数平行。fresh air，sunshine，exercises 构成并列，但 exercise 在这里指“锻炼”，为不可数名词。故 exercises 应改为 exercise。
6. D。平行结构。在英语中 not so much…as…表示的是一种特殊的比较结构，表示“与其说……不如说……”的意思。因此基于上下文逻辑关系 like 应该改为 as。
7. A。平行结构。That 放在这里说不通，而 whether…or 为固定词组。因此根据上下文逻辑关系 That 应该改为 Whether。
8. B。平行结构。这里是表示比较的用法。“动物不可能有人的智能”，句型应为 the same…as。因此 like 应改为 as。
9. C。平行结构。and，or，not only…but also…，both…and…等词语连接的成分必须在词性和词型等方面一致。根据该原则，try 应改为 trying。
10. B。并列结构。and 连词的名词应该用平行的单复数。根据此原则，tiger 应改为 tigers，与前面的 lions 并列。
11. D。平行结构。此句使用了 as +adj. + as 这一结构，we could 后省略了前面提到的动词 try 和 find，表示“尽可能冷静地处理”之意。as if 意为“好像，似乎”，用在此处不合适。因此，去掉 as。
12. C。并列结构。all working in different ways…and all showed quite startling differences…是两个并列的状语结构，因为主语和动词之间是主谓关系，故动词应为现在分词形式。故 showed 改为 showing。
13. C。平行结构。本句采用了 not…until…句型，意为“直到小听众长大了……他在幼儿园学的诗才会被传下去……”，如用 when，则与原文要表达的意思相反。故 when 改为 until。
14. C。平行结构。either 和 or 搭配构成一组并列连词。有一些并列连词有固定的搭配，如

both… and，not only… but also，neither…nor，not…but 等。因此，将 advance 前的 and 改成 or。在使用这样的连词时要注意前后呼应。

15. C。并列结构。while 引导的从句中，suggest 应与 capturing 并列，因此要采用-ing 形式。故将 suggests 改为 suggesting。
16. D。并列结构。此句中 and 连接两个动词，从句子结构上讲 and 应该连接两个相同成分，因此用不定式不合适，删掉“to”。
17. D。平行结构。not only…but also…连接的两个并列成分应该是对等的。not only 后是 of the birth of a new way of life，那么 but also 后就应该是 of nationalism as a new way of life。因此，在 nationalism 前加 of。
18. C。并列结构。此处应为动名词词组，与前 manipulating…并列放在 by 的后面。因此，adapt 应改为 adapting。
19. B。平行结构。根据句意，此处是 not…but…的搭配，意为“不是……而是……”；注意与 not only…but also…“不但……而且……”区分开来，此处连词混搭了。因此，also 改为 but。
20. B。平行结构。either…or…意为“二者择一的；要么……要么……”，是固定搭配。因此，改 and 为 or。

二、逻辑关系

考点分析

句子与句子之间的逻辑关系是句子的命脉，博士研究生入学英语考试中的改错题有复合句，做此种类型题时必须要把握整个句子的逻辑关系。逻辑关系错误主要是由肯定与否定、关联词或短语等误用所造成的，考生应多从这方面去查找错误。

（一）逻辑关系词误用

改错题对逻辑关系的考查主要集中在句子之间的关系上，如因果、转折、条件、让步等关系，具体体现在句子间使用的连接词上，其中以因果和转折连接词的误用最为常见。

（二）上下文语义矛盾

上下文语义矛盾是指文章前后所表达的意思不一致，甚至正好相反，即根据上下文的内容，应该是表达肯定或积极意义的地方，却误用了表达否定或消极意义的词；或是与此相反，应该是表达否定或消极意义，却误用了表达肯定或积极意义的词。

技巧点拨

（1）画线的句子或短文出现逻辑关系词时注意，是否用法正确。

（2）结合上下文仔细推敲，准确把握前后的逻辑关系。始终牢记文章中各个句子并不是孤立地堆砌在一起，而是相互联系的。

（3）熟悉表示各种逻辑关系的常用关系词及其用法。

典型真题

例 1：

If it were only necessary to decide whether to teach elementary science to everyone on a mess basis or to find the gifted few and take them as far as they can go，（1）mass our task would be fairly simple. The public school system，moreover，has no such（2）_____ choice，for the two jobs must be carried on at the same time.（山东大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】moreover→however。逻辑关系词误用。前文的 few 表示否定，而本句中的 must be 表示肯定，表明上下文的逻辑关系为转折，且用逗号与句子隔开，只能是 moreover 改为 however。

例 2：

The total quantity of water is not known，and it is about enough to cover the surface of the globe __7__ to a depth of about two and three-quarter kms. Most of it—97% is in the form of the salt waters of the oceans.（南开大学 2008 年）

【名师点评】and→although。短文中这里的前半句 not 表示否定，但后面 enough to cover…为肯定，因此前后是让步关系，而不是并列关系。故 and 改成 although。

例 3：

Governments are also pushing to make air cleaner — see the White House's move last week to further tighten soot standards.（70）It is perfect，but we've had much more success dealing with air pollution than climate change.（北京大学 2013 年）

【名师点评】（is）not（perfect）。这个句子中有 but，可知前后分句形成转折关系。but 后面分句表示肯定含义，因此，but 前面分句应表示否定含义。

例 4：

（71）As of now，it does not include groceries，though Mr. Nave did dismiss that possibility.（北京大学 2011 年）

【名师点评】（did）not（dismiss）。上下文语义矛盾。句子中间的 though 表示让步，后面应该表示否定的意味，所以 did 后应该加 not。句意：目前，它（沃尔玛的网站）不包含食品，虽然 Nave 先生没有忽略这种可能性。

例 5：

A S1 _____

good CV is your passport to an interview and，ultimate，to S2 ultimately

the job you want. Initial impressions are vital，and a badly presented CV

could mean acceptance，regardless of what's in it. S3 _____（重庆大学 2012 年）

【名师点评】acceptance→unacceptance。上下文语义矛盾。前文中的 CV 是 badly presented 的，说明这是不能被接受的，否定的意思。因此 acceptance 改为 unacceptance。

实战演练

1. When U. S. soldiers came home after World War II，for example，they dreamed of

buying houses and starting families. But there was a tremendous boom in home building. _____

2. Initial impressions are vital and a badly presented CV could mean acceptance, regardless of what's in it. _____

3. They spend (A) most of their adult lives in (B) salt water, despite (C) they return to their freshwater (D) birthplaces to spawn and die.

4. "Emotional" motives imply the selection (A) of goods according to impersonal (B) or subjective criteria — the desire for individuality (C), pride, fear, affection or (D) status.

5. This time (A) the teacher will not (B) mark our English exercises (C) for spelling and grammar, and (D) she will be looking for pleasing expression.

6. There was an accident (A) on this street this morning and for which (B) there has been a severe (C) congestion (D) of traffic.

7. The treasury (A) issued an order stating that moreover (B) land purchased from the government had to (C) be paid for in gold and silver (D).

8. Self-image can be indicated by (A) a tone of voice that is confident, pretentious, shy, aggressive, or exuberant, to name only a few personality traits. Yet (B) the sound may indicate the facade or mask of that person, for example (C), a shy person hiding behind an overconfident (D) front.

9. Most doctors in a recent survey (A) said that annual physical examinations were effective in (B) detecting illness in apparently healthy patients, even (C) there is little scientific evidence to (D) support the exams.

10. Two important (A) factors in teaching a dog to obey commands (B) are: using the same act, and moreover (C), teaching only one act at a time (D).

11. When the aerials are down, and (A) your spirit is covered with snows of cynicism and the ice of pessimism, then (B) you are growing old, even at 20, however (C) as long as your

aerials are up, to catch waves of optimism, there is hope (D) you may die young at 80.

12. Only humans and some primates enjoy color vision. The red flag is black to the bull. Horses live in a monochrome world. Light visible to human eyes, therefore (A), occupies only a very narrow band in the whole (B) electromagnetic spectrum. Ultraviolet rays are invisible to (C) humans though ants and honeybees are sensitive to (D) them.

13. Humans have no direct perception of (A) infrared rays like (B) the rattlesnake that (C) has receptors tuned into wavelengths longer than (D) 0. 7 micron.

14. *The Black Widow* is (A) found in all states or (B) is most common (C) in the south and (D) the west.

15. We knew that it was supposedly run in accordance with (A) certain rather vague and often complex rules and professional orders. Therefore (B) once we tried finding out exactly what (C) all this money went on, what these highly paid individuals did for it (and with it), and how (D) the rules and orders influenced them, a curious thing happened.

16. The ash from (A) a volcano spreads worldwide in a few days and remains (B) in the air for years. Its effect is to (C) turn incoming solar radiation into space and however (D) cool the earth.

17. Formal demography limits its object of study to the measurement of populations processes (A), when (B) the more broad field of social demography studies also analyze the relationships between (C) economic, social, cultural and (D) biological processes influencing a population.

18. In a referendum in 1995 voters overwhelmingly rejected dependence (A). Bermuda is Britain's oldest colony and it earns (B) much of its income (C) through banking and other financial services (D).

19. Today the main economic activities of the family are (A) in the nature of consumption (B)—how (C) productive may be what (D) some of its members do in society.

20. Why has inflation proved so mild? The most thrilling explanation is, fortunately (A), a little

defective. Some economists argue that powerful structural changes in the world have upended (B) the old (C) economic models that were based upon the historical (D) link between growth and inflation.

答案解析

1. But→So。逻辑关系词误用。前一句是说二战后返家的士兵都梦想购买房屋、建立家庭，后一句是说出现了建造房屋的热潮，显然前后应该是因果关系，而不是转折关系，故应将 But 改为 So。
2. 上下文语义矛盾。前面提到 initial impressions（第一印象）非常重要，那么 badly presented（外表很差的）简历不管内容如何，肯定是会被拒绝，而不会被接受，原文中 acceptance 导致了上下文语义矛盾，应将其改为 rejection。
3. C。despite 是介词，后面一般接名词做宾语，而在句中它后面却跟着一个完整的句子，所以改为连词 though。
4. B。本句对“感性动机”进行说明，显然其判断标准也一定不是客观的，应该是主观的 subjective，而与 subjective 相近的词应该是 personal（个人的），不是 impersonal（不受个人感情影响的）。
5. D。根据行文逻辑，前文not 为否定，后面表达的意思与此相反，因此表示并列关系的 and 应改为表示转折关系的 but。
6. B。句中有 and 连接，不能使用从句。根据句中的现在完成时态可知，此处应该改为 since，表示“自从那时”。
7. B。moreover 意为“而且”，不符合题意要求。根据句意：……从即日起，向政府购买土地须用金银支付。因此，moreover 应改为 henceforth。
8. B。此句的内容表明与上文之间为递进关系，而非转折关系。因此，将 Yet 改成 Besides，Also，Moreover 或 Furthermore 等。
9. C。even 一词可以做副词、形容词和动词，但是不能作为连接词，因此两个分句之间不能用 even 连接。其次由于两个分句之间是转折关系，even though 又是常用的转折连词词组，因此，在 even 后面添加 though 将语法结构补充完整。
10. C。前面谈到两个方面，and 和 moreover 只能用其中的一个，否则语义重复。把 and 或 moreover 去掉。
11. C。however 作“然而，可是”讲时，较 but 意味稍弱，且后应跟有逗号，使其与句子的其他部分隔开。因此，将 however 改为 but。
12. A。此前说到哺乳动物中只有人有色彩识别能力，其他哺乳动物都生活在单色的世界中，此句紧接着说人类也不能识别色谱中的所有颜色。可见两者之间是转折关系，说明纵然人们能识别颜色，但也是有限的。因此，therefore 应改为 however。
13. B。根据上下文，此处意为人类不能识别红外线，这点和响尾蛇不同，它们有自己特殊的感应器，可以识别长于 0.7 微米的光波。因此，like 应改为 unlike。
14. B。根据上下文，应选用表示递进关系的 and。因此，or 应改成 and。
15. B。前面指出广告业经营需要遵循一定的规则，这些规定有些模糊，很复杂，但很专业。接着本句提出“出现了怪现象”，两者之间无因果关系，而为转折关系。因此，

Therefore 应改为 But。

16. D。根据上下文的逻辑关系，此处表达的是因果关系，而非转折关系。因此，however 应改为 thus。
17. B。前后两个分句之间是对比的关系，所以应该用表示对比的从属连词 while。因此，when 改成 while。
18. A。referendum 意为“公民投票权”；overwhelmingly 意为“压倒一切地”；reject 意为“反对”。依据上下文的逻辑关系，不难发现 dependence 应改为 independence。
19. C。将 how 改成 however。however + *adj. /adv.* 中的 however 相当于 no matter how，表示让步意义。
20. A。原句是说“通货膨胀率如何温和的原因是负面的”，既然提到了 defective，就说明这个现象是负面的，fortunately 不符合逻辑，应该改为 unfortunately。



一周总测

Section 1

1. Quails typically (A) have short rounded wings that (B) enable they (C) to spring into full flight instantly (D) when disturbed in their hiding places.
2. For years, elephants (A) were hunted for (B) food and ivory, and as a result theirs (C) numbers have been greatly reduced (D).
3. The vanilla (A) vine sends (B) out tiny rootlets (C) by which the vine attaches oneself (D) to trees.
4. Because the papaya grows (A) readily from seed (B), its (C) spreads from its home (D) in Central America and now grows throughout the tropics.
5. There are (A) moments in life when you miss someone so much (B) you just want to (C) pick them from your dreams and hug (D) them for real.
6. When you are (A) born, you were (B) crying and everyone (C) around you was (D) smiling.
7. Spanning more than (A) three century (B), this movement grew from a trickle of a few (C) hundred English colonists to a floodtide of newcomers numbered (D) in the millions.
8. This will cause (A) unnecessary stress. Because (B), if you have this bad habit, it's (C) best to get rid of it and do things as soon as possible (D).
9. Some Chinese seems (A) to fear that it is impolite to (B) ask questions, even (C) when they don't quite understand (D).

10. Consider (A) your experience in the field, you are (B) qualified as our agent. We decide to (C) intrust you with the sole agency (D) for computers.

11. About half of the infant and maternal deaths in developing (A) countries could be avoided if women used family planning methods to prevent high risk pregnancies, (B) according to a report (C) publishing (D) recently by the Johns Hopking University.

12. The report indicates that 5.6 million infant deaths (A) and 2,000,000 maternal deaths could be prevented this year if women chose to have theirs (B) children within the (C) safest years with adequate intervals between births and limited their families (D) to moderate size.

13. However, a second (A) person thought (B) that this was (C) more a question of civilized behavior as (D) good manners.

14. The Native Americans already (A) had developed an interested (B) cuisine using the abundant (C) foods that were so prevalent (D).

15. As soon as the cinema is in darkness (A), spotlights are focused on (B) the curtains which are drawn slowly apart, often to the accompany (C) of music, to reveal (D) the title of the film.

16. Nothing can be equal to (A) the awe and sense of hushed expectation (B) which is felt by a theater (C) audience as the curtain is slowly risen (D).

17. When I try to (A) understand what it does (B) that prevents so many (C) Americans from being as happy as one might expect, it seems to me (D) that there are two reasons.

18. That is one reason (A) why one-third of the 200,000 pupils (B) tested for the President's Council on Physical Fitness failed (C) a simple test of strength, stamina, and flexible (D).

19. Nearly half of those (A) who had received the list including (B) instant coffee was (C) described a housewife who was lazy (D) and a poor planner.

20. The books can be read as (A) classic literature, to appreciate each (B) book is (C) saying, and why and how (D) it is saying so.

21. The assumption underlying this distinction is that subjective (A) or emotional criteria do not maximize satisfaction; therefore (B), it is reasonable to assume that consumers always attempt (C) to select alternatives that, in their view, serve (D) to maximize satisfaction.

22. Everything has been carefully (A) contrived so that the spectator will never actually see the naked screen which will remind to (B) him all too (C) sharply that what he is about to (D) see is merely shadows flickering on a white board.

23. They wiped their mouths on (A) the tablecloth, if there happened to (B) be one, and they ate before (C) you would expect them to (D) burst.

24. European traveler (A) to this country in those (B) days were most often shocked (C) by American eating habits, which included too much salt and too much (D) liquor.

25. The two are really different (A), and people who have (B) the faculty for one very seldom (C) have a faculty for the others (D).

26. This dream, dramatized (A) in the history of nineteenth century (B) European settlers of American West, was to find a piece of place (C), build a house for one's family, and start a farm (D).

27. Large numbers of dead or dying (A) birds mean that more people will be exposing (B) to the virus (C), which will change into a virus (D) with new characteristics.

28. Wealthy countries will have to (A) provide hundreds of millions of dollars for the testing (B) and production of medicines unnecessary (C) for treating patients suffering from bird flu (D).

29. We live in a society which (A) there is a lot of talk about science, but (B) I would say that

there are not 5 percent of the people who (C) are equipped with school, including (D)
college, to understand scientific reasoning.

30. Whether the reality of life in the family house is sweet or no (A) sweet, the cherished (B)
ideal of home has (C) great importance for many (D) people.

Section 2

PROOFREADING & ERROR CORRECTION

The passages contain TEN errors, respectively. Each indicated line contains a maximum of ONE error. In each case, only ONE word is involved. You should proofread the passage and correct it in the following way:

For a wrong word, underline the wrong word and write the correct one in the blank provided at the end of the line.

For a missing word, mark the position of the missing word with a "∧" sign and write the word you believe to be missing in the blank provided at the end of the line.

For an unnecessary word, cross the unnecessary word with a slash "/" and put the word in the blank provided at the end of the line.

Passage 1

Identical twins possess exactly the same set of genes.
Yet as they grow older, they may begin to display subtle differences.
They may start to look different,
develop different diseases or slide into different persons. 1. _____
Women who are identical twins may differ with their fertility or 2. _____
the age at which they reach menopause. These discrepancies
usually attributed to ill-defined differences in environment. 3. _____
But a whole new level of explanation has been opened up by a generic survey
4. _____
showing that identical twins, because they grow older, differ increasingly in
5. _____
what is known as their epigenome. The term refers to natural
chemical modifications that occur in a person's genome shortly before 6. _____
conception and that act on a gene as a gas pedal or a brake, marking it for higher
7. _____
or lower activity.
Identical twins have the same set of epigenetic mark on the genome 8. _____
when they are born. But differences in the epigenome disappear 9. _____
as the twins grow older and become greater the longer they live together,
10. _____
say a team of researchers led by Dr. Manel Esteller of the

Spanish National Cancer Center in Madrid.

Passage 2

It is difficult to think of a nation as an abstract collection of
people living on a patch of territory. It is easier
to think of as a person. This is why we sometimes call Great Britain 1 _____
"Britannia" and the United States "Columbia", and think
of it as stately women. We also use masculine symbols in our 2 _____
personification of nations. In 1712 John Arbuthont,
a Scot, wrote a political satire in that the characters were supposed 3 _____
to be typical members of different nationalities.
The Englishman was John Bull. This name, which was sufficient flattering to be
4 _____
adopted generally, combined the most common
English first name with a last name indicated strength. John Bull is usually 5 _____
pictured as a partly businessman with a Union Jack on his hatband.
After the American War of Independence began in 1783, the United 6 _____
States was known for "Brother Jonathan". Jonathan was a biblical 7 _____
name associated with simple people from rural areas,
and it seemed fitting since the United States is rural and unsophisticated, and since
8 _____
Americans considered their type of simplicity a virtue compared to 9 _____
the wickedness of European cities. It is possible, however,
that the name was originated with President George Washington, who would
10 _____
often say, when faced with a hard problem, "Let us consult Brother Jonathan",
referring to his secretary, Jonathan Trumbull.

Passage 3

For many of us, pets have come to occupy critical roles
in our lives. The loneliness and isolation in some lifestyles
can be softened with a pet as a companion, because they are
so faithful and loving.
People living alone say that, although before they dreaded 1 _____
returning home after work to a lonely house or apartment,
with a dog, it's now a welcome respite. Always faithful,
the dog is awaiting by the door, ready to give that welcome 2 _____
lick and a greeting with a wagged tail at the end of the 3 _____
day. And in a world of complex human relationships
resulting in divorce, the blending of families, and pressures to the 4 _____
working family, the demanding simplicity of the love offered 5 _____
or required by a pet can be a welcome contrast. According to

Veterinarian Carol Osborne, she runs Vet Smart Care Clinics, Inc. in Cleveland, Ohio, the "pet craze" that's going on with these days is a reaction in our stressful lives. "The world is going so fast, and everything's changing," she says. "But when you come home, no matter what problems you have or what you look like, no matter you got the job or lost the job, one constant in our lives that aren't changing is that simple conditional love that is given to us by our pets," she points out. Pet owners agree that animals do so many things for us and ask for nothing in turn but love.

6 _____
7 _____
8 _____
9 _____
10 _____

Passage 4

A rapid means of long-distance transportation became a necessity for the United States as settlement spread farther westward. For a long time the railroad companies met with troubled mechanical problems. The most serious were the construction of rails able to bear the load, and the development of the safe, effective stopping system. Once these were solved,

1 _____
2 _____

and the railroad was established as the best means of land transportation.

3 _____

By 1860 they had built thousands of miles of railroads crossing the eastern mountain ranges and reaching westward in the Mississippi.

The high point in the railroad building came by the construction of the first transcontinental railroad. In 1862 Congress bad authorized two

4 _____
5 _____

railroad companies to build lines from Nebraska westward and from California eastward to a meeting point so as to complete a transcontinental system. The Central Pacific Company, starting from California, used Chinese labor, the Union Pacific employed crews of Irish laborers. The two groups worked at remarkable speed, each tried to cover a greater distance than the other. In 1869, they met at a place called Promontory. Many visitors came there for the great occasion. There were joyous celebrations all over the country, with parades and the ringing of church bells honor the great achievement.

6 _____
7 _____
8 _____

The railroad was very important in discouraging westward movement.

9 _____

It also helped build up industry and farming by moving raw materials and by distributing products rapid to distant markets.

10 _____

Passage 5

The word conservation has a thrifty meaning. To conserve is to save and protect, to leave what we ourselves enjoy in such good condition as others

1 _____

may also share the enjoyment. Our forefathers had no idea that human population would increase faster than the supplies of crude materials. Most of them, even 2 _____ until very recently, have the foolish idea that the treasures were "limitless" and "inexhaustible". Most of the citizens of early generations knew little or 3 _____ nothing about the complicated and the delicate system that runs all through the nature, which means that, as in a life body, an unhealthy condition of one part 4 _____ will sooner or later be harmful to all others. 5 _____
Fifty years ago nature study was not part of the school work. Scientific 6 _____ forestry was a new idea; timber was still cheap at that time because it could be brought in any quantity from distant woodlands; soil destruction and river floods were not national problems; nobody had already studied long-term climate cycles 7 _____ in relation with proper land use; even the word conservation had nothing of the 8 _____ meaning that it has for us today.
For the sake of ourselves and those who come after us, we must now set about 9 _____ repairing the mistakes of our forefathers. Conservation should, however, be made 10 _____ a part of everyone's daily life. To know about the water table in the ground is just as important to us as a knowledge of the basic arithmetic formulas.

Passage 6

Ancient man attempted to change the weather by using magic.
While experience taught him this was impossible, 1 _____
he tried to forecast weather conditions. Even earlier in 2 _____
1000 B. C. there were weather seers in Babylon — and priests clever enough to denounce as frauds those predicted 3 _____
the weather a year in the advance. Some forecasters used 4 _____
methods that seemed to take no connection with the actual 5 _____
factors controlled the weather. Chickens and other animals 6 _____
were sacrificed and their intestines poked to find signs indicating rain and drought. Somewhat more scientific were 7 _____
predictions based on vegetation: "Onion's skin very thin, mild weather coming in. Onion's skin thick and tough, coming weather is cold and rough." Insects and animals were also 8 _____
favorite weather clues: "Before the glowworm lights his 9 _____
lamp, then the air is always damp." "If spiders their cobwebs forsake, the weather will for certain break." "If frogs remained in pools,

the weather will be fine. If they were seen on rocks, 10 _____
rain and cold were due." It's difficult to say whether this rhyme
should be taken seriously: "Hark, I hear the asses bray.
Me thinks we'll have some rain today."

答案

Section 1

1. C	2. C	3. D	4. C	5. B	6. A	7. B
8. B	9. A	10. A	11. D	12. B	13. D	14. B
15. C	16. D	17. B	18. D	19. C	20. B	21. B
22. B	23. C	24. A	25. D	26. C	27. B	28. C
29. A	30. A					

Section 2

Passage 1

1. persons→personalities/characters
2. with→in
3. ∧usually attributed to→are
4. generic→genetic
5. because→as
6. before→after
7. as→like
8. mark→marks
9. disappear→appear/emerge
10. together→apart

Passage 2

1. ∧as→it
2. it→both
3. that→which
4. sufficient→sufficiently
5. indicated→indicating
6. began→ended
7. for→as
8. is→was
9. to→with
10. was→去掉 was

Passage 3

1. although→while
2. awaiting→waiting
3. wagged→wagging
4. to→on
5. demanding→undemanding
6. with→去掉 with
7. in→to
8. aren't→isn't
9. conditional→unconditional
10. turn→return

Passage 4

1. troubled→troublesome
2. the→a
3. and→去掉 and
4. by→with
5. bad→had
6. ∧the Union→while
7. tried→trying
8. ∧honor→to
9. discouraging→encouraging
10. rapid→rapidly

Passage 5

1. as→that
2. crude→raw
3. early→earlier
4. life→living
5. all∧others→the
6. not→no
7. already→yet
8. with→to
9. ∧come→will
10. however→therefore

Passage 6

1. While→When 或 After
2. in→than
3. ∧predicted→who
4. the advance→advance
5. take→have
6. controlled→controlling 或在 controlled 前加 that/which
7. and→or
8. is cold→cold
9. Before→When/If
10. will→would

附　录

模拟测试题（一）

Part I　LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 10 short conversations. At the end of each conversation, a question will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer. Then mark the corresponding letter on the answer Sheet with a single line through the center.*

1. A. 150 pounds.　　B. 140 pounds.　　C. 145 pounds.　　D. 135 pounds.
2. A. He doesn't want to stay at home.　　B. The movie is excellent.
   C. He wants to see the movie again.　　D. The movie is not good.
3. A. The train is faster than the bus.　　B. There are two buses every day.
   C. The bus is cheaper than the train.　　D. The train is cheaper than the bus.
4. A. He prefers staying at home because he doesn't like to travel.
   B. He prefers taking a bus because the plane makes him nervous.
   C. He prefers taking a plane because the bus is too slow.
   D. He prefers traveling with the woman.
5. A. Surfing the net.　　B. Watching a talk show.
   C. Packing a birthday gift.　　D. Shopping at a jewelry store.
6. A. He enjoys finding fault with exams.
   B. He is sure of his success in the exam.
   C. He doesn't know if he can do well in the exam.
   D. He used to get straight A's in the exams he took.
7. A. The man is generous with his good comments on people.
   B. The woman is unsure if there will be peace in the world.
   C. The woman is doubtful about newspaper stories.
   D. The man is quite optimistic about human nature.
8. A. Study for some profession.　　B. Attend a medical school.

C. Stay in business. D. Sell his shop.

9. A. She doesn't like the way the professor lectures.
   B. She's having a hard time following the professor's lectures.
   C. She is not interested in the course.
   D. She's having difficulty with the heavy reading assignments.
10. A. He never keeps his promises. B. He has changed his mind.
    C. He is crazy about parties. D. He is not sociable.

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

11. A. To guarantee that he has sense of responsibility.
    B. To examine whether he has enough money.
    C. To get to know his history of raising animals.
    D. To fill out the form about his family background.
12. A. He prefers dogs to cats. B. He had a cat when he was young.
    C. He is now over 21 years old. D. He owns a dog as his best friend.
13. A. At an animal control agency. B. At an animal shelter.
    C. At a pet store. D. At a police station.

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 16 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

14. A. The man wants to get authorization for a room change.
    B. The man is worried about his friendship with his roommate.
    C. The man needs a scholarship to continue living in the dormitory.
    D. The man wants the head resident to talk to David for him.
15. A. That David is not a serious student.
    B. That David doesn't need to worry because he has a scholarship.
    C. That David won't speak with him.
    D. That David wants to move back to his hometown.
16. A. His roommate is noisy.
    B. He isn't speaking to his roommate.
    C. He does not like his roommate.
    D. He doesn't know his roommate very well.

Conversation 3

Questions 17 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

17. A. Its variety of colors. B. Its unusual texture.
    C. The way it is sold. D. Its main ingredient.

18. A. To preserve it longer.
B. To give it a particular taste.
C. To make it smoother.
D. To increase the nutrition.

19. A. Its bland flavoring is healthy.
B. It can be stored a long time without spoiling.
C. It goes well with fish dishes.
D. A high grade of fish is used in its preparations.

20. A. In a few weeks.
B. In two or three months.
C. In about two years.
D. In ten years.

Section 3

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 3 short passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choice marked A, B, C and D.*

Passage 1

21. The body language is closely related to _____.
A. words and phrases
B. culture
C. individuals
D. misunderstanding

22. The NVC is important for managers because they have to _____.
A. understand what their staff are feeling by understanding their body language
B. learn more the cultural background of their staff through their body language
C. create good working conditions by using proper body language
D. spend a lot of time in studying body language

23. Why is closeness in distance disliked in some cultures?
A. It stands for hostility.
B. It is not normal.
C. It is an invasion of space.
D. It means intimacy between two people.

Passage 2

24. According to the speaker, what were the beliefs of the Greek philosophers based upon?
A. How the natural world was described in Greek mythology.
B. What they observed directly.
C. The writings of philosophers from other societies.
D. Measurements made with scientific instruments.

25. What does the speaker say about the ancient Greeks who traveled south?
A. They noticed an apparent change in the position of the North Star.
B. They observed eclipses at different times of the year.
C. They were the first to estimate the distance between heavenly bodies.
D. They wanted to prove that the Earth was flat.

26. What does the speaker say the term stadium refers to?
A. A place for making astronomical observations.

B. An instrument used for observing stars.
C. A unit of measurement.
D. The North Star.

Passage 3

27. A. How they behave toward ants from other nests.
B. What they usually eat.
C. Why they are becoming extinct.
D. Why they were brought to California.

28. A. They protect Argentine ants that live in neighboring nests.
B. They gather food with Argentine ants from other nests.
C. They fight Argentine ants from other nests.
D. They generally build larger nests than other ant species do.

29. A. They attack members of their own nests.
B. They recruit ants from other species into their nests.
C. They form large colonies made of several nests.
D. They hide from insects that attack their nests.

30. A. They share the same few ancestors.
B. They can't be distinguished from native Californian ants.
C. They are evolving faster than native Californian ants.
D. Their future survival is in doubt.

Section 4

Directions: *In this section, you will hear one passage three times. When the passage is read for the first time, you should listen carefully for its general idea. When the passage is read for the second time, you are required to fill in the blanks numbered from 31 to 40 with the exact words you have just heard or the main points in your own words. Finally, when the passage is read for the third time, you should check what you have written.*

In police work, you can never predict the next crime or problem. No working day is identical to any other, so there is no "(31) _____" day for a police officer. Some days are (32) _____ slow, and the job is (33) _____; other days are so busy that there is no time to eat. I think I can (34) _____ police work in one word: (35) _____. Sometimes it's dangerous. One day, for example, I was working undercover; that is, I was on the job, but I was wearing (36) _____ clothes, not my police (37) _____. I was trying to catch some robbers who were stealing money from people as they walked down the street. Suddenly, seven bad men jumped out at me; one of them had a knife and we (38) _____. Another policeman arrived, and together, we arrested three of the men; but the other four ran away. Another day, I helped a woman who was going to have a baby. She was trying to get to the hospital, but there was a (39) _____. I put her in my police car to get her there faster. I thought she was going to have the baby right there in my car. But fortunately, the baby waited to "arrive" until we got (40) _____.

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

There are ten sentences in this section. Beneath each sentence there are four words or phrases marked A, B, C and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Mark your answers on your answer sheet.

41. Her audience did not find these works easy to understand though today we found them more _____.
A. fanciful B. comprehensive C. comprehensible D. fantastic

42. Sheila was going to say something about the matter; but _____ she gave it up.
A. on the second thoughts B. on the second thought
C. on second thoughts D. on second thought

43. AIDS is said _____ the number one killer of both men and women over the past few years in that region.
A. being B. to be C. to have been D. having been

44. Although customers keep complaining about their poor service, they've made no _____ to make any improvement.
A. action B. trial C. attempt D. progress

45. At a press conference after the Oscar Award ceremony, the 18-year-old girl spoke in a barely _____ voice.
A. identical B. legible C. optional D. audible

46. Undergraduate students have no _____ to the rare books in the school library.
A. path B. entrance C. way D. access

47. Representatives from the companies indicated that they should go on working together in _____.
A. unity B. entity C. partners D. partnership

48. It is due to the invention of the computer that man has been able to work so many wonders in the past few years. A case _____is the successful launching of space shuttle.
A. in point B. in question C. in a way D. in brief

49. Very few people could understand the lecture the professor delivered because its subject was very _____.
A. intriguing B. indefinite C. obscure D. dubious

50. Although I liked the appearance of the house, what really made me decide to buy it was the beautiful _____through the window.
A. vision B. look C. picture D. view

Part III CLOZE

Directions: *Decide which of the choices given below would best complete the passage if inserted in the corresponding blanks. Mark the best choice for each blank on your answer sheet.*

The homeless make up a growing percentage of America's population. __51__ , homelessness has reached such proportions that local governments can't possibly __52__. To help homeless people __53__ independence, the federal government must support job training programs, __54__ the mini mum wage, and fund more lowcost

housing. __55__ everyone agrees on the number of Americans who are homeless. Estimates __56__ anywhere from 600, 000 to 6 million. __57__ the figure may vary, analysts do agree on another matter: that the number of the homeless is __58__ .

One of the federal government's studies __59__ that the number of the homeless will reach nearly 19 million by the end of this decade. Finding ways to __60__ this growing homeless population has become increasingly difficult. __61__ when homeless Individuals manage to find a __62__ that will give them three meals a day and a place to sleep at night, a good number still spend the bulk of each day __63__ the street.

Part of the problem is that many homeless adults are addicted to alcohol or drugs. And a significant number of the homeless have serious mental disorders. Many others __64__ not addicted or mentally ill, simply lack the everyday __65__ skills needed to turn their lives __66__. *Boston Globe* reporter Chris Reidy notes that the situation will improve only when there are __67__ programs that address the many needs of the homeless. __68__ Edward Zlotkowski, director of community service at Bentley College in Massachusetts, __69__ it, "There has to be __70__ of programs. What's needed is a package deal."

51. A. Indeed	B. Likewise	C. Therefore	D. Furthermore
52. A. stand	B. cope	C. approve	D. retain
53. A. in	B. for	C. with	D. toward
54. A. raise	B. add	C. take	D. keep
55. A. Generally	B. Almost	C. Hardly	D. Not
56. A. cover	B. change	C. range	D. differ
57. A. Now that	B. Although	C. Provided	D. Except that
58. A. inflating	B. expanding	C. increasing	D. extending
59. A. predicts	B. displays	C. proves	D. discovers
60. A. assist	B. track	C. sustain	D. dismiss
61. A. Hence	B. But	C. Even	D. Only
62. A. lodging	B. shelter	C. dwelling	D. house
63. A. searching	B. strolling	C. crowding	D. wandering
64. A. when	B. once	C. while	D. whereas
65. A. life	B. existence	C. survival	D. maintenance
66. A. around	B. over	C. on	D. up
67. A. complex	B. comprehensive	C. complementary	D. compensating
68. A. So	B. Since	C. As	D. Thus
69. A. puts	B. interprets	C. assumes	D. makes
70. A. supervision	B. manipulation	C. regulation	D. coordination

Part IV The Use of English

Directions: *This part consists of a short passage. In this passage there are altogether 10 mistakes, one in each numbered line. You may have to change a word, add a word or delete a word. Mark out the mistakes and put the corrections in the blanks provided.*

The English Corner in Zhongshan Park are where people 71. _____

go to practise their speaking English. Every Sunday afternoon 72. _____
they gather around, talk to each other in English. Among 73. _____
they are students, teachers, doctors, and so on. I first went to an 74. _____
English Corner when I was in Junior Grade Two. I went there on 75. _____
every Sunday and chat with some people in English. In the 76. _____
past three years I had never been absent. I'm sure I've made 77. _____
some progresses in my listening and speaking. And I have 78. _____
made many friends there. The English Corner is really good 79. _____
place. I hope that more friends will join in us. 80. _____

模拟测试题（一）解析

Part I　Listening Comprehension

Section 1

1. C。女士说，她一开始重 150 磅，后来减肥瘦了 10 磅，现在又反弹了 5 磅，由此可知，目前的重量为 145 磅。故答案为 C。
2. D。男士说这部电影浪费了时间和金钱。由此可推知，男士认为这场电影不好看。故答案为 D。
3. C。女士问去伦敦最便宜的交通方式。男士回答说，乘汽车只需要 20 镑，而坐火车要花费两倍的价钱，即 40 镑，由此可知，乘汽车要便宜些。故答案为 C。
4. C。女士说，“要是我是你，我就乘汽车而不是坐飞机，坐飞机让我紧张。”男士回答说“乘汽车会花掉我所有的时间”，言外之意是乘汽车很慢、很费时。故答案为 C。
5. A。关键词 net，site 提示对话的语境是网络，男士说他在浏览一个新的珠宝网站。故答案为 A。
6. B。女士说从来没有觉得男士对考试如此自信过。男士回答说不仅仅是自信，如果得不到 A，那就是考试本身出问题了。由此可知，男士对考试非常自信。故答案为 B。
7. D。男士指出报纸不报道和平和慷慨的事件，因为那些都不是新闻，言外之意，和平和慷慨的事件是经常发生的，由此可知，男士对人性持乐观态度。故答案为 D。
8. C。男士提及汤姆说要卖掉店铺去上医学院只是一个玩笑。女士也认为是开玩笑。由此可知，汤姆会继续他的生意。故答案为 C。
9. D。女士提及她的困难时说到书单让她很难过，她感觉没法读完书单上的书。故答案为 D。
10. B。女士说到罗伯特想和他们一起去晚会，男士说上午他还说要自己去，由此可知，罗伯特又改变主意了。故答案为 B。

Section 2

Conversation 1

11. A。女士在解释为何要介绍人的时候说，是为了确定男士是否富有责任心并能够好好照顾动物们。故答案为 A。
12. B。男士提及他八岁的时候曾养过一只猫，选项 B 与此信息一致。故答案为 B。
13. B。在对话的末尾，男士问如果动物的主人不来认领，他是否就可以领养它。由此可知，对话发生的地点在动物收容所。故答案为 B。

Conversation 2

14. A。对话开始男士问宿舍管理员能否调换宿舍，由此可知，两人在讨论是否能够换房间的问题。故答案为 A。
15. A。男士提及戴维总是玩，总是带很多人到宿舍里，影响他的学习。由此可知，男士担心他的学习是因为他的室友戴维是个不认真学习的学生。故答案为 A。
16. A。由男士的抱怨可知，他的室友戴维不认真学习，总是带很多人去宿舍，立体声也

时常开着，由此可知，男士的困扰在于他的室友很吵。故答案为 A。

Conversation 3

17. D。对话主要讨论一种新型的休闲食品。男士对于这种新型食品很好奇，在女士提及该食品是如何做成的时，男士很惊讶（it sounds awful）。故答案为 D。
18. B。对话中提及在面团中加入调味剂是为了让食品有多种味道。故答案为 B。
19. B。对话中提及这种食品低热量、高蛋白，而且保质期长，不容易变质，选项中符合原文意思的只有选项 B，故答案为 B。
20. C。对话中提及新产品上市还需要几年的时间，选项 C 中大约两年的时间与原文一致。故答案为 C。

Section 3

Passage 1

21. B。原文中提及肢体语言（non-verbal communication）与文化密切相关（much tied to culture）。故答案为 B。
22. A。原文中提及肢体语言对于经理的重要性在于经理可以通过员工的肢体语言了解他们的想法，从而创造更好的工作环境。故答案为 A。
23. C。原文最后提及在美国，人们不喜欢站得很近，因为美国人认为这是一种空间的侵犯（invasion of their space）。故答案为 C。

Passage 2

24. B。原文中提及古希腊哲学家对于宇宙天体的论证是建立在直接观察之上的。故答案为 B。
25. A。原文中提及古希腊人在向南行走时注意到北极星似乎离地球越来越近，而越靠近北部地区，北极星似乎离地球又越来越远。由此可知，古希腊人注意到的是北极星位置的变化。故答案为 A。
26. C。原文中提及古希腊人第一次计算出了地球的周长，在古代文献中记载的数据是 400 000 视距（stadia），并指出 stadia 是 stadium 的复数形式，随后又解释 1 视距大约等于 200 米，由此可知，stadium 是与 meter 一样的计量单位。故答案为 C。

Passage 3

27. A。文章主要论述了阿根廷的蚂蚁在迁徙到加利福尼亚州之后，发生了一些变化，主要讨论蚂蚁是如何对待外来蚁群的。故答案为 A。
28. C。原文中提及阿根廷的蚂蚁在外来蚁群到来时，会与之争斗。故答案为 C。
29. C。原文中提及迁徙到加利福尼亚州的蚂蚁会与外来蚂蚁形成一个大的蚁群，而不是互相争斗。故答案为 C。
30. A。原文中提及加利福尼亚州的蚂蚁之所以对待外来蚁群与在阿根廷的蚂蚁不一样是因为它们都拥有相同的祖先，故答案为 A。

Section 4

31. typical。注意单词的拼写。
32. relatively。注意单词的拼写，普遍的错误是将字母-a 拼成-e。
33. boring。根据系表结构可知，空格处应为形容词。

34. describe。注意单词的拼写。
35. Variety。注意单词的拼写，首字母要大写。
36. normal。注意单词的拼写。
37. uniform。与前文单词 normal clothes 相呼应，空格处单词与 police 连用，表示“制服”的意思。根据上下文就可以猜测出空格处单词，在听力中再次确定。
38. got into fight。注意时态。所填内容相对简短，记录时注意拼写速度就可完整记录信息。
39. bad traffic jam。注意 traffic 的拼写，双写-f。
40. to the hospital。动词不定式-to 不可省略。

Part II Grammar and Vocabulary

41. C。形容词词义辨析。though 表示前后两个半句的意思是相反的，由前半句中的 not easy to understand 可知空格处单词应表示“易懂的”的意思，选项中只有 C 的 comprehensible 表示“可理解的”的意思，符合语境。故答案为 C。
42. C。固定搭配。根据句中的 but 可知后半句空格处表示“再次考虑”的意思。C 选项表示“经再次考虑”的意思。其他选项均为错误表达。故答案为 C。
43. C。语法知识。根据句中的时间状语 over the past few years，表示从过去到现在一直持续的动作，应使用完成时态。be said to 表示“据说”的意思。故答案为 C。
44. C。惯用搭配。make an attempt to do sth 意为“试图或努力做某事”，符合题意。action 不与 make 连用，而与 take 连用，take action 意为“采取行动”。trial 意为“试用；试验；审讯”。progress 可与 make 连用，但 make progress“取得进步”后不接不定式。故答案为 C。
45. D。形容词词义辨析。barely 表示“几乎不”的意思，表否定意义，根据上下文可以判断 18 岁女孩说话的声音几乎听不见，audible“可听见的”，符合本题题意。故答案为 D。
46. D。名词词义辨析。access 表示“获得或使用的机会；进入或接近的机会或权利”，后一般与介词 to 搭配，表示抽象意义。entrance 表示“进入某个地方、建筑等的入口”，后也与 to 搭配，但表示具体意义。句意应表示“本科生不可以使用校图书馆里的珍藏书籍”，句中表达的是抽象意义。故答案为 D。
47. A。固定搭配。in unity 意为“统一，团结”，从句中的 go on working together 可以看出这里是指大家联合起来的意思，故 A 为答案。
48. A。介词词组辨析。in point“恰当的；切题的，与题目有关的”，a case in point 表示“恰当的例证”；in question“正被谈论的，被考虑的”；in a way“从某种意义上来说”；in brief“简言之”均不符合语境。故答案为 A。
49. C。形容词词义辨析。由句中前半句“几乎没有人能够听懂教授所做的演讲”可知空格处单词应表示“晦涩的，难懂的”，C 选项 obscure“晦涩的，不清楚的”符合语境。故答案为 C。
50. D。近义词辨析。view 表示“景色”，特指“从远处和高处看到的景色”，符合句中提及的从窗户看出去的景色的语境。故答案为 D。

Part III Cloze

51. A。逻辑衔接。根据前一句 make up a growing percentage 与后一句 reached such

proportions that 确定后者是对前者的例证强调。A 选项 Indeed 表示强调。故答案为 A。

52. B。语义衔接。空格处应为动词，在定语从句中充当谓语。stand“忍受”作为及物动词在句子中要直接接宾语，但是句子中没有宾语，因此该词不符合句子结构；cope“（成功地）对付，应对”，做不及物动词，可以在句子中表达完整的含义；approve“赞成，批准”；retain“保留”与句意不符。故答案为 B。

53. D。介词搭配。空格处单词应为介词，与动词 help 搭配使用。原文意为：帮助无家可归者实现独立。D 选项 toward 意为“达成，意在达到，以……为目标”。C 选项 with 可与 help 构成搭配 to help sb with sth“帮助某人做某事”，与题意不符。故答案为 D。

54. A。上下文语义理解。句子中 the minimum wage 与前面的短语 support job training program（提供就业培训项目）和后面的短语 fund more low cost housing（资助建设更多低价住房）是并列关系。由此可推知，空格处应填入表示“提高”之意的单词。raise“增加，提高”，符合句子含义。故答案为 A。

55. D。副词词义辨析。结合选项和语境，空格处应填入副词。由下文中提及的“数字从六十万到六百万不等”可以推测本题意思应该为“关于美国无家可归者的数量，众说不一”。结合句子，空格处应选择表示否定意义的单词。C、D 项同样表示否定含义，但 hardly 一般与 anyone，anything 搭配；not 与 all，every 搭配表示部分否定。故答案为 D。

56. C。惯用搭配。分析句子结构可知，空格处应填入动词，与“from 600, 000 to 3 million”构成搭配，根据上下文，应表示“在……范围波动”之意。range from 表示“从……到……的范围；从……到……的波动”。故答案为 C。

57. B。逻辑衔接。根据本题所在的语境，前文中的 may vary 与后文中的 do agree 互为反义，确定二者为让步转折关系。故答案为 B，句子译为“虽然（人们估计的）数字不同，分析家们对另一个问题的意见还是完全一致的”。

58. C。上下文语义理解。inflating“膨胀”；expanding“发展，扩张”尤指面积或体积变大，扩张；increasing“增加”；extending“延伸”，常指在长度上的延伸。文章首句便提到“无家可归者在美国人口中所占的比例越来越大（growing percentage）”，本空格要与 growing 构成呼应，应该填入 increasing。故答案为 C。

59. A。上下文语义理解。由后文中提及的“近十年会达到 1900 万”可知语境表示的是未来的状况，由此可知空格处应填入“预测”之意的单词。A 选项 predicts 表示“预知，预测”的意思。故答案为 A。

60. A。上下文语义理解。本文前两段提出无家可归者的问题并略加分析，本段开始解决方法的探讨。句子提供信息确定选择“帮助”之意。assist“帮助”，符合句子含义。故答案为 A。

61. C。逻辑衔接。由后句中的 still 和句中“give them three meals a day and a place to sleep at night”和“spend the bulk of each day the street”的对立关系，可知前后两句是让步关系。even 即使，表示让步关系，与本句逻辑关系相符。故答案为 C。

62. B。名词词义辨析。由从句中的 three meals a day and a place to sleep at night“一日三餐和夜里睡觉的地方”推知应选择“庇护所，避难所”。shelter“庇护所，避难所”，尤指无家可归者的临时收容所，符合语境。lodging“借宿地，寄宿处”；dwelling“住处”；house“房屋”。故答案为 B。

63. D。上下文语义理解。空格处单词与 street 搭配使用，结合前文内容可推知此处的语义“流浪街头”。strolling“漫步，闲逛”；wandering“游荡，徘徊，流浪”。wandering

符合句子含义。故答案为 D。

64. C。逻辑衔接。本题选择连词，体现句子之间的逻辑关系。句子中“既不吸毒也不饮酒”与“缺乏生存技能”构成转折关系。因此，空格处的词应该表示让步，而 while 和 whereas 都能表示让步，但 whereas 不能用于省略句，而 while 常用于省略句。故答案为 C。
65. C。名词词义辨析。空格处单词与 skill 连用，将选项一一代入原文，survival“生存，存活”，survival skills 表示“生存技能”符合语境。maintenance skills 意思是“维修技术，保养技术”不符合语境。故答案为 C。
66. A。固定搭配。本题选择与 turn 构成的短语。语境为：to turn their lives“使生活变……”，这里表达出“出现转机”之意。turn around“（使）逆转，（使）出现转机”；turn over“仔细考虑，移交”；turn on“打开开关”；turn up“调大，开大；出现”。故答案为 A。
67. B。形容词词义辨析。complex“复杂的”；comprehensive“综合的，全面的”；complementary“补充的，互补的”；compensating“补偿的”。由于要满足无家可归者的许多要求（many needs of the homeless），所以这份计划应该是考虑周全、无所不包的。comprehensive 符合句子含义。故答案为 B。
68. C。逻辑衔接。director of community service at Bentley College in Massachusetts 是 Edward Zlotkowski 这个人物的同位语成分，句子结构为：as sb puts it“正如某人说的那样……”，put 此处意为“表达”。故答案为 C。
69. A。惯用衔接。句子结构为：as sb puts it“正如某人说的那样……”，put 此处意为“表达”。故答案为 A。
70. D。上下文语义理解。综合前文中的 comprehensive programs that address the many needs of the homeless（……的综合性计划）和后文中的 a package deal（一揽子交易），所以需要对它们进行协调，即 coordination“协调”。故答案为 D。

Part IV The Use of English

71. are→is。句子的主语 English corner 为单数，主谓应一致。
72. speaking→spoken。“英语口语”的正确表达是 spoken English。
73. talk→talking。句子的谓语动词为 gather，动词 talk 在同一个句子中只能处理成分词形式，分句主语与主句主语一致，故用现在分词做伴随状语。
74. they→ them。人称代词做介词 among 的宾语，因此要用宾格。
75. on→去掉 on。在 every Sunday /week/ day 之类的时间状语前，不用介词。
76. chat→chatted。chatted 与 went 并列，因此使用过去式。
77. had→have。in the past/last few years 常与现在完成时连用，表示从过去一直持续到现在的动作。
78. progresses→progress。progress 是不可数名词，没有复数形式。
79. ∧good→a。后面的 place 是单数可数名词，且第一次提及，要加不定冠词。
80. join in→join。join in 指参加某项活动（即以表示活动的名词用其宾语）；表示加入到某个组织并成为其中的一员，或与某人一起，要用 join。

模拟测试题（二）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 10 short conversations. At the end of each conversation, a question will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer.*

1. A. It's less expensive.
   B. It's more comfortable.
   C. It's faster.
   D. It's more direct.
2. A. A chemistry class.
   B. A biology class.
   C. A mathematics class.
   D. A physics class.
3. A. At 11 o'clock.
   B. At 4 o'clock.
   C. At 7 o'clock.
   D. At 2 o'clock.
4. A. In the morning.
   B. Late at night.
   C. After 5:30.
   D. At or before 5:30.
5. A. Cheer herself up a bit.
   B. Find a more suitable job.
   C. Seek professional advice.
   D. Take a psychology course.
6. A. He dresses more formally now.
   B. What he wears does not match his position.
   C. He has ignored his friends since graduation.
   D. He failed to do well at college.
7. A. He believes the Browns have done a sensible thing.
   B. He doesn't think the Browns should move to another place.
   C. He doesn't think the Browns' investment is a wise move.
   D. He believes it is better for the Browns to invest later.
8. A. He may convert it and use it as a restaurant.
   B. He may pull it down and build a new restaurant.
   C. He may rent it out for use as a restaurant.
   D. He may sell it to the owner of a restaurant.
9. A. Dick has bad taste in clothes.
   B. The color of Dick's jacket is too dark.
   C. Dick's trousers don't match his jacket.
   D. Dick looks funny in that yellow jacket.
10. A. Get the wallet for the man.
    B. Call the police station.
    C. Show the man her family pictures.
    D. Ask to see the man's driver's license.

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

11. A. He can't find his office key.
    B. He has misplaced some exams.
    C. He's unable to talk.
    D. He doesn't like his classroom.
12. A. Teach Don's class while he is absent.
    B. Give the man the key to Don's office.
    C. Make an appointment with the doctor.
    D. Return some exams to the students.
13. A. To leave the master key for Don.
    B. To put the homework on Don's desk.
    C. To give Don's students the next assignment.
    D. To call Don at the end of the afternoon.

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 16 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

14. From the conversation, we can learn the woman is probably _____.
    A. a journalist
    B. a regional councilor
    C. a painter
    D. a librarian
15. The man needs most _____ to fix up the old library.
    A. ladders
    B. furniture
    C. workforce
    D. brushes and paint
16. _____ are needed to furnish the old library according to the conversation.
    A. Some lamps and guitars
    B. Some desks and chairs
    C. Some ladders and paint
    D. Some tables and brushes

Conversation 3

Questions 17 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

17. A. Economy.
    B. Banking.
    C. Stocks.
    D. Accounting.
18. A. Money transfer.
    B. Balance check.
    C. 24h staff service.
    D. Payment.
19. A. The woman should tell her PIN number to the operator to get the service.
    B. The woman decided to try the service.
    C. The woman can trade stocks and bonds immediately after signing up.
    D. The woman can be served by the bank online.
20. A. In the hospital.
    B. At the office.
    C. At the law school.
    D. At home.

Section 3

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 3 short passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choice marked A, B, C and D.*

Passage 1

21. The problem of the standard educational tests is caused by _____.
    A. well-informed users
    B. imprecise standard
    C. users who have not enough knowledge of the test
    D. people who attack the test
22. The predictions of the test are likely to be mistaken due to _____.
    A. the irrelevance of the past experience
    B. the incompleteness of the information available
    C. the weakness of the test
    D. the unpredictability of the future performance
23. The tests work most effectively when it is used to measure _____.
    A. the whole information on a person
    B. one's creative ability
    C. the skill one has learned
    D. the skill he will learn in the future

Passage 2

24. What is the topic of the passage?
    A. China is successful in cutting down the population growth.
    B. Aging population problems affect most parts of the world.
    C. The rise in the cost of health care is becoming very sharp.
    D. Drops in birth may cause other social problems.
25. Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?
    A. Japanese people's life span is 77 years.
    B. Some countries may not be prepared for aging.
    C. In China, the old will cover 60% of the population by 2025.
    D. The birth control policy carried out by Chinese government is effective.
26. What can be inferred from the passage?
    A. Pension benefit will become a heavy burden for Japan.
    B. China's birth control effect is opposed by the author.
    C. Europe is the pioneer in fighting for better health care.
    D. Financial rewarding functions more effective than punishment.

Passage 3

27. According to the speaker, some job applicants were rejected _____.
    A. because they eliminated their names from the applicants' list themselves
    B. because of their inadequate education as shown in their poor spelling in writing a

resume

C. because they failed to give a detailed description of their background in their applications

D. because of their carelessness to spell the company's name incorrectly

28. Perfectionists refers to those who _____.

A. pay too much attention to details only to lose their major objectives

B. know how to adjust their goals according to the circumstances

C. demand others to get everything absolutely right

D. are capable of achieving perfect results in whatever they do

29. The example of the Apollo II moon launch is to illustrate that _____.

A. minor mistakes can be ignored in achieving major objectives

B. keeping one's goal in mind helps in deciding which details can be overlooked

C. adjustments are the key to the successful completion of any work

D. failure is the mother of success

30. The passage is mainly talking about _____.

A. not being a perfectionist

B. details and major objectives

C. importance of adjustments

D. hard work plus good luck

Section 4

(I) ***Directions:*** *In this section, you will hear a conversation. When the conversation begins, you are required to fill in the blanks numbered from 31 to 35 with the exact words you have just heard. Write* ***NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS*** *for each answer. You now have 25 seconds to read the table below.*

AUTHOR	TITLE	PUBLISHER
Drake Wister	31. _____	Cambridge University Press
32. _____	*The Strategy of Marketing*	London Press
Hilary Justice	*The Economics Tendency*	33. _____
34. _____	35. _____	Cambridge University Press

(II) ***Directions:*** *In this section, you will hear a passage twice. When the passage is read for the first time, you should listen carefully for its general idea. When the passage is read for the second time, you are required to fill in the blanks numbered from 36 to 40 with the exact words you have just heard.*

36. Gabriela Mistral was once an ordinary teacher in a small village school in _____.	36. _____
37. For eighteen years, Gabriela devoted her life to the _____ of Chile's Northern valleys.	37. _____
38. In 1922, she was invited to Mexico to help organize the _____.	38. _____

（续）

39. In New York City, a group of teachers helped to _____of her first book of poetry.	39. _____
40. In 1945, she gained worldwide recognition by winning _____ in literature, the first South American to win the prize.	40. _____

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

Directions: *There are ten sentences in this section. Beneath each sentence there are four words or phrases marked A, B, C and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Mark your answers on your answer sheet.*

41. The three men tried many times to sneak across the border into the neighboring country, _____by the police each time.
A. had been captured B. being always captured
C. only to be captured D. unfortunately captured

42. Present at the Christmas party were the two princesses and their _____husbands and the Duke of Edinburgh.
A. respectable B. respectful C. respective D. respected

43. Tom tried his best to keep awake, but the performance was so boring that he couldn't help _____ to sleep.
A. dropping off B. dropping down
C. dropping away D. dropping out

44. There was a _____ of his latest novel in a local newspaper immediately after its publication.
A. comment B. review C. remark D. revision

45. Although his work was often _____ and _____, he was promoted any way, simply because he had been with the company longer than anyone else.
A. negligent… creative B. incomplete… imprecise
C. predictable… careful D. forceful… extraneous

46. Greatly agitated, I rushed to the apartment and tried the door, _____ to find it locked.
A. just B. only C. hence D. thus

47. _____that a society like the National Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to children is still needed in a civilized country.
A. How does it come B. How it comes
C. How did it come about D. How did it come

48. They assured us that _____ was waiting for us they were there to share it.
A. what B. whatever C. it D. whoever

49. After _____ seemed an endless wait, it was her turn to enter the personnel manager's office.
A. that B. there C. what D. it

50. The typist checked the spelling carefully in order to _____ all the spelling mistakes.
A. abandon B. diminish C. eliminate D. withdraw

Part III CLOZE

Directions: *Decide which of the choices given below would best complete the passage if inserted in the corresponding blanks. Mark the best choice for each blank on your answer sheet.*

Americans believe time is a limited resource; they try to conserve and manage it. People in the U. S. often __51__ seminars or read books on time management. It seems they all want to __52__ their time better. Professionals carry around pocket planners — some in electronic form — to keep __53__ of appointments and deadlines. People do all they can to __54__ more life out of their time. The early American hero Benjamin Franklin expressed this __55__ best: "Do you love life? Then do not waste time, for that is the __56__ life is made of." To Americans, punctuality is a(n) __57__ of showing respect for other people's time. __58__ more than 10 minutes late to an appointment usually __59__ an apology, and maybe an explanation. People who are running late often call __60__ to let others know of the delay. Of course, the less __61__ the situation, the less important it is to be exactly on time. At informal get-togethers, for example, people often arrive __62__ 60 minutes past the appointed time. But they usually don't try that at work.

To outsiders, Americans seem tied to the clock. People in other cultures value relationships more than __63__. In these societies, people don't try to __64__ time, but to experience it. Many Eastern cultures, for example, view time as a cycle. The __65__ of nature — from the passing of the seasons to the monthly cycle of the moon — shapes their view of events. People learn to __66__ to their environment. As a result, they find it easier to "go with the flow" than Americans, who like plans __67__ and unchangeable.

Even Americans would __68__ that no one can master time. Time, like money, __69__ all too easily through our fingers. And time, like the weather, is very hard to predict. __70__, time is one of life's most precious gifts. And unwrapping it is half the fun.

51. A. participate	B. attend	C. adjoin	D. associate
52. A. organize	B. orient	C. establish	D. classify
53. A. trace	B. trail	C. pace	D. track
54. A. grind	B. crush	C. squeeze	D. squash
55. A. view	B. conception	C. impression	D. belief
56. A. staff	B. stuff	C. stiff	D. storage
57. A. vehicle	B. way	C. medium	D. instrument
58. A. If being	B. Been	C. Be	D. Being
59. A. calls out	B. calls over	C. calls in	D. calls for
60. A. ahead	B. advance	C. front	D. forward
61. A. informal	B. formal	C. indecent	D. inappropriate
62. A. as many as	B. as usual as	C. as much as	D. as long as
63. A. finances	B. schedules	C. conventions	D. rituals
64. A. catch	B. contain	C. control	D. cherish
65. A. rhyme	B. rhythm	C. swing	D. circle

66. A. respond　　B. move　　C. submit　　D. comply
67. A. to fix　　B. to have fixed　　C. fixing　　D. to be fixed
68. A. receive　　B. admit　　C. consent　　D. confess
69. A. skims　　B. slides　　C. slips　　D. skips
70. A. Moreover　　B. Therefore　　C. Nevertheless　　D. Likewise

Part IV　THE USE OF ENGLISH

Directions: *This part consists of a short passage. In this passage there are altogether 10 mistakes, one in each numbered line. You may have to change a word, add a word or delete a word. Mark out the mistakes and put the corrections in the blanks provided.*

Whether China's housing reform can be carried out
successfully will have a profound bearing on the future of the
reform of state-owned enterprises.
Although China's housing reform registered impressive　71. _____
progress in the past 10 years, it has still been
fettered by its old-fashioned housing distribution system.
Under this system, most employees of state enterprises
can still get apartments to their employers, and this practice has　72. _____
turned to be a heavy burden upon the state firms and a obstacle to　73. _____
their reform. To clear the runway of the reform, those enterprises should
establish a special shareholding firm in the charge of housing.　74. _____
This firm would be held responsible at its own gains and losses.　75. _____
Second, state-own enterprises must draw a clear line　76. _____
between housing investment and production investment.
In other words, enterprises should replace the old housing
distribution system to generous housing subsidies under a system　77. _____
which encourages employees to buy a home in the market.
Besides, China should beef its efforts to improve its social　78. _____
security system and establish public funds for housing as a way
to address urban residents' housing problems.
The government has options to provide houses with those　79. _____
who cannot afford a home. One of them is to take a part of the
pubic funds to build a batch of cheap houses; the other
is redistributing the old houses.　80. _____

模拟测试题（二）解析

Part I　Listening Comprehension

Section 1

1. C。女士说地铁比公共汽车更加快捷（faster）。故答案为 C。
2. A。女士说下周的生物课调换为化学课，由此可知，男士没有准备的是化学课。故答案为 A。
3. C。女士说巴黎的时间比男士所在地区的时间早 4 个小时，男士要在巴黎时间 11 点打电话，由此可推知，所在地的时间应为 7 点。故答案为 C。
4. D。对话中提及没有必要去商店了，因为已经过了 5:30，由此可推知，商店关闭的时间应为 5:30 或早于 5:30。故答案为 D。
5. C。男士建议安娜去看心理学家，接受专业的建议。故答案为 C。
6. A。对话中提及现在的汤姆穿西装，打领带，但在大学期间，他总是穿 T 恤衫和牛仔裤，由此可知，现在汤姆的穿着更正式。故答案为 A。
7. C。男士说他最不会做的事就是将钱全部投入股票，由此可推知，他认为布朗一家将钱全部投入股票的行为是不明智的。故答案为 C。
8. A。女士提到彼得森先生要将他的旧房子改造成饭店。故答案为 A。
9. C。女士说到迪克黑夹克、黄裤子的搭配是她见过的最奇怪的搭配。故答案为 C。
10. A。女士说早上有人将钱包送过来，并要男士稍等片刻，由此可推知，女士要去给男士取钱包。故答案为 A。

Section 2

Conversation 1

11. C。女士提及唐失声了，不能说话。故答案为 C。
12. B。女士主动提出可以将钥匙交给男士。故答案为 B。
13. C。对话最后女士提及她差点忘记要让男士帮忙把下次的作业布置下去。故答案为 C。

Conversation 2

14. A。对话初女士提及她计划写一篇社论（editorial），由此可推知，她是一名记者。故答案为 A。
15. C。男士在回答女士最需要什么的问题时说到 people power（人力）。故答案为 C。
16. B。女士在阅读家具清单的时候，提及了 desks，tables，table lamps，piano。由此可知，答案为 B。

Conversation 3

17. B。女士在对话初提及她要咨询电话银行服务的问题。由此可知，对话讨论的是银行业务。故答案为 B。
18. C。男士在回答业务范围时提及：check balance；pay bills，transfer money；9-5 seven days staff service。不属于服务范畴的是 24 小时人工服务。故答案为 C。

19. B。对话最后提及女士认为电话服务很好，并要求立刻注册。选项 B：要立即体验服务，符合原文。故答案为 B。
20. B。对话开始时男士对女士友好问好，并询问需要帮助的事宜，女士主要询问了一些银行电话服务的内容。由此可推知，对话发生在银行的办公室。故答案为 B。

Section 3

Passage 1

21. C。文章中提及把标准化测试作为抨击目标是错误的，因为在抨击这类测试时，批评者没有注意到其弊病来自测试使用者对测试不甚了解或使用不当。故答案为 C。
22. B。文章中提及任何仔细记分的人都知道：可利用的信息总是不完整，所做的预测也总容易出错。由此可知，预测的失误是由于信息的不完整。故答案为 B。
23. C。文章最后指出，测试为获得一个人曾经学过的知识、技能、和为人的一些信息提供了一个快速客观的方法。只有选项 C 的内容在文章中涉及。故答案为 C。

Passage 2

24. B。文章的开头提及人口老龄化问题不仅仅限于欧洲。之后以日本和中国为例，进一步论述该问题。故答案为 B。
25. C。原文中提及到 2025 年时，中国的人口将占世界人口的 16%，与 C 选项信息不一致，故答案为 C。
26. A。原文中提及到 2025 年时，日本的老年人养老金将增长 3 倍，由此可知，这将成为日本一个沉重的负担。故答案为 A。

Passage 3

27. D。原文中提及人力资源专家 Bob Crossley 会直接排除那些将公司名字都拼写错误的应聘者。故答案为 D。
28. A。文中指出完美主义者过于关注微小的事情，而忽略了工作中更为重要的事情。故答案为 A。
29. B。文章的末尾提及“阿波罗 2 号”登月的例子时提及他们知道确定的目标，并为此而做出必要的调整。由此可知，引用这一例子是为了说明明确目标可以帮助确定哪些细节是可以忽略的。故答案为 B。
30. B。文章主要讨论了关注细节以及如何处理细节和整体目标的关系。故答案为 B。

Section 4

31. global economy。细节性信息。注意 economy 的拼写。
32. Victoria Smith。细节性信息。姓名的拼写是难点。
33. Oxford University Press。注意单词的拼写。
34. William Hanna。细节性信息。姓名的拼写是难点。
35. Business Management。注意单词的拼写。
36. Northern Chile。本题出现在听力开头，很容易错过。
37. poor farm children。当听到 devoted to 就可以确定信息位置。
38. world’s school system。Mexico 是提示词。
39. finance the publication。注意 finance 和 publication 的拼写。
40. The Nobel Prize。注意专有名词首字母大写。

Part II Grammar and Vocabulary

41. C。语法知识。doing 和 to do 都可以表示结果，但二者所表示的含义有所不同。doing 表示理所当然的结果，而不定式则表示出乎意料的结果。本句强调的是出乎意料。故答案为 C。
42. C。形近词辨析。respected 形容词，表示“受尊重的”；respectful 形容词，形容某件事或者某人的行为是恭敬的、有礼貌的；respectable 形容词，表示“值得尊敬的”；respective 表示“分别的，各自的”。句中应表示两位公主各自的丈夫。故答案为 C。
43. A。动词词组辨析。drop off 表示“打盹，打瞌睡”的意思，drop off to sleep 表示“睡着”的意思，符合题意。drop down“（使）落下，迅速低下身体等”；drop away“陆续离开，逐渐减少”；drop out“退出，退学”，均不符合题意。故答案为 A。
44. B。名词词义辨析。review 指在报刊、杂志上发表的有关电影、新书、戏剧的评论性文章，一般与介词 of 搭配；comment“评论，评价”，指针对某一事情或现象所做的评论，与介词 on 连用；revision 意为“修改，修订”。故答案为 B。
45. B。上下文语义。由后半句提及的仅仅是因为他在公司待的时间比其他人都长就获得升职的语境可知，空格处单词应表示对他工作的否定评价，选项中只有 B 中的两个单词都表示否定的意思。故答案为 B。
46. B。不定式表示出乎意料的结果，only 修饰强调程度之深。故答案为 B。
47. A。语法知识。句子时态判断选择一般现在时，how 引导的疑问句形式 how does it come 相当于 how comes，表示“为什么会这样”的意思。故答案为 A。
48. B。语法知识。分析句子结构可知，句尾的 it 指代的是空格所在的分句，由此可知，空格应填入表示事物的关系代词。whatever 表示“无论什么，任何事情”，更符合语境。故答案为 B。
49. C。语法知识。after 后的从句缺少主语，空格处应填入能做主语的关系代词。what 符合语法。故答案为 C。
50. C。动词词义辨析。eliminate 意为“清除，排除”，尤指去除不必要的或不需要的东西，和 mistakes 搭配符合题意。abandon 意为“遗弃，舍弃”；diminish 意为“减少，变小”；withdraw 意为“撤走，取消”。故答案为 C。

Part III Cloze

51. B。动词搭配。seminar“研究会，讨论会”通常与 attend 搭配，表示“参加会议”的意思；participate“参与，参加，分享，分担”，为不及物动词，与介词 in 连用；adjoin“邻接，毗连”；associate“使发生联系，交往，结交”。故答案为 B。
52. A。上下文语义。上文提到美国人经常参加有关时间管理的讨论会或阅读这方面的书籍，可推断本句是说他们似乎都希望能把自己的时间“安排”得更好，organize 表示“组织，系统地安排”。故答案为 A。
53. D。词语搭配。语境为：专业人士随身带着袖珍记事本（有些是电子记事本），以_____约会时间和工作期限。keep track of“掌握线索，了解动态”，符合语境。trace“痕迹，踪迹”，指根据线索或足迹进行跟踪，用于抽象意义时指找到某事物的根源。trail“踪迹，痕迹，形迹”，一般指跟踪追击。keep pace with“与……齐步前进，与……并驾齐驱”。故答案为 D。
54. C。动词词义辨析。grind“磨（碎），碾（碎）”；crush“压碎，碾碎”；squash“压

扁，压制，镇压”；只有选项 C 中的 squeeze “压榨，挤出”符合句意，表示“挤出时间”的意思。故答案为 C。

55. A。名词词义辨析。view “观点”，conception “观念，概念”；impression “印象，感想”；belief “信任，信心，信仰”。本杰明·富兰克林将这种_____表达得最为透彻，结合以上的分析可知 view 符合句意。故答案为 A。

56. B。名词词义辨析。语境为：生命是由_____组成的。四个选项中唯有 stuff “原料，材料，素材”可在本语境中用来指代“时间”，符合题意。staff “全体职员”；stiff “硬的，僵直的，拘谨的”；storage “贮藏（量），贮藏库，存储”。故答案为 B。

57. B。名词词义辨析。a way of 表示“通常或习惯的存在、生活或行为方式”，本句句意是“守时是尊重他人时间的一种行为方式”，故答案为 B。

58. D。语法知识。根据语义和结构，句子所缺成分是主语，四个选项中唯有选项 being 可用作引导主语的关键词。故答案为 D。

59. D。动词词组辨析。语境为：约会迟到超过 10 分钟通常_____向对方道歉或解释原因。call for 表示“要求，需要”，符合题意。call out “召集，使集中，召唤”；call over “点名，按顺序读出”；call in “顺便拜访”。故答案为 D。

60. A。副词词义辨析。根据上下文可推断本句句意是：知道自己会迟到的人往往会“提前”打个电话告知对方。ahead 为副词，表示“在前，提前”。故答案为 A。

61. B。上下文语义。上文一直强调准时的重要性，本句用 of course 表示转折，由此推断本句句意是：会面场合愈“不正式”，精确准时的重要性就愈小。formal “正式的，合礼仪的”，与 less 搭配表示“不正式的”。故答案为 B。

62. C。语法知识。句子所缺成分不影响整句意思的理解，却起到修饰 time 的作用，而 time “时间”是不可数名词，故用 as much as。本句大意是：在非正式的聚会中，人们往往会在约定时间过后 30 分钟才到。故答案为 C。

63. B。上下文语义。上文提到，美国人似乎受制于时钟。由此可推断本句的大意是：其他文化背景的人不会如此看重与 clock 相关的东西。schedule 表示“时间表，进度表”，和前面的 clock 相呼应。故答案为 B。

64. C。上下文语义。语境为：其他文化背景的人不受制于时钟，那么他们不会设法去_____时间；下文中提及 no one can master time，其中 master 为本题的解答提供了暗示，选项 control 与该词意思相近，故答案为 C。

65. B。语义逻辑。语境为：从季节的更替到月亮圆缺变化的每个周期，这些大自然的_____形成了他们对事物的看法。rhythm “节奏，韵律”，和前面的 cycle “周期，循环”相呼应，符合题意，故答案为 B。rhyme “韵，押韵，押韵的词”；swing “秋千，摇摆，摆动”；circle “圆周，圆形物，循环”。

66. A。动词搭配。语境为：人们学会去_____环境的变化，因此他们比美国人更易“顺应潮流”。respond 和 to 搭配，表示“做出反应”，在本句中可理解为“适应”，故选项 A 正确。submit 常和 to 搭配，但表示“（使）服从，（使）顺从”；comply “顺从，答应，遵守”，常与 with 搭配。

67. D。语法知识。由句末的 and unchangeable 可知空格处应填入与 unchangeable 并列的系表结构，四个选项中只有 D 中的不定式结构符合条件，故答案为 D。

68. B。动词词义辨析。语境为：甚至连美国人也都_____，没有人能够完全掌握时间。receive “接到，收到”；consent “同意，赞成”，是不及物动词，需与 to 搭配；confess “承认（错误或罪行），忏悔”；admit “承认，接纳”，符合句意。故答案为 B。

69. C。词语搭配。空格处单词与 through our fingers 连用，且表示时间。选项中只有 slips “滑过”符合句意，表示“时间悄悄溜走”的意思。故答案为 C。
70. C。逻辑关系。上文提到时间也像天气一样，是很难预测的。本句大意是：时间是生命中最宝贵的礼物之一，而拆开它本身就已经是一种乐趣了。这两句是转折关系，选项 C 中的 nevertheless “然而，不过”符合文意。故答案为 C。

Part IV The Use of English

71. registered → has registered。句末的 in the past ten years 表示从过去到现在一直持续的动作，应使用现在完成时态。
72. to → from。根据句意判断很多国有企业的员工可以从他们的雇主那里获得公寓。应使用介词 from 表示“从……”的意思。
73. a（第二个）→ an。后面的单词 obstacle，首字母发音为/ɒ/，为元音。故使用不定冠词 an。
74. in the charge of → in charge of。in charge of 表主动，表示“负责，主管”的意思；in the charge of 表被动，表示“由……掌管，由……负责”的意思。句中表主动，表示由特殊的股份公司负责房屋供给，故应使用 in charge of。
75. at → for。be responsible for 为固定搭配，表示“对……负责”的意思。
76. state-own → state-owned。state-owned 为复合词的正确拼写，表示“国有的”意思。
77. to → with/ by。replace…with…表示“由……替代……”，为固定搭配。
78. beef → beef up。beef up 为固定搭配，表示“加强，补充”的意思，更符合语境。
79. with→ for。provide sth for sb 与 provide sb with /of sth 意义一致，但句中介词后跟的是 these who，指人，故使用 for。
80. distributing → to distribute。本句与上句结构一致，使用不定式。

模拟测试题（三）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 10 short conversations. At the end of each conversation, a question will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer.*

1. A. See a doctor
   B. Stay in bed for a few days.
   C. Get treatment in a better hospital.
   D. Make a phone call to the doctor.
2. A. The 2:00 train will arrive earlier.
   B. The 2:30 train has a dining car.
   C. The woman prefers to take the 2:30 train.
   D. They are going to have some fast food on the train.
3. A. She has been longing to attend Harvard University.
   B. She'll consider the man's suggestion carefully.
   C. She has finished her project with Dr. Garcia's help.
   D. She'll consult Dr. Garcia about entering graduate school.
4. A. Alice didn't seem to be nervous during her speech.
   B. Alice needs more training in making public speeches.
   C. The man can hardly understand Alice's presentation.
   D. The man didn't think highly of Alice's presentation.
5. A. It's worse than 30 years ago.
   B. It remains almost the same as before.
   C. There are more extremes in the weather.
   D. There has been a significant rise in temperature.
6. A. At a publishing house.
   B. At a bookstore.
   C. In a reading room.
   D. In Prof. Jordan's office.
7. A. The man can stay in her brother's apartment.
   B. Her brother can help the man find a cheaper hotel.
   C. Her brother can find an apartment for the man.
   D. The man should have booked a less expensive hotel.
8. A. Priority should be given to listening.
   B. It's most helpful to read English newspapers every day.
   C. It's more effective to combine listening with reading.
   D. Reading should come before listening.
9. A. It can help solve complex problems.
   B. It will most likely prove ineffective.
   C. It is a new weapon against terrorists.

D. It will help detect all kinds of liars.

10. A. Help the company recruit graduate students.
    B. Visit the electronics company next week.
    C. Get a part-time job on campus before graduation.
    D. Apply for a job in the electronics company.

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

11. What are they mainly talking about in the conversation?
    A. Transport. B. Customers. C. Relocation. D. Restaurants.
12. Which of the following is mentioned by Tim as a good reason for moving?
    A. More office space. B. Convenient parking.
    C. Fewer office workers. D. A near-by train station.
13. Why is Jane worried about winter in the new location?
    A. It is much colder there. B. There are few activities.
    C. There are no good restaurants. D. There is no cinema or theatre.

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 17 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

14. Miss Parkinson became interested in her own business _____.
    A. before she worked for the media company
    B. when she was on holiday five years ago
    C. after she went to therapists and classes
    D. after her friend recommended it to her
15. Why did she ask her teachers to teach her at home?
    A. She was busier than before. B. It was more convenient.
    C. She liked to exercise at home. D. She was given a promotion.
16. Which of the following is NOT true according to the conversation?
    A. She recommended people to take classes.
    B. She was willing to pay more for classes at home.
    C. She left her job immediately after her promotion.
    D. She regarded the business as a pastime at first.
17. Why did she finally leave her job?
    A. She got bored with her job. B. She saw an opportunity.
    C. She needed the money. D. She was forced to leave.

Conversation 3

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

18. Which of the following is NOT mentioned about the single-lens reflex?
A. Different lenses can be used. B. Focusing is easier.
C. You can see what you are taking. D. It is cheaper and lighter.

19. According to the shop assistant, the main difference between the two types of cameras lies in _____.
A. lens B. price C. weight D. size

20. It can be inferred from the conversation that the customer is more likely to buy _____in the end.
A. a single-lens camera B. nothing
C. a rangefinder camera D. several lenses instead

Section 3

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 3 short passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choice marked A, B, C and D.*

Passage 1

21. Which of the following details about the front of the house is CORRECT?
A. The front is pink. B. The curtain is drawn.
C. No window can be seen. D. There are two doors.

22. What is to the immediate left side of the house?
A. A washing line. B. Another house. C. A flat area. D. A chimney.

23. Where is the small town in the picture?
A. Between two hills. B. Further to the left of the house.
C. At the back of the house. D. At the side of a hill.

Passage 2

24. When did Ben first become interested in Mongolia?
A. When he grew up. B. When he learned Mongolian.
C. When he returned home. D. When he was nine years old.

25. Where did he spend most of his teenage years?
A. In Mongolia. B. In the Arab world.
C. In his hometown. D. In some other regions.

26. We learn from the passage that Ben _____ while doing his master's degree.
A. became interested in classical Mongolian
B. learned classical and modern Mongolian
C. gave up modern Mongolian
D. mastered modern Mongolian

27. Which of the following details is NOT true according to the passage?
A. Ben wants to visit Mongolia when the weather is warm.
B. Ben considers the travel expense reasonable.
C. The trip today is expensive considering inflation.
D. Ben was unable to travel to Mongolia in1971.

Passage 3

28. Which is the height of towers at Sky Greens vertical farm?

A. 9 meters. B. 20 meters. C. 100 meters. D. 40 meters.

29. Which of the following is NOT true according to the passage?

A. The farm sells its vegetables to a local supermarket.

B. The farm uses less water and energy to grow vegetables.

C. The farm causes less pollution in its production.

D. The farm sells at the same price as imported produce

30. According to the passage, one particular advantage of the Sky Greens is _____.

A. local climate B. local support

C. plan for expansion D. closeness to the city

Section 4

Directions: *In this section, you will hear a passage three times. When the passage is read for the first time, you should listen carefully for its general idea. When the passage is read for the second time, you are required to fill in the blanks with the exact words you have just heard. Finally, when the passage is read for the third time, you should check what you have written.*

The first copyright law in the United States was passed by Congress in 1790. In 1976 Congress enacted the latest copyright law, __31__ the technological developments that had occurred since the passage of the Copyright Act of 1909. For example, in 1909, anyone who wanted to make a single copy of a __32__ work for personal use had to do so by hand. The very process __33__ a limitation on the quantity of materials copied. Today, a photocopier can do the work in seconds; the limitation has disappeared. The 1909 Law did not provide full protection for films and sound recordings, nor did it __34__ the need to protect radio and television. As a result, __35__ of the law and abuses of the intent of the law have lessened the __36__ rewards of authors, artists, and producers. The 1976 Copyright Act has not prevented these abuses fully, but it has clarified the legal rights of the injured parties and given them an __37__ for remedy.

Since 1976 the Act has been __38__ to include computer software and guidelines have been adopted for fair use of television broadcasts. These changes have cleared up much of the confusion and conflict that followed __39__ the 1976 legislation.

The fine points of the law are decided by the courts and by acceptable common practice over time. As these decisions and agreements are made, we modify our behavior accordingly. For now, we need to __40__ the law and its guidelines as accurately as we can and to act in a fair manner.

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

Directions: *There are ten sentences in this section. Beneath each sentence there are four words or phrases marked A, B, C and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Mark your answers on your answer sheet.*

41. _____to school life was less difficult than the pupil had expected.

A. Adhering　　B. Adjusting　　C. Adopting　　D. Acquainting

42. The couple _____ their old house and sold it for a vast profit.
A. did for　　B. did in　　C. did up　　D. did with

43. Sally contributed a lot to the project, but she never once accepted all the _____ for herself.
A. credit　　B. attention　　C. focus　　D. award

44. The _____ that sport builds character is well accepted by people nowadays.
A. argument　　B. issue　　C. point　　D. sentence

45. Traditionally, local midwives would _____ all the babies in the area.
A. deliver　　B. produce　　C. handle　　D. help

46. The court would not accept his appeal unless _____ evidence is provided.
A. definite　　B. conclusive　　C. eventual　　D. concluding

47. She really wanted to say something at the meeting, but eventually _____ from it.
A. refrained　　B. prevented　　C. limited　　D. restricted

48. The operation could _____ her life by two or three years.
A. prolong　　B. increase　　C. expand　　D. continue

49. Our school did not _____ for Christmas until mid-December.
A. break out　　B. break down　　C. break in　　D. break up

50. The whole country was in _____ over the result of the elections.
A. suspension　　B. suspense　　C. suspending　　D. suspender

Part III　CLOZE

Directions: *Decide which of the choices given below would best complete the passage if inserted in the corresponding blanks. Mark the best choice for each blank on your answer sheet.*

Everyone knows that taxation is necessary in a modern state: without it, it __51__ not be possible to pay the soldiers and policemen who protect us; __52__ the workers in government offices who __53__ our health, our food, our water, and all the other things that we cannot do for ourselves. __54__ taxation, we pay for things that we need just __55__ we need somewhere to live and something to eat. But __56__ everyone knows that taxation is necessary, different people have different ideas about __57__ taxation should be arranged.

In most countries, a direct tax on __58__ , which is called income tax, __59__ . It is arranged in such __60__ that the poorest people pay nothing, and the percentage of tax grows __61__ as the taxpayer's income grows. In some countries, for example, the tax on the richest people __62__ as high as ninety-five per cent!

__63__ countries with taxation nearly __64__ have indirect taxation too. Many things imported into the country have to pay taxes or "duties." Of course, it is the men and women who buy these imported things in the shops __65__ really have to pay the duties, in the __66__ of higher prices. In some countries, __67__ , there is a tax on things sold in the shops. If the most necessary things are taxed, a lot of money is __68__ but the poor people suffer most. If unnecessary things __69__ jewels and fur coats are taxed, less money is obtained but the tax is __70__ , as the rich pay it.

51. A. can　　B. may　　C. could　　D. would

52. A. nor B. neither C. never D. not
53. A. look into B. look over C. look after D. look through
54. A. In accordance with B. By means of
C. With reference to D. On account of
55. A. as well as B. as good as C. as such as D. as much as
56. A. if B. when C. though D. as
57. A. when B. how C. why D. which
58. A. persons B. sectors C. communities D. classes
59. A. remains B. stays C. exists D. happens
60. A. form B. way C. measure D. method
61. A. quicker B. speedier C. more D. larger
62. A. grows up B. increases up C. goes up D. lifts up
63. A. But B. Consequently C. Similarly D. And
64. A. periodically B. almost C. often D. always
65. A. which B. who C. what D. whom
66. A. manner B. form C. means D. way
67. A. either B. also C. too D. often
68. A. lent B. saved C. borrowed D. collected
69. A. alike B. like C. as D. for
70. A. heavier B. fairer C. finer D. better

Part IV The Use of English

Directions: *This part consists of a short passage. In this passage there are altogether 10 mistakes, one in each numbered line. You may have to change a word, add a word or delete a word. Mark out the mistakes and put the corrections in the blanks provided.*

Beginning in the 16th century, a more public and "racially" based type of slavery was established when Europeans began importing slaves from Africa to the New World. It is estimating that 11 million people were taken from Africa dying the transatlantic slave trade. In the mid-19th century the slave population in the U. S. had risen to more than four million, although slave imports had banned since 1809. Most of the Africans sent to the United States worked in cotton or rice plantations in the South, their status governed by slave codes. Almost 40% of captives transported from Africa to America were taken to Brazil, where harsh condition required the constant replenishing of slaves. Followed the rise of abolitionism, Britain outlawed slavery in its colonies in 1833, and France did the same in 1848. Brazil was the last abolish slavery, doing that in 1888. Official policy notwithstanding, slavery continues to exist in many parts of the world. Many of the contemporary slaves are women and children forced to prostitution or working at hard labor or in sweat shops. Debt bondage is in common, affecting millions of people, and slaves are often been traded for material goods.

71. _____
72. _____
73. _____
74. _____
75. _____
76. _____
77. _____
78. _____
79. _____
80. _____

模拟测试题（三）解析

Part I　Listening Comprehension

Section 1

1. A。男士说到 Carol 应该去医院检查一下。由此可知，他认为 Carol 应该去看医生。故答案为 A。
2. C。女士提及 2:30 的火车要比 2:00 的火车快，这样他们就有时间在上车之前吃点东西，由此可知，女士倾向乘坐 2:30 的火车。故答案为 C。
3. D。女士在提及进入研究生院的时候说到要与她的导师 Dr. Garcia 谈谈，听听 Dr. Garcia 的看法。由此可知，女士要向她的导师咨询研究生院的事宜。故答案为 D。
4. A。男士在谈论 Alice 的演讲时说："她怎么能够在那么多人面前还能那么镇定，这要比我强。"由此可知，Alice 在演讲时并不紧张。故答案为 A。
5. C。对话中女士问男士 30 年来气候是否变得越来越糟糕，男士回答说：倒不一定是变糟糕了，但是我们经历了很多的起伏（swings），言外之意是，经历了一些极端天气。故答案为 C。
6. B。对话中男士询问女士 Professor Jordon 的市场营销的书籍。女士回答说："没有货了，你需要预订，而且出版商要三个星期后才能将书送到。"由此可推测，对话发生在书店。故答案为 B。
7. A。女士说："为什么要预订酒店呢？我哥哥的公寓还有两间房间空着。"言外之意是，男士可以住她哥哥的公寓。故答案为 A。
8. C。女士提及看电视新闻是学习英语的一个好方法，男士回应说："如果看完之后你再查阅一下报纸上的相同新闻会更好。"言外之意是如果能将听与阅读结合起来会更好。故答案为 C。
9. B。女士在回应男士所提及的新药时说："用简单的方法解决复杂的问题很少能成功，这样的药还没有奏效的。"由此可知，新药很可能是无效的。故答案为 B 。
10. D。女士说："我要去跟他们谈谈，并提交我的简历。"由此可知，女士要应聘电子公司的工作，故答案为 D。

Section 2

Conversation 1

11. C。对话开始男士提及换一个新的办公地点。故答案为 C。
12. B。男士在提及在郊区办公的优势时指出：房租低，空气好，更安静，停车方便。故答案为 B。
13. B。女士在对话中抱怨潮湿阴冷的冬天没什么事情可做，由此可知，她担心的是冬天没有什么活动。故答案为 B。

Conversation 2

14. B。男士询问女士如何萌发做这样生意的想法时，女士回答说是在 5 年前，那时她在一次度假滑雪中严重受伤。故答案为 B。

15. D。女士提及她升职为培训经理，工作时间加长，没有时间上课。由此可知，女士让老师在家授课的原因是她获得了升职。故答案为 D。
16. C。女士在对话中提及并没有立即放弃工作。故答案为 C。
17. C。女士提及她的公司在搬迁时给她两种选择：跟着搬迁或者接受一大笔钱离开公司。女士选择了后者，本题的干扰项是 B。B 的内容也在听力中提及，但最根本还是她需要钱。故答案为 C。

Conversation 3

18. D。对话中提及单镜头反光相机（single-lens reflex）的优势时指出：focusing is easier；you can see what you are taking；use a number of different lens；expensive。故答案为 D。
19. A。店员在对话末尾提及能够变换镜头是非常重要的，由此可知，镜头（lens）是两种相机最大的区别。故答案为 A。
20. C。对话的结尾顾客感叹 single-lens reflex 价格昂贵，并要求店员给她展示另一种相对便宜的相机：rangefinder camera。由此可推知，顾客最后会买 rangefinder camera。故答案为 C。

Section 3

Passage 1

21. B。文中描述石屋的正面时提及：painted white；a single window with a pink curtain a cross it（只有一面窗户，窗帘拉着）；a wooden door。选项 B 符合文意。故答案为 B。
22. C。文中提及房子的左边是一片平地。故答案为 C。
23. A。文中提及在两座山之间有一块相对平坦的地域，还有一个小镇。故答案为 A。

Passage2

24. D。文中提及本九岁的时候就对蒙古产生了兴趣。故答案为 D。
25. B。文中提及本在阿拉伯国家度过了他的少年时期。故答案为 B。
26. B。文中提及本在攻读硕士学位的时候学习了古典和现代蒙古语课程。故答案为 B。
27. C。文中最后一句提及今天的旅费大约是 5000 美元，但考虑到通货膨胀，这还是便宜的（bargain）。故答案为 C。

Passage 3

28. A。文章开头提及 100 座 9 米高的高塔构成的立式农场。故答案为 A。
29. D。文中提及与进口同类产品相比，Sky Greens 的生产成本要高出 40%。选项 D 提及农场生产的产品与同类进口产品价钱一样是错误的。故答案为 D。
30. A。文中提及 Sky Greens 还享有全世界的城市农场都不具有的得天独厚的优势，即丰富的自然供暖和光照。新加坡全年气温在 30 摄氏度左右。由此可知，Sky Greens 独有的优势是当地的气候。故答案为 A。

Section 4

31. taking into consideration。注意 taking 的-ing 形式。
32. literary。注意单词的拼写。

33. imposed。注意过去时态。
34. anticipate。注意单词的拼写。
35. violations。注意单词的复数形式。
36. financial。注意单词的拼写。
37. avenue。注意单词的拼写。
38. amended。注意-ed 形式。
39. in the wake of。注意连读 wake of，of 的辨音。
40. interpret。注意单词的拼写。

Part II Grammar and Vocabulary

41. B。动词词组辨析。adhere to“坚持”；adjust to“调节以适应”；adopt“采取，采纳”，不与 to 连用；acquaint“使熟悉，使认识”，为及物动词，不与 to 连用。语境为适应学校生活，故答案为 B。
42. C。固定搭配。did for“对……有效”；did in“杀害，搞垮”；did for“整修”；did with“处理，应付”。空格单词的宾语为 old house，后半句提及“卖了个好价钱”，由此可知，语境为“整修旧房子”。故答案为 C。
43. A。名词词义辨析。由动词 contributed“有助于，贡献”可知语境为：Sally 为项目贡献了很多，但却从没有将功劳据为己有。credit 指由于做某事获得认可和表彰。award 指“奖品”，语境强调的是功劳或荣誉。故答案为 A。
44. A。名词词义辨析。point 通常指人们普遍接受的观点。argument 表示“争论”的意思。句中提及体育塑造性格这一观点目前已被人们普遍接受，言外之意，这一观点曾经并不被人们普遍认可。由此可知，本句强调的是“争论”。故答案为 A。
45. A。动词词义辨析。由 midwives“产婆”可知，语境为接生孩子，deliver the babies 为固定的搭配，表示“接生孩子”。故答案为 A。
46. B。形容词词义辨析。conclusive 意为“（事实证据等）令人信服的，确凿的，消除怀疑的”，此处为固定搭配，意为确凿的证据。选项 definite 意为“明确的”；eventual 意为“最终的”；concluding 意为“结尾的”，均可排除。故答案为 B。
47. A。动词词义辨析。由 but 可知，后半句要表达的语境为：最终并没有发言。选项中符合语境的只有 refrain“克制，制止”。prevent“防止”；limit“限制，限定”；restrict“限制，约束”均不符合语境。故答案为 A。
48. A。动词词义辨析。increase 指数量、强度和大小等方面的扩大或增加。expand 指范围、程度、体积和尺寸等方面的扩大或增加。prolong 指“拖延；延长”，为及物动词。句中单词后接宾语 her life，表示“延长生命”。故答案为 A。
49. D。动词词组辨析。break out“爆发，突发”；break down“分解；发生故障；失败”；break in“打断；闯入”；break up“分手；结束”。语境为圣诞节假期。故答案为 D。
50. B。形近词辨析。suspension“悬浮；暂停；停职”；suspense“悬念”；suspending“悬浮的”；suspender“吊裤带；悬挂物”。句中单词与 in 搭配使用，根据语境，表示“选举结果悬而未决”的意思。故答案为 B。

Part III Cloze

51. D。语法知识。前文中的 without it 表示假设，故后句中应使用表将来的时态。故答案为 D。

52. A。语法知识。soldiers，policemen，workers 为并列关系，句中表示否定，故使用 nor。
53. C。动词词组辨析。look into“调查，观察”；look over“检查，查看”；look after“照顾，关心”；look through“浏览”。句中单词后接宾语 health，故使用 look after，表示“照看身体”的意思。故答案为 C。
54. B。介词词组辨析。in accordance with“依照，与……一致”；by means of“依靠，借助于”；with reference to“关于”；on account of“由于，因为”。前文提及如果不纳税，就没有士兵保护我们，没有公务员照看我们的健康、食物和饮水。由此可知，通过纳税，我们付钱给别人，从而购买我们需要的东西。空格处与后句逻辑关系是表示方式。选项中只有 by means of 表示方式。故答案为 B。
55. D。语法知识。空格前后的句中都有动词 need，表示并列关系。选项中能够表示并列关系的词组只有 as much as 和 as well as。而 as well as 后不能跟句子，as much as 在句中表示“一样”的意思。句意为：通过纳税，我们付钱买我们需要的东西，就像付钱买居所和食物一样。故答案为 D。
56. C。逻辑关系。由 but 一词可以判断，本句逻辑关系为转折，选项中只有 though“尽管”表示转折关系。故答案为 C。
57. B。上下文语义。后文中提及如何征收赋税，由此可知本句表达的意思是“纳税是如何进行的”。故答案为 B。
58. A。上下文语义。由后文提及的 income tax“个人所得税”，可知空格处单词应为 person，表示向个人征收的税款。故答案为 A。
59. C。上下文语义。分析句子发现，句中所缺的成分为谓语动词，语境为：在很多国家，存在着一种直接对个人征收的税，即个人所得税。选项中符合语境的只有 exists。故答案为 C。
60. B。固定搭配。in such way 表示“以这样的方式”的意思。故答案为 B。
61. D。词义搭配。语境为：随着纳税者收入的增长，纳税的比例也增大。空格处单词修饰 percentage“百分比”，表示的是数字，故使用 larger。故答案为 D。
62. C。固定搭配。空格处短语与 as high as 搭配使用，表示“高达……”的意思。go up 符合语法。故答案为 C。
63. A。逻辑关系。下文中提及 indirect taxation，与前文提及 direct taxation 意义相反，表转折，选项中可以表转折意义的只有 but。故答案为 A。
64. D。固定搭配。nearly always 表示“几乎总是”的意思。故答案为 D。
65. B。语法知识。结合选项，分析句子结构可知，空格处缺少关系代词。空格所在的从句缺少的是主语，而此处主语是人，故使用 who。故答案为 B。
66. B。固定搭配。in the form of 表示“以……”的方式。故答案为 B。
67. C。逻辑关系。前文提及进口的商品需要付税，此处提及在别的一些国家，商店售卖的商品也要付税，两句是并列的关系，选项中符合的只有 also 和 too，但本句中空格单词用于句中，且前后用逗号隔开，also 在句中只能紧跟动词，故此处用 too。故答案为 C。
68. D。上下文语义。空格处单词与 money 搭配使用，用于被动，结合语境，可知此处单词应表示“收敛钱财”的意思。选项中只有 collected 符合句意。故答案为 D。
69. B。同义词辨析。jewels and fur coats 是 things 的具体例子，由此可知，空格处单词应表示“例如”的意思。like，alike 和 as 都有此义。alike 只做表语；as 为连词，后接句子，均不符合本句的语法规则。故答案为 B。

70. B。上下文语义。语境为：对于必需品征税，虽然会积累金钱，但会让穷人受苦。而只向富人征收如珠宝、皮衣等非必需品的税金，虽然挣的钱减少了，但是会更加_____。结合语境和选项，fairer“更加公平”符合语境。故答案为 B。

Part IV The Use of English

71. estimating → estimated。固定搭配。it is estimated 表示“据估计”的意思。
72. In →By。根据上下文语义，此处应表示“到……”的意思。故使用 by。
73. banned →been。句中表被动，故使用 had been banned。
74. in → on。固定搭配。work on 表示“从事……”。本句表示“从事棉花业”。
75. condition→ conditions。condition 在句中应使用复数，condition 为可数名词。故答案为 conditions。
76. Followed→ Following。从句主语与主句主语 Britain 一致，故应使用现在分词形式。
77. abolish →to。固定搭配。the last to abolish 表示“最后一个废除”的意思。
78. to → into。固定搭配。forced into prostitution“被迫卖淫”。
79. in（去掉）。固定搭配。have sth in common 为固定搭配，表示“有共同之处”。本句表达的意思是“债务奴役很普遍”，故使用 common。
80. been（去掉）。本句中 are 已经表达被动的意义，been 为多余的。

模拟测试题（四）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 10 short conversations. At the end of each conversation, a question will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer.*

1. A. They enjoyed the party better than the other guests.
   B. They knew none of the other guests at the party.
   C. They didn't think much of the food and drinks.
   D. They went a long way to attend the party.
2. A. To the dentist's.
   B. To the market.
   C. To the post office.
   D. To the bookstore.
3. A. She dislikes Dr. Andrews as much as the new physician.
   B. Dr. Andrews has been promoted for his thoroughness.
   C. She disagrees with Dr. Andrews on many occasions.
   D. Dr. Andrews used to keep his patients waiting.
4. A. Tom is usually talkative.
   B. Tom has a very bad temper.
   C. Tom is disliked by his colleagues.
   D. Tom has dozens of things to attend to.
5. A. To find out more about the topic for the seminar.
   B. To make a copy of the schedule for his friend.
   C. To get the seminar schedule for the woman.
   D. To pick up the woman from the library.
6. A. The man doesn't want to sell his textbooks to the woman.
   B. The woman has to get the textbooks in other ways.
   C. The woman has sold her used textbooks to the bookstore.
   D. The man is going to buy his textbooks from a bookstore.
7. A. Give a speech.
   B. Meet his lawyer.
   C. Attend a conference.
   D. Make a business trip.
8. A. Jessie should know the marketing director better.
   B. Jessie is wrong to find fault with her boss.
   C. Jessie seems to have a lot on her mind.
   D. Jessie always says what she thinks.
9. A. Helen is quiet.
   B. Helen is talkative.
   C. Helen is sociable.
   D. Helen is active.
10. A. Jimmy is not serious in making decisions.
    B. Jimmy is rich enough to buy a big house.
    C. Jimmy's words are often not reliable.

D. Jimmy will regret marrying a French woman.

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

11. The Ethical Consumer Research Association will provide information to shoppers on _____.
    A. product price
    B. product quality
    C. manufacturers
    D. production methods
12. According to the conversation, an ethical shopper should _____.
    A. ask for others' advice before buying things
    B. consider the worth of something to be bought
    C. postpone buying things whenever possible
    D. search for things that are less costly
13. According to the conversation, ethical shoppers can be best described as _____.
    A. shrewd
    B. thrifty
    C. extravagant
    D. cautious

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 17 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

14. Which of the following statements is CORRECT about Mary?
    A. She is enjoying her language study.
    B. She is enjoying her management study.
    C. She is not feeling very well at the moment.
    D. She is not happy about her study pressure.
15. What does Mary think of the course initially?
    A. It is useful.
    B. It is difficult.
    C. It is challenging.
    D. It is interesting.
16. What is Mary's problem of living in a family house?
    A. She dislikes the food she eats.
    B. She is unable to sleep well.
    C. She has no chance to make friends.
    D. She finds the rent high.
17. Which of the following is Mr. Davies' advice?
    A. To try to make more friends.
    B. To try to change accommodation.
    C. To spend more time on English.
    D. To stop attending language classes.

Conversation 3

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

18. According to the conversation, the day is special because _____.
    A. many people are surfing the net on that day

B. it is an anniversary of the Internet
C. the net brought about no changes until that day
D. big changes will take place on that day

19. We learn from the conversation that people _____.
A. cannot live without the Internet
B. cannot work without the Internet
C. all use the Internet to keep in touch
D. have varied opinions about Internet use

20. At the end of the conversation, the speakers talk about _____.
A. the future of the Internet
B. the type of office furniture
C. when changes will come
D. how people will use the Internet

Section 3

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 3 short passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choice marked A, B, C and D.*

Passage 1

21. In order to open a bank account, you need to produce _____in addition to your passport.
A. a library card B. a registration form C. a telephone bill D. a receipt

22. Which of the following might NOT be included in the "utility bill"?
A. Rent. B. Gas. C. Water. D. Telephone.

23. According to the passage, what can one do in the post office?
A. Getting contact details.
B. Obtaining tax forms.
C. Paying housing rents.
D. Applying for loans.

Passage 2

24. According to the passage, "scheduling" means that you _____.
A. need to be efficient in work
B. plan your work properly
C. try to finish work ahead of time
D. know how to work in teams

25. According to the passage, one of the activities to relax could be _____.
A. protecting wild animals
B. spending time with your family
C. learning how to read efficiently
D. learning how to do gardening

26. One of the ways to reduce stress is to _____.
A. do better than anyone else
B. fulfill high ambitions in one's work
C. work and have reasonable aims
D. start with a relatively low aim

27. According to the passage, to reduce stress has something to do with the following EXCEPT _____.
A. one's position
B. one's interest
C. one's health
D. one's mood

Passage 3

28. According to the passage, new words tend to come from _____.
A. world politics
B. advances in science

C. areas of life D. all the above

29. The passage explains the larger and richer vocabulary of English mainly from a _____ viewpoint.
A. historical B. cultural C. commercial D. colonial

30. According to the passage, which of the following statements best describes the English language?
A. It is outdated in grammar. B. It accepts new words from science.
C. It has begun taking in new words. D. It tends to embrace new words.

Section 4

Directions: *In this section, you will hear a passage three times. When the passage is read for the first time, you should listen carefully for its general idea. When the passage is read for the second time, you are required to fill in the blanks with the exact words you have just heard. Finally, when the passage is read for the third time, you should check what you have written.*

Tests may be the most unpopular part of academic life. Students hate them because they produce fear and __31__ about being evaluated, and focus on grades instead of learning for learning's sake.

But tests are also valuable. A well-constructed test __32__ what you know and what you still need to learn. Tests help you see how your performance __33__ that of others. And knowing that you'll be tested on __34__ material is certainly likely to __35__ you to learn the material more thoroughly.

However, there's another reason you might dislike tests: You may assume that tests have the power to __36__ your worth as a person. If you do badly on a test, you may be tempted to believe that you've received some __37__ information about yourself from the professor, information that says you're a failure in some significant way.

This is a dangerous—and wrong-headed—assumption. If you do badly on a test, it doesn't mean you are a bad person or stupid. Or that you'll never do better again, and that your life is __38__. If you don't do well on a test, you're the same person you were before you took the test — no better, no worse. You just did badly on a test. That's it.

__39__, tests are not a measure of your value as an individual — they are a measure only of how well and how much you studied. Tests are tools; they are indirect and __40__ measures of what we know.

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

Directions: *There are ten sentences in this section. Beneath each sentence there are four words or phrases marked A, B, C and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Mark your answers on your answer sheet.*

41. Mary and John are busy looking for a hotel for their wedding _____.
A. meal B. banquet C. refreshment D. snack

42. Mini-skirts first _____ in the 1960s.
A. caught on B. caught in C. caught out D. caught up

43. That outburst at the meeting was _____ of his bad temper.
A. expository B. explanatory C. illustrative D. revealing

44. The earthquake refugees are _____for food and blankets.

A. desirous B. badly off C. seriously off D. ambitious

45. Most Chinese people went to work by bike within living _____.
A. mind B. knowledge C. memory D. scope

46. The speaker was very good at _____his ideas during the discussion.
A. putting aside B. putting across C. putting back D. putting off

47. The food is good at this hotel, but the _____ is poor; the waiters don't seem to be well trained.
A. service B. repair C. charge D. maintenance

48. Slavery was _____in America in the 19th century.
A. terminated B. cancelled C. abandoned D. abolished

49. The boys in the dorm _____ a coin to decide who would clean the floor.
A. held B. tossed C. put D. collected

50. The patterns of spoken language are _____from those of writing.
A. distinct B. distinctive C. distinguished D. distinguishing

Part III CLOZE

Directions: *Decide which of the choices given below would best complete the passage if inserted in the corresponding blanks. Mark the best choice for each blank on your answer sheet.*

"Congratulations, Mr. Cooper. It's a girl."

Fatherhood is going to have a different meaning and __51__ a different response from every man who hears these words. Some feel __52__ when they receive the news, __53__ others worry, wondering whether they will be good father. __54__ there are some men who like children and may have had __55__ experience with them, others do not particularly __56__ children and spend little time with them. Many fathers and mothers have been planning and looking forward to children for some time. __57__ other couples, pregnancy was an accident that both husband and wife have __58__ willingly or unwillingly.

Whatever the __59__ to the birth of a child, it is obvious the shift from the role of husband to __60__ of a father is a difficult task. __61__, unfortunately, few attempts have been made to __62__ fathers in this resocialization __63__. Although numerous books have been written about mothers, __64__ recently has literature focused on the __65__ of a father.

It is argued that the transition to the father's role, although difficult, is not __66__ as great as the transition the wife must __67__ to the mother's role. The mother's role seems to require a complete __68__ in daily routine. __69__, the father's role is less demanding and __70__.

51. A. bring down B. bring forth C. bring off D. bring in
52. A. emotional B. sentimental C. bewildered D. proud
53. A. while B. when C. if D. as
54. A. When B. If C. Although D. Yet
55. A. considerate B. considerable C. considering D. considered
56. A. care about B. care of C. care with D. care for
57. A. For B. Of C. From D. Upon
58. A. received B. taken C. accepted D. obtained

59.	A. reply	B. reaction	C. readiness	D. reality
60.	A. what	B. this	C. one	D. that
61.	A. As a result	B. For example	C. Yet	D. Also
62.	A. educate	B. cultivate	C. inform	D. convert
63.	A. step	B. process	C. point	D. time
64.	A. /	B. just	C. quite	D. only
65.	A. role	B. work	C. career	D. position
66.	A. a little	B. just	C. nearly	D. almost
67.	A. take	B. make	C. carry	D. accept
68.	A. transformation	B. realization	C. socialization	D. reception
69.	A. In addition	B. Above all	C. Generally	D. However
70.	A. current	B. immediate	C. present	D. quick

Part IV The Use of English

Directions: *This part consists of a short passage. In this passage there are altogether 10 mistakes, one in each numbered line. You may have to change a word, add a word or delete a word. Mark out the mistakes and put the corrections in the blanks provided.*

The global conflict which was labeled World War Ⅱ emerged from the Great Depression, an upheaval which stabilized governments, economies, and entire nations around the world. In Germany, for instance, rise of Adolph Hitler and the Nazi Party occurred at least partly because Hitler claimed to be able to transform a weakened Germany for a self-sufficient military and economic power which could control its own destiny in Europe and world affairs, even as liberal power like the United States and Great Britain were buffeted by the Depression. 71. _____ 72. _____ 73. _____ 74. _____

In the United States, President Franklin Roosevelt's "New Deal" mitigated some effects of Depression, but did not end the economic crisis. In 1939, when World War Ⅱ erupted in Europe as Germany's invasion of Poland, numerous economic indicators suggested that the United States be still deeply mired in the Depression. For instance, the American gross domestic product declined for four straight years. Unemployment was another measure of the Depression's impact. In 1929 and 1939, the American unemployment rate averaged 13. 3 percent—a significant pool of unused labor and often, suffering citizens. 75. _____ 76. _____ 77. _____

In spite of this dismal statistics, the United States was, in other ways, reasonably well prepared for war. The wide array of New Deal programs and agencies which existed in 1939 meant that federal government was markedly larger and more actively engage in social and economic activities than it had been in more 1929. Moreover, the New Deal had adapted Americans to a national government which played a prominent role in national affairs. 78. _____ 79. _____ 80. _____

模拟测试题（四）解析

Part I　Listening Comprehension

Section 1

1. B。男士提及主人不辞辛苦（went out of the way）成功举办了晚会。女士说要是我们能认识一些其他的宾客就好了。由此可知，在宴会上，他们没有认识几个宾客。故答案为 B。
2. A。女士提及她会在看完牙医之后去书店帮男士买信封和邮票。由此可知，女士要先去看牙医。故答案为 A。
3. D。对话中，女士在评论新来的医生时说道，他不会像安德鲁医生一样，让病人等几个小时。言外之意是，安德鲁医生会让病人等几个小时。故答案为 D。
4. A。对话中女士提及汤姆今天不高兴，他都没说几句话。男士回应说，那可不像我们认识的汤姆。言外之意是，汤姆以前很健谈。故答案为 A。
5. C。对话中，男士提及会去图书馆帮女士拿一份研讨会的安排。故答案为 C。
6. B。对话中女士向男士询问能否购买他的心理学书籍。男士回答说，他已经将书卖给了学校书店。由此可知，女士只能通过别的方法得到书了。故答案为 B。
7. A。对话中女士提及男士在周二下午要在狮子俱乐部演讲。故答案为 A。
8. D。对话中女士评价杰西时说道，她如果有什么想法，一定会让所有的人都知道。由此可知，杰西总是会说出她的想法。故答案为 D。
9. A。女士在评价团队里的三位女士时说道，贝蒂是她见过的最能说的人，而海伦却恰恰相反，由此可知，海伦话不多，很沉默。故答案为 A。
10. C。男士在回应女士对吉米的谈论时说道，吉米曾经说他买了一栋大房子，但现在他还和马克共用一间公寓。由此可知，吉米的话不可信。故答案为 C。

Section 2

Conversation 1

11. C。对话中提及 ECRA 会让消费者知道生产商都做了些什么。由此可知，ECRA 会提供生产商的一些信息。故答案为 C。
12. B。对话中提及要做一个有道德的消费者，就要考虑少买物品，人们总是买一些不需要的商品，所以在花钱购物之前要再三考虑。由此可知，一个有道德的消费者要考虑所买商品的价值。故答案为 B。
13. B。对话中在建议如何成为有道德的消费者时提及，要买一些质量好的商品，这样更耐用，还可以买一些二手商品。由此可知，成为一个有道德的消费者就是要节俭（thrifty）。故答案为 B。

Conversation 2

14. D。对话中男士问玛丽课程学习得如何时，玛丽回答说不是很好，随后说明一系列学习上的问题，由此可知，玛丽由于学习的压力而不愉快。故答案为 D。
15. A。对话中玛丽说到她一开始认为学习两门语言会非常有用。故答案为 A。

16. C。当玛丽说到住宿的问题时，提及她租住校外公寓时会在夜晚和周末感到孤独，因为没有朋友。故答案为 C。
17. B。对话中男士给予玛丽两条建议：与德语老师沟通，停上德语课；更换住宿地点。故答案为 B。

Conversation 3

18. B。对话中，男士提及今天是个特别的日子是因为今天是互联网 20 周年。故答案为 B。
19. D。对话谈论了网络对人们的生活和工作产生的巨大影响。但是也提及不一定离开了互联网就不能生活，对话中列举了人们可以通过写信的方式与家人沟通交流。由此可排除 A，B，C 三个选项，这三个选项过于绝对。故答案为 D。
20. A。对话最后男士说道，不知道再过 20 年，互联网会变成什么样子。女士回应说不论好坏，互联网将会给我们的生活和社会带来更大的影响。由此可知，两人在讨论互联网的未来。故答案为 A。

Section 3

Passage 1

21. C。文章中提及在银行开户需要提供能够证明居住地的证据。如：房屋租赁合同（housing renting book）、纳税申请表格（tax form）、水费单或电费单。结合选项，能够显示居住地的证件只有电话费单据（telephone bill），与水费单或电费单类似。故答案为 C。
22. A。文章提及物业账单（utility bill）包括 electricity，gas，water and telephone。故答案为 A。
23. D。文章中提及当地的邮局可以帮助你申请低成本贷款。故答案为 D。

Passage 2

24. B。文章在解释 scheduling 时说道：不需要每天安排很多事情，如果很忙，可以放弃一到两件事情。言外之意是要恰当地规划工作。故答案为 B。
25. D。文章在解释如何放松时提及可以读本书，或者培养一个新的爱好，或是花点时间和宠物待在一起。选项中最接近原文的只有 D：学习园艺，即培养一个新的爱好。故答案为 D。
26. C。文中提及缓解压力的一种方法是尽力而为，不要要求自己和别人做到最好。选项 C：为工作和生活设置合理的目标，符合文意。故答案为 C。
27. A。文中提及缓解压力的五个方面，“T”指的是 health；“R”提及了 hobby；“S”提及了 smile 和 sleep，与心情（mood）有关。故答案为 A。

Passage 3

28. D。文中提及文字来自于医学的新发展（new development in medicine）、政治（politics）、生活的各个方面。故答案为 D。
29. A。文章在回答英语语言是否比其他语言拥有更多的单词的问题时，提及了 Germanic language；Norman Conquest in 1066，由此可知，文章在回答这一问题时是从历史的角度。故答案为 A。
30. D。文章最后提及来自一个扩张、贸易和殖民国家的英国，而这些造就了英语吸收各种新的单词。由此可知，英语是欢迎新单词的。故答案为 D。

Section 4

31. anxiety。注意单词的拼写。
32. identifies。注意主谓一致。
33. compares to。注意主谓一致。
34. a body of。听音时容易漏听 a。
35. motivate。注意单词的拼写。
36. define。
37. fundamental。单词拼写时容易将-da 误拼成-de。
38. ruined。注意-ed 形式。
39. In short。注意首字母要大写。
40. imperfect。注意单词的拼写。

Part II Grammar and Vocabulary

41. B。近义词辨析。meal 为“餐”的总称，banquet“宴会，盛宴”；refreshment“茶点，点心”；snack“小吃，快餐”。句中语境为婚礼（wedding）现场。故答案为 B。
42. A。动词词组辨析。caught on“明白，变得流行”；caught in“被……困住，绊住”；caught out“发觉……有错误”；caught up“捉住”。将选项一一代入，符合语境的只有 caught on，表示“迷你裙最早于 20 世纪 60 年代流行”。故答案为 A。
43. C。固定搭配。be illustrative of 表示说明解释，其他三个选项无此搭配。故答案为 C。
44. B。固定搭配。be badly off“穷困，缺少”；seriously off“认真”；desirous“渴望……的，想得到……的”；ambitious“有雄心的，有野心的，有抱负的”。句中提及难民和食物、毯子，be badly off 符合语境，表示“地震难民急需食物和毯子”的意思。故答案为 B。
45. C。固定搭配。within/in living memory“在当今人们的记忆中”，强调现在活着的人的记忆。句意为：人们仍清晰记得大多数中国人以前骑自行车上班。故答案为 C。
46. B。动词词组辨析。put aside“储存，保留；把……放一边，暂不考虑”；put across“表达/解释清楚（自己的想法等）”。put back 和 put off 意思接近，意为“推迟，延迟”。结合语境，put across 合适。句意为：这位发言人在讨论中很善于把他的想法解释清楚。故答案为 B。
47. A。上下文语义。前半句正面评价酒店的饭菜，后半句以 but 开头，表示转折。后半句提及服务员好像不是训练有素，可知酒店的服务不太好，故选择 A 项 service。repair“修理”；charge“收费”；maintenance“维护，保养”，这三项与服务员的训练无关，所以排除。
48. D。动词词义辨析。terminate“终结”，通常指终止合同、租约、协议等；cancel“取消”，多指取消债务、比赛、旅行计划等；abandon“丢弃，放弃，抛弃”，指离弃、遗弃需要支持、帮助的人或动物，或因困难放弃做某事；abolish 指彻底废除某种制度、规章或习俗，故 D 符合句意。
49. B。固定搭配。“抛硬币”用动词 toss“抛，投，掷”，构成 toss a coin。句意为：宿舍里的男孩通过抛硬币决定由谁来打扫地板。故答案为 B。
50. A。形容词词义辨析。distinct“有区别的，不同的”，特指有别于同类事物，与 from

搭配，意为“与……有所区别”；distinctive“特有的，有特色的”，不能与 from 搭配使用；distinguish“使区别于”，与 from 搭配意为“把……区分开来”。句中口语与书面语属于同类事物。故答案为 A。

Part III Cloze

51. B。动词词组辨析。bring down“降低，打倒”；bring forth“产生，发表”；bring off“完成，救出，成功”；bring in“引进，生产”。空格后为 a different response，结合选项，符合语境的为 bring forth，表示“产生不同的反应”。故答案为 B。
52. D。上下文语义。本句主要说明不同男人在成为父亲时的反应，后文提及有的人担忧，由此推知，本句语境应为高兴或自豪。故答案为 D。
53. A。逻辑关系。本句主要说明男人成为父亲时的反应，前后两个半句应表示转折关系。选项中只有 while 表示转折。故答案为 A。
54. C。逻辑关系。由前后两句中的 like children 和 spend little time with them 可知，两句应表示转折关系。选项中 yet 和 although 都可以表示转折关系，而 yet 多用于否定句和疑问句中，故答案为 C。
55. B。上下文语义。后文中提及有的父亲陪孩子的时间很少（spend little time with them），前后两句的逻辑关系是转折，由此可知，本句中要表达的意思应为：有的父亲很喜欢孩子，育儿也很有经验。选项中符合语境的只有 considerable，表示“可观的，相当大的”的意思。故答案为 B。
56. D。动词词组辨析。care about“担心，关心”；care of“由……转变”；care with 无此搭配；care for“照顾，照料（老、弱、病、幼），喜欢”。本句的语境为：照顾孩子。故答案为 D。
57. A。介词用法。本句的语境为：对于另外一些夫妻来说。选项中符合语境的介词只有 for 表示“对于”的意思。故答案为 A。
58. C。近义词词义辨析。obtain“得到，获取”侧重指通过自己主动的一番努力取得；receive“接到，拿到或获得（被给予、赠予或穿送的东西）”，着重仅仅接到或收到这一事实，而不含采取主动或积极行动的意思；accept 意为“接受”，指经过考虑，由主观意志来决定接受；take 与 receive 同义，侧重不带主观意愿地收下或接受。语境为：情愿或者不情愿接受怀孕这一意外，强调主观意志，accept 符合语境。故答案为 C。
59. B。上下文语义。文章第二段主要说明男人对于成为父亲的不同反应。空格所在句是第二段内容的呼应。前文提及 response，空格处单词应表示相同的意思，即“反应”。reaction 符合句意。故答案为 B。
60. D。语法知识。本句为比较级结构，空格处单词指代前文提及的 role，role 为可数名词单数，故使用代词 that。故答案为 D。
61. C。逻辑关系。前文提及丈夫角色到父亲角色的转换并不是一件容易的事。后文提及 unfortunately（不幸的是），由此可知，两句的逻辑关系为转折，且用于句首表示否定（few attempts），选项中只有 yet 合适。故答案为 C。
62. A。上下文语义。根据上下文判断本句的语境应为：几乎没有人尝试去教育这些父亲。故答案为 A。
63. B。上下文语义。前文提及丈夫角色到父亲角色的转换并不是一件容易的事。本句的 resocialization 表达的正是这一意思，结合选项，可以判断 process 符合语境，表示

“角色转化的社会化过程”。故答案为 B。

64. D。上下文语义。由前半句 Although 可以判断，空格所在句与前句表示相反的关系。前文提及大量有关母亲角色的书籍，故本句的语境应为：很少有父亲角色的书籍。only 符合语境。故答案为 D。
65. A。上下文语义。本段主要讲述男性作为父亲的角色。结合上下文就可判断出 role 为正确答案。故答案为 A。
66. C。副词词义辨析。空格处副词修饰比较级 as…as，选项中符合语境的只有 nearly，表示“几乎，差不多”。故答案为 C。
67. B。动词搭配。空格处单词为动词，宾语为 transition，结合上下文，语境应为：做出角色的转化，转化角色。结合选项，make 与 transition 搭配使用，表示“转换角色”，符合语境。故答案为 B。
68. A。上下文语义。前文提及 transition“转换”，空格所在句讨论的是母亲的角色转化，选项中与 transition 同义的只有 transformation“转化，转变”。故答案为 A。
69. D。逻辑关系。由前后两句的 complete 和 less demanding 可知，两句的逻辑关系为转折，选项中表示转折的只有 However。故答案为 D。
70. B。形容词词义辨析。空格处单词为形容词，做表语，修饰 father’s role。immediate 和 quick 都表示“立即的”的意思，但 immediate 更强调“紧急的，迫切的”的意思，更符合语境。故答案为 B。

Part IV The Use of English

71. stabilized →destabilized。上下文语义。句子的主语为 upheaval“剧变，动乱”，根据常识，动乱使政府不稳定，故使用 destabilized。
72. ˆrise → the。冠词的用法。名词 rise 后有 of 短语修饰，表示特指，故应添加定冠词 the。
73. for → into。固定搭配。transform…into“将……改变为……”。
74. Europe →European。语法知识。affair 为名词，修饰语应为形容词，故使用形容词 European，表示“欧洲的事务”。
75. as →with。介词用法。语境为：随着德国入侵波兰，表示“随着”的意思的介词应使用 with。
76. be→ was。时态用法。句子为一般过去时，应使用 be 的过去时态，主语为单数，表示美国。故使用 was。
77. In → Between。介词用法。语境为：1929 到 1939 年间。应使用 between，表示“在……之间”。
78. this → these。名词单复数。名词 statistics 意为“统计数据”时，可数且为复数。故使用 these。
79. engage→ engaged。固定搭配。be engaged in 表示“参与”的意思。
80. more → 去掉 more。介词用法。表示具体的年份时只使用介词 in。

模拟测试题（五）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 10 short conversations. At the end of each conversation, a question will be asked about what was said. Both the conversation and the question will be spoken only once. After each question there will be a pause. During the pause, you must read the four choices marked A, B, C and D, and decide which is the best answer.*

1. A. The man enjoys traveling by car.
   B. The man lives far from the subway.
   C. The man is good at driving.
   D. The man used to own a car.
2. A. Tony should continue taking the course.
   B. She approves of Tony's decision.
   C. Tony can choose another science course.
   D. She can't meet Tony so early in the morning.
3. A. She has to study for the exam.
   B. She is particularly interested in plays.
   C. She's eager to watch the new play.
   D. She can lend her notes to the man.
4. A. They will be replaced by online education sooner or later.
   B. They will attract fewer kids as online education expands.
   C. They will continue to exist along with online education.
   D. They will limit their teaching to certain subjects only.
5. A. Most students would like to work for a newspaper.
   B. Most students find a job by reading advertisements.
   C. Most students find it hard to get a job after they graduate.
   D. Most students don't want jobs advertised in the newspapers.
6. A. Move the washing machine to the basement.
   B. Turn the basement into a workshop.
   C. Repair the washing machine.
   D. Finish his assignment.
7. A. Some students at the back cannot hear the professor.
   B. The professor has changed his reading assignment.
   C. Some of the students are not on the professor's list.
   D. The professor has brought extra copies of his assignment.
8. A. She doesn't want to talk about the contest.
   B. She's modest about her success in the contest.
   C. She's spent two years studying English in Canada.

D. She's very proud of her success in the speech contest.

9. A. Talking about sports.
   B. Writing up local news.
   C. Reading newspapers.
   D. Putting up advertisements.

10. A. They shouldn't change their plan.
    B. They'd better change their mind.
    C. The tennis game won't last long.
    D. Weather forecasts are not reliable.

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

11. Which of the statements about the auto show is INCORRECT?
    A. The show will have more stands this year.
    B. The show will have more visitors this year.
    C. The number of overseas visitors will be the same this year.
    D. The number of exhibition days will be the same this year.

12. According to the conversation, the price for a stand would include _____.
    A. a catalogue B. a poster C. two desks D. four chairs

13. During the conversation, the man seems to be more interested in _____.
    A. the size of the show
    B. the cost of the stand
    C. the basic furniture
    D. the visitor number

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 17 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

14. What is Jim interested in?
    A. Investing in the company's product.
    B. Buying a new educational computer.
    C. Joining the computer company.
    D. Reading the campaign plan.

15. The advertisements will be placed in all the following EXCEPT _____.
    A. family magazines
    B. Sunday newspapers
    C. morning television
    D. teenage magazines

16. The advertisements are intended to be seen by _____.
    A. parents only
    B. children only
    C. school teachers
    D. whole families

17. Linda sounds _____about the success of the campaign plan.
    A. confident B. hesitant C. uncertain D. delighted

Conversation 3

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

18. John has worked in all the following places EXCEPT _____.

A. a book shop　　B. a paper factory
C. a school　　D. a fastfood restaurant

19. From the conversation, we learn that John _____.
A. has no interest　　B. has only one interest
C. has two interests　　D. has quite a few interests

20. Sue Green seems to be more interested in John's experience of _____.
A. working in a paper factory　　B. working in a youth club
C. looking after his brother and sister　　D. looking after his young friends

Section 3

Directions: *In this section, you will hear 3 short passages. At the end of each passage, you will hear some questions. Both the passage and the questions will be spoken only once. After you hear a question, you must choose the best answer from the four choice marked A, B, C and D.*

Passage 1

21. According to the passage, the average age of the fleet of Delta/Northwest is _____.
A. 10 years　　B. 14 years　　C. 16 years　　D. 20 years

22. It can be learned from the passage that _____.
A. air journeys are quite often far from comfortable
B. air travelers usually enjoy luxury during flight
C. air travelers usually enjoy upgraded conditions
D. airlines always provide good in-flight entertainment

23. Older planes can stay safe for more than 25 years because of the following EXCEPT _____.
A. new engines　　B. strong materials
C. proper maintenance　　D. new interior

Passage 2

24. Which job will involve supervising workers using dangerous equipment?
A. Assistant site manager.　　B. Carpenter supervisor.
C. Assembly supervisor.　　D. Automobile service station manager.

25. Who will also decide on the prices of products and services?
A. Airlines' flight service manager.
B. Automobile service station manager.
C. Assistant site manager.
D. Carpenter supervisor.

26. Who may also do some of the work he supervises?
A. Assistant site manager.　　B. Airlines' flight service manager.
C. Assembly supervisor.　　D. Carpenter supervisor.

27. Which job offers the highest salary?
A. Assistant site manager.
B. Automobile service station manager.

C. Carpenter supervisor.

D. Airlines' flight service manager.

Passage 3

28. Where were the two men filmed?

A. In the jewelry shop.　　B. In the City Mall.

C. Near the lorry.　　D. In the parking lot.

29. Witnesses saw the two men _____.

A. leave the lorry together

B. leave the lorry without hoods

C. run back to the lorry separately

D. run back to the lorry without hoods

30. Which of the following details is CORRECT?

A. The lorry was originally painted white.

B. The lorry had no registration plates.

C. The shorter man was the passenger.

D. The taller man was the driver.

Section 4

Directions: *In this section, you will hear a passage three times. When the passage is read for the first time, you should listen carefully for its general idea. When the passage is read for the second time, you are required to fill in the blanks with the exact words you have just heard. Finally, when the passage is read for the third time, you should check what you have written.*

It's difficult to estimate the number of youngsters involved in home schooling, where children are not sent to school and receive their formal education from one or both parents. __31__ and court decisions have made it legally possible in most states for parents to educate their children at home, and each year more people take advantage of that opportunity. Some states require parents or a home tutor to meet teacher certification standards, and many require parents to complete legal forms to verify that their children are receiving __32__ in state-approved curricula.

Home education claim that it's less expensive and far more __33__ than mass public education. Moreover, they cite several advantages: alleviation of school overcrowding, strengthened family relationships, lower __34__ rates, the fact that students are allowed to learn at their own rate, increased __35__, higher standardized test scores, and reduced __36__ problems.

Critics of the home schooling movement __37__ that it creates as many problems as it solves. They acknowledge that, in a few cases, home schooling offers educational opportunities superior to those found in most public schools, but few parents can provide such educational advantages. Some parents who withdraw their children from the schools __38__ home schooling have an inadequate educational background and insufficient formal training to provide a satisfactory education for their children. Typically, parents have fewer technological resources __39__ than schools do. However, the relatively

inexpensive computer technology that is readily available today is causing some to challenge the notion that home schooling is in any way __40__ more highly structured classroom education.

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

Directions: *There are ten sentences in this section. Beneath each sentence there are four words or phrases marked A, B, C and D. Choose one word or phrase that best completes the sentence. Mark your answers on your answer sheet.*

41. Our office has recently _____ to a new computer system.
A. altered B. converted C. transformed D. modified
42. The crowd went _____ as soon as the singer stepped onto the stage.
A. wild B. emotional C. uncontrolled D. unrestricted
43. Our school library is _____ closed for repairs.
A. shortly B. quickly C. temporarily D. rapidly
44. His plan is carefully prepared and full of details, so it is a very _____ one.
A. elaborate B. refined C. ambitious D. complex
45. They've lifted a two-year-long economic _____ on the country.
A. enclosure B. restriction C. blockade D. prohibition
46. She must have been pretty _____ to fall for such an old trick.
A. interested B. gullible C. enthusiastic D. shrewd
47. During the summer vacation, kids are often seen hanging _____ in the streets.
A. about B. on C. over D. out
48. Because of the economic crisis, industrial output in the region remained _____.
A. motionless B. inactive C. stagnant D. immobile
49. His _____ in gambling has eventually brought about his ruin.
A. indulgence B. habit C. action D. engagement
50. As there was no road, the travelers _____ up a rocky slope on their way back.
A. ran B. hurried C. scrambled D. crawled

Part III CLOZE

Directions: *Decide which of the choices given below would best complete the passage if inserted in the corresponding blanks. Mark the best choice for each blank on your answer sheet.*

How men first learned to invent words is unknown; __51__, the origin of language is a mystery. All we really know is that men, unlike animals, somehow invented certain __52__ to express thoughts and feelings, actions and things, __53__ they could communicate with each other; and that later they agreed __54__ certain signs, called letters, which could be __55__ to represent those sounds, and which could be __56__. Those sounds, whether spoken, __57__ written in letters, we call words.

The power of words, then, lies in their __58__—the things they bring up before our minds. Words become __59__ with meaning for us by experience; __60__ the longer we live, the more certain words __61__ to us the happy and sad events of our past; and the more we __62__, the more the number of words that mean something to us __63__.

Great writers are those who not only have great thoughts but also express these thoughts in words which appeal __64__ to our minds and emotions. This __65__ and telling use of words is what we call __66__ style. Above all, the real poet is a master of __67__. He can convey his meaning in words which sing like music, and which __68__ their position and association can __69__ men to tears. We should, therefore, learn to choose our words carefully and use them accurately, or they will __70__ our speech or writing silly and vulgar.

51. A. in addition	B. in other words	C. in a word	D. in summary
52. A. sounds	B. gestures	C. signs	D. movements
53. A. such that	B. as that	C. so that	D. in that
54. A. in	B. with	C. of	D. upon
55. A. spelt	B. combined	C. written	D copied
56. A. written down	B. handed down	C. remembered	D. observed
57. A. and	B. yet	C. also	D. or
58. A. functions	B. associations	C. roles	D. links
59. A. filled	B. full	C. live	D. active
60. A. but	B. or	C. yet	D. and
61. A. reappear	B. recall	C. remember	D. recollect
62. A. read and think	B. read and recall	C. read and learn	D. read and recite
63. A. raises	B. increases	C. improves	D. emerges
64. A. intensively	B. extensively	C. broadly	D. powerfully
65. A. charming	B. academic	C. conventional	D. common
66. A. written	B. spoken	C. literary	D. dramatic
67. A. signs	B. words	C. style	D. sound
68. A. in	B. on	C. over	D. by
69. A. move	B. engage	C. make	D. force
70. A. transform	B. change	C. make	D. convert

Part IV The Use of English

Directions: *This part consists of a short passage. In this passage there are altogether 10 mistakes, one in each numbered line. You may have to change a word, add a word or delete a word. Mark out the mistakes and put the corrections in the blanks provided.*

It should not be taken for granted that recycling is more efficient than chucking something away. Compare all the costs, including collection, landfill, disposal, pollution and the value of new materials is difficult. 71. _____

And the signs are that recycling usually does make sense. A study by the Technical University of Denmark looked at 55 products and compared the effects of buying, burning or recycling them. More than 80% of the time, the researchers found recycling was the more efficient thing to do with household rubbish. Recycling aluminum requires 95% less energy than making it at the beginning; the figure is 70% for plastics and 40% for paper. 72. _____ 73. _____ 74. _____

So what is the best way to get more people recycle more? The first step is to use new technologies that allow for a "single stream" of recyclable waste which is sorted on a conveyor belt use an arsenal of hands, "spinning disc" screens and sorting machines. People are more inclined to recycle things even if they do not have to sort them into different bins. 75. _____ 76. _____ 77. _____

The second step is to acknowledge that the best way of recycling waste may well be to sell them, often to emerging markets. What's more, those who are prepared to buy waste are likely to make good use of it. 78. _____

The last step is to make people pay their non-recyclable waste and reward them for what they recycle. There are limits to this approach: you do not want people to put non-recyclable rubbish into the recycling bin just to earn credits. But a system that relies less on self-interest than on virtue should both increase recycling and decrease neighborly ill will. 79. _____ 80. _____

模拟测试题（五）解析

Part I　Listening Comprehension

Section 1

1. D。对话中提及男士刚刚卖了车，不是因为不喜欢驾车，而是因为刚刚搬到离地铁口很近的地方，上下班往来很方便。符合对话内容的只有 D 选项。故答案为 D。
2. A。对话中 Tony 提到要放弃上信息科学课，因为早晨上课太早了。女士回答说：那真的是不上课的好理由吗？由此可知，女士认为 Tony 不上课的理由太牵强，她认为 Tony 应该继续上课。故答案为 A。
3. C。女士问男士："要是你今晚没有什么特别的事情，我们可不可以去大剧院看新上映的话剧？"由此可知，女士很想看新话剧。故答案为 C。
4. C。男士问女士线上教育会不会取代传统教育。女士回答说："我觉得有点悬。尽管越来越多的孩子在线上学习，但他们当中很少有人会完全放弃学校教育。"由此可知，女士认为，传统学校教育和与线上教育并存。故答案为 C。
5. B。女士在回答毕业生如何找工作时提出他们会查阅报纸上的招聘广告（Want Ads）。故答案为 B。
6. D。男士说艾伦在地下室修洗衣机，女士回应说："他不是应该在写学期论文吗？"由此可知，女士觉得艾伦应该在写作业。故答案为 D。
7. C。女士说教室后面的几个同学没有阅读作业资料，但男士回答说，学生名单上只有 38 名学生，他没有带多余的资料。由此可知，有些学生的名字不在学生名单上。故答案为 C。
8. B。对话中女士对男士的赞扬回应说："我不认为这有什么了不起的，我在加拿大学了两个暑假的英语。"由此可知，女士认为取得英语演讲的冠军很正常，她对所获得的成绩很谦虚。故答案为 B。
9. C。对话中男士请女士将体育部分递给他，女士也请男士把分类广告和当地新闻部分给她。由此可知，两人在读报纸。故答案为 C。
10. A。对话中女士建议如果明天还像今天这么热的话，就取消打网球的计划。但男士回答说："我不认为这种天气会持续很久，天气预报说今天下午就会凉快了。"由此可知，男士不希望更改计划。故答案为 A。

Section 2

Conversation 1

11. C。对话中提及今年与去年相比，人数和展位都会增加，言外之意，外国参会人员也会增加。故答案为 C。
12. D。一个基本的展位包括中英双语的两份展览目录、一张桌子、四把椅子和电力照明。故答案为 D。
13. B。对话的后半部分，男士一直在询问展位的价钱。由此可知，他对展位的花费更感兴趣。故答案为 B。

Conversation 2

14. A。对话开头男士吉姆提到正在考虑投资女士公司生产的学习机。故答案为 A。
15. C。对话中女士提及他们会在傍晚电视节目（early evening television）、家庭杂志、周日报纸和一些严肃的青少年杂志上刊登广告。选项 C：早间电视节目，并没有提及。故答案为 C。
16. D。对话最后提及将广告刊登在周日的报纸上是考虑到周日全家人汇聚在一起。由此可知，是希望全家人都看到广告的内容。故答案为 D。
17. A。对话中女士在回答男士提出的问题时说道："我们做了调查"（we've done the research）或者是"市场调查显示"（a market research shows that），由此可知，她对计划很自信。故答案为 A。

Conversation 3

18. C。男士提及工作的地方包括：paper factory（造纸厂）、fast-food restaurant（快餐厅）和 book stop（书店）。故答案为 C。
19. D。男士在提及他的兴趣时说道，他喜欢旅游，喜欢做运动，喜欢弹钢琴。由此可知，他有很多爱好。故答案为 D。
20. B。女士在问及最后一个问题时说道：最重要的一个问题（the most important question）是是否有与孩子相处的经历？当男士回答说在青年俱乐部工作时，女士表现出了很大兴趣。故答案为 B。

Section 3

Passage 1

21. C。文章中提及 Delta/Northwest 航空公司的飞机的平均使用年数为 16 年。故答案为 C。
22. A。文章开头提及很少有人奢望在航空旅行时享受奢华的服务，但近些年来，连基本的设施都陈旧不堪了。由此可知，航空旅行绝不是一件舒适的事情。故答案为 A。
23. D。文末提及很多老旧的飞机制造得都很结实，而且保养得当。一架飞机在使用 20 年以上还能保证安全是因为飞机的引擎和主要部件是刚换过的或是刚升级过的。航空公司没有多大的压力去更新内部设施，除非是有安全事件或是能省钱的新设计。故选项 D "全新的内部设施" 不符合文意。故答案为 D。

Passage 2

24. C。装配主管（assembly supervision）主要监管工人使用危险的设施。故答案为 C。
25. B。汽车服务站经理（automobile service station manager）的主要职责是指挥加油站和汽车修理站的工作、做经营决策、制定工作职责、制定产品和服务的价格。故答案为 B。
26. D。文中提及如果时间允许，木匠监督员（carpenter supervisor）会做一些木匠的工作。题目问的是哪些监管者会做被监管者的工作。故答案为 D。
27. A。对比听到的几个数字，站点经理助理（assistant site managers）所得工资最高，高达 86584 美元。故答案为 A。

Passage 3

28. C。文中提及录像中的两个人距离一辆停着的运货卡车 200 米。由此可知，两人的位置在卡车附近。故答案为 C。

29. B。文中提及目击者称目睹两人没有戴头巾（without hoods），且分别离开卡车。故答案为 B。
30. A。文章在描述两名劫犯时提及副驾驶上坐的劫犯更瘦稍高些（slimmer and slightly taller），停在市政厅停车场的货车在上个月将车漆由白色喷成了银色，由此可知，车漆最初是喷成白色的。故答案为 A。

Section 4

31. Legislation。注意单词的拼写和首字母大写。
32. instruction。注意单词的拼写。
33. efficient。注意单词的拼写。
34. dropout。单词中/p/和/au/连读，干扰单词的辨音。
35. motivation。注意单词的拼写。
36. discipline。注意单词的拼写。
37. contend。contend 在这里做动词，表示“声称，主张”的意思。
38. in favor of。听音时不要漏听单词 of。
39. at their disposal。注意单词 disposal 的拼写。
40. inferior to。inferior 的单词拼写容易出错。

Part II Grammar & Vocabulary

41. B。近义词词义辨析。convert to 意思是“改用，转变”，指为了能适应新的用途或目的而改变某物的状态、形态、特性等；alter“改变，更改”，指部分更改，仍保留本质和总体结构；transform 指完全改变某人某物的外观或特性；modify 使用较为广泛，可指改变意见、计划、结构、体系、方法、内容等。动词词组所接宾语为 new computer system，convert to 更符合语境。故答案为 B。
42. A。固定搭配。go wild 表示“欣喜若狂”的意思。句意为：歌手一踏上舞台，观众们欣喜若狂。故答案为 A。
43. C。副词词义辨析。根据上下文判断语境应为图书馆因为维修暂时关闭。选项中表示“暂时地”副词只有 temporarily。故答案为 C。
44. A。形容词词义辨析。elaborate“精心制作的，详尽的”；refined“精确的，精炼的”；ambitious“野心勃勃的”；complex“复杂的”。空格处单词应与前句中修饰该词的 carefully prepared（精心准备的）和 full of details（具体的）并列，表达相同的意思。结合选项可知 elaborate 符合句意。故答案为 A。
45. C。名词词义辨析。blockade 的意思是“封锁”，常用于短语 lift a blockade on（解除对……的封锁）和 impose a blockade on（对……实行封锁）。句意为：他们解除了对这个国家为期两年的经济封锁。故答案为 C。
46. B。形容词词义辨析。gullible“易受骗的，轻信的”；shrewd“精明的，敏锐的，奸诈的，狡猾的”；enthusiastic“热心的，热情的”。由后句中的 fall for such an old trick（陷入老套的骗局中）可知，空格处单词应表示“易骗的”的意思。故答案为 B。
47. A。动词词组辨析。hang about“徘徊，闲逛”；hang on“坚持下去”；hang over“笼罩，威胁”；hang out“闲逛，出去消遣”。hang out 更侧重于跟朋友出去玩；hang about 则相对更强调“闲逛，徘徊”的意思。本句中的语境更强调“闲逛”的意思。故答案为 A。

48. C。形容词词义辨析。stagnant 意为“（经济）不景气的，停滞的”；motionless 意为“不动的，静止的”；immobile 意为“不动的，静止的”；inactive 意为“不活动的，怠惰的”。句中提及 economic crisis（经济危机），stagnant 符合语境。故答案为 C。
49. A。名词词义辨析。选项中只有 indulgence 和 engagement 可以与介词 in 搭配。indulge in 意为“沉溺于，纵情于……”；engage in 意为“从事，参加（某种事业或活动）”。这里他对赌博不仅仅是参与，而是一种放纵，从词义上来讲 indulgence 显然更合适。故答案为 A。
50. C。动词词义辨析。空格处单词是与陡峭的山坡（rocky slope）搭配的动词，而且是往上（up）爬。A 项 ran“跑”明显不合适；B 项 hurried“匆忙，赶紧”，和句意无关；D 项 crawled“爬，爬行”，虽然也是爬，但强调的是手肘、膝盖落地的地面上慢慢爬行。C 项 scrambled“快速攀爬，攀登”，最符合题意。故答案为 C。

Part III Cloze

51. B。逻辑关系。空格后句子 the origin of language is a mystery 与空格前句子 how men first learned to invent words is unknown 表达的是同样的意思，是并列关系。B 选项 in other words“换句话说”表并列，符合句子逻辑关系。故答案为 B。
52. A。上下文语义。空格后的不定式 to express thoughts and feelings 与空格处单词连用，表示目的，语境为：人类发明了某些_____来表达自己的想法和情感。后文中提及后来人类又发明了文字来表达声音（those sounds），由此可知，空格处单词应为 sounds。故答案为 A。
53. C。逻辑关系。They could communicate with each other 是空格前句子的结果，so that 表示结果，意为“以便，结果是”。故答案为 C。
54. D。动词词组辨析。agree with sb of/about sth，表示同意“某人”的意见、想法、解释等，对象是人或人的观点；agree upon sth，表示在某事件上取得“一致意见”，对象是物，初步意见一致；agree in doing sth，同意做某事。agree 与 of 搭配没有意义。句中语境为：人们就某些符号达成共识，故 agree upon 符合语境。故答案为 D。
55. B。动词搭配。句子为被动语态，空格处单词的宾语为 letters“字母”，结合选项，combined“使联合”符合语境，表示“将字母组合起来表现声音”。故答案为 B。
56. A。动词词组辨析。空格处单词的宾语为 letters，结合选项，written down“写下来”符合语境，表示“被写下来”。故答案为 A。
57. D。固定搭配。whether…or 为固定搭配，表示“是……还是……”的意思。故答案为 D。
58. B。上下文语义。the things they bring up before our minds 为对空格处单词的解释，句子的语境为：单词的力量在于字与字之间的_____，而这又是由我们的思想产生的。结合选项，association“联想，联合”符合语境，本句强调语言的外延意义。故答案为 B。
59. A。动词词义辨析。能与 with 搭配且符合语境的只有 filled，表示“通过经验，文字对于我们来说变得充满意义”。故答案为 A。
60. D。逻辑关系。空格处单词所在句子是对前句的进一步解释，选项中能够表达递进关系的只有 and。故答案为 D。
61. B。动词词义辨析。分析句子可知，空格处单词为谓语，the happy and sad events of our past 和 us 做该动词的双宾语。选项中能够与 to 连用，且能够接双宾语的只有

recall，recall sth to sb 为固定搭配，表示“让某人回想起某事”。recollect 也表示“回忆，想起”的意思，但不能接双宾语。句意为：我们生存越久，就有越多的文字能够使我们回忆起过往的开心事和伤心事。故答案为 B。

62. C。上下文语义。将选项一一代入句中，对比句意，选项 C：read and learn 更符合句意。表示“我们读的越多，学的越多”。故答案为 C。

63. B。动词搭配。分析句子可知，空格处单词为动词，宾语为 the number of words“文字的数量”，选项中能够与其搭配、且符合语境的只有 increases，表示“增大，增加”的意思。其他选项都不能与 number 搭配。故答案为 B。

64. D。副词词义辨析。空格处单词为副词，修饰动词词组 appeal to，句子的语境为：伟大的作家，是那些不仅有着伟大思想，而且能够用_____吸引我们思想情感的文字表达出这种伟大思想的人。结合选项，powerfully“非常，强有力地”符合语境，表示“强有力地吸引我们的思想情感”。intensively“仔细地，强烈地，集中地”；extensively“广阔地，广大地”；broadly“宽广地，广泛地”均不符合语境。故答案为 D。

65. A。形容词词义辨析。前文中提及作家能够使用吸引我们思想情感的文字，本句中 telling“有效的，生动的”与空格处单词都是用来形容“use of words”的，结合上下文，选项中 charming“有魅力的”符合语境，在句中可以翻译为“引人入胜的”意思。故答案为 A。

66. C。上下文语义。前文提及 charming 和 telling 的语言风格，结合选项，literary“文学的，文字精美的”符合语境。句意为：这种对文字引人入胜的有力使用，我们称之为文学风格。故答案为 C。

67. B。上下文语义。前文提及 real poet“真正的诗人”，后文提及 convey his meaning in words which sing like music“能够用如音乐般美妙的文字传达他的意思”，由此可知，真正的诗人知道如何更好地利用文字。words 符合语境，表示“文字的主人”的意思。故答案为 B。

68. D。介词用法。空格处单词为介词，结合句子中 their position and association 可知，本介词表示方式，by 符合语境，意思为：通过他们身处的环境和联系。故答案为 D。

69. A。动词搭配。空格后单词 men to tears 与空格处单词搭配，move to tears 表示“感动得落泪”，且符合诗人作诗表达感情的语境。故答案为 A。

70. C。动词搭配。make sth *adj.* 表示“使某物变得……”，为固定搭配。故答案为 C。

Part IV　The Use of English

71. Compare → Comparing。句子的谓语结构为 is difficult。compare 在从句中不能以谓语动词形式出现，故使用现在分词形式做状语。

72. And → But。前文提及考虑到所有的花费，垃圾的回收利用还是很困难的。本句提及回收利用还是有意义的，因此前后两句的关系应为转折。故使用 but。

73. more → most。本句对比的是三种垃圾处理的办法，buying，burning，recycling。故使用最高级 most。

74. at → from。at the beginning（of）“在……开始时”，后面必须接 of，表示一个时间点；from the beginning“从一开始就……”，强调持续。句中强调回收铝的过程是个持续的过程。故使用 from the beginning。

75. ^recycle → to。固定搭配。get sb to do sth 表示“让某人做某事”的意思。

76. use → using。从句中的谓语结构为 is sorted on，use 不能做谓语动词使用，应使用分词形式，先行词 belt 与 use 的主语一致，故使用现在分词 using。
77. even → 去掉 even。even if 表示让步的逻辑关系，意为“尽管，虽然”。而句中的主从句并不是让步的关系，而是假设的关系。故使用 if。句意为：如果人们不需要将垃圾分类扔进垃圾桶的话，他们更倾向于回收利用垃圾。
78. them→ it。waste 表示“浪费，废料，垃圾”等意思时是不可数名词，故将 them 改为 it。
79. pay ^→for。pay 用作及物动词时，后面接表示人的词语，即 pay sb 意为“付款给某人”。pay for 中的 pay 为不及物动词，其宾语多为物，即 pay for sth，意为“付款买某物”；其宾语为人时，即 pay for sb，意为“替某人付款。”句中的语境是：让人们为不可回收的垃圾付款买单，而回收利用垃圾则给予奖励。故使用 pay for。
80. less → more。前文提及，根据能否回收利用垃圾而奖罚人们也有其弊端，比如说人们可能为了赢得奖励而将不可回收的垃圾扔到可回收利用的垃圾桶里。根据上文和 but 一词，判断该句的语境应为一个相对于美德来约束人们的体系，不如一个更依赖个人利益的体系更能提高废物利用和减少邻里间的恶意行为。故应将 less 改为 more。

模拟测试题答案

模拟测试题（一）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. C 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. A 6. B 7. D 8. C 9. D 10. B

Section 2

11. A 12. B 13. B 14. A 15. A 16. A 17. D 18. B 19. B 20. C

Section 3

21. B 22. A 23. C 24. B 25. A 26. C 27. A 28. C 29. C 30. A

Section 4

31. typical
32. relatively
33. boring
34. describe
35. Variety
36. normal
37. uniform
38. got into a fight
39. bad traffic jam
40. to the hospital

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

41. C 42. C 43. C 44. C 45. D 46. D 47. A 48. A 49. C 50. D

Part III CLOZE

51. A 52. B 53. D 54. A 55. D 56. C 57. B 58. C 59. A 60. A
61. C 62. B 63. D 64. C 65. C 66. A 67. B 68. C 69. A 70. D

Part IV THE USE OF ENGLISH

71. are→is
72. speaking→spoken
73. talk→talking
74. they→them
75. there on→there
76. chat→chatted
77. had→have
78. progresses→progress
79. is→is a
80. join in→join

模拟测试题（二）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. C 6. A 7. C 8. A 9. C 10. A

Section 2

11. C 12. B 13. C 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. B 18. C 19. B 20. B

Section 3

21. C 22. B 23. C 24. B 25. C 26. A 27. D 28. A 29. B 30. B

Section 4

31. *Global Economy*
32. Victoria Smith
33. Oxford University Press
34. William Hanna
35. *Business Management*
36. Northern Chile
37. poor farm children
38. world's school system
39. finance the publication
40. the Nobel Prize

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

41. C 42. C 43. A 44. B 45. B 46. B 47. A 48. B 49. C 50. C

Part III CLOZE

51. B 52. A 53. D 54. C 55. A 56. B 57. B 58. D 59. D 60. A
61. B 62. C 63. B 64. C 65. B 66. A 67. D 68. B 69. C 70. C

Part IV THE USE OF ENGLISH

71. registered→has registered
72. to→from
73. a（第二个）→an
74. in the charge of→in charge of
75. at→for
76. State-own→State-owned
77. to→with/by
78. beef→beef up
79. with→to
80. redistributing→to redistribute

模拟测试题（三）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. A 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D

Section 2

11. C 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. D 16. C 17. C 18. D 19. B 20. C

Section 3

21. B 22. A 23. A 24. D 25. B 26. B 27. C 28. A 29. C 30. B

Section 4

31. taking into consideration
32. literary
33. imposed
34. anticipate
35. violations
36. financial
37. avenue
38. amended
39. in the wake of
40. interpret

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

41. B 42. C 43. A 44. A 45. A 46. B 47. A 48. A 49. D 50. B

Part III CLOZE

51. C 52. B 53. A 54. C 55. B 56. D 57. A 58. C 59. B 60. D
61. B 62. C 63. D 64. B 65. B 66. D 67. C 68. A 69. D 70. B

Part IV THE USE OF ENGLISH

71. estimating→estimated
72. In→By
73. ˆ banned→been
74. in→on
75. condition→conditions
76. Followed→Following
77. ˆ abolish→to
78. to→into
79. in（去掉）
80. been（去掉）

模拟测试题（四）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C 6. B 7. A 8. D 9. A 10. C

Section 2

11. C 12. B 13. B 14. D 15. A 16. C 17. B 18. B 19. D 20. A

Section 3

21. C 22. A 23. D 24. B 25. D 26. C 27. A 28. D 29. A 30. D

Section 4

31. anxiety
32. identifies
33. compares to
34. a body of
35. motivate
36. define
37. fundamental
38. ruined
39. In short
40. imperfece

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

41. B 42. A 43. C 44. B 45. C 46. B 47. A 48. D 49. B 50. A

Part III CLOZE

51. B 52. D 53. A 54. C 55. B 56. D 57. A 58. C 59. B 60. D
61. C 62. A 63. B 64. D 65. A 66. C 67. B 68. A 69. D 70. B

Part IV THE USE OF ENGLISH

71. stabilized→destabilized
72. ˆ rise→the
73. for→into
74. Europe→European
75. as→with
76. be→was
77. In→Between
78. this→these
79. engage→engaged
80. more（去掉）

模拟测试题（五）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. D 2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. A

Section 2

11. C 12. D 13. B 14. A 15. C 16. D 17. A 18. C 19. D 20. B

Section 3

21. C 22. A 23. D 24. C 25. B 26. D 27. A 28. C 29. B 30. B

Section 4

31. Legislation
32. instruction
33. efficient
34. dropout
35. motivation
36. discipline
37. contend
38. in favor of
39. at their disposal
40. inferior to

Part II GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY

41. B 42. A 43. C 44. A 45. C 46. B 47. A 48. C 49. A 50. C

Part III CLOZE

51. B 52. A 53. C 54. C 55. B 56. A 57. D 58. B 59. A 60. D
61. B 62. C 63. B 64. D 65. A 66. C 67. B 68. D 69. A 70. C

Part IV THE USE OF ENGLISH

71. Compare→Comparing
72. And→But
73. more→most
74. at→from
75. ^ recycle→to
76. use→using
77. even（去掉）
78. them→it
79. pay ^→for
80. less →more

听力原文

模拟测试题（一）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. M: Jane told me you were on a diet. How much weight have you lost?
   W: Well, to start with, I weighed 150 pounds. The first two weeks I took off 10 pounds, but then I gained back 5 pounds over the holiday.
   Q: How much does the woman weigh now?
2. W: Was the movie as good as you expected?
   M: It was a waste of time and money!
   Q: How does the man feel about the movie?
3. W: Could you tell me the least expensive way to get to London?
   M: If you go by bus it's only 20 pounds. But if you go by train, it's almost twice that much.
   Q: What does this man explain to the woman?
4. W: If I were you, I would take a bus instead of a plane. Flying makes me nervous.
   M: But it will take me forever to get there by bus.

Q: What does the man prefer to do?

5. W: Jim, you are on the net again! We are going to get off. It's time for the talk show!
   M: Just a minute dear! I'm looking at a new jewelry site. I want to make sure I get the right gift for mom's birthday.
   Q: What is the man doing right now?
6. W: I've never seen you have such confidence before in the exam!
   M: It's more than confidence! Right now I felt that if I got less than an A, it will be the fault of the exam itself.
   Q: What does the man mean?
7. W: Just look at this newspaper! Nothing but murder, death and war! Do you still believe people are basically good?
   M: Of course I do! But newspapers hardly ever report stories about peace and generosity. They are not news!
   Q: What do we learn from the conversation?
8. M: Tom must be joking when he said he plans to sell his shop and go to medical school.
   W: You are quite right. He's just kidding. He's also told me time and time again he wished to study for some profession instead of going into business.
   Q: What will Tom probably do according to the conversation?
9. M: How do you like Professor Bachman's course on the History of Philosophy? He is a distinguished scholar on that subject.
   W: He is a great teacher. But I'm having a hard time with the reading list. I feel I can't ever finish it.
   Q: What problem does the woman have with the course?
10. W: Robert wants to know if he can go with us to the party.
    M: That's odd. This morning he said he wanted to go by himself.
    Q: What do we learn about Robert?

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: OK. If you want to adopt an animal, first I need to know some references.

M: References? People we know?

W: Friends, teachers... We need to talk to some people about you. We want to be sure that you're responsible and that you can take good care of an animal. Then you have to fill out this form about your family background.

M: Is that it?

W: No, there's more. We need to know about your history with animals. Have you ever owned an animal?

M: Yes. I had a cat when I was eight years old. I loved it so much. It was very cute.

W: We also like to know your reasons for wanting an animal.

M: To have a friend—a pal. You know, man's best friend is dog.
W: And one thing more. If you're under twenty-one years of age…
M: That's me.
W: Then an adult must sign for you.
M: No problem. My parents will think it's a good idea. I'll be back with them. If the real owners don't come to claim the dog…
W: After 48 hours. But please call first.
M: Thanks for your information and for being so helpful.
W: It's my pleasure. Nice talking to you.

Q11. Why does the woman ask the man to provide references?
Q12. Which of the following details about the man is CORRECT?
Q13. Where does the conversation most probably take place?

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 16 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Are you the head resident?
W: Yes.
M: I'm Bill Miller. I'm here because I want to change roommates.
W: Really? That surprises me. I thought that you and David were good friends.
M: We were. You see, we knew each other before. We are from the same hometown, but it looks like we had different reasons for coming to college.
W: How so?
M: Well, David is really into having fun, which is great. But he has so many people in our room all the time that I can't study. And the stereo is on constantly.
W: Have you talked to him about it?
M: Yes, but he just doesn't take me seriously.
W: I see.
M: Miss Todd, I have to study. I'm on scholarship. David isn't.
W: Okay. Here's what we can do. Let me talk to David, and then you see how it goes. Just one week.

Q14. What do the speakers mainly discuss?
Q15. Why is the man worried about the course?
Q16. What is the man's problem?

Conversation 3

Questions 17 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: I've been reading about a new healthy snack food. It's made from fish. Have you heard anything about it?
M: No, I haven't. But I don't like fish very much anyway.
W: Not to worry. Although it's made primarily from fish, it actually doesn't have a fishy taste. In fact it can be flavored with tomato, cheese or chocolate for instance.

M: Do you know how this snack food is made? How could it not taste fishy?
W: First, the fish is minced and cooked, then water and starch are added to make a dough.
M: It sounds awful.
W: Actually the dough is very bland at that point. So the flavorings are added to give it more taste.
M: Well, it still sounds a little strange. But I suppose this product will at least be low calories and high protein, like a healthy food.
W: Yes, you could call it that. And it has long shelf life, so it won't spoil quickly. It is also easy to digest and can be made from types of fish that usually aren't eaten or from high grade fish byproducts.
M: Mh…Have you got any samples? I might be willing to try the cheese-flavored variety.
W: No. None of these seems to be available yet. As I understand it, this fish snack food probably won't be in the stores for another couple of years. So you have a while to get used to the whole idea.
M: A couple of years, ha? It may just take me that long, but thanks for telling me about it.

Q17. What seems to surprise the man about the new product?
Q18. Why are flavorings added to the dough?
Q19. What would be a good reason for buying the product?
Q20. When will the new product be available?

Section 3

Passage 1

Body language, with the technical name non-verbal communication, does not involve the use of words, NVC for short. When someone is saying something with which he agrees, the average European will smile and nod approval. On the other hand, if you disagree, you may frown and shake your head. Incidentally, I referred a moment ago to "the average European", because body language is very much tied to culture, and in order not to misunderstand, or not to be misunderstood, you must appreciate this. A smiling Chinese, for instance, may not be approving but acutely embarrassed. Quite a lot of work is now being done on the subject of NVC, which is obviously important, for instance, to managers, who have to deal every day with their staff, and have to understand what other people are feeling if they are to create good working conditions. Body language, or NVC signals, is sometimes categorized into five kinds: 1) body and facial gestures; 2) eye contact; 3) body contact or proximity; 4) clothing and physical appearance; and 5) the quality of speech. In some cultures—and I am sure this is a cultural feature and not an individual one—it is quite normal for people to stand close together, or to more or less thrust their face into yours when they are talking to you. In other cultures this is disliked; Americans, for instance, talk about invasion of their space.

Passage 2

In ancient times, many people believed the earth was a flat disc. Well over 2000

years ago, the ancient Greek philosophers were able to put forward two good arguments proving that it was not. Direct observations of heavenly bodies were the basis of both these arguments. First, the Greeks knew that during eclipses of the moon, the earth was between the sun and the moon, and they saw that during these eclipses, the earth's shadow on the moon was always round, they realized that this could be true only if the earth was spherical. If the earth were a flat disc, then its shadow during eclipses would not be a perfect circle, it would be stretched out into a long ellipse. The second argument was based on what the Greeks saw during their travels. They noticed that the North Star, or Polaris, appeared lower in the sky when they traveled south; in more northern regions, the North Star appeared to them to be much higher in the sky. By the way, it was also from this difference in the apparent position of the North Star that the Greeks first calculated the approximate distance around the circumference of the earth, a figure recorded in ancient documents says 400, 000 stadia, that's the plural of the word stadium. Today, it's not known exactly what length one stadium represents, but let's say it was about 200 meters. It's a very good estimate for those writing so long before even the first telescope was invented.

Passage 3

Today, we are going to continue our discussion of social insects, focusing on the Argentine ant, which as you might guess is a species of ant that is natives to Argentina. We'll consider what happened to this type of ant after some members of the species move to California from their original habitat. OK, well, in Argentina, these Argentine ants behave like most ant species around the world. They fight other ants of the same species if those ants are from some other nests. But the Argentine ants living in California behave differently. Ants from different nests form a single large colony. Within this colony, there is little aggression among ants from different nests. And when they fight insects from outside their colony, the Argentine ants can quickly recruit a huge army from their network of nests. This of course gives them advantages over other ant species. So then, why do Argentine ants behave differently in California than they do in Argentina? Well, using genetic testing, researches found that all the Argentine ants in California were very similar genetically. You see, when the first Argentine ants came to California, their population must have been very small, and all the later generations of the Argentine ants there must be descended from the same few ancestors. So they are all closely related. This discovery is important, because for most social insects, membership in a colony is based on how closely related they are genetically.

Q27. What aspect of Argentine ants is mainly discussed?

Q28. What does the professor say about the Argentine ants that live in Argentina?

Q29. What's the characteristic of the Argentine ants in California?

Q30. What did genetic testing indicate about the Argentine ants in California?

Section 4

In police work, you can never predict the next crime or problem. No working day is identical to any other, so there is no "typical" day for a police officer. Some days are

relatively slow, and the job is boring; other days are so busy that there is no time to eat. I think I can describe police work in one word: Variety. Sometimes it's dangerous. One day, for example, I was working undercover; that is, I was on the job, but I was wearing normal clothes, not my police uniform. I was trying to catch some robbers who were stealing money from people as they walked down the street. Suddenly, seven bad men jumped out at me; one of them had a knife and we got into a fight. Another policeman arrived, and together, we arrested three of the men; but the other four ran away. Another day, I helped a woman who was going to have a baby. She was trying to get to the hospital, but there was a bad traffic jam. I put her in my police car to get her there faster. I thought she was going to have the baby right there in my car. But fortunately, the baby waited to "arrive" until we got to the hospital.

模拟测试题（二）

Part I LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. M: Since it's the rush hour, let's take the subway.
   W: OK. It's not as direct as the bus, but it's faster and there will be less chance of a traffic jam.
   Q: Why do the man and the woman decide to take the subway?
2. W: The biology class next Monday has been replaced by a chemistry class.
   M: Awful. I haven't prepared for that.
   Q: For which class hasn't the man prepared?
3. M: Miss Green, I told Dr. Smith that I would call him in the Paris office at 11 o'clock their time. Please find out the time difference for me so that I'll know when to place the call.
   W: It's 4 hours earlier in Paris, sir.
   Q: When should the man place his call to Paris?
4. M: There's no use going to the store now.
   W: You are right. It's after 5:30 already.
   Q: When does the store probably close?
5. W: I'm worried about Anna. She's really been depressed lately. All she does is staying in her room all day.
   M: That sounds serious! She'd better see a psychiatrist at the counseling center.
   Q: What does the man suggest Anna do?
6. M: I could hardly recognize Sam after he got that new job! He's always in a suit and tie now.
   W: Yeah. He was never like that in college. Back then, he went around in old T-shirts and jeans.
   Q: What do the speakers say about Sam?
7. W: You know, the Browns have invested all their money in stocks.
   M: They may think that's a wise move, but that's the last thing I'd do.

Q: What's the man's opinion about the Browns' investment?

8. M: What is Mr. Peterson going to do with his old house on London Road? Rent it or sell it?

W: I heard he is thinking of turning it into a restaurant, which isn't a bad idea, because it's still a solid building.

Q: What will Mr. Peterson do with his old house?

9. W: Huh, Dick. You are wearing a black jacket, but yellow trousers. It's the strangest combination I've ever seen.

M: I know. I got up late and dressed in a hurry. I didn't realize my mistake until I entered the office.

Q: What does the woman think of the way Dick dressed?

10. M: Excuse me, but has anyone turned in a brown leather wallet? I've lost my wallet. It contains my driver's license and also some family pictures that are pretty important to me.

W: Oh, yes, we had a wallet brought in this morning. Wait here just a minute, please.

Q: What will the woman probably do?

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Math Department. Doctor Webster speaking.

W: Hello, Prof. Webster. This is Janet Hill calling. I live two doors down from your teaching assistant, Don Williams. Don asked me to call you because he has lost his voice and can't talk to you himself.

M: Oh, what a shame! Is there anything I can do for him?

W: Well, he has a class this afternoon from 2:30 to 4:00 and he won't be able to teach it. But he doesn't want to cancel it either.

M: Does he want me to try to find somebody else to teach the class?

W: No, not exactly. What he wants to do is to get someone to just to pass back the mid-term exams. He's already marked them and they are on the desk in his office.

M: His class is at 2:30? Well, I'm free at that time and I am going to be on campus anyway, so I can do it for him. What room is his class in?

W: Hall A, Room 214. Will you need his office key to get the exams? He's given it to me and I could bring it to you.

M: Actually, we have a master key in the math department. So I can get into his office if necessary.

W: Thank you very much. Oh I almost forgot. Could you put the next assignment on the board, too? It's all the problems on Page 45.

M: OK. Tell Don not to worry about anything.

Q11. What's Don's problem?

Q12. What does the woman offer to do?

Q13. What did Janet almost forget to ask Professor Webster to do?

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 16 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: Mr. White. I've learned that you need to fix up the old library. I am planning to write an editorial that I think will help you.
M: OK, Miss Maxwell. Thank you for trying to help.
W: First, what do you need most of all?
M: People power. Men and women, young and old, to give us their time.
W: To do what?
M: To help scrub the building interior clean so that we can repair it.
W: And you also need people to do repairing?
M: That's right. And we'll also need some ladders and some brushes and some paint.
W: When do you need the volunteers, and where do they report?
M: I've got the council to agree to open the building for us on the next four weekends.
W: How about furnishing? Are there any special requirements that I should list in the paper?
M: Yes. Here is a copy of all the things we need to start with.
W: Let me see. Four desks. Eight straight-back chairs. Thirty folding chairs. Six table lamps. Three end tables. One piano. This is a good start. These items shouldn't be difficult to come by once.
M: I agree, Miss Maxwell.
W: What you are saying is, in order for this center to succeed, we need to put together volunteers from the various generations of future users.
M: That's right. And without their energy and stamina, there is no way we can complete this project.
W: I've got it. Now give me some information about how you see the building being used.

Conversation 3

Questions 17 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Hello. How can I help you today?
W: Hello. I'd like some information on the telephone banking services offered at your bank.
M: Certainly. What would you like to know?
W: How do I sign up?
M: Just let me know, I'll sign you up immediately.
W: Can you tell me how the telephone banking services work?
M: You can do all your day-to-day banking over the telephone, 24 hours a day.
W: That's great. How do I access my account?
M: Just call the bank, key in your PIN number and listen to the menu of options available.

W: How do I choose which option I want?
M: Just press the number for the service stated by the recording.
W: What kind of things can I do?
M: You can check your balance, pay bills, order a statement or even transfer money to another bank.
W: That's fantastic! Can I trade stocks and bonds?
M: I'm afraid you will have to have a special account for that.
W: What about getting help if I have any problems?
M: There's an automated answering machine and staff are available 9 to 5 seven days a week.
W: It all sounds very good to me. I'd like to sign up.
M: Alright, can you answer a few questions please?
W: Certainly.

Q17. What are the speakers talking about?
Q18. What kind of services are NOT offered here?
Q19. According to the dialogue, which of the following is true?
Q20. Where does the conversation probably happen?

Section 3

Passage 1

The standardized educational or psychological tests are widely used to aid in selecting, classifying, assigning, or promoting students, employees, and military personnel. They have been the target of recent attacks in books, magazines, the daily press, and even in Congress. The target is wrong, for in attacking the tests, critics divert attention from the fault that lies with ill-informed or incompetent users. The tests themselves are merely tools, with characteristics that can be measured with reasonable precision under specified conditions. Whether the results will be valuable, meaningless, or even misleading depends partly upon the tool itself but largely upon the user. All informed predictions of future performance are based upon some knowledge of relevant past performance. How well the predictions will be validated by later performance depends upon the amount, reliability, and appropriateness of the information used and on the skill and wisdom with which it is interpreted. Anyone who keeps careful scores knows that the information available is always incomplete and that the predictions are always subject to error. Standardized tests should be considered in this context. They prove to be a quick, objective method of getting some kinds of information about what a person has learned, the skills he has developed, or the kind of person he is.

Passage 2

The problem of an aging population is far from being restricted to Europe. The Japanese, who have the longest life expectancy in the world at 77 years, have similar worries. Their birth rate is down to 1.7 and falling fast. A study produced by the Population Research Institute at Nihon University says that the country's aging population will cause an eightfold increase in the cost of health care between 1978 and 2010 and a

thirteen fold rise in the pension benefits by 2025. China is still working to bring down its birth rate, but in the next century, it too will be facing the problems of aging. The country has a fifth of the world's population. Its drive to restrict each family, first to two children and now to one child, has been the dominant cause of the slowdown in growth in the world's population in the past decade. A range of financial incentives and penalties, coupled with China's strong social organization, has already cut the annual growth in numbers of people from 2. 2 percent to 1. 2 percent, an effort which has been applauded by the United Nations. However, the sharp drop in birth will cause a surge in the percentage of people over 6 in a country still not fully equipped to cope with them. The old made up just 4 percent of China's population a decade ago. By 2025, they could account for 16 percent. By the middle of the next century, China could have more than 150 million people over the age of 75.

Passage 3

Attention to detail is something everyone can and should do—especially in a tight job market. Bob Crossley, a human-resources expert notices this in the job applications that come across his desk every day. He will eliminate the candidates who don't bother to spell the company's name correctly. He believes that if they don't take care in these details, he can't trust them with a job, either. Can we pay too much attention to details? Absolutely. Perfectionists struggle over little things at the cost of something larger they work toward. Charles Garfield, associate professor at the University of California, San Francisco, says that to keep from losing the forest for the trees, we must constantly ask ourselves how the details we're working on fit into the larger picture. If they don't, we should drop them and move on to something else. Garfield compares this process to his work as a computer scientist at NASA. "The Apollo II moon launch was slightly off-course 90 percent of the time, but a successful landing was still likely because we knew the exact coordinates of our goal. This allowed us to make adjustments as necessary. Knowing where we want to go helps us judge the importance of every task we undertake." Success is rarely mysterious. We see that by doing little things within our grasp, well, large rewards follow.

Section 4

(**I**)

STUDENT: Good morning. Oh, it just hit twelve. Good morning. Mrs. Potter, may I come in?

TUTOR: Oh, Jerry, of course. Come in and take a seat please.

STUDENT: Thank you.

TUTOR: Well, how about your assignment?

STUDENT: Do you mean my paper?

TUTOR: Yes.

STUDENT: I still think about the draft, but I hope you can give me some help and suggestions.

TUTOR: Be careful with your references and quotations and do not share other

people's work. I mean you should write clearly about reference books and do not forget to acknowledge the original writers. Otherwise, you will be failed for plagiarism.

STUDENT: OK, I've got it.

TUTOR: The other point is…

STUDENT: Deadline?

TUTOR: No. Deadline is the date of handing in your work. You'd better hand in on time. But if you have a reasonable excuse you can ask for extension.

STUDENT: Fine. Sorry to interrupt you.

TUTOR: That's OK. The other point you should pay attention to is your research data.

STUDENT: OK. I will write them clearly. Oh, Mrs. Potter, could you recommend to me some good reference books about the topic of my paper?

TUTOR: Fine. Let's check the reference book list. The first one is Drake Wister's book.

STUDENT: Right. What's the title?

TUTOR: *Global Economy*.

STUDENT: Is it the one published by Cambridge University Press?

TUTOR: Right. And I think Victoria Smith's book is a good choice.

STUDENT: What's that title?

TUTOR: *The Strategy of Marketing*.

STUDENT: And which publisher?

TUTOR: London Press.

STUDENT: Fine. How about others?

TUTOR: The book called *The Economics Tendency* is a good one for your paper.

STUDENT: Really? And the writer and the publisher?

TUTOR: The writer is Hilary Justice and the publisher is Oxford University Press.

STUDENT: Can I borrow it from the library?

TUTOR: Of course.

STUDENT: Great.

TUTOR: And the last one that is helpful to your work is the book of William Hanna.

STUDENT: How do you spell his surname?

TUTOR: H-A-N-N-A.

STUDENT: OK. And the title of his book?

TUTOR: *Business Management* published by Cambridge University Press.

STUDENT: OK.

TUTOR: But you cannot borrow the book from the library.

STUDENT: Why?

TUTOR: Because it belongs to the closed reserve you have to read it in the library.

STUDENT: OK. Thank you very much.

TUTOR: You're welcome.

(II)

Gabriela Mistral was once an ordinary teacher in a small village school in Northern

Chile. Towering mountains separated her village from the world outside. Gabriela Mistral was only fifteen when she began teaching, but she was a good teacher. She helped the minds of her students' scale the mountain walls and reached out to the world beyond. For eighteen years, Gabriela devoted her life to the poor farm children of Chile's Northern valleys. During part of this time, she was director of schools in all of Chile. Before long, many countries recognized her as a great friend of children and the leader in education. In 1922, she was invited to Mexico to help organize the world's school system.

Two years later, Gabriela Mistral came to the United States where she served as a visiting professor in several colleges. In New York City, a group of teachers helped to finance the publication of her first book of poetry. Some of her books have been translated into six different languages. She gave the income from some of her books to help poor and neglected children.

Beginning in the 1920s, her interests reached out to broader fields. Statesmen asked her advice on international problems. She tried to break through the national barriers that hindered the exchange of ideas among the Spanish speaking peoples of South America. She tried to develop a better understanding between the United States and countries of Latin America. In 1945, she gained worldwide recognition by winning the Nobel Prize in literature, the first South American to win the prize.

模拟测试题（三）

Part ONE LISTENNIG COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. W: Carol told us on the phone not to worry about her. Her left leg doesn't hurt as much as it did yesterday.
   M: She'd better have it examined by a doctor anyway. And I will call her about it this evening.
   Q: What does the man think Carol should do?
2. M: There is a non-stop train for Washington and it leaves at 2:30.
   W: It's faster than the 2 o'clock train. Besides, we can have something to eat before getting on the train.
   Q: What do we learn from the conversation?
3. M: Hi, Melissa, how's your project going? Have you thought about going to graduate school? Perhaps you can get into Harvard.
   W: Everything is coming along really well. I have been thinking about graduate school. But I'll talk to my tutor Dr. Garcia first and see what she thinks.
   Q: What do you learn about the woman from the conversation?
4. W: Did you attend Alice's presentation last night? It was the first time for her to give a speech to a large audience.
   M: How she could be so calm in front of so many people! It's really beyond me!
   Q: What do we learn from the conversation?
5. W: You've been doing weather reports for neatly 30 years. Has the weather got any

worse in all these years?

M: Well, not necessarily worse. But we are seeing more swings.

Q: What does the man say about the weather?

6. M: Excuse me, I am looking for the textbook by Professor Jordon for the marketing course.

W: I am afraid it's out of stock. You'll have to order it. And it will take the publisher 3 weeks to send it to us.

Q: Where did this conversation most probably take place?

7. M: I am going to New York next week, but the hotel I booked is really expensive.

W: Why book a hotel? My brother has 2 spare rooms in his apartment.

Q: What does the woman mean?

8. W: In my opinion, watching the news on TV is a good way to learn English. What do you think?

M: It would be better if you could check the same information in English newspapers afterwards.

Q: What does the man say about learning English?

9. M: I hear a newly-invented drug can make people tell the truth and it may prove useful in questioning terrorists. Isn't it incredible?

W: Simple solutions to complex problems rarely succeed. As far as I know, no such drugs are ever known to work.

Q: What does the woman think of the new drug?

10. M: You know the electronics company is coming to our campus to recruit graduate students next week.

W: Really? What day? I'd like to talk to them and hand in my resume.

Q: What does the woman want to do?

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: We have to move the company to a new office.

W: I think that's a great idea, Tim.

M: Good.

W: We should be in the centre of town. We'll be nearer to our customers.

M: Jane, I…

W: The transport is better…

M: Jane, I…

W: … and there are lots of good restaurants.

M: Jane, I think we should move to the country.

W: Oh!

M: For… against. For: cheaper rent, cheaper houses, cleaner air. It's quieter. There's not so much noise. And parking's easier. Do you agree that these are all good

reasons for moving?

W: Yes, I agree. But let's talk about the things against moving. Number one. A long way from some clients.

M: Yes, but that's not a problem.

W: What about communications?

M: There's an airport near the new location as well as a motorway. And there are fast trains to everywhere from there.

W: So communications are better than they are from here?

M: I think so.

W: But what do we do with our spare time? I know we can go for walks in the country. Perhaps, go horse-riding. But we can only do that in summer. What do we do in winter when it's cold and wet? It's not like here in the city, is it?

M: I agree. But in the town over there—twenty minutes by car—there are cinemas, theatres, good restaurants and there's a jazz club. So, I think our company should move to the country. Do you agree?

W: I am afraid I don't.

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 17 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: So, Miss Parkinson, you organize fitness training and beauty treatments for working women?

W: That's right, Mr. Cruise.

M: Could you tell me how you first got the idea for the business?

W: Certainly. I suppose it all started about 5 years ago. I was on holiday and had a very bad skiing accident. I found that the only thing that helped the pain was massage and gentle exercise, like yoga or stretching exercises. So I used to go to therapists and classes after work.

M: Where did you work at that time?

W: In the training department of a media company.

M: I see.

W: But then I got a promotion to training manager. That meant I worked longer hours and was difficult to get to classes. I asked some of my teachers if they would come to my house instead, and most of them agreed. It was more expensive but I thought it was worth it. Lots of my friends loved the idea too. So I recommended people to them. That's when I began to realize that maybe I could make a business out of it.

M: Did you give up your job then?

W: No, not immediately. The idea was too scary. I had a good job with a good salary, and starting my own business seemed a bit risky. So I just did it at a hobby really.

M: So why did you leave your job in the end?

W: Well, the decision was made for me really. My company decided to relocate to a different town. They offered me the choice of relocating with them or quite a large

sum of money if I preferred to leave. I know an opportunity when I see it. So I took the money!

M: Good for you.

Conversation 3

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Good afternoon, madam.

W: Good afternoon. I'd like to buy a camera.

M: We have all kinds of cameras here, madam. What sorts of camera are you thinking you are buying?

W: Well, I don't know anything about cameras. But my friend tells me that 35-millimeter cameras are the best.

M: Well, they are certainly the much popular. Would you like a rangefinder type or a single-lens reflex?

W: What's the difference?

M: With a single-lens reflex, you actually look through the lens when you're taking a photo. So you can see exactly what you are taking.

W: That seems a good idea.

M: Yes, focusing is easier, too. Try this one. It's a good mate.

W: Yes, I see what you mean. The image is very clear and bright.

M: That's right. Moreover, you can use a number of different lenses. Let me put a telephoto lens on for you to try.

W: My world! That's very good. I can see the people across the street as if they are inside the shop!

M: Being able to change the lens is very important, in my opinion. You can't do that with most rangefinder cameras though they're smaller and cheaper.

W: How much is this camera?

M: The list price is 5, 000. But I can let you have it for 4, 500.

W: That's far too much! Did you say that rangefinder cameras are cheaper?

M: Yes, they are much cheaper.

W: Good! Show me some, please.

Section 3

Passage 1

This is a picture. In the foreground there's a house built into the side of a bare hill. The house is actually cut out of the rock, and the front is painted white. There's a single window with a pink curtain across it and a wooden door. This rock house is clearly inhabited because in front of the house there is washing hanging on a washing line in what looks like the front yard. Then, above the painted front of the house, they've built a chimney. It's quite possible that at the back of this same hill there's another door—or the front of another house, perhaps. At the side of the house, to the left there's a flat area. They've got chairs there and one person appears to be serving food. They're wearing

casual summer clothes. Further to the left is another chimney, which probably belongs to a different house. In the background of the picture, a long way from this particular bare hill, there's another hill. Then, in between there's a relatively flat plain, and then there's a small town. It looks like a town because there are a lot of white houses and each one is quite close to the next building. This must be a hot country because the sky is blue and there isn't much vegetation. I should think that rock houses are actually really cool and pleasant to live in.

Passage 2

Ben became interested in Mongolia early in life. When he was nine years old he read a book about Marco Polo, about how Marco Polo traveled with his uncles on the ultimate business trip to the Mongol Empire at its height. Marco Polo's trip lasted almost a quarter of a century, during which he grew up, mastered Mongolian, gained the confidence of the Mongol emperor, and then eventually returned home with fantastic tales of strange lands and stranger people. The story of Marco Polo fascinated Ben. Ben tried to save money from his first job delivering newspapers with an eye toward a $3,000 trip to Mongolia. But in those days it would take him years to have the money ready. So he continued to read about Mongolia in the meantime but spent most of his teenage years in the Arab world, where he learned the language and became interested in journalism. He took courses in classical and modern Mongolian while studying for his master's degree and found it very difficult. But he still wants to visit Mongolia in the spring or summer, he said. "Mongolian winters, when temperatures drop to −30 °C are not for me." The price today with an upscale company is reasonable, Ben said, "Compared to the $3,000 it was back in 1971, today the same trip is around $5,000, which though still a large sum, is, in terms of inflation, a good bargain."

Passage 3

Less than 20 miles from Singapore's skyscrapers is a completely different set of high-rise towers. Much smaller in scale but with a big ambition, over 100 nine-meter tall towers at Sky Greens vertical farm offer a new vision of urban sustainability. Green vegetables like Chinese cabbage are grown, stacked in greenhouses, and sold at local supermarkets. The farm was built in 2009 and since October this year the fully operating farm has been supplying one of city's supermarkets with weekly deliveries of its greens. The Sky Greens produce costs around 40% more than an imported equivalent. However, the small amount of energy and water needed to grow the vegetables, and the close proximity to the consumer, means that carbon dioxide emitted in production and transportation is kept to a minimum. The Sky Greens venture is supported by the Singaporean government and has another advantage over other urban farms around the world: abundant natural heating and light. Singapore has year-round temperatures of around 30 degrees Celsius and the farm is set in an open area designated by the government as an agro-technology park, miles away from the shadow of city skyscrapers. And there are plans for the current site to expand to produce up to two tons of greens a week next year and build over 2,000 towers in the next few years.

Section 4

The first copy right law in the United States was passed by Congress in 1790. In 1976, Congress enacted the latest copy right law, taking into consideration the technological developments that had occurred since the passage of the Copyright Act of 1909. For example, in 1909 anyone who wanted to make a single copy of a literary work for personal use had to do so by hand. The very process imposed a limitation on the quantity of materials copied. Today, a photo copier can do the work in seconds. The limitation has disappeared. The 1909 Law did not provide full protection for films and sound recordings nor did it anticipate the need to protect radio and television. As a result, violations of the law and abuses of the intent of the law have lessened the financial rewards of authors, artists and producers. The 1976 Copyright Act has not prevented these abuses fully, but it has clarified the legal rights of the injured parties and given them an avenue for remedy. Since 1976 the Act has been amended to include computer software and guidelines have been adopted for fair use of television broadcasts. These changes have cleared up much of the confusion and conflict that followed in the wake of 1976 legislation. The fine points of the law are decided by the courts and by acceptable common practice over time. As these decisions and agreements are made, we modify our behavior accordingly. For now, we need to interpret the law and its guidelines as accurately as we can and to act in a fair manner.

模拟测试题（四）

Part ONE LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. M: I think the hostess really went out of her way to make the party a success.
   W: Yes, the food and drinks were great, but if only we had known a few of the other guests.
   Q: What did the two speakers say about the party?
2. M: Can you stop by the post office and get me some envelopes and 39 cents' stamps?
   W: Well, I am not going to stop by the post office, but I can buy you some at the bookstore after I see the dentist on Market street.
   Q: Where will the woman go first?
3. M: How do you like the new physician who replaced Dr. Andrews?
   W: He may not seem as agreeable or as thorough as Dr. Andrews, but at least he doesn't keep patients waiting for hours.
   Q: What can we infer from the woman's answer?
4. W: Tom must be in a bad mood today. He hasn't said half a dozen words all afternoon.
   M: Oh, really? That's not like the Tom we know.
   Q: What does the man imply?
5. W: Do you have the seminar schedule with you? I'd like to find out the topic for

Friday.

M: I gave it to my friend, but there should be copies available in the library. I can pick one up for you.

Q: What does the man promise to do?

6. W: I wonder if you could sell me the Psychology textbooks. You took the course last semester, didn't you?

M: As a matter of fact, I already sold them back to the school bookstore.

Q: What do we learn from the conversation?

7. W: Here is this week's schedule, Tony. On Monday, there is the board meeting. Your speech to the lion's club is on Tuesday afternoon. Then on Wednesday you have an appointment with your lawyer and…

M: Wait, you mean the business conference on Tuesday is cancelled?

Q: What will the man do this Tuesday?

8. M: Can you believe it? Jessie told her boss he was wrong to have fired his marketing director.

W: Yeah, but you know Jessie. If she has something in mind, everyone will know about it.

Q: What does the woman mean?

9. M: We've got three women researchers in our group: Mary, Betty and Helen. Do you know them?

W: Sure. Mary is active and sociable. Betty is the most talkative woman I've ever met. But guess what? Helen's just the opposite.

Q: What do we learn from the woman's remark about Helen?

10. W: Jimmy said that he was going to marry a rich French businesswoman.

M: Don't be so sure. He once told me that he had bought a big house. Yet he's still sharing an apartment with Mark.

Q: What does the man imply?

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Ruth, do you know something about the Ethical Consumer Research Association?

W: Yes, so far as I know, it's an organization that provides information for shoppers.

M: Oh, what kind of information?

W: Well, like letting shoppers know what the companies are doing behind the products that they see on the store shelves. And… and these shoppers are concerned with some ethical issues.

M: For example?

W: Well, they may want to know that the product they're buying hasn't been made at the expense of the people who are producing it, whether it's in this country or abroad. They might also be concerned with other kinds of issues: for example, whether the

company is involved in selling arms.

M: But how can one become an ethical shopper when buying things?

W: One way of thinking about ethical shopping is thinking about buying less.

M: Oh, how?

W: Well, you see, sometimes we buy a lot more than we need. We buy more items of clothing than we need. So being an ethical shopper really means thinking a bit before you go and spend your money in the shops.

M: Could you give me some advice?

W: You see, some things may cost a bit more in the short-run, but be worth it in the long-run. So, if you are paying for quality, something will last you longer and then save you money.

M: Mmm…

W: And sometimes you can buy things second-hand, and the quality in most second-hand shops is really very good these days. So it's about thinking before you shop.

M: Ruth, thanks for your advice.

W: Pleasure.

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 17 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Come sit down, Mary.

W: Thanks, Mr. Davies.

M: Now, which course are you doing?

W: I am doing management studies with English and German.

M: Uh-huh. How's it all going?

W: Well, it's not going too well. I'm not really enjoying the course. And… well, I am not very happy.

M: All right, let's take things slowly. Tell me something about the course.

W: Well, there is just so much work. I thought that to do two languages with management studies would be very useful, but I find the management course very difficult sometimes. And then to study English and German too, it means I am working all the time and I never have time to relax.

M: What about your accommodation? Are you happy with that?

W: Not really. I mean the other students on my course are living in the student dormitory. So they see each other all the time. I am living in the rented room in a family house. I eat breakfast and dinner with the family. But I get lonely in the evenings and at weekends.

M: So, making friends is a problem too.

W: Yes.

M: OK. I am going to make two suggestions.

W: All right.

M: First, which of the two languages do you enjoy most?

W: English. I find it easier too.
M: So I'd like you to go and see your German tutor and say that you are going to stop attending German classes for the moment.
W: OK.
M: Next, I think you should go to each of the five student dormitories, choose the one you like best and ask if you could move in there. Students are always moving in and out so that shouldn't be a problem.
W: Thanks a lot for your advice.
M: Not at all.

Conversation 3

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Hello, Yvonne.
W: Hello, Bob.
M: You know today is a very special day. That's the 20th anniversary of the World Wide Web.
W: Ah, the World Wide Web. It's really changed our lives. And… and in such a short space of time.
M: Hmm… definitely. Now, do you know, on average, how long does someone spend surfing the net each day?
W: Umm, honestly I don't know. But I guess people must spend a lot of time on things like Facebook.
M: Hmm… that's true.
W: And I'm sure almost everyone uses the Internet now—but I wonder how we'd cope without it?
M: Well, it might be a bit difficult without it.
W: I guess so. For instance, some people need it for social relationships.
M: Yes, especially those who are far away. Keeping in contact with friends and family would be impossible without the Internet.
W: But are there people who would cope without the Internet?
M: Yes, there are. These people have some alternatives.
W: What kind?
M: For example, we could write to each other like we used to before we had the Internet. It would be lovely to get more hand-written letters from friends and family rather than just e-mails, I think.
W: That's what we call "snail-mail". But of course, lots of more paper would mean that we'd need bigger file cabinets.
M: Yes, well, it's still incredible how the World Wide Web has expanded in twenty years, and how much we now rely on it. I wonder what it will be like after another twenty years.
W: Well, for better or worse, the web will have a greater impact on our life and society.

Section 3

Passage 1

If you are a resident you will find it useful to open a bank account. All the large banks have a network of branches across the country and all offer similar services.

A visit to any one of them will be a friendly experience. However, to open an account, you have to be prepared to prove your identity in a number of ways. You will find your passport useful but the bank will also want to see some form of proof that you are living where you say you are. This can be proved by a housing rent book, a tax form, water or electricity bill for the property, as long as it's in your name. In the bank, and elsewhere, you may hear the term "utility bill" —this simply refers to bills relating to the provision of services to your home such as electricity, gas, water and telephone.

There are other local facilities such as post offices where you can save your money and have access to affordable low cost loans. Where they exist in your local area, contact details can be obtained from the Citizen's Advice Bureau.

Passage 2

Life is very stressful nowadays, so it is useful for us to talk about how to cope with stress. If you want to reduce some stress, you can reduce this by the word S-T-R-E-S-S; that's stress. Let's begin with the "S". "S" is that you can have the "scheduling", for example, you don't have to schedule too many things in your day and if you feel you are too busy, you can cut out an activity or two.

And "T" is "treat your body well", because experts say that exercise can reduce stress and also if you eat healthy food, then your brain and your body get the nourishment they need.

The next letter is "R". "R" means "relax". You can do an activity you enjoy or that relaxes you, maybe you can read a book or learn a new hobby and even spend time with your pet and that could make a difference.

And the next letter is "E" — "E" is about expectations. This means, be realistic about yourself and others. So you can just do your best and don't try to be perfect and don't expect others to be too. That will release and reduce a lot of stress for you and the people around you.

And the next letter is "S". "S" stands for sleep. If you get a good night's sleep, then it will keep your mind and your body in shape.

And the last letter is "S" again, which means "smile". If you smile and have confidence, you will think in a more positive way and then you will feel more comfortable when you are coping with the stress.

Passage 3

New words enter the English language all the time. In fact, English has always been in a state of evolution and in recent years more and more words and phrases have entered the language. But where do all these new words come from?

Words come out of the culture that they represent and they describe so if you've got a new development in medicine, for example bird flu, then you'll get a new word coming

out of that. If there's a military conflict that may well bring all sorts of new words to the fore. Going back in time the First and Second World Wars were times of great creativity of language because people from different countries met each other and exchanged their words and words developed from there. So words come from the playground; they come from politics; they come from any area of life because every area of life is changing from day to day.

And does English have more words than any other language?

It certainly has more than other European languages and probably more than any other language in the world. English is put together from so many different bits. Originally it was a Germanic language and then after the Norman Conquest in 1066 there was an enormous influx of French words. And it comes from a country, the United Kingdom, which was quite an expansive, trading, colonial power in the past and all these have brought all sorts of other new words into the language.

Section 4

Tests may be the most unpopular part of academic life. Students hate them because they produce fear and anxiety about being evaluated, and focus on grades instead of learning for learning's sake.

But tests are also valuable. A well-constructed test identifies what you know and what you still need to learn. Tests help you see how your performance compares to that of others. And knowing that you'll be tested on a body of material is certainly likely to motivate you to learn the material more thoroughly.

However, there's another reason you might dislike tests: You may assume that tests have the power to define your worth as a person. If you do badly on a test, you may be tempted to believe that you've received some fundamental information about yourself from the professor, information that says you're a failure in some significant way.

This is a dangerous—and wrong-headed—assumption. If you do badly on a test, it doesn't mean you are a bad person or stupid. Or that you'll never do better again, and that your life is ruined. If you don't do well on a test, you're the same person you were before you took the test — no better, no worse. You just did badly on a test. That's it.

In short, tests are not a measure of your value as an individual — they are a measure only of how well and how much you studied. Tests are tools; they are indirect and imperfect measures of what we know.

模拟测试题（五）

Part ONE LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Section 1

1. W: You've sold your car. You don't need one?
   M: Not really. I've never liked driving anyway. Now we've moved to a place near the subway entrance. We can get about quite conveniently.
   Q: What do we learn from the conversation?
2. M: I'm going to drop my Information Science class. It means too early in the morning.
   W: Is that really the good reason to drop the class, Tony?

Q: What does the woman mean?

3. W: If you aren't doing anything particular, shall we see the new play at the Grand Theater tonight?
   M: Sounds great. But I've got to go over my notes for tomorrow's midterm.
   Q: What does the woman imply?
4. M: What do you think of the prospects for online education? Is it going to replace the traditional school?
   W: I doubt it. Schools are here to stay, because there are much more than just book learning. Even though more and more kids are going online, I believe fewer of them will quit school altogether.
   Q: What does the woman think of the conventional schools?
5. M: How do most students find a job after they graduate?
   W: They usually look for a job by searching the Want Ads in the newspapers.
   Q: What does the woman mean?
6. M: Allen is in the basement trying to repair the washing machine.
   W: Shouldn't he be working on his term paper?
   Q: What does the woman think Allen should do?
7. W: Professor Newman, a few of us at the back didn't get a copy of your reading assignment.
   M: Well, there're only 38 names on my class list. And I didn't bring any spare copies.
   Q: What do we learn from the conversation?
8. M: Congratulations, Li Ming. You are the talk of the town, and the pride of our class now.
   W: If you are referring to my winning the English Speech Contest, I don't think it's such a big deal. You know I've spent two summer vacations learning English in Canada.
   Q: What do we learn about Li Ming from the conversation?
9. M: Would you pass me the Sports Section please?
   W: Sure, if you give me the classified Ads and Local-News Section.
   Q: What are the speakers doing?
10. W: If the weather is this hot tomorrow, we may as well give up the idea of playing tennis in the afternoon.
    M: Oh, I don't think it'll last long. The weather forecast says it will cloud over by mid-afternoon
    Q: What does the man mean?

Section 2

Conversation 1

Questions 11 to 13 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: Good afternoon, International Trade Center Exhibition Services. How can I help?

M: Oh, hello. I'd like some information about exhibiting at the International Automobile Show.

W: The Auto Show? So, what would you like to know?
M: First, can you give me an idea of how big the fair is?
W: Well, 121 companies had stands last year and that figure should be up to 140 this time.
M: Sorry, how many?
W: 140.
M: What about visiting numbers?
W: Over the two days, we had 16, 500 visitors, so with more stands we'd hope for more people this time.
M: And where did they typically come from?
W: About 57% were from overseas: America and Europe, Japan, Singapore and South Korea. The remained were local people.
M: That's interesting. Now, a few practical questions. We're thinking of taking a stand about 45 square meters. How much will that cost us?
W: $400 per square meter.
M: Sorry, can you give me the cost again?
W: Yes. It's $400. So if you're looking at 45 square meters, it would be, let me see, $18000. But that's just the cost for a basic stand.
M: What does the price include?
W: You get a listing in the catalogue in both Chinese and English, some basic furniture—a desk and four chairs, and electricity in lighting.
M: So anything else would be extra like a poster.
W: That's right.

Conversation 2

Questions 14 to 17 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 15 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

M: Hello Linda.
W: Hello Jim.
M: I'm thinking of investing in your new educational computer that your company has produced. And I'm interested in the advertising campaign.
W: Oh, thank you. What would you like to know?
M: I've read your campaign plan. It looks OK. I only have a couple of questions, mainly about where you intend to place these advertisements.
W: Well, as you can see from the plan, we intend to place them in family magazines and on early evening television. We want whole families that parents and children to see them.
M: Mmm…but are you sure they'll be the right families?
W: The right families? Well…
M: I mean are you certain that the parents who read those magazines and watch those television programs are the people who will buy an educational computer for their children?

W: Yes, we are quite certain. A market research shows that…
M: Good. I'm sure you're right. And I see that you're thinking of placing advertisements in teenage magazines as well.
W: Yes, we intend to place them in some teenage magazines, the more serious ones, you know. And we're also thinking of putting them in Sunday newspapers because it's likely that the whole family will be together on Sundays.
M: I see, but do you really think that the parents and children will like the same advertisements?
W: We've done the research and we think they'll like our advertisements.
M: Good.

Conversation 3

Questions 18 to 20 are based on the following conversation. At the end of the conversation, you will be given 20 seconds to answer the questions. Now listen to the conversation.

W: Hello. I'm Sue Green. You must be John Fox.
M: Yes, I am.
W: Thanks for coming to the job interview. Let me ask you a few questions.
M: Yes, please.
W: Have you got any work experience?
M: Yes. I had a job in a paper factory for a few months after I left school. Then I worked in the summer holidays in the university, first in a fast-food restaurant, then at a book shop.
W: OK. Do you drive? Have you got a driving license?
M: Yes, I have.
W: That's fine then. So what kind of interests do you have?
M: Interests? Well, I like travelling. I play a lot of sports and I play the piano.
W: What sorts of sports do you like?
M: Football, tennis and swimming.
W: Right. And what sort of music do you play?
M: Oh, a lot of, different types, classical, jazz.
W: OK, the most important question now. What experience have you had with children?
M: Well, I've looked after my brother and sister as babies and as they were young children. I also worked with children in a youth club.
W: A youth club?
M: Yes. I've been working as a helper in a youth club since I studied in university as a sort of volunteer with teenagers.
W: Good. OK, well, let you know our decisions in a few days.
M: Thank you.

Section 3

Passage 1

Few people expect luxury while flying, but these days, even the basic seems to be in bad shape. It's not uncommon to find your trade table broken, the in-flight entertainment system not working and your seat cushion worn. All of this can make you

think how old is this plane anyway.

The reality for many US air travelers is that most of their journeys take place on planes that have been in service for a decade or more. The average age of the fleet of the seven large USA passenger airlines is about 14 years old according to the airline monitor. It found American and Delta Northwest have the oldest fleets at about 16 years on average.

At the end of 2008, a small percentage of the merged Delta Northwest planes dated back to the late 1960s. "US fleets are among the oldest in the world," said Richard Albelafia, an elevation analyst, " I'm not really sure that people should read that much into that." Albelafia said, " For the safety's standpoint, a lot of the old planes will be built tougher and with proper maintenance. There's no reason why a plane can stay safe for 25 to 30 years. It's also important to remember that the plane may be 20 years old, but its engines and other major systems could be recently manufactured and upgraded," said Albelafia. "There's less pressure on the airlines to upgrade the interior unless the safety issue or redesign that will save money."

Passage 2

Higher education isn't for everyone and people have a variety of parts to choose from once they graduate from high school. They might know from the start that they want to go straight to the professional world. If you're in the market for a job that doesn't require a degree but does come with a nice salary, here are a few jobs to consider:

Assembly supervisors oversee workers who put together products by using power tools or other dangerous equipment; the annual salary is $59, 926.

At construction side assistant site managers report to the head site manager and plan, direct and coordinate the necessary tasks to complete that day's activities. Salary: $86, 584.

And automobile service station manager draws up guidelines for gas stations and automobile repair shops and decides on our operations, assigns job duties, and sets prices for services and products. Salary: $81, 793.

Carpenter supervisors oversee carpentry work on a specified project to ensure that workers are on schedule and executing the plan accordingly. The supervisors also perform some of carpenter duties if time permits. Salary: $70, 565.

Airlines flight services managers ensure that flight attendance adhere to personal experience and pre-flight requirements. They also compile fly reports. Salary: $ 67, 766.

Illustrators design funs and images for variety of media from websites to printing campaigns and video. They often work for advertisement agencies. Salary: $54, 995.

Passage 3

The police released the first video images yesterday of the two men believed to have been involved in robbing a jewelry shop in the city seven days ago. But the video pictures taken a week ago were not very clear. The camera which filmed the men was about 200 meters away from a parked lorry which the robbers later used as a get-away vehicle. The men were also filmed wearing hoods as they ran towards the lorry after the

robbery. The pictures are timed at 9:05 a. m. last Saturday, just half an hour before the robbery occurred. Witnesses have confirmed that at some time during this half hour, they saw the two men without hoods leave the lorry separately. Despite the quality of the video, the police believe the robbers are distinct enough to be identified. The first suspect who got out of the driver side of the lorry was about 5 foot 6 inches tall and fat. He was wearing a grey jacket with a hood and dark trousers. The passenger was slimmer and slightly taller, about 5 foot 8 inches and was wearing light blue jeans and a white jacket with a hooded jogging top. According to the police, the lorry stored in the parking lot of the city mall last month had been repainted from white to silver and faded with false registration plates.

Section 4

It's difficult to estimate the number of youngsters involved in home schooling where children are not sent to school and receive their formal education from one or both parents. Legislation and court decisions have made it legally possible in most states for parents to educate their children at home and each year more people take advantage of that opportunity.

Some states require parents or a home tutor to meet teacher certification standards, and many require parents to complete legal forms to verify that their children are receiving instruction in state-approved curricula.

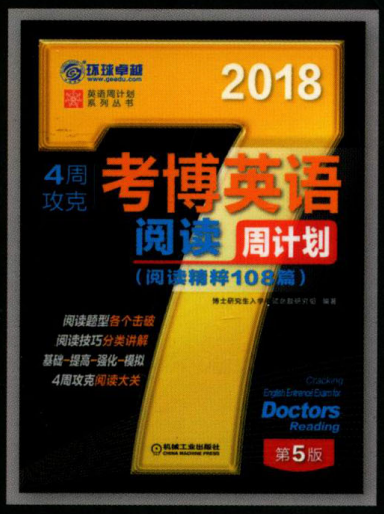
Supporters of home education claim that it is less expensive and far more efficient than mass public education. Moreover, they cite several advantages: alleviation of school overcrowding, strengthened family relationships, lower dropout rates, the facts that students are allowed to learn at their own rate, increased motivation, higher standardized test scores, and reduced discipline problems.

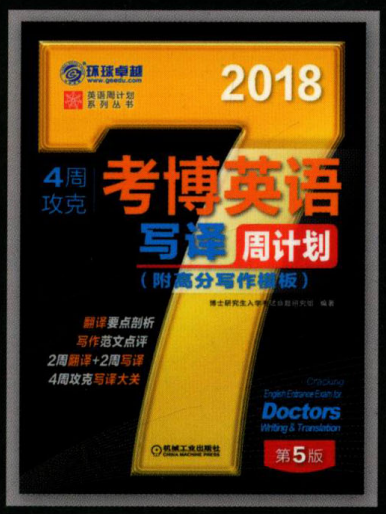
Critics of the home schooling movement contend that it creates as many problems as it solves. They acknowledge that, in a few cases, home schooling offers educational opportunities superior to those found in most public schools, but few parents can provide such educational advantages. Some parents who withdraw their children from the schools in favor of home schooling have an inadequate educational background and insufficient formal training to provide a satisfactory education for their children. Typically, parents have fewer technological resources at their disposal than do schools. However, the relatively inexpensive computer technology that is readily available today is causing some to challenge the notion that home schooling is in any way inferior to more highly structured classroom education.

4周攻克 考博英语 7

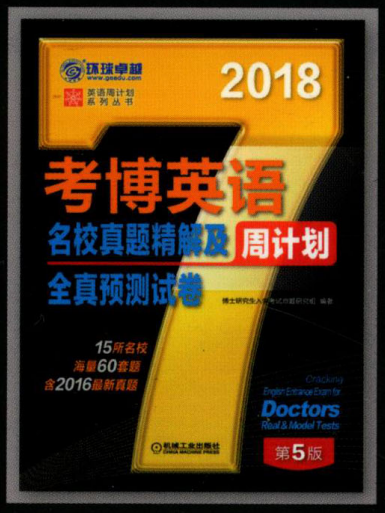
听力、词汇、完形、改错 周计划

合理规划备考时间，科学安排备考内容，4周准备完胜博考！

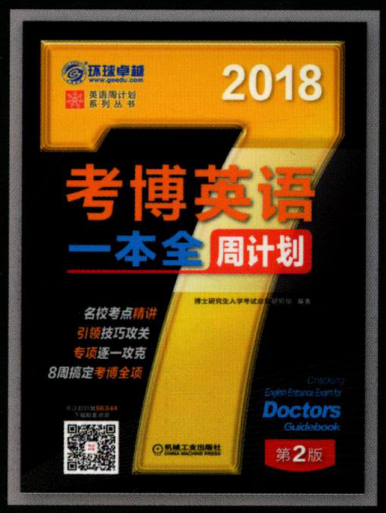












地址：北京市百万庄大街22号
邮政编码：100037

服务咨询热线：010-88361066
读者购书热线：010-68326294
010-88379203

机工官网：www.cmpbook.com
机工官博：weibo.com/cmp1952
金书网：www.golden-book.com
教育服务网：www.cmpedu.com
封面无防伪标均为盗版

机械工业出版社微信公众号　环球卓越

上架建议　考博英语

ISBN 978-7-111-56345-7

策划编辑◎孙铁军　编辑热线◎010-88379364

ISBN 978-7-111-56345-7

9 787111 563457 >

定价：45.00元